Books fold by Nathaniel Rolls in Petty-Cannons-Hall near the North side of St. Paul's Church, London.

A Nimpartial Historical Collection of the Great Affairs of State in England. By Dr. John Nalson. In 2 Vollumes, Fol.

A true Copy of the Journal of the High Court of Juftice, for the Tryal of King Charles the First. By Dr.

John Nalson, Fol.

The History of the Expeditions of Christian Princes for the Conquest of the Holy Land. By Dr. John Nal-

Son, Fol.

Almahide: Or, The Captive Quen, an excellent new Romance; Written in French by the accurate Pen of Monsieur de Scudery, Governor of Nostre Dame, and

made English by J. Phillips, Gent. Fol.

Reports of several Special Cases, Argued and Resolved in the Court of Common Pleas, in 16th, 17th, 18th, and 19th, Years of King Charles the 2d. in the time when Sir Orlando Bridgman sate Chief Justice there: To which are added some Cases adjudged in the time of Chief Justice Vanghan. By S. Carter, of the Inner Temple, Esquire, Fol.

Plowden's Commentaries, Fol.

Pleasure with Profit, consisting of Recreations of divers kinds, viz. Numerical, Geometrical, Mechanical, Statical, Astronomical, Horometical, Criptographical, Magnetical, Anatomical, Chimical and Histo-

rical. By W. Leybourn, Fol.

The Institution of the Laws and Ceremonies of the most Noble Order of the Garter, and a brief Account of all other Military Orders of Knighthood in England, Scotland, France, Spain, Germany, Italy, Sweedland, Denmark, &c. By Elias Ashmole, Esq; Windsor Herald at Arms, The whole Work adorned with many curious Sculptures, and furnished with variety of matter, relating to Honour and Nobless, Fol.

Ancilla.

Books Printed for N. Rolls.

Ancilla Pietatis: Or, The Handmaid to private Devotion, being Instructions, Hymns and Prayers, containing the Duty of a Christian, fitted to the Days of the Week, and the Feasts and Fasts of the Church. By Daniel Featly, D. D. the Ninth Edition, 8°.

An Historical Account of the four chief Monarchies, or Empires, in the World, viz. The Affrian or Babilonian, the Persian, the Grecian, the Roman continued down to the beginning of the Emperor Charles the Fifth; being a Relation of the most considerable Occurrences that have happen'd in the World, from Noah's Flood, to the Year of our Lord, 1520. 89.

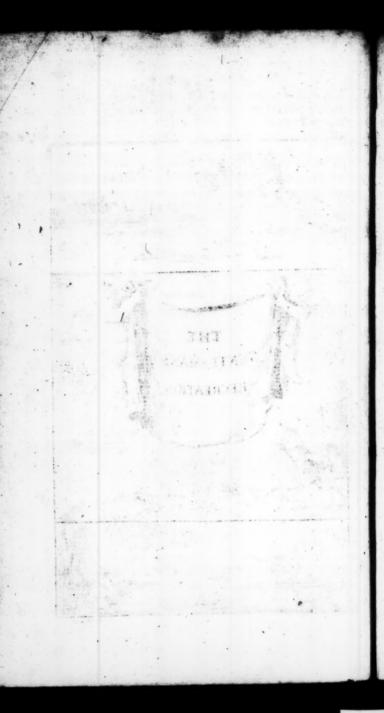
The Wars and the Causes of them, between England and France, from William the First, to his present Majesty King William the Third, with a Treatise of the

Salique Law, 82.

Compendium Anatomicum Nova Methodo Institutum, ubi ars ipsa capitibus & divisionibus ita illustratur, ut omnia uno quasi intuitu conspicientur, & eo firmius id circo retineantur. Authore J. Case, M.D. 12°.

Systema Agricultura: The Mystery of Husbandry discovered. Treating of the feveral New and most Advantagious Ways of Tilling, Planting, Sowing, Manuring, Ordering, Improving of all forts of Gardens, Meadows, Corn-lands, Orchards, Pastures, Woods, and Coppices. As also of Fruits, Corn, Grain, Pulle, Newh.ys, Cattle, Fowl, Beafts, Bees, Silk-worms, Fift, &c. With an Account of the feveral Infruments and Engines used in this Profession. To which is added Kal ndarium Rusticum: Or, the Husbandmans Monthly Directions. Also the Prognosticks of Dearth, Scarerry, Plenty, Sickness, Heat, Cold, Froft, Snow, Winds, Rain, Hail, Thunder, &c. And Dictionarium Ruficum: Or, the Interpretation of Rustick Terms. The whole Work being of great Use and Advantage to all that delight in that most Noble Practise. The Fourth Edition carefully Corrected and Amended, with one whole Section added, and many large and useful Additions throughout the whole Work, Fol. By J. W. Gent.





THE

Gentleman's Recreation:

In Four PARTS.

VIZ.

Hunting, 25 Fowling, Hawking, 52 Fishing.

WHEREIN

These Generous Exercises are largely Treated of, and the Terms of Art for Dunting and Dawking more amply Enlarged than heretofore. Also the method of Breeding and Managing a Hunting Horse.

Whereto is prefix'd,

A large Sculpture, giving easie Directions for Blowing the Horn;

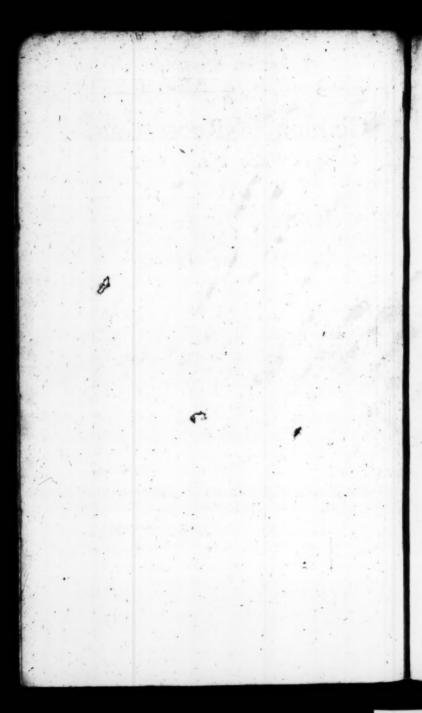
And other Sculptures inferted, proper to each
REC'REATION.

The fourth Edition,

To which is now added, A Perfect Abstract of all the Forest-Laws, and of every particular Act of Parliament since Magna Charta to this time, as do any way relate to the several kinds of Game above mention'd.

LONDON:

Printed by J. Datuks, for D. Holls, in Petry-Canons-Hall, in St. Paul's Church-yard, 1697.



James Earl of Abingdon,

Baron Norreys of Rycott, Lord Chief Justice and Justice in Eyre of all His Majesty's Forests, Parks, Chases, Warrens, &c. on the Southside of Trent; Lord High Steward of the City, and Lord Lieutenant and Custos Rotulorum of the County of OXFORD.

My LORD,

Were a Crime, it would highly concern me to beg your Lordship's Pardon for the Presumption of this Address. For that's the Cause, this the Effect. It is true, the Obscurity of my Condition, and Remoteness of my Situation, have placed me out of the reach of your Lordship's Knowledge; yet your Lordship's Fame Ecchoing out of Oxford-shire throughall the very Corners of the Kingdom, could hardly escape my Ears, were I not particularly entitled to the same Coun-

A 3 ty,

The Epiftle Dedicatory.

ty, which hath given me thereby the greater opportunity both to know, and admire the Greatness of your Generolity, the Magnificence of your Living, and Prudence of your Governing, accompanied with ail other Qualifications and Endowments requilite to render any perfon both Great and Good: As alfo, that though your Lordship is a great improver of your own natural parts by your elaborate studies, and of others Knowledge by your Edifying Conversation; yet to obviate Idleness, and to antidote Sickness; as also the better to enapt your active Body to fuit your Loyal Mind for Martial Employments, should the concerns of your King and Country call you forth into the Field, your Lordship is a most indefatigable ufer of all active Sports and Recreations, and confequently become the great Oracle and Master of them all, and all their Artful Terms. Under what other Wing then could this

The Epiftle Dedicatory.

this little Treatife on those Subjects, to properly creep for Shelter and Protection? Under no other, certainly, without some kind of Injustice to your Lordship, and real Injury to the Work it felf. Be pleased therefore a little to unbend your Thoughts (I humbly befeech your Lordinip) from your more ferious Studies, allowing your Eyes to run over these few Leaves, and either vouchsafe to correct their Errours, (if any have escaped those Judicious Sports-men who have been pleased to be my Guides in perusing this Work, and purging it from many Errors and Mistakes of the former Edition) or stamp them with the unquestionable authority of your Lordships Approbation. This will oblige all true Lovers of the fame generous Recreations to become greedy purchasers of these Rules, both to improve their Knowledge, and reduce their Language

A 4

The Epistle Dedicatory.

to the same significant Terms, to the great Satisfaction of the Buyers, and the Benefit of Proprietor and Seller, who humbly craves leave to lay himself at your Lordship's Feet, in the Quality of

(May it please your Lordship)

Your Lordship's most

Devoted Humble Servant,

Nicholas Cox.







7,0000000000000 ecoverable The Hinde 500-Park or forrest 11000 The Buck ers when the flox is curtical of the field at Parting Taught or Sould by Michaell The Roe Buck w.Dolle-se

Gentleman's Recreation:

OR, A

TREATISE

Giving the Best

Directions for HUNTING and KILLING all manner of Chases used in England; with the Terms of Art belonging thereunto.

Also a short Account of some peculiar Beasts not usually Hunted in ENGLAND.

PART I.

The INTRODUCTION.

TO NTING is a Game and Recreation commendable not only for Kings, Princes, and the Nobility, but likewise for private Gentlemen: And as it is a Noble and Healthy Pastime; so it is a thing which hath been highly prized in all Ages.

Besides, Hunting trains up Youth to the vie of manly Exercises in their riper Age, being encouraged thereto by the pleasure they take in hunting the Stately Stag, the Generous Buck, the Wild Boar, the Cunning Otter, the Crafty Fox, and the Fearful Hare; also the catching of Vermin by Engines, as the Fitchet, the Fulimart, the Ferret, the Polecate, the Moldwarp, and the like. Exercise herein preserveth Health, and increaseth Strength and Activity. Others inflame the hot Spirits of young men with roving Ambition, love of War, and feeds of Anger: But the Exercise of Hunting neither remits the Minde to Sloth nor Softness, nor (if it be used with moderation) hardens it to inhumanity; but rather inclines men to good Acquaintance, and generous Society. It is no small advantage to be enured to bear Hunger, Thirst, and Weariness from ones Childhood; to take up a timely habit of quitting ones Bed early, and loving to fit well and fafe upon an Horse. What innocent and natural delights are they, when he feeth the Day breaking forth those Bluthes and Roses which Poets and Writers of Romances only paint, but the Huntsman truly courts? When he heareth the chirping of

him. Nothing doth more recreate the Mind, strengthen the Limbs, whet the Stomach, and chear up the Spirit, when it is heavy, dull, and over-cast with gloomy Cares: from whence it comes, that these delights have merited to be in esteem in all Ages, and even amongst barbarous Nations, by the Lords, Princes, and highest Potentates.

small Birds pearching upon their dewy Boughs? when he draws in the fragrancy and coolness of the Air? How jolly is his Spirit, when he fuffers it to be imported with the noise of Bugle-Horns, and the baying of Hounds, which leap up and play round about

Then it is admirable to observe the natural instinct of Enmity and Cunning, whereby one Beast being

as it were confederate with Man, by whom he is maintained, ferves him in his defigns upon others. How perfect is the Scent or Smell of an Hound, who never leaves it, but follows it through innumerable changes and varieties of other Scents, even over and in the Water, and into the Earth? Again, how foon will a Hound fix his Eye on the best and fattest Buck of the Herd, fingle him out, and follow him, and him onely, without changing, through a whole Herd of rafcal Game, and leave him not till he kills him? Moreover, is it not delightful and pleasant to observe the Docibleness of Dogs, which is as admirable as their Understanding? For as a right Huntsman knows the Language of his Hounds, fo they know his, and the meaning of their own kind, as perfectly as we can diflinguish the voices of our friends and acquintance from

fuch as are strangers.

ly

e

e

e

h

-

of

0

d

Again, how fatisfied is a curious Mind, nay exceedingly delighted, to fee the Game fly before him! and after that it hath withdrawn itself from his fight, to fee the whole Line where it hath passed over, with all the doublings and crofs works which the amazed and afrighted Beaft hath made, recovered again; and all that Maze wrought out by the intelligence which he holds with Dogs! this is most pleasant, and as it were a Master-piece of natural Magick. Afterwards. what Triumph there is to return with Victory and Spoils, having a good Title both to his Appetite and Repose! Neither must it be omitted, that herein there is an especial need to hold a strict Rein over our affections, that this Pleasure, which is allowable in its feason, may not intrench upon other Domestical af-There is great danger left we be transported with this Pastime, and so our selves grow Wild, haunting the Woods till we resemble the Beasts which are Citizens of them; and by continual conversation with Dos, become altogether addicted to Slaughter and Carnage, which is wholly dishonourable, being a ferwile employment. For as it is the priviledge of Man, who is endued with Reason, and Authorized in the Law of his Creation, to subdue the Beasts of the Field; so to tyrannize over them too much, is brutish in plain

6

B

t

t

al

tl

fa

F

ne

th P

C

ab

pl re

fa

Si

English.

Mistake me not, I intend this Reslection not for the Nobility and Gentry of this Nation, whose expence of time in this noble and delightful Exercise can no ways prejudice their large Possellions, since it is so far from being very chargeable, that it is exceeding prossible to the bodily health of such who can dispence with their staying at home without any injury to their families.

I might much enlarge my felf in the commendation of Hunting, but that I am loath to detain you too long from the knowledge of what will make a right and perfect Huntiman. I shall therefore thus conclude: No Musick can be more ravishingly delightful than a Pack of Hounds in full Cry, to such a Man whose Heart and Ears are so happy to be set to the tune of such charming

Instruments.

HUNTERS TERMS.

Before we shall treat of the Method that is to be used in the obtaining pleasure in the profecution of this Royal Game, it will be very requisite, as an introduction to this Work, first to understand those Terms of Art Huntsmen, Foresters, and Wood-men use, when they are discoursing of their commendable and highly recreative Profession. And first, let us consider,

Which are Beasts of Forest, or Venery, or Venary, Chase, and Warren.

Old Foresters and Wood men, with others well acquainted with Hunting, do reckon that there are five

five Beasts of Venery, (that are also called Beasts of Forest) which are these: the Hart, the Hinde, the Hare, the Boar, and Wolf: this is the Opinion of Budam likewise, in his Treatise of Philologie, speaking of the former Beasts, Semper Foresta & Veneru habentur Bessie: These (saith he) are always accounted Beasts of Venery and Forest.

Some may here object and say, Why should the Hare and Hinde, being both of one kind, be accounted two several Beasts? To this I answer, That though they are. Beasts of one kind, yet they are of several seasons: for the Hare hath his season in Summer, and the season of

the Hinde begins when the Hart's is over.

Here note, that with the Hart is included the Stag,

and all other Red Deer of Antlier.

There are also five wild Beasts that are called Beasts of Chase; the Buck the Doe, the Fox, the Martron, and the Roe.

The Beasts and Fowls of Warren, are the Hare, the Cony, the Pheasant, and the Partridge; and none other saith Mr. Manwood, are accounted Beasts nor Fowls of

Warren.

My Lord Cook is of another Opinion, in his Commentary on Littleton 233. There be both Beasts and Fowls of the Warren, saith he: Beasts as Hares, Coneys, and Roes: Fowls of two sorts, Terrestres, (and they of two sorts) Silvestres, & Campestres. The first, Pheasant, Wood-cock, &c. The second, Partridge, Quail, Rail, &c. Then Aquatiles, as Mallard, Hern, &c.

There is great difference between Beafts of Forest, and Chase; the first are Silvestres tantum, the latter Campestres tantum. The Beasts of the Forest make their abode all the day-time in the great Coverts and secret places in the Woods; and in the night-season they repair into the Laws, Meadows, Pastures, and pleasant feeding places; and therefore they are called Silvestres, Beasts of the Wood. The Beasts of Chase

Chase do reside all the day-time in the Fields, and upon the Hills or high Mountains, where they may see round about them afar off, to prevent danger; but upon nights approach they feed as the rest in Meadows, &c. and therefore these are called Campestres, Beasts of the Field,

Let us in the next place discover their Names, Seafons, Degrees, and Ages of Forest or Venery, Chase and Warren: and because the *Hart* is the most noble, worthy, and stately Beast, I shall place him first; and

must call a

Hart.

The first year, a Hinde-calf, or Calf. The second year, a Knobber. The third year, a Brocke. The fourth year, a Staggard. The fifth year, a Stag. The fixth year, a Hart.

If hunted by the King, a Hart Royal. If he efcape, and Proclamation be made for his fafe return without let or detriment, he is then called a Hart Royal

Proclaimed.

It is a vulgar errour, according to the Opinion of Mr. Guillim, to think that a Stag, of what age soever he be, shall not be called a Hart till he be hunted by the King or Qeen, and thence he shall derive his Title. Mr. George Turbervile saith positively, he shall not obtain that Name till he be hunted or killed by a Prince. But late Huntsmen do agree, he may be called a Hart at and after the age of six years old.

Now if the King or Queen shall happen to hunt or chase him, and he escape with life, he shall ever after be called a *Hart Royal*: But if he sly so far from the Forest or Chase, that it is unlikely he will ever return of his own accord to the place aforesaid, and that Proclamation be made in all Towns and Vil-

lages

t

Dunters Terms.

7

lages thereabouts, that none shall kill or offend him, but that he may safely return if he list; he is then called a Hart Royal Proclaimed.

The fecond Beast of Venery is called a

Hinde.

And she is called the first year, a Calf.

The second year, a Hearse; and sometimes we say Brockets Sister, &c.

The third year, a Hinde.

The next and third, which by old Foresters is called the King of all Beasts of Venery, is the

Hare.

And is called the first year, a Leverer. The second year, a Hare. The third year, a Great Hare.

1

S

1

1

r

\$d ;

The fourth Beaft of Venery is called the

Wilde-Boar .

The first year, he is a Pig of the Sounder.
The second year, he is a Hog.
The third year, he is a Hogs Steer.
The fourth year, he is a Boar; at which age, if not before, he leaveth the Sounder, and then he is called a Singler or Sanglier.

The fifth and last Beast of Venery is the

Wolf.

The Names of the Beasts of Chase according to their
Ages

Ares.

The first is the

Buck.

It is called the first year, a Fawn.
The second year, a Pricket.
The third year, a Sore.
The fourth year, a Sore.
The fifth year, a Back of the first Head.
The sixth year, a Great Buck.

The fecond Beaft of Chase is the

Doe or Doo.

She is called the first year, a Fawn. The second year, a Tegg.

The third year, a Doe.

The third Beaft of Chafe is the

Fox.

And is called the first year, a Cub.

The second year, a Fox, and afterwards an old Fox.

The fourth Beaft of Chafe is the

Martern.

The first year, it is called a Cub. The second year, a Martern.

The fifth and last Beast of Chase is called the

Roe.

The first year, it is called a Kid.

The fecond year, a Gyrle. The third year, a Hemuse.

The fourth year, a Roe-Buck of the first head.

The fifth year, a Fair Roe-Buck.

As for the Beafts of the Warren, the Hare hath been spoken of already. The Coney is called the first year a Rabbet, and afterwards an old Coney.

The seasons of Beafts.

A Hart or Buck beginneth at the end of Fencer Month, which is 15 days after Midsummer-day, and lastest till Holy-rood day. The Fox at Christmas, and lasteth till the Annuntiation of the Blessed Virgin. The Hinde or Doe beginneth at Holy-rood-day, and lasteth till Candlemas. The Roe-Buck beginning at Easter, and lasteth till Michaelmas. The Roe beginneth at Michaelmas, and lasteth till Candlemas. The Hare beginneth at Michaelmas, and lasteth till the end of February. The season of the Wolf is said to be from Christmas till the Annuntiation of the Virgin Mary. Lastly, The Boar begins at Christmas, and continues to the Purisication of our Lady.

Terms to be used for Beasts of Venery and Chase, as they are in Company one with the other.

A Herd of Harts.

A Herd of all manner of Deers

A Bevy of Roes.

A Sounder of Swine.

A Rout of Wolves.

A Richess of Marterns.

A Brace or Leafe of Bucks.

A Brace or Leafe of Foxes.

A Brace or Leafe of Hares.

A Couple of Rabbets.

A Couple of Coneys.

Terms for their Lodging.

A Hart Harboureth.
A Buck Lodgeth.
A Roe Beddeth.
A Hare Seateth; or Formeth.
A Coney Sitteth.
A Fox Kennelleth.
A Mattern Treeth.
An Otter Watcheth.
A Badger Eartheth.
A Boar Coucheth.

Terms for their Dislodging.

Unharbour the Hart.
Rouze the Buck,
Start the Hare.
Bolt the Coney.
Unkennel the Fox.
Tree the Martern.
Vent the Otter.
Dig the Badger.
Rear the Boar.

Terms for their Noise at Rutting time.

A Hart Belleth.

A Buck Growneth or Troateth.

A Roe Belloweth.

A Hare Beateth or Tappeth.

An Otter Whineth.

A Boar Freameth.

A Fox Barketh.

A Badger Shricketh.

ha he

 Γ_{l}

A Wolf Howleth.
A Goat Ratleth.

Terms for Copulation.

A Hart or Buck goeth to Rut.

A Roe goeth to Tourn.

A Boar goeth to Brim.

A Hare and Coney goeth to Buck.

A Fox goeth to Clickitting.

A Wolf goeth to Match or to Make.

An Otter hunteth for his Kind.

Terms for the Footing and Treading of all Beasts of Venery and Chase.

Of a Hart, the Slot.

Of a Buck and all Fallow Deer, the View.

Of all Deer, if on the Grass, and scarce visible, then it is called Foiling.

Of a Fox, the Print; and other fuch Vermin, the Footing.

Of an Otter, the Marks.

Of a Boar, the Tract.

Of a Hare, diversly; for when she is in open Field, he Soreth: When she winds about to deceive the Hounds, then she Doubleth: When she beateth on the hard High-way, and her Footing can be perceived, then she Pricketh; and in the Snow, it is called the Trace of the Hare.

Terms of the Tail.

Of a Hart, Buck, or other Deer, the Single.

Of a Boar, the Wreath.

Of a Fox, the Brush or Drag; and the Tip at the endis called the Chape. Of a Wolf, the Stern.
Of a Hare and Coney, the Scut.

Terms for their Ordure.

Of a Hart, and all Deer, their Excrement is called Fewmets or Fewishing.

Of a Hare, Crotiles or Crotifing.

Of a Boar, Lesses.

Of a Fox, the Billiting; and all other such Vermin, the Fuants.

Of an Otter, the Spraints.

Terms for the Attire of Deer.

Of a Stag, if perfect, the Bur, the Pearls (the little Knobs on it) the Beam, the Gutters, the Antlier, the Sur-Antlier, Royal, Sur-Royal, and all at top the Groches.

Of a Buck, the Bur, the Beam, the Brow-Antlier, the Back-Antlier, the Advancer, Palm, and Spellers.

If the Croches grow in from of a Mans Hand, it is then called a Palmed Head. Heads bearing not above three or four, the Croches being plac'd aloft all of one height, are called Crown'd Heads. Heads having doubling Croches, are called Forked Heads, because the Croches are planted on the top of the Beam like Forks.

If you are asked what a Stag bears, you are only to reckon Croches he bears, and never to express an odd number: As, if he hath four Croches on his neat Horn, and five on his far, you must say, he beareth ten, a salse Right on his near Horn (for all that the Beam bears are called Rights) If but four on the near Horn, and six on the far Horn, you must say he bears twelve a double salse Right on the near Horn; for you must not only make the number even, but also the Hornse ven with that distinction.

When

When a Hart breaketh Herd, and draweth to the Thickets or Coverts, we usually say he taketh his Hold,

or he goeth to Harbour.

All kind of Deers fat is called Sewit; and yet you may fay, This Deer was a high Deer of Grease. The fat of a Boar is called Grease. The fat of a Roe only is called Beavy Grease.

We fay the Deer is broken up. The Fox and Hare

is cased

ed

n,

he

er,

er,

a-

all

12-

De-

am

oly

20

eat

en,

am ro,

ve.

uft

.

en

it

It is A Litter of Cubs.

A Nest of Rabbers.

A Squirrels Dray.

Venison, or Venaison, is so called, from the means whereby the Beasts are taken, quoniam ex Venatione capiuntur; and being hunted, are most wholsome.

Beafts of Venary (not Venery, as some call it) are so

termed, because they are gotten by Hunting.

No Beast of the Forest that is folivagam of nocivum is Venison, as the Fox, the Wolf, the Martin, because they are no meat. The Bear is no Venison because not only that he is Animal nocivum of solivagam; but because he is no Beast of the Forest, and whatsoever is Venison must be a Beast of the Forest; sed non econverso. On the other side, Animalia gregalia non sunt nociva, as the Wild Boar; for naturally the first three years he is Animal gregale; and after trusting to his own strength, and for the pleasure of man, becometh Solivagum. He is then called Sanglier, because he is Singularis: but he is Venison, and to be eaten. The Hare is Venison too, which Martial preferreth before all others:

Inter Quadrupedes gloria prima Lepus,

So are the Red-Deer and Fallow-Deer Venison: vide Cook Inst. 4. pag. 316. Give me leave to insert here out of the same Author, two Conclusions in the Law of the Forest, which follow from hence. First, Whatso-B 3 ever Beast of the Forest is for the food of man, that is Venison: and therewith agreeth Virgil, describing of a Feast,

Implentur Veteris Bacchi pinguisque ferine.

They had their belly full of Old wine and Fat Venison. So Venison was the principal Dish of the Feast. Secondly, Whatsoever Beast is not for the food of Man, is not Venison. Therefore Capriolus, or the Roe, being no Beast of the Forest, is by the Law of the Forest no Venison unless Hunted. Nature hath endowed the Beasts of the Forest with two qualities, Swistness, and Fear; and their Fear increaseth their Swistness,

-Pedibus timor addidit alas.

Vert is any thing that beareth green Leaf, but especially of great and thick Coverts, and is derived a Viriditate. Vert is of divers kinds; some that beareth Fruit that may serve for food both for Man and Beasts, as Service-trees, Nut-trees, Crab-trees, &c. and for the shelter and defence of the Game. Some called Hantboys, ferving for food and browfe of and for the Game, and for the defence of them; as Oaks, Beeches, &c. Some Hautboys for Browfe, Shelter, and Defence only; as Ashes, Poplars, &c. Of Sub boys, some for Browfe and Food of the Game, and for Shelter and Defence; as Maples, &c. Some for Browfe and Defence; as Birch, Sallow, Willow, &c. Some for Shelter and Defence only; as Elder, Alder, &c. Of Bushes and other Vegetables, some for Food and Shelter, as the Haw-thorn, Black thorn, &c. Some for hiding and shelter, as Brakes, Gorfe, Heath, &c. Vert, as I faid, comes a Viridi; thence Viridarii, because their Office is to look after the prefervation of the Vert, which in truth is the prefervation of Venison,

t

7

it

a

G

H

ei

fu

B

Co

H

11

a i

Terms for Flaying, Stripping, and Casing of all-manner of CH AS ES.

f

.

of

2,

e

1-.

.

.

h

,

ŕ

.

,

,

,

9

The Hart and all manner of Deer are flain: Huntsmen commonly say, Take off that Deer's Skin. The Hare is Stripped or Cased; and so is the Boar too, according to the opinion of the Antients. The Fox, the Badger, and all manner of Vermin are cased, beginning at the Snout or Nose of the Beast, and so turn his skin over his Ears down to the Body till you come to the Tail.

Proper Terms for the Noises of Hounds.

When Hounds are first cast off, and find some Game or Chase, we say They Challenge. If they are too busic before they find the scent good, we say, They Bawl. If they be too busic after they find good scent, we say, They Babble. If they run it end-ways orderly, making it good, and then hold in together merrily, we say, They are in full Cry. When Spaniels open in the string, (or a Grey-hound in his course) we say, They Lapse. When Hounds hang behind, and beat too much upon the scent or place, we say, They Plod. And when they have either Earthed a Vermin, or brought a Deer, Boar, or such-like to turn head against them, then we say, They Bay.

Different Terms for Hounds and Grey-hounds.

Of Grey-hounds, two make a Brace; of Hounds, a Couple; of Grey-hounds, three make a Lease; and of

Hounds, a Couple and half.

We let flip a Grey-hound, and cast off a Hound. The string wherewith we lead a Grey-hound, is called a Lease; and for a Hound, a Lyome. The Grey-hound hath his Couples. We

B 4 fay, .

fay, a Kennel of Hounds, and a Pack of Beagles. Some other differences there are, but these are the

most usual.

Where we find Deer have lately passed into Thickets, &c. by which we guess their greatness, and then put the Hounds or Beagles thereto for the View, we account fuch places Entries.

The Impression where any Deer hath reposed or har-

boured, we call a Layr.

When the Hounds or Beagles hit the scent of their Chase contrary, as to hit it up the wind when they should hit down, we then fay, they Draw amis.

When the Hounds or Beagles take fresh scent, hunting another Chase, untill they slick and hit it again, we

fay, they Hunt Change.

When the Hounds or Beagles hunt it by the Heel,

we fay, they Hunt Counter.

When the Chase goes off, and comes on again traversing the same ground, to deceive the Hounds or Beagles, we fay, they Hunt the Foil.

When we fet Hounds in readiness where we exped the Deer will come by, and then cast them off when the other Hounds are pass'd by, we account that a Relay.

When Hounds or Beagles have finish'd their Chase by the death of what they purfued, and then in requital are fed by the hands of the Huntsman or others, we call that their Reward.

Hantsmen when they go drawing in their Springs at Hart Hunting, usually make Dew-rounds which we

call Ringwalks.

When any Deer is hard hunted, and then betake himself to swimming in any River, &c. then we say he takes Soyl.

When Deer cast their Horns, we say, they Mew. The first head of a Fallow-Deer is called Prick.

When Huntsmen endeavour to find a Hart by the Slot, &c. and then mind his ftep to know whether he's great and long, they then fay, they know him by his Gan

When

When Deer rub and push their heads against Trees to cause the Pills of their new Horns come off, we say, they Fray.

When Deer, after being hard run, turn head against

the Hounds, we fay, they Bay.

When Hounds or Beagles run long without opening

or making any cry, we fay, they run Mute.

When Hounds or Beagles at first finding the scent of their Game presently open and cry, we then say, they Challenge.

When Hounds run at a whole Herd of Deer, we

fay, they Run Riot.

les.

the

ets.

put

unt

har-

heir

hey

int-

eel,

tra-

1D

pea

the

y. e by

are

cal

ngs

We

ike Tay,

,

èis

att.

When the Hounds touch the scent, and draw on till they rouze or put up the Chase, we say, they Draw on the Slot.

When a Roe croffes and doubles, it is called Trajoning, When a Hare, as sometimes (though seldom) takes the ground like a Coney, we then say, she Goes to the Vault.

When we beat the Bushes, &c. after the Fox, we

call it Drawing.

When a Hare runs on rotten ground, or in a Frost fometimes, and then it sticks to her Feet, we say, she Carryeth.

When the Fox hath young ones in her, we fay, the

is with Cub.

When Beagles bark and cry at their Prey, we fay, they Yearn.

A Red Male Hart of a year old, is called a Spister.

A Rayn-Deer, is a beaft like an Hart, but hath his Head fuller of Antliers.

A Pricker, is a Huntsman on Horse-back.

Engines that we take Deer withal, are called Wiles.

When we set Hounds or Beagles in readiness, expecting the Chase to come by, and then cast them off before the rest come in, we call it a Vauntlay.

When Hounds or Beagles find where the Chafe hath

been, and made a proffer to enter, but returned, we fay, there is a Blemish.

We fay How to a Deer.

When we flart a Hare, we fay, That, that, or There, there.

The Call, a Lesson blowed on the Horn to comfort

the Hounds.

A Rechest, a Leffon likewife blown on the Horn.
The More or Death, is blown at the death of any Deer.
There are feveral other Leffons, which you may find in
the Sculpture of Notes for blowing on the Horn.

There are several Hounds and Beagles which we have different Titles for; as Gaze-hound, Blood-hound, Staunch-hound, Harrier, and Tenrier, &c. But we generally in all our Kennels and Packs rank them under these heads: Enterers, Drivers, Flyers, Tyers, &c.

And now to conclude our discourse of general Terms at this place, give us leave to insert, for such young Gentlemen as in time may keep a Kennel, some usual

Names of Hounds and Beagles.

A Catalogue of fome general Names of HOUNDS and BEAGLES.

D Ange	r Dido	Fuddle
B Bea	nty Driver	Gallant
Blueman	Drunkard	
Boman		** **
Blewcap	Damofel	Juggler
Bonny	Darling 2001	
Bouncer.	Dutchef miling	
Captains	Me Decer on Dancer on Change	Jenny .
Capper	on hear n Daphne. 10 thu	Joler
Chanter	od the a Fancy : , vd oine	Jollyboy
Countes	We College anniety	Jupiter
Cryer	Beagles inadqil Tere the C	Juno.
Cufin.	Flurry	Keeper

Kil-

Mission B

White B

Kilbuck. Ranter Truelips Lively Ratler Touchstone Traveller Lovely Ruler Tracer Lady Ranger Royal Touler Lilly Tunewel Lillups. Rapper Tidings Ruffler. Madam Trouncer Maulkin Spanker Trusty Merryboy Singwel Truescent Mopfie Sweetlips Motley Soundwel Tryer. Musick. Venus Stately. Nancy Troler Vulcan Natter. Thunder Violet. Wanton Plunder Thisbe Pleafant Truman Wonder Truelove Winder Pluto. Whipster. Rockwood Tickler Ringwood Tattler . Terker : Rover Tulip Younker.

We

or

rt

n.

n

e

r

Some other Terms and Descriptions relating more particularly to Forest and Forest Laws.

A Forest, is a place priviledged by Royal Authority, and differs from Park, Warren, and Chase, and is on purpose allotted for the peaceable abiding and nourishment of the Beasts and Fowls thereto belonging. For which there are certain peculiar Laws, Officers, and Orders; part of which appear in the Great Charter of the Forest.

A Forester, is an Officer of the Forest, sworn to preferve the Vert and Venison therein, and to attend the wild Beasts within his Bailiwick, and to watch, and endeavour to keep them safe by day and night. He is likewise to apprehend all Offenders in Vert and Veni-

fon,

fon, and to present them to the Courts of the Forest, to the end they may be punished according to their offences.

A Purlien, is all that ground adjoining to Forests, which being made Forest by Henry the second, Richard the first, or King John, were by perambulations granted by Henry the third, and severed again from the same.

A Purlieu-man, is he that hath ground within the Purlieu, and hath 40 s. a year Free-hold; and fuch a one with some caution may hunt within his own Purlieu.

A Regarder, is an Officer of the Kings Forest, that is sworn to take care of the Vert and Venison, and to view and enquire of all the offences committed within the Forest, and of all the Concealments of them; and whether all other Officers do execute their Office or not.

Woodgeld, is the gathering or cutting of Wood in the Forest, or the money paid for it to the use of the Foresters; or an Immunity for this by the King's

Grant.

A Raunger, In some Forests there are twelve Raungers, whose Offices are to look after the Purlieu, and drive back the wild Beasts into the Forest again; and to see, hear, and enquire of offenders there, and to present their offences.

A Verderor, is an Officer of the King's Forest, and chosen by the Free-holders of the County where the Forest is, by the Kings Writ directed to the Sheriff for that purpose. Their Office is chiefly to look after the

Wood and Grass in the Forest.

An Agistor, is an Officer of the Forest that takes in to feed the Cattle of Strangers, and receives for the Kings use all such tack-Money as becomes due from those Strangers.

A Chase, is a place used for the receipt of Deer and Beasts of the Forest: It differs from a Forest and

Park.

ft,

of-

Its.

erd

in-

he

ha

er-

is

w

he

bn

or

in he

's

n-

e-

d

ne

10

n

n

d

Park. It may be in the hands of a Subject, which a Forest in its proper nature cannot be. Neither is it inclosed as a Park always is; and it hath a larger compass, more store of Game, and more Keepers and Overfeers.

Expeditate, is (faith Mr. Crompton) the cutting out the ball of the Foot of great Dogs in the Forest; but (saith Mr. Manwood) it is the cutting off the three fore-Claws by the Skin; and that the owner of every such Dog, unexpeditated in the Forest, shall forfeit 3 s. 4 d.

Fence Month, hath 31 days, begins 15 days before Midfummer, and ends 15 days after: In which time it is unlawful for any to hunt in the Forest, or to go amongst the Deer to disquiet them; because it is the time of Fawning.

Frank Chase, is a liberty of free Chase in a Circuit annexed to a Forest, whereby all men that have ground within the circuit are forbidden to cut down Wood, or discover, Sc. within the view of the Forester, though it be his own Demesne.

Green-hue, or Vert, they both fignifie one thing, it being every thing that doth grow and bear green. Leaf within the Forest, that may cover and hide the Deer.

Over Vert, is all manner of high Wood.

Neither Vert, is all forts of under-wood, Brushwood is called Cablish.

Horngeld, is a Tax within the Forest for all manner of horned beafts.

Footgeld, is an Amercement on such as live within the Forest, for not expeditating their Dogs. And to be quit of Footgeld, is a priviledge to keep Dogs there Unlawed, without Punishment or Controlement.

Pawnage, is Money taken by the Agistors for the feed of Hogs with the Mast of the Kings's Forest; but (Mr. Crompton saith) it is most properly the Mast,

Woods,

Woods, Lands, or hedg'd Rows, or Money due to the

owners of the same for it.

A Scotale, is where any Officer of the Forest doth keep an Ale-house in the Forest by colour of his Office, causing men to come to his House, and to spend their mony there for fear of having displeasure; but this is forbidden by Charta Forest.

Perambulation, is the admeasurement and fetting

down of Bounds and Limits to the Forest.

Drift of the Forest, is an exact view and examination taken at cerrain times, as occasion shall serve, to know what Beasts are there; that none Common there but such as have right; and that the Forest be not overcharged with the Beasts of Foreigners.

An Affart, is a great offence committed in the Forest, by grubbing up the Wood, Coverts, and Thickets, and making them plain as Arable Land, or the

like.

Minoverie, is a Trespass or Offence committed by some Engine set up in the Forest to catch Deer, or the like.

Tritis, is a freedom that one hath from holding a Grey-hound in ones hand when the Lord of the Forest is hunting there, or to be amerced for his default.

Protoforestarius, was a great Officer heretofore in

Windfor Forest.

Scablestand, is when one is found standing in the Forest with his Bow ready bent to shoot at any Deer, or

with his Grey-hound in a Leafe ready to flip.

Swainmote, or Swannimote, is a Court appointed to be held thrice in a year within a Forest; the first, 15 days before Michaelmae; the second, about Martinmae; and the third, 15 days before St. John Baptist.

Chiminage, is taken by Foresters in see throughout their Bailiwick for Bushes, Timber, &c. and signifies

the fame with Toll.

Afforest, is to turn Land into Forest.

Disafforest,

Disafforest, is to turn Land from being Forest to o-

hê

ep

u-

d-

ng

on

W

ut r-

c-

y

le

a

n

e

d

-

ŧ

S

Let what hath been faid be sufficient for an Introduction, and let us conclude it with a perswasion to all generous Souls not to slight this noble and worthy Exercise, (wherein is contained so much health and pleasure) for the besotting Sensualities, and wicked Debaucheries of a City, in which the course of Nature seems to be inverted, Day turn'd into Night, and Night into Day; where there is little other Recreation but what Women, Wine, and a Bawdy Play can afford them; whereby, for want of Labour and Exercise, Mens Bodies contain as many Diseases as are in a fickly Hospital.

of DOGS in general.

A S there is no Country in the World wherein there is not plenty of Dogs, so no Animal can boast of greater variety both in shape and kind.

Some Dogs are very great as the Wolf-dog, which is shaped like a Grey-hound, but by much taller, longer, and thicker; some are for the Buck, others for the Boar, Bear, and Bull; some for the Hare, Coney, and Hedge-bog; some are both for Water and Land, and they are called Spaniels; other are called Lurchers, Tumblers, Brachers, Beagles, &c. As for Shepherds Dogs, soisting Curs, and such whom some fond Ladies make their daily, nay nightly Companions too, I shall pass over, being neither worthy to be inserted in this Subject, nor agreeable thereunto: wherefore shall only treat of such whose natures do incline them to Game, for Mans Pastime and Recreation.

In the first place, let us consider the Nature of Dogs in general, wherein they agree, and their common

properties of Nature, such as are not destroyed in the distinction of kinds, but remain like infallible Truths, and invariable in every kind and Country through the Universe. Dogs (as it is to be observed) are generally rough; and their Hair indifferently long (which in Winter they lose every year) is a sign of a good constitution; but if it grow over-long, the Mange will follow. The outward proportion of the Head altereth as the kind altereth, having no commission or seam in the Skull, being a continued bone without separation.

The best Dogs (in Pliny's Opinion) have stat Nostrils, yet round, solid, and blunt: Their Teeth are like Saws, which they change in the fourth month of their age; and by them is their age discerned; for while they are white and sharp, it discovers the youth of a Dog; but when they grow blackish or dusky, broken and torn, they de

monstrate the elder age.

The Breast of a Dog is narrow, so is his Ventricle: for which cause he is always in pain in the discharging

his Excrements.

After they have run a Courfe, they relieve themselve by tumbling and rowling to and fro. When they lie down, they turn round in a circle two or three times to gether; which they do for no other cause, but that they may the more commodiously lie round, and from the Wind.

In their fleep they often dream, as may appear by their Barking. Here observe, that they who love a keep Dogs, must have a special care that they let them not sleep too much, especially after their Meat, who they are young: for as they are very hot, so in the sleep doth their heat draw much pain into their Stomack and Ventricle. The time of their Copulation is for the most part at a year old; yet the Female will lust after it sooner; but they should be restrained from it, because in debilitates their Body, and dust their Generosity. After the expiration of a year the

the

ths,

the

ne-

nich

000

will

reth

eam

ati

rils

aws,

and

hite

hen

de.

cle:

ging

Ive

y lk

s to-

that

from

ar by

ve W

then

when

their

Sto

ation

male

aind

du

year,

the

they may be permitted to copulate; it matters not whether in Winter or Summer, but it is best in the beginning of the Spring: but with this caution, that Whelps of a Litter, or of one and the same Bitch, be never suffered to couple; for Nature delights in variety.

In antient time, for the more ennobling of their race of Dogs, they would not permit them to ingender till the Male was four year old, and the Female three; for by that means the Whelps would prove more ftrong and lively. By Hunting, Labour, and Travel, the Males are made more fit for Generation, and they prove best which have their Sires of equal age. When they grow proud, give them Leaven mingled with Milk and Salt, and they will not stray and ramble abroad.

It is not good to preserve the first or second Litter, but the third: and after they have Littered, it is good to give the Bitch Whey and Barly-bread; for that will comfort her, and increase her Milk: or take the Bones of broken Meat, and seeth them in Goats-Milk; which nutriment will strengthen very much both Dam and Whelps.

There is no great regard to be had as to the Food of a Dog, for he will eat any thing but the Flesh of his own kinde; for that cannot be so dressed by the art of Man, but they find it out by their Nose, and avoid it. It is good to let the Whelps suck two Months before they be weared, and that of their own Dam.

Put Cummin now and then in their bread, it will cure or prevent Wind in their bellies; and if Oyl be mingled with that Water they lap, they will prove more able and swift to run. If he resuse and loath his Meat, give him a little hot Bread, or dip brown Bread in Vinegar and squeeze the liquor thereof into his Nose, and it will ease him.

There is some difficulty to chuse a Whelp under the

Dam that will prove the best of the Litter. Some observe that which seeth last, and take that for the best: others remove the Whelps from the Kennel, and lay them several and apart one from the other; then watch they which of them the Bitch first taketh and carrieth into her Kennel again, and that they take for the best; or else that which vomiteth last of all. Some again give for a certain rule to know the best, that the same which weigheth least while it sucketh will prove the best, according to the Verses of Namessan:

Pondere nam Catuli poteris prependere virie, Corporibusque leves gravibus pernoscere cursu.

But this is certain, that the lighter Whelp will prove the fwifter, and the heavier will be the stronger.

As foon as the Bitch hath littered, it is requisite to chuse them you intend to preserve, and throw away the rest: keep the black, brown, or of one colour, for the spotted are not much to be accounted of but of Hounds.

spotted are to be valued.

There is not any Creature irrational, more loving to his Master, nor more serviceable than a Dog, enduring blows from his hands, and using no other means to pacifie his displeasure, than Humiliation and prostration; and after beating, turneth a Revenge into a more fervent Love. Irrational, did I say,? I may mistake, if what Alianus reports be true, who though Dogs have Reason, and use Logick in their Hunting; for they will cast about for the Game, as a Disputant doth for the truth; as if they should say, the Hare is gone either on the less hand, the right, or straight forward; but not on the less or right, Therefore straight forward. Whereupon he runneth forthright after the true and infallible sootsteps of the Hare.

Of Dogs for Hunting. Of the Hound Rache and Sluth-Hound, fo called in Scotland, and by the Germans Schlathund.

me

el,

er; eth

hey t of

the

ick-

Ne-

the

eto

the

the

nds,

ving

en-

eans

ftra-

nore

e, if

the

ron

ere-

lible

Of

Here are in England and Scotland two kinds of Hunting-Dogs, and no where elfe in all the World: The first kind is called Ane Rache, and this is a Foot-scenting creature both of wild Beasts, Birds, and Fishes also, which lie hid among the Rocks: The Female thereof in England is called a Brache. A Brach. is a mannerly name for all Hound-Bitches. cond in Scotland is called a Sluth-hound, being a little greater then the Hunting-Hound, and in colour for the most part brown or fandy spotted. The fense of Smelling is fo quick in thefe, that they can follow the Foot-steps of Thieves, and pursue them with violence untill they overtake them: nay, should the Thieftake the Water, so eager they are in their pursuit, that they will swim after them; and are reftless till they find the thing they feek after: For this is common in the Borders of England and Scotland, where the people were wont to ive much upon Theft: and if the Dog brought his Leader to any house where they may not be suffered to enter, they take it for granted that there is both the stolen Goods, and the Thief also.

Of the Blood-Hound.

The Blood-hound differeth nothing in quality from the Scottish Sluth-hound, saving that they are more argely sized, and not always of one and the same coour: for they are sometimes Red, Sanded, Black, White, Spotted, and of all colours with other Hounds, ut most commonly either brown or red.

 C_2

The

The Germans call this beaft Langhund, because their Ears are long, thin, and hanging down; and they differ not from vulgar Dogs in any other outward proportion, than only in their Cry and Barking. Their nature is, being set on by the voice and words of their Leader, to cast about for the sitting of the present Game; and having sound it, will never cease pursuing it with full cry, till it is tired, without changing for any other. They seldome bark, except in their Chase, and are very obedient and attentive to the Voice of the Leader.

They which are white, are faid to be the quicket scented, and surest Nos'd, and therefore best for the Hare: The black ones for the Boar; and the red for the Hart and Roe. This is the Opinion of some, but none of mine; because their colour (especially the latter) are too like the Game they Hunt: although there can be nothing certain collected of their colour yet is the black Hound hardier, and better able to endure cold than the other which is white. must be tied up till they hunt, yet so as they be ke loofe now and then a little to ease their Bellies; fori is necessary that their Kennel be kept sweet and dry It is questionable how to discern a Hound of excel lent sense: yet some are of the Opinion that the square and flat Nose is the best fign thereof; likewill a small Head, having all his Legs of equal length; his Breast not deeper than his Belly, and his Back plaint his Tail; his Eyes quick, his Ears hanging long; hi Tail nimble, and the beak of his Nose always to the Earth; and especially such as are most filent, and bar leaft.

Consider now the divers and variable dispositions. Hounds in their sinding out the Beast. Some area that nature, that when they have found the Gam they will stand still till the Huntsman come up, whom in silence, by their Face, Eye, and Tail, the shew the Game: others, when they have found in

oot-steps, go forward without any voice or other shew of Ear or Tail: Another fort, when they have found the sootings of the Beast, prick up their Ears a little, and either bark or wag their Tails; and others will wag their Tails, and nor move their Ears.

There are some again that do none of these, but wander up and down barking about the furest marks, and confounding their own foot-steps with the beasts they hunt; or elfe forfake the way, and fo run back again to the first head; but when they fee the Hare, are affraid, not daring to come near her, except the ftart first. These, with the other which hinder the cunning labours of their Colleagues, trufting to their Feet, and running before their betters, deface the best mark, or elfe hunt counter, and take up any false scent for the truth; or, which is more reprehensible, never forfake the High-ways, and yet have not learned to be filent: Unto these you may also adde those which cannot discern the Footing or Pricking of a Hare, yet will they run speedy when they fee her, pursuing her hotly in the beginning, and afterwards tire, or hunt lazily. All these are not to be admitted into a Kennel of good Hounds.

On the contrary, those Hounds which are good when they have found the Hare, make shew thereof to the Huntsman, by running more speedily, and with gesture of Head, Eyes, Ears, and Tail, winding to the Form or Hares Muse, never give over prosecution with a gallant noise: they have good and hard Feet, and

stately Stomacks.

heit dif-

-10q

na-Lea-

me;

with

her.

are

Lea.

keft

the

for

but

the

our,

Cher

e la

dry

cel

uan

wif

hi

, bi

th

bar

150

ret am

the

000

Now whereas the nature of the Hare is sometimes to leap and make headings, sometimes to tread softly, with but a very small inpression in the Earth, or sometimes to lie down, and ever to leap or jump out and into her own Form, the poor Hound is so much the more busied and troubled to retain the small scent of her pricking which she leaveth behind her;

for this cause it is requisite that you help the Hound, not only with Voice, Eye, and Hand, but with a seasonable Time also: for in frosty weather the scent freezeth with the Earth, so that there is no certainty of hunting till it thaw, or that the Sun arise. Likewise if very much Rain fall between the starting of the Hare and time of hunting, it is not convenient to hunt till the Water be dried up; for the drops disperse the scent of the Hare, and dry weather collecteth it again. The Summer-time also is not for hunting, because the heat of the weather consument the scent; and the night being then but short, the Hare travelleth not far, feeding only in the morning and evening: besides, the fragrancy of Flowers and Herds then growing, obliterates the scent the Hounds are guided by.

The best time for hunting with these Hounds is in Autumn, because then the former Odours are weakned, and

the Earth bater than at other time.

These Hounds do not only chase their Game while it liveth, but being dead also by any manner of cafualty, make recourse to the Place where it lieth, having in this point an affured and infallible Guide, namely, the Scent and Savour of the Blood sprinkled here and there upon the ground: for whether the Beast being wounded doth notwithstanding enjoy life, and escapeth the hands of the Huntsman; or whether the faid Beast, being slain, is conveyed cleanly out of the Park, (so that there be some marks of bloodshed) these Dogs, with no less facility and easiness, than avidity and greediness, disclose and bewray the fame by Smelling, applying to their pursuit agility and nimbleness, without tediousness; for which confideration, of a fingular speciality they deserved to be called Sanguinarii, Blood-hounds: And although a piece of flesh be subtilly stolen, and cunningly conveyed away, with fuch proviso's and precaveats, as thereby all appearance of Bloud is thereby prevented or concealed; yet these kind of Dogs, by certain direction

direction of an inward affured notice and private mark, pursue these desperate Deer-stealers through craggy Ways, and crooked Meanders, till they have found them out: yea, so essential is their foresight, that they can discover, separate, and pick them out from an infinite multitude; creep they never so far into the thickest throng, they will find them out notwithstanding.

Of the Gaze-Hound.

This Dog is little beholding in Hunting to his Nose or Smelling, but to sharpness of Sight altogether, by the vertue whereof it makes excellent sport with the Fox and Hare.

This Dog will chuse and separate from amongst a great Flock or herd, and such a one will it take by election, as is not lank or lean, but sull, fat, and

round.

und,

th a

cent

ty of

wife

Hare

hunt

the

the ight

the

Au-

and

ile

ca-

ha-

le,

ed

he

fe,

e-

ly

of

ſs,

he

ty

1-

oe

1-

S

d

n

n

If a Beast be wounded and go astray, this Dog will seek after it by the steadsastness of the Eye; if it happen to return, and be mingled with the residue of the Herd, this Dog will soon spy it out, leaving the rest untouched: and after he hath set sure sight upon it, he separateth it from the company; and having so done, never ceaseth till he hath wearied it to death.

This Dog is called in Latin Agasam, because the beams of the Sight are so stedfastly setled, and unmoveably sastned. These Dogs are much used in the Northern parts of England, much more than in the Southern; and on Champion ground, rather than in bushy and woody places: Horsemen use them more than

Footmen.

If it happen so at any time that this Dog take a wrong way, the Master making some usual sign, and familiar token, he returneth forthwith, and taketh the right C 4

and ready course, beginning his Chase afresh, and with a clear Voice, and a swift Foot, followeth the Game with as much courage and nimbleness as he did at the first.

Of the Grey-Hound.

A Mong the divers kinds of Hunting-dogs, the Greyhound, by reason of his Swiftness, Strength, and Sagacity to follow and pursue his Game, deserveth the first place; for such are the conditions of this Dog, as a Philosopher observeth, that he is reasonably scented to find out, speedy and quick of Foot to follow, and herce and strong to take and overcome; and yet silent, coming upon his Prey at unawares, according to the observation of Grations:

Sic Canis illa suos taciturna supervenit hostes.

The best Grey-hound hath a long Body, strong, and reafonable great, not so big as the Wolf-dog in Ireland; a neat sharp Head, and splendent Eyes; a long Mouth, and sharp Teeth; little Ears, and thin Gristles in them; a straight Neck, and a broad and strong Breast; his fore Legs straight and short, his hinder Legs long and straight; broad Shoulders, round Ribs, sleshy Buttocks, but not sat; a long Tail, strong, and full of Sinews. Thus Nemesian elequently describes the best of Grey-hound:

Sit cruribus altis,
Costarum sub fine decenter prona carinam:
Renibus ampla satis validis deductaq; coras
Sit rigidis, multamq; gerat sub pectore lato,
Que sensim rursus sicca se colligat alvo:
Cuiq; nimis mollés fluitent in cursibus Aures.
Elige tunc cursu facilem, facilemq; necursus,
Dum superant vires, dum lato store juventus.

ich

me

the

cy-

ind

the

is a

to

rce

m-

er.

a

th,

m;

ht;

lot Ve-

Oi

Of this kind, that is always the best to be chosen among the Whelps, which weigheth lightest; for it will be soonest at the Game, and so hang upon it, hindering its swiftness, till the stronger and heavier Dogs come to help and offer their assistance; and therefore besides the marks or necessary good parts of a Grey-bound afready spoken of, it is requisite that he have large sides, and a broad midrist, that so he may take his breath in and out more easily: his Belly must be small; if otherwise, it will hinder the swiftness of his course: likewise he must have long Legs, thin and soft Hairs. And these must the Huntsman lead on his lest hand, if he be assort; and on the right, if on Horse-back.

The best time to try them and train them to their Game, is at twelve Months old; yet some begin sooner with them, that is, at ten Months if they are Males, and at eight if Females: yet it is surest not to strain them, or permit them to run a long Gourse, till they be twenty Moneths old. Keep them also in the Slip while they are abroad, until they can see their Course; and loosen not a young Dog, until the Game have been on foot for a good season, less being over-greedy of the Prey, he strain his limbs too

much.
The Grey-hounds which are most in request among the Germans, are called Windspil, alluding to compare their swiftness with the Wind; but the French make most account of those that are bred in the Mountains of Dalmatia, or in any other Mountains, especially of Turkie; for such have hard Feet, long Ears, and bristle Tails.

The Grey-hound (called by the Latins Leporatius) hath his name from the word Gre, which word foundeth Gradus in Latin, in English Degree; because among all Dogs, these are the most principal, having the chiefest place, and being simply and absolutely the best of the gentle kind of Hounds.

of the Harrier and Terrier.

THe Harrier in Latin is called Leverarius, or Sugar; by the Greeks, Ichneuten, of tracing or chafing by

the Foot.

Nature hath endowed this Creature with an admirable gift of Smelling, and is bold and courageous in the pursuit of his Game. There are several forts of them, and all differ in their Services: some are for the Hare, the Fox, the Wolf, the Hart, the Buck, the Badger, the Otter, the Polecat, the Weasle, the Coney, &c. some for

one thing, some for another.

As for the Coney, we use not to hunt, but take it sometimes with a Net, sometimes with a Ferret, and sometimes with a Lurcher or Tumbler. Among the several sorts of Harriers, there are some which are apt to hunt two divers Beasts, as the Fox sometimes, and otherwhiles the Hare; but they hunt not with that good success and towardness, who stick not to one fort of Game.

The Terrier hunteth the Fox and the Badger or Grey only: And they are called Terriers, because they (after the manner and custom of Ferrets in searching for Coneys) creep into the ground, and by that means affright, nip, and bite the Fox and the Badger, in fuch fort, that either they tear them in pieces with their Teeth, (being in the bosom of the Earth) or elfe hale and pull them by force out of their lurking Angles, dark Dungeons, and close Caves; or at the least, through conceived fear, drive them out of their hollow Harbours, infomuch, if they are not taken by Net or otherwise, they are compelled to prepare for flight, and being desirous of the next, though not the fafest refuge, they are oft-times entrapped with Snares and Nets laid over Holes for the same purpose.

Of the Leviner, or Lyemmer.

The Leviner is fingular in Smelling, and in Swiftness incomparable. This is as it were a middle kind between the Harrier and the Grey-hound, as well for his kind, as the frame and shape of his Body. It is called in Latine Levinarius, a Levinare, of lightness, and therefore may well be called a Light-hound. This Dog, for the excellency of his Conditions, namely, Smelling, and swift Running, doth follow the Game with more eagerness, and taketh the Pray with a jolly quickness.

e

1,

le

7(

it de-

r-

of

ey

y

ıg

at

r,

th

or

ng

he

ir

by

10

ot

th

r-

Of

Of the Tumbler.

The word Tumbler undoubtedly had its derivation from the French word Tumbier, which figuifies to Tumble; to which the Latine name agrees, Vertagus, from Vertere to turn, and so they do: for in Hunting they turn and tumble, winding their Bodies about circularly, and then fiercely and violently venturing on the Beasts, do suddenly gripe it at the very entrance or mouth of their Holes or Receptacles, before they can make any recovery of self-security.

This Dog useth another craft and subtilty, namely, when he runneth into a Warren, or setcheth a course about a Coney-borough, he hunts not after them, he no ways affrights them, he shews no spight against them; but dissembling friendship, and pertending favour, passeth by with silence and quietness, marking their Holes diligently, wherein he seldom is deceived. When he cometh to a place where there is a certainty of Coneys, he coucheth down close with his Belly to the ground, provided always by his Skill and Policy that

that the Wind be against him in that Enterprize, and that the Coneys, discover him not where he lurketh; by which means he gets the benefit of the scent of the Coneys, which is carried to him by the Wind and Air, either going to their Holes, or coming out, either passing this way, or running that way; and so ordereth the business by his circumspedion, that the silly Coney is debarred quite from his Hole, (which is the Haven of their hope, and the Harbour of their safety) and fraudulently circumvented and taken before they can get the advantage of their Holes. Thus having caught his Prey, he carrieth it speedily to his Master, waiting his Dogs return in some convenient lurking corner.

These Dogs are somewhat lesser than the Hounds, being lanker, leaner, and somewhat prick-ear?d. By the form and fashion of their Bodies they may be justly called Mungrel-Grey-hounds, if they were somewhat bigger. But notwithstanding they countervail not the Grey-hound in greatness, yet will be take in one days space as many Coneys as shall arise to as big a burthen, and as heavy a load as a Horse can carry: For Crast and Subtilty are the Instruments whereby he maketh this spoil, which pernicious properties supply the places of more commendable qualities.

Let this suffice for a taste: now, after such Dogs as ferve Hunting, will follow such as serve for Hawking and Fowling; among which, the principal and chiefest is the Spaniel, called in Latin Hispaniolus, borrowing his name for Hispania; wherein we English-men, not pronouncing the Aspiration H, nor the Vowel L, for quick-nose and readings of spaces.

ness and readiness of speech, say, Spaniel.

Of the Spaniel.

T Here are two forts of Dogs which necessarily ferve for Fowling. The first findeth Game on the

the Land, the other on the Water. Such as delight on the Land, play their parts either by swiftness of foot, or by often questing, to search out and to spring the Bird for surther hope of reward, or else by some secret sign and privy token, discover the place where they fall. The first kind of such serve the Hawk; the second, the Net or Train. The first kind have no peculiar names assigned them, except they are named after the Bird, which by natural appointment he is allotted to take; for which consideration, some are called Dogs for the Falcon, the Pheasant, the Partridge, and such-like: they are commonly called by one name, viz. Spaniels, as if they originally came from Spain.

The Spaniel, whose service is required in Fowling on the Water, partly through natural inclination, and partly by diligently teaching, is properly called Aquaticus, as Water-Spaniel, because he hath usual recourse to the Water, where all his Game lieth, namely, Water-fowl, which are taken by their help in their

kind.

and

th;

of:

and

her

er-

Glly

the

ty)

ing

ter,

ing

bethe

cal-

ig-

the

ays

en,

his

sof

as

ing

fest

his rock-

ily

on the His fize is fomewhat big, and of a measurable greatness, having long, rough, and curled Heir, which must be clipt in due seoson: for by lessening that supersuity of Hair, thiy become more light and swift, and are less hindred in swimming. Ducks and Drakes are his principal Game; whereupon he is likewise named a Dog for a Duck, because in that quality he is excellent.

Of the White-Hound.

T Hose Hounds which are all of one colour, as all white, are the best Hounds; in like manner those which are spotted with red: but those which are spotted with a dun colour, are of little value, being saintheart-

hearted, and cannot endure much labour. But should they happen to be whelpt coal-black, which is but seldom, they commonly prove incomparable Hounds. But if white Hounds are spotted with black, experience tells us, they are never the best Hare-hunters. White, and black and white, and grey streak'd white, are also the most beautiful.

Of Fallow-Hounds.

They are hardy, and of good scent, keeping well their Chase without change; but not so swift as the white. They are of a strong constitution, and do not fear the Water; running surely, and are very hardy, commonly loving the Hart beyond any other

Chafe.

The best complexion for these Fallow-Hounds, is the lively red, and such as have a white spot in their Forehead, or have a Ring about their Neck: but those which are yellowish, and spotted with black or dun, are of sittle estimation. Those which are well joynted, having good Claws, are sit to make Blood-hounds: and those which have shagged Tails, are generally swift runners. These Hounds are sitter for Princes than private Gentlemen, because they seldom run more then one Chase; neither have they any great stomack to the Hare or other small Chases: and, which is worst of all, they are apt to run at tame Beasts.

Of the Dun-Hound.

These are good of all Chases, and therefore of general use. The best coloured are such as are dun on the Back, having their sour quarters tann'd,

ble

el-

But

ells

nd

he

ell

ft

id

25

ie

h

.

•

or of the complexion of a Hare's Legs: But if the Hair on the Back be black, and their Legs freckled with red and black, they then usually prove excellent Hounds: and indeed there are few dun-coloured to be found bad; the worst of them are such whose Legs are of a whitish colour. It is wonderful, in these creatures, to observe how much they stick upon the knowledge of their Master, especially his Voice, and Horn, and none's esse. Nay, farther, they know the distinct Voices of their Fellows, and do know who are babblers and Liars, and who not; and will sollow the one, and not the other.

Now for Hounds, the West-country, Cheshire, and Lancashire, with other Wood-land and Mountainous Countries, breed our Slow-hounds; which is a large great Dog, tall and heavy. Worcester-shire, Bedford-shire, and many well-mixt foils, where the Champaign and Covert are of equal largeness, produce a middle-sized Dog, of a more nimble composure than the former. Lastly, the North-parts, as York-Shire, Cumberland, Northumberland, and many other plain Champaign Countries, breed the Light, Nimble, Swift, Slender, Fleet Hound. After all these, the little Beagle is attributed to our Country; this is that Hound, which in Latine is called Canis Agasaus, or the Gaze-hound. Besides our Mastiff, which seems to be an Indigena, or Native of England; we train up most excellent Grey - hounds (which feem to have been brought hither by the Galls) in our open Champaigns. All these Dogs have deserved to be famous in adjacent and remote Countries, whither they are fent for great rarities, and ambitiously fought for by their Lords and Princes; although only the fighting Dogs feem to have been known to the antient Authors; and perhaps in that Age Hunting was not fo much cultivated by our own Countrymen.

The marks of a good and fair Hound.

His Head ought to be of a middle propertion, rather long than round; his Nostrils wide; his Ears large; his Back bowed; the Fillets great; the Haunches large; the Thighs well trussed; the Ham straight; the Tail big near the Reins, and the rest slender to the end; the Leg big; the Soal of the Foot dry, and formed like a Fox's, with the Claws great.

Of the Election of a Dog and Bitch for good Whelps.

Your Bitch must come of a good kind, being strong and well proportioned in all parts, having her Ribs and Flanks great and large. Let the Dog that lines her be of a good fair breed; and let him be young, if you intend to have light and hot Hounds: For if the Dog be old, the Whelps will participate of his Dull and

heavy nature.

If your Bitch grow not naturally Proud so soon as you would have, you may make her so, by taking two heads of Garlick, half a Castor's Stone, the juice of Cresses, and about twelve Spanish Flies, or Cantharides: boil these together in a Pipkin which holds a pint, with some Mutton, and make Broth thereof; and of this give to the Bitch twice or thrice, and she will infallibly grow proud. The same Pottage given to the Dog, will make him desirous of copulation.

When your Bitch is lined, and with Puppy, you must not let her hunt, for that will be the way to make her cast her Whelps; but let her unconfined walk up and down in the House and Court, and never lock her up in her Kennel; for she is then impatient of food; and therefore you must make her some hot Broth once a day.

If you would spay your Bitch, in must be done before she ever had Litter of Whelps: And in spaying her, take not away all the Roots or Strings of the Veins;

Veins; for if you do, it will much prejudice her Reins, and binder her fwiftness ever after: But by leaving fome behind, it will make her much the stronger and more hardy. Whatever you do, spay her not when she is proud; for that will endanger her life: But you may do it fifteen days after. But the best time of all is, when the Whelps are shaped within her.

How to enter young Hounds to Hunt the Hart; and what Quarries and Rewards you shall give them.

Having first taught your Hounds to know your Hallow, and the found of your Horn, then, about eighteen months old, you must lead them once a Week into the

fields, and not oftner.

her

ze;

ge

the

cea

l

ngi

Ribs

nes

, if

the

and

oon

gniz

uice

tha-

is a

and

l in-

the

mult

her

and

r up

and

day.

e be-

ying

the

ins

The best manner to teach your Hounds, is to take a live Hare, and trail her after you upon the Earth, now one way, now another; and fo, having drawn it a convenient space, hide it in the Earth: afterward set forth your Hound near the trail, who taking Wind, runneth to and fro near the Woods, Fields, Pastures, Path-ways, and Hedges, until he find which way the Hare is gone; but with a foft and gentle pace, until at length coming near the lodged Hare, he mendeth his pace, and bestirreth himself more speedily, leaping on his Prey, and killing it, loadeth himself with his conquest, and bringing it to his Master with Triumph, he must receive both Dog and it with all tokens of love into his Bosom.

When you hunt, let your Hart be in prime of greafe, for then he is heavier than in April or May, and cannot

stand up so long.

Then chuse your Forest wherein the Relays are of equal proportion: then place all your young Hounds with five or fix old to enter them; and then lead them to the farthest and last Relay, and cause the Hart to be

hunted unto them. Being come up, uncouple your old Hounds, and having found the Track of the Hart, being well entred in cry, uncouple likewife your young Hounds: and if you find any of them lag behind, you must beat or whip them forward.

In what place soever you kill the Hart, immediately flay his Neck, and reward your Hounds: for it is best

whilst it is hot so to do.

There are feveral ways of entring Hounds. As first, by taking a Hart in Nets, and after you have cut of one of his Feet, let him go: a quarter of an hour after, assemble your young Hounds; and having found out the View or Slot of the Hart or Buck by your Bloodhounds, uncouple your young Hounds, and let them hunt. Secondly, you may bring them to quarry, by taking half a dozen Huntsmen, swift of foot, each whereof shall have two couple to lead in Liams; and having unlodg'd the Hart, purfue him fair and foftly, fo that you tire not too much your young Hounds After the Hart hath ran two or three hours, and that you find he begins to fink, you may then cast off your young Hounds: But beware it be not when he is at Bay, and his Head full fummed; for so you may endanger the lives of your Hounds.

But the best way of entring Hounds is at the Hare, for thereby they will learn all Doubles and Turns, better know the Hallow, will be more tender nosed, and beter scented, by using the beaten ways and Champion

grounds.

Here note, that with whatsoever you first enter you Hounds, and therewith reward them, they will ever after lawe that most. Wherefore, if you intend them for the Hart, enter them not first with the Hinde. And so the better hunting the Hart, enter not your young Hounds within a Toil; for there a Hart doth nothing but turn and cast about, since he cannot run end-long, and so they are always in sight of him. If then afterwards you should run him at force out of a Toil, and at length, and

out of fight, you will find the Hounds to give him over quickly.

Lastly, enter not your Hounds nor teach them in the Morning; for if so, you will find them apt to give o-

ver in the heat of the day.

r old

eing

ands:

beat

ately

first,

t off

bnue

ood-

hem

, by

each

and

ftly,

inds.

that

your

s at

en-

are;

etter

bet

pion

TOUT

raf

1 for

fot

oung

hing

bas,

YOU

and

out

Of Courfing with Grey-Hounds.

Need not declare the Excellencies which are contained in the noble and worthy Exercise of Courfing with Grey-hounds, since it is so well known to all Gentlemen who take delight in this pleasant and healthy Pastime: I shall therefore only insist upon the breed of Grey-hounds, their Shape, their Diet, and the Laws belonging to the same, according as they were commanded, allowed, and subscribed by the Duke of Norfolk, in the Reign of Queen Elizatith.

First, for the Breeding of Grey-hounds, in this you must have respect to the Country, which should be Champain, Plain, or high Downs. The best Valleys re those of Belvoir, White-horse, and Evesholm, or any ther where there are no Coverts, so that a Hare may tand forth and endure a Course of two or three miles: s for high Downs or Heaths, the best are about Marl. wough, Salisbury, Cirencester, and Lincoln.

Though these places are very commodious for the reeding and training up of Grey-bounds; yet, in my pinion, the middle, or most part arable grounds are he best: and yet those Gentlemen who dwell on howns or plain grounds, to keep up the reputation f their own Dogs, affirm, that they are more nimble and cunning in turning than the Vale-Dogs are: and Mr. Markham confesseth that he hath seen a lake-Dog so much deceived, that upon a turn he hath of more ground than hath been recoverable in the whole

whole Course after: however, with a little care, in a fhort time this errour may be rectified; and then you will experimentally find The good Dogs upon the Dem

will ever beat the good Dogs upon the Plains.

It is a received opinion, that the Grey hound. Bitch wil beat the Grey-hound-Dog, by reason she excelleth himin nimbleness: but if you consider that the Dog is longer and stronger, you must look upon that opinion no more than as a vulgar errour.

Here note, as to the breeding of your Grey hounds, that the best Dog upon an indifferent Bitch, will not get fo good a Whelp as an indifferent Dog upon the

best Bitch.

Observe this in general as to breeding, let your Dog and litches, as near as you can, be of an equal age, no exceeding four years old: however, to breed with young Dog and an old Bitch, may be the means of producing excellent Whelps, the goodness whereof you stall

know by their Shapes in this number.

If they are raw-bon'd, lean, loofe-made, fickle a crooked-hough'd, and generally unknit in every Mem ber; these are the proper marks of excellent shape at goodness: but if after three or four months they appear round and close-trust, fat, straight, and as it were fi fummed and knit in every Member, they never prov

good, swift, nor comely.

The goodness of shape in a Grey bound after a year and a half old, is this: His Head must be lean and long with a sharp Nose, rush-grown from the Eye down ward; a full clear Eye, with long Eye-lids; a that Ear, fhort and close falling; a long Neck a little beat ing, with a loofe hanging Weafand; a broad Break straight Fore-legs, hollow Side, straight Ribs; a squa flat Back, short and strong Fillers, a broad space between the Hips, a strong Stern or Tail, a round Foot, a good large Clefts.

The Dieting of Grey-hounds confifts in these to things : Food, Exercise, Airing, and Kennelling.

Food of a Grey-hound is two fold: general, that is, the maintaining of a Dog in good bodily condition; and particular, when the Dog is dieted for a Wager, or it may be for some Distemper he is afflicted with.

A Grey hound's general Food ought to be Chippings, Crusts of Bread, fost Bones and Griftles. Your Chippings ought to be scalded in Beef, Mutton, Veal or Venison-Broth; and when it is indifferent cool, then make your Bread only float with good Milk, and give it your Grey-hounds Morning and Evening; and this

will keep them in good state of body.

But if your Dog be poor, fickly, and weak, then take Sheeps-heads, Wool and all, clean wash'd, and having broken them to pieces, put them into a Pot; and when it boils, foum the Pot, and put therein good store of Oatmeal, and fuch Herbs as Pottage is usually made of; boil these till the Flesh be very tender: Then with the Meat and Broth feed your Dogs Mornning and E-

vening, and it will recover them.

If you design your Grey-hound for a Wager, then give him this Diet-bread: Take half a peck of the finest and drieft Ote-meal, and a peck of good Wheat, having ground them together, boult the Meal, and scattering an indifferent quantity of Liquorish and Anniseeds well beaten together; knead it up with the Whites of Eggs, new Ale and Barm mix'd together, and bake it in small Loaves indifferent hard; then take it and foak it in Beef or any of the aforefaid Broaths; and half an hour after Sun-rising, and half an hour before its ferting, having first walkt and air'd your Grey-hound, give it him to eat. not only increase his strength, but enlarge his Wind.

Having thus spoken of a Grey-hound's Feeding, either generally or particularly, either for keeping him in health, or restoring it when it is lost, I shall in the next place proceed to his Exercise; and this likewise confists in two things, that is, Coursing, and

Airing.

in a

YOU Deeps

wil

imig

nger

more

unds.

not

n the

Dog

, not

vith

pro

a fhal

le a

Mem

e an

ppea

re fi

pro

yes

long

low

than

ben

Break

fqua

CWed

t, at

Foo

If he kill, suffer him not to break the Hare, but take her from him; and having cleans'd his Chaps from the Wool of the Hare, then give him the Liver, Lights, and Heart, and so take him up in your Leash; and having led him home, wash his Feet with some Butter and Beer, and then put him into the Kennel, and feed him half an hour afterwards.

Upon your Grey-hounds Coursing-days, give him in the Morning before you air him, a Toast and Butter or Oyl, and nothing else; then Kennel him till he go to his Course.

The season of Kennelling your Grey bounds is this, because it breeds in Dogs Lust, Spirit, and Nimbleness, besides, it prevents several dangerous Casualties, and keeps the Pores from spending till time of necessity: and therefore do not permit your Dog to stir out of the Kennel but in the hours of Feeding, Walking, Coursing, or other necessary business.

The Laws of the Leash or Coursing.

Though the Laws of Coursing may alter according to some mens swaying Fancies; yet these, subscribed by the chief of the Gentry, were ever held authentical. Take them thus in order, according to my collection out of Mr. Markham.

First, it was ordered, that he who was chosen Fenterer, or Letter-loose of the Grey-hounds, should receive the Grey-hounds Match to run together into his Least as soon as he came into the Field, and follow next to

the Hare-finder till he came unto the Form: and no Horse-man or Foot-man, on pain of disgrace, to go before him, or on any side, but directly behind, the space of forty yards or thereabouts.

2. That not above one Brace of Grey-hounds do

course a Hare at one instant.

3. That the Hare-finder should give the Hare three Soboe's before he put her from her Lear, to make the Grey-hounds gaze and attend her rising.

4. That the Pewserer shall give twelve-score Law ere he loose the Grey-hounds, except it be in danger of losing

fight.

veek.

ood,

ecute

re al

long

s ut.

f his

but

haps

ver,

afh;

ome

and

n in

10 1

his

his,

efs:

and

and

en-

ing,

of-

ıb-

-01

my

.

ve

Á

to

he

5. That Dog that give the first Turn, if after the Turn be given there be neither Coat, Slip, nor Wrench extraordinary; I say, he which gave the first Turn shall be held to win the Wager.

6. If one Dog give the first Turn, and the other bear the Hare, then he which bore the Hare shall

WID.

7. If one give both the first and last Turn, and no other advantage beween them, the odde Turn shall win the Wager.

8. That a Coat shall be more then two Turns, and a So-by, or the Bearing of the Hare equal with two

Turns.

9. If neither Dog turn the Hare, then he which leadeth last at the Covert shall be held to win the Wager.

turn her again, those two Turns shall be as much as a

Coat.

the Have shall win only; and if she he not born, the

Course must be adjudged dead.

12. If he which comes first in to the death of the Hare takes her up, and saves her from breaking, cherishing the Dogs, and cleanseth their Mouths from the Wool, or other filth of the Hare, for such courtesse

D 4 do

done, he shall in right challenge the Hare: But not doing it, he shall have no Right, Priviledge, or Title therein.

13. If any Dog shall take a fall in the Course, and yet perform his part, he shall challenge the advantage

of a Turn more than he giveth.

14. If one Dog turn the Hare, serve himself, and give divers Coats, yet in the end stand still in the field, the other Dog, without Turn giving, running home to the Covert; that Dog which stood still in the field shall

be adjudged to lose the Wager.

ry. If any man should ride over a Dog, and overthrow him in his Course, (though the Dog were the worse Dog in opinion, yet) the party for the offence shall either receive the disgrace of the Field, or pay the Wager; for between the Parties it shall be adjudsed to Course.

16. Lastly, those which are chosen Judges of the Leasth shall give their judgments presently before they depart from the Field, or else he in whose default it lieth shall pay the Wager by a general Voice and Sentence.

Here note, that it lieth in the power of him that hath the Office of the Leash conferred on him, to make Laws according to the Customs of Countries, and the Rule of Reason.

Of the Stiles of hunting different from the English both Antique and Foreign.

The Hunting used by the Antients was much like that way which is at present taken with the Rain-Deer, which is seldom hunted at force or with Hounds, but only drawn after with a Blood-hound, and forestall'd with Nets and Engines. So did they with all Beasts, and therefore a Dog is never commended

do-

ere-

and tage

and

eld,

fhall

ver-

the

the !

d no

the

they

lt it

Sen-

hath

aws.

leof

gli

like

the

with

und,

they

nended ded by them for opening, before he hath by figns discovered where the Beasts lieth in his Layre, as by their drawing stiff our Harbourers are brought to give right judgment. Therefore I do not find that they were curious in the Musick of their Hounds, or in a composition of their Kenel or Pack, either for deepness, or loudness, or sweeteness of cry like to ours. Their Huntsmen were accustomed to shout and make a great noise, as Virgil observes in the third of his Georgick:

Ingentem clamore premes ad retia Cervum.

So that it was only with that confusion to bring the Deer to the Nets laid for him.

But we comfort our Hounds with loud and courageous Cries and noises, both of Voice and Horn, that they may follow over the same way that they saw the

Hart pals, without croffing or coafting.

The Sicilian way of Hunting was this: when the Nobles or Gentry were informed which way a Herd of Deer passed, giving notice to one another, they appointed a meeting, and every one brought with him a Cross-bow, or a Long bow, and a bundle of Staves. These Staves had an Iron-spike at the bottom, and their Head is bored, with a Cord drawn through all of them; their length is about four foot: Being thus provided, they come to the Herd, and there casting themselves about into a large Ring, they surround the Deer; and then every one of them receives apeculiar stand, and there, unbinding his Faggot, ties the end of his Cord to the other who is fet in the next station; then to support it, sticks into the ground each Staff, about the distance of ten foot one from the other. Then they take out Feathers, which they bring with them, dyed in Crimfon for this very purpose, and fafined upon a Thred which is tied to the Cord, fo that with the least breath of wind they are whirled round about

bout. Those which keep the several Stands, withdraw and hide themselves in the next Covert. After this, the chief Ranger enters within the Line, taking with him only fuch Hounds which draw after the Herd; and coming near with their cry, rouze them: Upon which the Deer fly till they come towards the Line. where they turn off towards the left, and ftill gazing upon the shaking and shining Feathers, wander about them as if they were kept in with a wall or Pale. The chief Ranger pursues, and calling to every one by name, as he passeth bp their Stand, cries to them, that they shoot the first, third, or fixth, as he shall please. and if any of them miss, and single out any other than that which was affigned by the Ranger, it is counted a differace to him: by which means, as they pass by the feveral Stations, the whole Herd is killed by feveral hands. This Relation is of undoubted truth, as you may find it in Pierine his Hieroglyphicks, Lib. 7. Chap. 6.

Boar-hunting is very usual in France, and they call it Sanglier. In this fort of Hunting the way is to use furious terrible Sounds and Noises, as well of Voice as Horn, to make the Chase turn and fly; because they are slow, and trust to their Tusks and defence: which is Agere Aprum, to bait the Boar. Yet this must be done after his Den or Hold is discovered, and the

Nets be pitched.

The Huntsmen give judgement of the Wild-Boar by the print of his Foot, by his Rooting: A wild Swine roots deeper than our ordinary Hogs, because their Snouts are longer; and when he comes into a Cornfield, (as the Caledonian-Boar in Ovid) turns up one continued Furrow, not as our Hogs, routing here and there; and then by his foil he foils and wallows him in the myre: These are his Volutabra Silvestria, where his greatness is measured out; then coming forth, he rubs against some Tree, which marks his height; as also when he sticks his Tusk into it, that shews the greatness

ness thereof. They observe the bigness of his Lesses, and the depth of his Den; where note, that they call

his Dung by the name of Leffes.

raw

his,

vith

rd;

pon

ine,

ing

out

The

by

hat

ife;

han

ted

by

ral

you

ap.

call

to

ice

ufe

ce:

uft

the

by

ine

cir

rn-

one

ind

in

his

abs

lfo

atess Whenfoever the Bom is hunted and stands at Bay, the Huntsmen ride in, and with Swords and Spears striking on that side which is from their Horses, wound or kill him. This is in the French Hunting: but the antient Romans standing on foot, or setting their Knees to the ground, and charging directly with their Spear, did Opponere ferrum, and Excipere Aprum: for such is the nature of a Boar, that he spits himself with sury, running upon the Weapon to come at his Adversary; and so, seeking his revenge, he meets with his own destruction.

Though these Wild-Boars are frequent in France, we have none in England; yet it may be supposed that here-tosore we had, and did not think it convenient to preferve that Game: For our old Authors of Hunting reckon them amongst the Beasts of Venery; and we have the proper terms belonging to them, as you may find them at the begining of the Book. Of Boarhunting you will read more hereafter.

There are no Roe-Deer in England; but there are plenty of them in Scotland, as Sir James Lindfay an old

Scottifb Writer testifies.

Yet it may be thought that they have been more common in England, because our antient Huntsmen acknowledge the proper terms for this Chase; and in the first place we have distinct Ages for these Dorces, which you shall find in the Terms aforesaid. They make good Chase, stand long, and sly end-way. Compellere Dorces, is to force the Bevy, and to drive them into the Toyls.

Although we have no Wolves in England at this present, yet it is certain that heretofore we had Routs of them, as they have to this very day in Ireland; and in that Country are bred a race of Grey-hounds, (which are commonly called Wolf-Dogs) which are

itrong,

strong, seet, and bear a natural enmity to the Wolf. Now in these the Grey-hounds of that Nation, there is an incredible force and boldness, so that they are in great estimation, and much sought after in forein parts, so that the King of Poland makes use of them in his hunting of great Beasts by force. Wherefore it may well be intended of the great serceness which these Dogs have in assaulting, that when the Romans saw them play, they thought them so wonderful violent, as that they must needs have been Forreis caveis adveits,

brought up in Iron Dens.

In Poland when the King hunts, his fervants are wont to furround a Wood, though a Mile in compass, with Toyls which are pitched on firm Stakes. This being done, the whole town, all Sexes and Ages promiscuously rush into the Inclosure, and with their loud shouts rear all the Beasts within that Wood; which making forth, are intercepted in the Nets. There small and great Beasts are intangled together, after the same manner as when amongst us we draw a Net over a Pond, and after beating it all over with Poles, we bring out not only Pike and Carp, but leffer Fry fo they inclose at once Deer, Boar, Roe-Buck, and Hare: For so they order their Nets, that the space of those Meshes which are twisted with greater Cords, for the entangling of greater Beafts, that space, I say, is made up with smaller Whip-cord, for the catching smaller Prev.

He hath a great race of English Mastiss, which in that Country retain their generosity, and are brought up to play upon greater Beasts. It is not counted amongst them disagreeable to the Laws of the Chase, to use Guns. I shall now proceed to the manner of English-Hunting both antient and modern, according to the best information I could gather either out of of Books, experienced Huntsmen, and my own pra-

Clice.

Of Hart-Hunting.

Volf.

reat fo

his

may

hefe

as

ecti,

are

pafs.

Fhis

Ages heir

hich

the

Net

ry;

are:

nose

the

ller

in

ght

1 2-

to

of ing

of

ra-

A Hart can naturally swim a great way; insomuch that I have heard of some so fore hunted in Forests near the Sea, that they have plung'd into it, and have been killed by Fisher-men a dozen miles from land.

It is reported of them when they go to Rut, and must for that purpose cross some great River or Arm of the Sea, they allemble in great Herds, the strongest goes in first, and the next of strength follows him, and so one after the other, relieving themselves by staying their Heads on the Buttocks of each other.

The Hind commonly carries her Calf eight or nine months, which usually falls in May, although some alter: Some of them have two at once, eating the Skin up wherein the Calf did lie.

As the Calf grows up, fhe teacheth it to run, leap, and the way it must keep to defend it felf from the Hounds.

Harts and Hinds are very long-liv'd, living commonly an hundred years and upwards.

The nature of a Hart.

The Hart is strangely amazed when he hears any one call, or whistle in his Fist; For trial of which, some seeing a Hart in the Plain in motion, have called after him, saying, Ware, Ware, or Take heed; and therenpon have seen him instantly turn back, making some little stand. He heareth very perfectly when his Head and Ears are erected; but heareth impersectly when he holdeth them down. When he is on foot, and not assaid, he wonders at every thing he seeth, and taketh pleasure to gaze at them.

They

They bear fometimes few, and sometimes more Croches; and that is the reason that many men have erred in their judgments as to their age.

Harts as bred in most Countries; but the Antients do prefer those of Britain before all others, where they

are of divers colours.

These do excel all others in the beauty of Horns: which are very high, yet do not grow to their Bones or Scalps, but to their Skin, branching forth into many Spears, being folid throughout, and as hard as Stones, and fall off once a year: But if they remain abroad in the Aff, and that thereby they are fometimes wet and dry, they grow as light as any vanishing or other substance, as I have proved by experience, finding some which have been lost by them in the Woods; wherefore I gather, that they are of an earthly fubstance, concrete, and hardned with a strong heat, made like unto Bones. They lofe thefe Horns every year in the Spring. At one year old they have nothing but Bunches, that are small significators of Horns to come: At two years they appear more perfectly, but ftraight and simple: At three years they grow into two Spears: At four, into three; and so increase every year in their Branches till they be fix; and above that time their age is not certainly to be discerned by their Head.

Having lost their Horns in the day-time, they hide themselves, inhabiting the shades, to avoid the annoyance of Flies, and feed, during that time only, in the night. Their new Horns come out at first like Bunches, and afterwards (as I said before) by the increase of the Sun's heat they grow more hard, covered with a rough Skin, which is called a Velvetbead; and as that Skin drieth, they daily try the strength of their new Heads upon Trees; which not only scrapeth off the roughness, but by the pain they feel thus rubbing them, they are taught how long to forbear the company of their fellows: for at last, when in their

cha-

chasing and fretting of their new Horn against the Tree they can seel no longer pain and smart in them, they take it for high time to forsake their solitary dwellings, and return again to their sormer condition.

ore

ave

nts

ney

is;

na-

as

es or

d-

5;

bde

ar

ng

to

ut

VO

ar

ir

y

y,

y I,

h

y

IS

e

The reason why Harts and Deers do lose their Horns yearly, are these: First, because of the matter whereof they confift; for it is dry and earthy, like the substance of green Leaves which have an yearly fall, likewife, wanting glewing or holding moisture to continue them, wherefore the Horn of a Hart cannot be bent. Secondly, from the place they grow upon; for they are not rooted upon the Skull, but only Thirdly from the efficient cause: within the Skin. for they are hardned both with the heat of Summer, and cold of Winter; by means whereof the Pores to receive their nourishing Liquor are utterly shut up and flopped, so as of necessity their native heat dieth; which falleth not out in other Beafts, whose Horns are for the most part hollow, and fitted for longer continuance; but these are of lesser, and the new Bunches fwelling up towards the Spring, do thrust off the old Horns, having the affiftance of Boughs of Trees, weight of the Horns, or by the willing excussion of the Beast that beareth them.

It is observed, that when a Hart pricketh up his Ears, he windeth sharp, very far, and sure, and discovereth all treachery against him; but if they hang down and wag, he perceiveth no danger. By their Teeth is their Age discerned, and they have four on both sides wherewith they grind their meat, besides two other, much greater in the Male than in the Female. All these Beasts have Worms in there Head underneath their Tongue, in a hollow place where the Neck-bone is joyned to the Head, which are no bigger than Flie-blows. His Blood is not like other Beasts, for it hath no Fibres in it, and therefore it is hardly congealed. His heart is very great, and so

are all those of fearful Beasts, having in it a Bone sike a Cross. He hath no Gall, and that is one of the causes of the length of his life; and therefore are his Bowels so bitter, that the Dogs will not touch them unless they be very fat. The Genital-part is all nervy; the Tail small; and the Hind hath Udders betwixt her Thighs, with four Speans like Cow. These are above all other four-sooted Beasts, both ingenious and fearful, who although they have large Horns, yet their desence against other four-sooted Beasts.

is to run away.

And now if you will credit Gefner as a Huntiman. pray here observe what account he gives of Hunting the Hart : This wild deceitful and subtile Beaft (fais he) by windings and turnings does often deceive in Hunter, as the Harts of Meandros flying from the terrible cry of Diana's Hounds. Wherefore the prudent Hunter must frame his Dogs as Pythagoras did his Scholars, with words of Art to fet them on, and take them off again at his pleasure; wherefore he mult first of all compass in the Beast (en fon gifte) in her own Layr, and fo unharbour her in the view of the Dogs. that fo they may never lose her Slot or Footing: neither must he set upon every one, either of the Herd or those that wander folitary alone, or a little one; but partly by fight, and partly by their Footing and Fumets, judge of their Game; also he must observe the largeness of his Layr. Being thus informed, then Discouples les chiens, take off your Dog-Couplings; and some on Horse-back, others on foot, follow the Cry with greatest art, observation and speed, remembring and preventing (cer fruze) the subtile turnings and headings of the Hart; standing with all dexterity to leap Hedge, Pale, Ditch, nay Rocks; neither fearing Thorns, down Hills, nor Woods, but providing fresh Horse if the first tire, follow the largest Head of the whole Herd, which you must endeavour to fingle out of the Chase; which the Dogs perceiving mult

must follow, taking for a prohibition to follow any o-

Sone

e of

are

ouch

s all

ders

low.

ooth

arge

afts

man,

ting

fais

iti :

ter-

dent

his

take

nult

OWI

ogs

nei-

Terd

one:

and

erve

then

ngs;

the

nem-

nings

erity

ring

fresh

d of

to

ving

must

The Dogs are animated by the winding of Horns, and voices of the Huntsmen, like Souldiers to the battel, by the noise of Trumpets and other Warlike Instruments. But sometimes the crastry great beast sendeth forth his little Squire to be facrificed to the Dogs and Huntsmen, instead of himself; lying close in the mean time: Then must a Retreat be sounded, and (rompre lichiens) the Dogs be broken off, and taken in (le Limer) that is, Leame again, until they be brought to the fairer Game; who ariseth in fear, yet still striveth

by flight, until he be wearied and breathless.

The Nobles call this beast (Cerf sage) a wife Hart, who, to avoid all his Enemies, tunneth into the greatest Herds, and so bringeth a Cloud of errour on the Dogs, to keep them from further profecution; fometimes also beating some of the Herd into his Footings, that so he may the more easily escape, and procure a Labyrinth to the Dogs; after which he betaketh himself to his Heels again, running still with the Wind, not only for refrigeration, but because he may the more easily hear the voice of his pursuers, whether they be far or near. At last, being for all this found out again by the observance of the Hunters, and slilful Scent of the Dogs, he flieth into the Herds of Cattel; as Cows, Sheep, &c. leaping on an Ox or Cow, laying the foreparts of his body thereon, that fo touching the Earth only with his hinder feet, to leave a very fmall or no fcent at all behind for the Hounds to difcern.

The chief Huntsman to Lewis the Twelsth, (called the Grand Venieur) affirmeth, that on a time, they having a Hart in chase, suddenly the Hounds were at a fault, so as the Game was out of sight, and not a Dog would once stir his soot; whereat the Hunters were all amaz'd; at last, by casting about, (as it is usual in such cases) they sound the fraud of the crasty Beast, which is worth the memory.

There

There was a great White-thorn, which grew in a shadowy place as high as a Tree, and was environed with other small Shrubs about it; nito the which the faid Harr leaped, and there stood aloft the Boughs spreading from one another, and there remained till he was thrust through by a Huntsman, rather than he would yield to the angry and greedy Hounds. Yet their manner is, when they fee themselves every where intercepted, to make force at him with their Horns who first comes unto him, except prevented by Sword or Spear; which being done, the Hunter with his Horn windeth the fall of the Beast, and then every one approacheth, luring with triumph for fuch a Conquest, of whom the skilfullest openeth the Beast, rewarding the Hounds with what properly belongeth unto them for their future encouragement; and for that purpose the Huntsmert dip Bread in the Skin and Blood of the Beaft, to give unto the Hounds their full fatisfaction.

Veloces Sparta catulos, acremq; Mollossum Pasce fero pingui, &c.

Much more might be faid of this prefent subject, which is not proper in this place; wherefore I shall refer you to what followeth, and your own experience.

Of the Rut of Harts.

The time of their Rutting is about the midst of September, and continues two Months; the older they are, the hotter, and the better beloved by the Hinds; and therefore they go to Rut before the young ones; and being very fiery, will not suffer any of them to come near the Hinds till they have satisfied their Venery. But the young ones are even with the old; for when they perceive the old are grown weak by excess

excess of Rutting, the young will frequently attack them, and make them quit the place, that they may be Masters of the Sport.

They are easily kill'd in Rutting-time; for they follow the scent of the Hinds with such greedines, laying their Noses to the ground, that they mind that solely,

and nothing elfe.

in a

oned

e faid

prea-

ll he

n he

Yet

here

lorns

word

1 his

very

Con-

vard-

un-

l for

and

r full

ect,

fhall

pe-

Sep-

are,

ds;

to

eir

They are such great lovers of the Sport, it is very dangerous for any Man to come near them at this season, for then they will make at any living Creature of different kind.

In fome places, in Ottober their Luft arifeth, and also in May; and then, whereas atother times the Males live apart from the Females, they go about like lascivious Lovers, seeking the company of their Females, as it were

at the Market of Venus.

The Males in their raging defired Lust have a peculiar noise, which the French call Reere. One Male will cover a many females, continuing in this carnal appetite a Month or two. The Females are chafte, and unwilling to admit of Copulation, by reason of the rigour of the Male's Genital; and therefore they fink down on their buttocks, when they begin to feel his Seed, as it hath been often observed in tame Harts; and if they can, the Females run away, the Males striving to hold them back within their fore-Feet. It cannot be well faid, that they are covered standing, lying, or going, out rather running; for fo are they filled with greatest leverity. When one Month or fix Weeks is over of their Rutting, they grow tamer by much, and laying afide all fierceness, they return to their folitary places, digging every one by himself a several Hole or Ditch, wherein they lie, to allwage the strong favour of their Lust; for they stink like Goats, and their face beginneth to look blacker than at other times: and in those places they live till some Showers distil from the Clouds; after which, they return to their Pasture again, living in locks as before.

E 2

The

ld; by ess The Female, thus filled, never keepeth company a gain with the Male until she is delivered of her butthen, which is eight Months; and but one at a time, seldom two, which she lodgeth cunningly in some Covert: If she perceive them stubborn and wild, she will beat them with her feet till they lie close and quiet.

Oftentimes the leadeth forth her young, teaching a to run and leap over bushes, stones, and small shrubs, and so continueth all the Summer long, while their own

strength is most considerable.

It is very pleafant to observe them when they go b Rut, and make their Vaut: For when they smell the Hind, they raise their Nose up into the Air, looking aloft, as though they gave thanks to the God of N ture, who gave them fo great delight and pleafun And if it be a great Hart, he will turn his Head an look about to fee whether there be none near to interrupt or spoil his sport. Hereat the young fly away for fear: but if there be any of equal bigness, they the ftrive which shall Vaut first; and in the opposing ear other, they scrape the ground with their feet, shockin and butting each other fo furiously, that you ha hear the noise they make with their Horns a good h mile, fo long, till one of them is Victor. The His beholding this Pastime, never stirs from her Ration, pecting, as it were, the Vauting of him who hath the M ftery; and having got it, he bellows, and then instant covers her.

During the time of their Rut, they eat but very little for they feed only on what they fee before them, mining more the track of the *Hinds*. Their chief Meat the red Mushrom, which helps them to evacuate the Greafe: they are then extraordinary hot, infomuch the tevery where as they pass and find Waters, they tumb

and lie therein.

The time of Harts Mewing, Casting the Head.

any a

time.

fome

wild,

e and

ing k

rubs:

F OW

go to

okin

of Na

afun

id an

inter

ay for

7 the

g ead

ockin

u fhe

d h

Hin

ne Ma

little

min

1eat

e tha

ch th

tumb

The old Hart casteth his Head sooner than the young: and the time is about the months of February and March.

Here note, that if you geld an Hart before he hath an Head, he will never bear any; and if you geld him when he hath it, he will never after Mew or cast it: And so, if you geld him when he hath a Velvethead, it will ever be so, without fraying or burnishing.

Having cast their Heads, they instantly withdraw unto the Thickets, hiding themselves in such convenient places where they may have good Water, and strong feeding, near some ground where Wheat or Pease is sown: But young Harrs do never betake themselves to the Thickets till they have born their third Head, which is in the fourth year.

After they have Mewed, they will begin to Button in March and April; and as the Sun grows strong, and the season of the year puts forward the Crop of the Earth, so will their Heads increase in all respects. So that in the midst of June their Heads will be summed as much as they will bear all the year.

Of the Coats and Colour of Harts,

The Coats of Harts are of three fundry forts Brown, Red, and Fallow; and of every of these Coats there proceeds two sorts of Harts, the one are great, the other little.

Of brown Harts, there are fome great, long, and hairy, bearing a high Head, red of colour, and well beam'd, who will stand before Hounds very long, being longer of breath, and swifter of foot than those of a shorter stature.

E 3

There

There are another fort of brown Harts, which are little, short, and well-set, bearing commonly a black Main, and are fatter and better Venison than the former, by reason of their better feeding in young

Copfes.

They are very crafty, especially when in grease; and will be hardly found, because they know they are then most enquired after: besides, they are very sensible they cannot then stand long before the Hounds. If they be old, and feed in good ground, then are their Heads black, fair, and well branched, and commonly palmed at the top.

The Fallow-Harts bear their Heads high, and of a whitish colour, their Beams small, their Antliers long, slender, and ill-grown, having neither Heart, Courage, nor Force. But those which are of a lively Red-fallow, having a black or brown List down the ridge of the back, are strong, bearing fair and high Heads, well furnished

and beam'd.

Of the Heads and Branches of Harts, and their diversities.

As there are several sorts of Harts, so have they their Heads in a divers fort and manner, according to their Age, Country, Rest, and Feeding. Here note, that they bear not their first Head, which we call Broches, and in a Fallew-Deer Pricks, until they enter the second Year of their Age. In the third Year they bear four, six, or eight small Branches: At the fourth, they bear eight or ten: At the sisth, ten or twelve: At six, sourteen or sixteen: And at the seventh year they bear their Heads beam'd, branched, and summed with as much as ever they will bear, and do never multiply but in greatness only.

How to know an old Hart by the Slot, Entries, Abatures, and Foils, Fewmets, Gate and Walks, Fraying-Stocks, Head and Branches.

I shall proceed in order, and first of the Slot. You must carefully look on the Treadings of the Harr's Foot: If you find the Treadings of two, the one long, the other round, yet both of one bigness; yet shall the long Slot declare the Harr to be much larger than the round.

Moreover, the old Hart's hind-foot doth never over-

reach the fore-foot; the young ones doth.

But above all, take this Observation: When you are in the Wood, and have found the Slot of a Hart, mark what manner of Footing it is, whether worn, or starp; and accordingly observe the Country, and thereby judge whether either may be occasion'd thereby. For Harts bred in Mountains and stony Countries, have their Toes and sides of their Feet worn, by reason of their continual climbing and resting themselves thereon, and not on the Heel: Whereas in other places they stay themselves more on the Heel than Toes: For in soft or sandy ground, they slip upon the Heel, by reason of their weight; and thus by frequent staying themselves thereon, it makes the Heel grow broader and greater. And thus you may know the age of a Hart by his Slot or Treading.

The next thing to be considered, is the Fewmishing; and this is to be judged of in April or May. If the Fewmets be great, large, and thick, they signifie the Hart to

be old.

h are

black

for-

oung

and

then

they

y be

lack,

of a

ong,

age,

OW,

ack,

fhed

ties.

heir

heir

hat

nes,

ond our,

ear

ur-

ear

25

but

OP

In the midst of June and July, they make their Fewmets or Fewmishing in great Croteys, very soft; and from that time to the end of August, they make them great, long, knotty, anointed and gilded, letting them fall but few and scattered. In September and October there is no longer judging, by reason of the Rut.

E 4 Thirdly,

Thirdly, If you would know the height and thickness of the Hart, observe his Entries and Galleries into the Thickets, and what Boughs he hath over-stridden, and mark from thence the height of his Belly from the ground.

By the height of the Entries, we judge the age of a Harr; for a young Deer is fuch as creeps usually; but

the old is stiff and stately.

His greatness is known by the height of his creeping as he passes to his Harbour; the young Deer creeping

low, which the old will not stoop to.

Fourthly, Take notice of his Gate, by which you may know whether the *Hart* be great and long, and whether he will ftand long before the Hounds or not: For all *Harts* which have a long ftep will ftand up very long, being fwift, light, and well breath'd; but if he leave a great Slot, which is the fign of an old *Deer*, he will never ftand long when he is chased.

Lastly, Take notice of his Fraying-post: Where note, the elder the Harr is, the sooner he goeth to Fray, and the greater is the Tree he seeketh to Fray upon, and

fuch as he cannot bend with his Head.

All Stags as they are burnish'd, beat their Heads dry against some Tree or other, which is called their Fraying-post: The younger Deer against weaker and lesser Trees, and lower; the elder against bigger and stronger, and Fray higher; so that accordingly we considently judge of their age, and of the nearness of their Harbour; for that is the last Ceremony they use before they enter it.

As to the Head and Branches, the Hart is old, first, when the compass of the Bur is large, great, and well

pearl'd.

Secondly, When the Beam is great, burdened, and well pearl'd, being straight, and not made crooked by the Antliers.

Thirdly, When the Gutters therein are great and

deep.

Fourthly,

ness

the

the

of a

but

ping

ping

you

and not:

very.

, he

note,

and

and

dry

ray-

effer oger,

ently

; 1uo

nter

firft.

well

and

i by

and

hly,

Fourthly, When the first Antlier, called Antoiller, is great, long, and near to the Bur; the Surantlier near unto the Antlier; and they ought to be both well pearl'd.

Fifthly, The rest of the Branches which are higher, being well ordered, and set, and well grown, according to the bigness and proportion of the Head; and the Croches, Palm or Crown being great and large according to the bigness of the Beam, are the signs of an old Hart.

Now fince many Men cannot understand the Names and Diversities of Heads according to the Terms of Hunting, I shall in the following Chapter give you a brief account thereof.

The Names and Diversities of Heads according to Hunting Terms.

The thing that beareth the Antliers, Royals, and Tops, is called the Beam; and the little streaks therein are called Gutters.

That which is about the Crust of the Beam, is termed Pearls; and that which is about the Bur it self, formed like little Pearls, is called Pearls bigger than the rest.

The Bur is next the Head; and that which is about the Bur, is called *Pearls*. The first is called *Antiser*; the second, *Surantiser*: All the rest which grow afterwards, until you come to the Crown, Palm, or Croche, are called *Royals*, and *Sur-royals*: The little Buds or Broches about the Top, are called *Croches*.

Their Heads go by several Names: The first Head is called a Crowned Top, because the Croches are ranged in form of a Crown.

The fecond is called a Palmed Top, because the Croches are formed like a Man's Hand.

Thirdly, all Heads which bear not above three or four, the Croches being placed aloft, all of one height,

in

in form of a cluster of Nuts, are to be called Heads of formany Croches.

Fourthly, all Heads which bear two in the Top, or having their Croches doubling, are to be called Forked Heads.

Fifthly, all Heads which have double Burs, or the Antliers, Royals, and Croches turned downwards, contrary to other Heads, are only called Heads.

How to feek a Hart in his Haunts or Feeding-places, according to the Seasons of the Year.

All Harts do change their manner of Feeding every Month; and therefore I shall treat orderly of every one till I have concluded the Year; beginning with that Month which is the conclusion of their Rutting time, and that is November, in which Month they feed in Heaths and Broomy places.

In December they Herd together, and withdraw themselves into the strength of the Forests, to shelter themselves from the cold Winds, Snows, and Frosts, and do feed on the Holm-trees, Elder-trees, Brambles, with whatsoever other green thing they can find; and if it Snow, they will skin the Trees like a Goat.

In January, February, and March, they leave Herding, but will keep four or five in company, and in the corners of the Forest will feed on the Winter-pasture; sometimes making their Incursions into the neighbouring Corn-Fields, if they can perceive the blades of Wheat, Rye, or such like, appear above ground.

In April and May they rest in their Thickets, and other bushy and shady places, during that Season, and stir very little till Rutting-time, unless they are disturbed.

There are fome Harts fo cunning, that they will have two feveral Layrs to harbour in, a good distance one from the other; and will frequently change (for their greater security) from the one to the other, taking still the benefit of the Wind.

In these Months they go not to the Soil, by reason of the moisture of the Spring, and the Dew that continually overspreadeth the Grass.

In June, July, and Angust, they are in their pride of grease, and do resort to Spring-Copses, and Cornfields; only they seldom go where Rye or Barley

grow.

sof

or

rked

the on-

COY-

very

one

me,

d in

raw

lter

ofts,

and

the

ire;

our-

and

and di-

will

one

heir

ftill

Ιŋ

In September and October they leave their Thickets and go to Rut; during which Season, they have no certain place either for food or harbour.

In what manner the Huntsman shall go drawing in the Springs.

Let him not come too early into the Springs or Hewts where he thinketh the Hart feedeth, and is at relief. For they usually go to their Layrs in the Springs: and if they be old crafty Deer, they will return to the border of the Copfe, and there listen whether they can hear any approaching danger; and if they chance once to vent the Huntsman or the Hound, they will instantly dislodge.

Now is the Huntiman's proper time. Let him beat the out-fides of the Springs or Thickets: If he find the Track of an Hart or Deer, let him observe whether it be new; which he may know thus: The Dew will be beaten off, the Foil fresh, or the ground broken or printed, with other tokens: so he may judge

his Game lately went that way.

Having found this Slot or Treading, and the Hound flicking well upon it, let him hold him short; for he shall better draw being so held, than if he were let at length of the Lyam: and thus let him draw till he is come to the Covert, if possible, taking notice by the way of the Slot, Foils, Entries, and the like, till he hath harboured him. That done, let him plash down small Twigs, some above, and some below, as he shall think ht: and then, whilst the Hound is hot, let him beat the out

outsides, and make his Ring-walks twice or thrice about the Wood, one while by the great and open ways, that he may help himself by the Eye; another while through the thick and Covert, for fear less this Hound should over-shoot it, having still better Scent in the Coverts than High-ways.

If he doubt the Hart is gone out of the Ring-walks, or fears he has drawn amis; then let him go to the marks which he plashed, and draw counter, till he may take up

the Fewmet.

The Directions for Harbouring a Stag are thefe:

The Harbourer having taught his Hound to draw mute always round the outside of the Covert, as soon as his Hound challenges, which he knows by his eager flourishing, and straining his Lyam, he then is to feek for his Slot: If he finds the Heel thick, and the Toe spreading broad, it argues an old Deer, especially if it is fringed, (that is, broken on the fides.) However, if the ground be too hard to make any judgment from the Slot, he is to draw into the Covert, as he passes, observing the size of the Entries; the larger and higher, the older the Deer; as also his Croppings of the Tenders as he passes: (the younger the Deer, the lower; the elder the Deer, the higher he branches.) Also observe his Fewmishings as you pass, whose largeness bespeak the largeness of the Deer; also be curious in observing his Fraying-post, which usually is the last opportunity you have to judge by, the eldest Deer Fraying highest against the biggest Trees; and that found, you may conclude his Harbour not far off; therefore draw with more circumspection, checking your Draughthound to secure him from spending when he comes so near as to have the Deer in the Wind: and then by his eagerness you having discovered that, ought to draw him; and having retired some distance back, you are with your Hound to round the place first at a considerable

rable distance; and then, is you find him not disturbed, a little within that make your second round; which will not only secure you that he is in his Harbour, but will also secure his continuance there; for he will not (unforc'd) pass that Taint your Hound hath left in the rounding of him. So that having broken a Bough for his Direction, he may at any time unharbour that Hart.

How to find a Hart loft the Night before.

A Huntiman may fail of killing a Hart divers ways; fometimes by reason of great heat, or overtaken with the night, and the like. If any fuch thing should happen, then thus you must do: First, they which follow the Hounds, must mark the place where they left the Chase, and at break of day bring your Bloodhound to it, with your Kennel after him. If any Hound vents, whom he knows to be no Lier or Babler, he shall put his Hound to it, whooping twice, or blowing two Notes with his Horn, to call all his Fellows about him: and if he find where the Hart is gone into fome likely Covert or Grove, then must he draw his Hounds about it, and best cross through it. And if there he renews his Slot or View, let him first consider whether it be the right or not: If it be the right, let him blow his Horn. Now if he find five or fix Layrs, let it not feem strange; for Harts hunted and spent, do frequently make many Layrs together, because they cannot stand, but lie and feed.

Harts which are hunted, most commonly run up the Wind, and streight forwards as far as they are able, and finding any Water or Soil, do stay a long time therein; by which means their Joints are so benummed and stiffned, that coming out they cannot go far, nor stand up long; and therefore are compelled to take any Harbour they cand find, which may be a present Covert to

them.

about

that

ough

hould

verts

ks,or

narks

keup

draw

foon

is to

and

efpe-

les.)

udg-

t, as

rger

ings

the

les.)

rge-

ious

laft

ray-

ind,

fore

ght-

10

his

raw

are

de-

ble

How to find a Hart in high Woods.

In the feeking of a Hart in high Woods, regard must be had to two things; that is, the Thickets of the Fo-

reft, and the Seafon.

If it be in very hot Weather, Gnats, Horse-slies, and such like, drive the Deer out of the high Wood, and they disperse themselves into small Groves and Thickets near places of good feeding. According to the Coverts which are in the Forest, so accordingly the Huntsman must make his enquiry: For sometimes the Harts lie in the Tusts of White-thorn; sometimes under little Trees; otherwhiles under great Trees in the high Woods; and sometimes in the Skirts of the Forest, under the shelter of little Groves and Copses. And therefore the Huntsman must make his Ring-walk great or small, according to the largeness of those Harbours or Coverts.

How to Unharbour a Hart, and cast off the Hounds.

When the Relays are well fet and placed, let the Huntsman with his Pole walk before the Kennel of Hounds: Being come to the Blemishes, let him take notice of the Slot, and such other marks as may be observed from the View of the Deer, to the intent he may know whether the Hounds run Riot or not. Then let the Huntsman cast abroad about the Covert, to discover the Hart when he is unharbour'd, the better to distinguish him by his Head or otherwise. The Huntsman having unharboured him, all the Hounds shall be cast off, they crying one and all, To him, to him; That's he, that's he, with such words of encouragement.

If the Blood-hound as he draweth, chance to overshoot, and draw wrong or counter, then must the Huntsman draw him back, and say, Back, back; Soft, foft, un-

 \mathbf{n}

til he hath set him right again: and if he perceive that the Hound hath mended his fault, by his kneeling down, and observing the Slot or Ports, he must then cherish him, by clapping him on the back, and giving him some encouraging words. Thus let him draw on with his Hound till the Deer be described.

Now some are so cunning and crafty, that when they are unharbonred from their Layr, they will coast round about to find some other Deer, whereby the Hounds

may be confounded in the change of Hunts.

uft

Fo-

and

and

ic-

the

the

the

nn=

the

eft.

nd

eat

the

of

ake

be

ent

not /

ert.

et#

The

nds

10

ou-

er-

tf-

til

If the Huntiman have the Hart in view, let him still draw upon the Slot, blowing and hollowing until the Hounds are come in. When he seeth they are in sull cry, and take it right, he may then mount, keeping under the Wind, and coast to cross the Hounds that are in chase, to help them at default, if need require.

What Subtilties are used in Hunting a Hart at force.

Let the Huntiman never come nearer the Hounds in cry, than fifty or threefcore paces, especially at the first uncoupling, or at casting off their Relays: For if a Hart make Doublings, or wheel about, or cross before the Hounds, as he seldom doth; if then you come in too hastily, you will spoil the Slot or View; and so the Hounds, for want of Scent, will be apt to overshoot the Chase: But if after Hunting an Hour, the Huntiman perceive that the Hart makes out end-ways before the Hounds, and that they follow in full cry, taking it right, then he may come in nearer, and blow a Recheat to the Hounds to encourage them. Hereupon the Hart will frequently feek other Deer at Layr, and rouze them, on purpose to make the Hounds hunt change, and will lie down flat in some of their Layrs upon his Belly, and so let the Hounds over-shoot him: and because they shall neither scent or vent him, he will gather up all his four feet under his Belly, and will blow and breathe on some

moist place of the ground, in such sort, that I have feet the Hounds pass by such a Hari within a yard, and ne-

ver vent him.

For which cause Huntsmen should blemish at such places they see the Hart enter into a Thicket, to this end, that if the Hounds should fall to change, they may return to those Blemishes, and put their Hounds to the right Slot and View, until they have rouzed or found

him again.

The Hart hath another way to bring the Hounds to change; and that is, when he feeth himself closely purfued, and that he cannot fhun them, he will break into one Thicket after another to find Deer, rouzing and herding with them, continuing fo to do fome times above an hour before he will part from them, or break Herd. Finding himself spent, he will break Herdi and fall a doubling and croffing in some hard High-way that is much beaten, or else in some River or Brook, in which he will keep as long as his Breath will permit him: and if he be far before the Hounds, it may be then he will use his former Device, in gathering his Legs up under his Belly, as he lies flat along upon some hard and dry place. Sometimes he will take Soil, and fo cover himself under the Water, that you shall perceive nothing but his Nofe.

In this case the Huntsman must have a special regard to his old Hounds, who will hunt leisurely and fearfully; whereas the young Hounds will over-shoot their

Game.

If it so chance that the Hounds are at a default, and hunt in several Gompanies, then it may be guessed that the Hare hath broken Herd from the fresh Deer, and that the fresh Deer have separated themselves also: the regard how the old Staunch-hounds make it, and observe the Slot; and where you see any of the old Hounds challenge, cherish and encourage him, hastening the resin to him, by crying Hark to such a Hound, calling him by his Name.

Here

feen

ne-

fuch

this

may

o the

ound

is to

ofely

oreak

Zing

ome-

i, or lerd;

-Way

k, in

him:

en he

p un-

d and

cover thing

gard

fear-

their

, and

i that

and

the

ferve

bnuc

e reft g him

Here

Here is to be noted, that they cannot make it so good in the hard High-ways as in other places, because they cannot have there so perfect a scent, either by reason of the Tracks or Footing of divers sorts of Beasts, or by reason of the Sun drying up the moisture, so that the dust covereth the Slot: Now in such places (such is the natural Subtilty of that Beast for Self-preservation) the Hart will make many Crosses and Doublings, holding them long together, to make the Hounds give over the Chase.

In this case, the first care of the Hunriman is, to make good the Head, and then draw round apace, first down the Wind, though usually Deer go up the Wind: and if the way is too hard to Slot, be sure to try far enough back. This expert Hounds will frequently do of themselves.

But if a Harr break out into the Champion Country, and that it be in the Heat of the Day, between Noon and Three of the Clock; then if the Huntsman perceive his Hounds out of breath, he must not force them much, but comfort them; and though they do not call upon the Slot or View, yet it is sufficient if they but wag their Tails; for, being almost spent, it is painful for them to call:

The last Refuge of a Hart forely limited is the Water, (which, according to Art, is termed the Soil) swimming oftness down the Stream, keeping the middle, fearing lest by touching any Bough by the Water-side he may give scent unto the Hounds.

Always when you come to a Soil, (according to the old Rule, He that will his Chafe find, let him first try up the River, and down the Wind) be fure if your Hounds challenge but a yard above his going in, that he is gone up the River: for though he should keep the very middle of the Stream, yet will that, with the help of the Wind, lodge part of the Stream; and Imbosh that comes from him on the Bank, it may be a quarter of a mile lower, which hath deceived many.

Therefore first try up the Stream: and where a Du, first breasts Soil, both Man and Hound will best percent.

Now the ways to know when a Hart is spent, and these; First, He will run stiff, high, and lompering. Secondly, If his Mouth be black and dry without any Foam upon it, and his Tongue hanging out; but the will often close their Mouths, to deceive the Spectaton. Thirdly, By his Slot; for often times he will close his Claws together, as if he went at leisure; and straight way again open them wide, making great glidings, and hitting his Dew-claws upon the ground, following the beaten Paths without Doublings; and sometime going all along by a Ditch-side, seeking some Gap, having not strength to leap it otherways: yet it hath beat often seen, that Dead-run Deer have taken very great leaps.

Thus must a Huntsman govern himself according to the Subtilty and Crast of the Deer, observing the Doublings and Crossings, and the places where they are made; making his Rings little or great, according the nature of the place, time, and season: For Hound are subject to shoot where Herbs and Flowers have the most lively scent and odoriferous smell. Neither must you be unmindful of the perfection and impersection of your Hounds. Thus doing, it will be very hard lucks

vou lose a Hart by default.

How to kill a Hart at Bay.

It is very dangerous to go in to a Hart at Bay, and especially at Rutting-time, for then they are most fierce

There are two forts of Bays; one on the Land, the other on the Water. If now the Hart be in a deep We ter, where you cannot well come to him, then couple myour Dogs; for should they long continue in the Water, it would endanger surbating or foundering. Gat then a Boat, or swim to him with Dagger; or else with

1 Det

erceiv

nt, m

pering

ut an

ut the

taton

ofe his

raigh

s, an

lowing

netim

p, ha

h bea

gree

ing to

their ney are

lingu

lound

e the

r mut

iond

lucki

fierce

d, the

Wa

ole m

Wa

Get

with

a Rope that hath a Noose, and throw it over his Horns: for if the Water be so deep that the Hart swims, there is no danger in approaching him; otherwise you must have a care.

As to the Land Bay, if the Hart be burnished, then you must consider the place: For if it be in a plain and open place, where there is no Wood nor Covert, it is dangerous and hard to come in to him; but if it be in a Hedge-side or Thicket, then, whilst the Hart is staring on the Hounds, you may come covertly among the Bushes behind him, and cut his Throat. If you miss your aim, and the Hart turn head upon you, then make some Tree your refuge; or when the Hart is at Bay, couple up your Hounds; and when you see the Hart turn head to fly, gallop in roundly to him, and kill him with your Sword.

Directions at the Death of Buck or Hart.

The first Ceremony when the Huntsmen come in to the Death of a Deer, is to cry Ware Haunch, that the Hounds may not break into the Deer; which having fecured, the next is cutting his Throat, and there blooding the youngest Hounds, that they may the better love Deer, and learn to leap at his Throat; then, having blown the Mort, and all the Company come in, the best Person, that hath not taken Say before, is to take up the Knife that the Keeper or Huntsman is to lay cross the Belly of the Deer, standing close to the left Shoulder of the Deer, some holding by the Fore-legs, and the Keeper or Huntsman drawing down the Pizzle, the Person that takes Say, is to draw the edge of the Knife efforely along the very middle of the Belly, begining near the Brisket; and drawing a little upon it, mough in the length and depth to discover how fat the Deer is, then he that is to break up the Deer, first flits he Skin from the cutting of the Throat downward, making the Arber, that so the Ordere may not break forth:

forth; and then he is to paunch him, rewarding the Hounds therewith. Next, he is to present the same Person that took the Say with a drawn Hanger, to car off the Head; which done, and the Hounds rewarded therewith, the concluding Ceremony is, if a Buck a double, if a Stag a treble Mort blown by one, and then a whole Recheat in Consort by all that have Horns; and that sinished, immediately a general Whom whom.

It was formerly termed Wind a Horn, because (as suppose) all Horns were then compassed; but fine streight Horns are come into fashion, we say, Blow

Horn, and fometimes, Sound a Horn.

In many cases heretofore, Leasing was observed that is, one must be held, either cross a Saddle, ord a Man's Back, and with a pair of Dog-couples received ten pound and a Purse; that is, ten Stripes, (according to the nature of the Crime, more or less severe) and a eleventh, that used to be as bad as the other ten, calls a Purse.

There are many Faults, as coming too late into the Field, mistaking any Term of Art; these are of these fer size: of the greater magnitude, hallowing a wron Deer, or leaving the Field before the death of the

Deer, &c.

Buck-Hunting.

This Beaft is common in most Countries, being corpulent as a Hart; but in quantity resemble

more a Roe, except in colour.

The Males have Horns, which they lofe yearly; he the Females none at all. Their Colours are divers, he most commonly branded or fandy on the back, have a black list all down along on the back; their bellies

ng the

fame

O CIL

arded

uck 1

, and

: have

Wha

(23

fina

Blow

erved

oro

recen

ordin

anda

calle

ntoth

theld

Wros

of th

eing

mbl

y;

ers, b

havi

ies 2

fid

fides spotted with white, which they lose by their cld age: and the Does do especially vary in colour, being sometimes all white, and therefore like unto Goats, except in their Hair, which is shorter.

In their Horns they differ not much from a Hart, except in quantity, and that they grow out of their Heads like Fingers out of the Hand; such is this Fallow-Deer, being therefore called Cervus Palmatas. As for their other parts, they much resemble a Rose-buck. Their Flesh is excellent for nourishment, but their Blood ingenders too much Melancholy.

Now know, the Buck is Fawn'd about the latter end of May, and its Nature and Properties differ little from the Hart.

There is not fo much art and skill in Lodging a Buck, as in the Harbouring a Harr; neither is there required formuch drawing after, but only you are to judge by the View, and mark what Grove or Covert he entreth; for he will not wander and rove up and down so often as a Harr, nor so frequently change his Layr.

He maketh his Fewmishings in divers manners and forms, as the Hart doth, according to the diversity of Food, and time of the Day, Morning and Evening; but most commonly they are round.

The Hart and Buck differ thus in parallel. When the Buck is hunted, he oft-times betakes himself to such Strong Holds and Coverts as he is most acquainted with, not flying far before the Hounds, not crossing nor doubling, using no such Subtleties as the Hart is accustomed to.

The Buck will beat a Brook, (but feldom a great River, as the Hart) but it must not be so deep; nor can he stay so long at Soil as the Hart will do: only he leapeth lightlier at Rut than the Hart; and groaneth or troateth, as a Hart belieth, but with a lower Voice, ratling in the Throat. And here is to be noted, they love not one another, nor will they come near each other?'s Layr.

forth; and then he is to paunch him, rewarding the Hounds therewith. Next, he is to present the same Person that took the Say with a drawn Hanger, to cut off the Head; which done, and the Hounds rewarded therewith, the concluding Ceremony is, if a Buck; double, if a Stag a treble Mort blown by one, and then a whole Recheat in Consort by all that have Horns; and that sinished, immediately a general Whom whoop.

It was formerly termed Wind a Horn, because (as fappose) all Horns were then compassed; but since streight Horns are come into fashion, we say, Blond

Horn, and fometimes, Sound a Horn.

In many cases heretofore, Leasing was observed; that is, one must be held, either cross a Saddle, or a Man's Back, and with a pair of Dog-couples receive ten pound and a Purse; that is, ten Stripes, (according to the nature of the Crime, more or less severe) and a eleventh, that used to be as bad as the other ten, called a Purse.

There are many Faults, as coming too late into the Field, mistaking any Term of Art; these are of the fer fize: of the greater magnitude, hallowing a wrong Deer, or leaving the Field before the death of the

Deer, &c.

Buck-Hunting.

This Beaft is common in most Countries, being a corpulent as a Harr; but in quantity resembled

more a Roe, except in colour.

The Males have Horns, which they lofe yearly; but the Females none at all. Their Colours are divers, but most commonly branded or sandy on the back, having a black list all down along on the back; their bellies and

ng the

fame

to cu

rarded

Buck 1

, and

have

Who

(25 |

fince

Blow a

rved:

or or

ecein

ording

and a

called

toth

he lef-

Wrom

of the

ing a

bleti

; be

es 200

fide

fides spotted with white, which they lose by their cld age: and the Does do especially vary in colour, being sometimes all white, and therefore like unto Goats, except in their Hair, which is shorter.

In their Horns they differ not much from a Hart, except in quantity, and that they grow out of their Heads like Fingers out of the Hand; such is this Fallow-Deer, being therefore called Cervus Palmatus. As for their other parts, they much resemble a Roe-buck. Their Flesh is excellent for nourishment, but their Blood ingenders too much Melancholy.

Now know, the Buck is Fawn'd about the latter end of May, and its Nature and Properties differ little from the Have.

There is not fo much art and skill in Lodging a Buck, as in the Harbouring a Harr; neither is there required formuch drawing after, but only you are to judge by the View, and mark what Grove or Covert he entreth; for he will not wander and rove up and down so often as a Harr, nor so frequently change his Layr.

He maketh his Fewmishings in divers manners and forms, as the Hart doth, according to the diversity of Food, and time of the Day, Morning and Evening; but most commonly they are round.

The Hart and Buck differ thus in parallel. When the Buck is hunted, he oft-times betakes himself to such Strong Holds and Coverts as he is most acquainted with, not flying far before the Hounds, not crossing nor doubling, using no such Subtleties as the Hart is accustomed to.

The Buck will beat a Brook, (but feldom a great River, as the Harr) but it must not be so deep; nor can he stay so long at Soil as the Harr will do: only he leapeth lightlier at Rut than the Harr; and groaneth or troateth, as a Harr belleth, but with a lower Voice, ratling in the Throat. And here is to be noted, they love not one another, nor will they come near each other? Layr.

Buck-Venison is incomparable Food, and is dressed like Hart-Venison; only this last will be preserved lon-

ger than the former.

The Buck herds more than the Hart, and lieth in the drieft places: but if he be at large, unconfined within the limitary Precincts of a Park, he will herd but link from May to August, because the Flies trouble him. He takes great delight in hilly places; but the Dales are his joy to feed in.

Bucks have feldom or never any other Relays than

the old Hounds.

The greatest subtilty a Huntsman need use in the Hunting of the Buck, is to beware of Hunting Comter or Change, because of the plenty of Fallow-Den, which use to come more directly upon the Hounds than the Red-Deer doth. Now upon the breaking up of Buck, the Hounds Reward is the same with that of the Hart.

Roe-Hunting.

The Roe-Buck is called by the Greeks and Latins by one name, viz. Dorcas. These Beasts are very plentiful in Africa, Germany, and Helvetian Alps.

Their swiftness doth not only appear upon the Earth, but also in the Waters, cutting them when they swimas with Oars; and therefore they love the Lake and strong Streams, breaking the Floods to come at fresh Pasture, feeding deliciously on sweet Rushes, and Bull-rushes. Horns only grow upon the Male, and are set with six or seven Branches, not palmed, but branchy, yet shorter than Fallow-Deer: They differ not much from common Deer, but in their Horn: and whereas the Horns of other Beasts are hollow towards the root, whereinto entereth a certain long substance;

the Horns of these, as also of the vulgar Buck and Elk, are solid without any such emptiness, only they are full of Pores.

reffed

d lon-

in the

within

t little

n. He

re his

than

n the

Coun-

Dett

than

of:

f the

s by

very

the

they

kes

e at

and

are

an-

not

bne

rds

ce;

It is supposed by the Learned, that a Roe was called in Greek Dorcas, by reason of the quickness of her sight; and that she can see as perfectly in the night as in the day. Physicians have observed a certain viscous humor about her bowels, which by anointing Eyes that are dark, heavy, and near blind, quickens the sight most wonderfully.

It is reported of them, that they never wink, no not when they fleep; for which conceit their Blood is preferibed for them who are dim-fighted or purblind. The
tail of this Beaft is leffer and shorter than a FallowDeer's; infomuch that it is doubtful whether it be a
tail or not.

They keep for the most in the Mountains among the Rocks, being very swift; and when they are Hunted (Martial saith) they hang upon the Rocks with their Horns, to delude the Dogs, after a strange manner, ready to fall and kill themselves, and yet receive no harm, where the Dogs dare not approach, as appeareth in his Epigram:

Pendensem summa Capream, de rupe videbia, Casuram speres, decipit illa Canes.

This might be more properly meant of the Wild

They are most easily taken in the Woods. When they are chased, they desire to run against the Wind, because the coldness of the Air refresheth them in their course; and therefore they who hunt them place their Dogs with the Wind. They are often taken by the counterseiting of their Voice, which the skilful Hontsman doth by the assistance of a Leaf in his Mouth.

This Beast is very easie to hunt, and goeth to Ref. (or Tourn most properly) in October, the extent where of consists of fifteen days, and never parteth with the

Doe till Fawning-time.

The Doe finding her self near her time, secretly departs from the Buck, and sawneth as far from him and his knowledge as she can; for could he find the Fawn he would kill it. Now when the Fawn grows big, and car run and feed, she then returns to the Buck again very lovingly, with all expedition: the cause whereof, is the Roes sawning Twins, which are commonly Buck and Doe; so that being accustomed together in youth, they do love to keep company ever after.

As foon as the Roe-Buck cometh from Rut, he call his Horns; and there are few after two years old which Mew not at Alballontide, but their Heads grow quickly

out again.

The Venison of a Roe is never out of season, being never fat, and therefore they are to be hunted at any time: only this, some favour ought to be shewn the Doe whilst she is big with Fawn, and afterwards ill her Fawn is able to shift for himself: besides, some Roe-Does have been killed with five Fawns in their belly.

They usually when hunted, take a large first Ring,

and afterwards hunt the Hounds.

When they are hunted, they turn much and often and come back upon the Dogs directly: When they can no longer endure, they then take Soil, as the Handoth, and will hang by a Bough in fuch manner, that nothing shall appear of them above water but their Snout, and will suffer the Dogs to come just upon them before they will stir.

He is not called by the skilful in the Art of Hunting, Great Roe-Buck, but a Fair Roe-Buck. The Herd of them is called a Beavy: And if he hath not Beavy-greak on his Tail when he is broken up, he is more fit to be

Dogs - meat than Mans-meat.

The

Rut

here-

th the

ly de m and

nd can n very is the

k and

caft

which

uickly

being

t any

n the

ds till

fome

their

Ring,

often.

they

Han

that

their

them

ing,2

rd of

rease

to be

The

The Hounds must be rewarded with the Bowels, the Blood, and Feet sit asunder, and boiled all together. This is more properly called a Dose than a Reward. For what might be said farther concerning Roe-Hunting, I shall refer you to the Chapters of Hart and Buck-Hunting.

Rain-Deer Hunting.

The Rain-Deer is not unlike a Harr, only his Head is fuller of Antliers, being bigger and wider in compass; for he bears four and twenty Branches, and more, according to his Age, having a great Palm on the top, as a Harr, and his Fore-Antliers are Palmed also.

He flieth end-ways when he is Hunted, by reason of the great weight of his Head. When he hath stood up a great while, doubled, crossed, and used other crafty tricks to shun the Hounds, he makes a Tree his last refuge; so planting himself, that nothing can assault him but just before, placing his Buttock and Haunches against the Tree, and hanging down his Head low to the ground, whereby all his Body is covered.

As the Hart strikes with his Head, the Rain Deer strikes with his Feet against any one that comes in to him to help the Dogs, not in the least turning his Head, that being his chiesest defence, and seems very terrible to the Hounds.

He feedeth like the Hart, and maketh his Fewmets fometimes long, and fometimes flat, and beareth fatter Venison, when he is in pride of Grease, than any other Deer doth, and is very long-liv'd. He is more commonly drawn after with a Blood-Hound, than Hunted, and intrapped with Nets and Engines, and that in

the thick and greatest Holds, if it may be; which is the best and speediest way, by reason of his great and spreading Head. Since there are but few of them in England, I shall desist from discoursing farther concerning him.

Of the Nature and Properties of a Hare.

A Hare is called in Hebrew Arneber in the Feminine Gender, which word possessed a great many that all Hares were Females: He is called Lagus by the Greeks, for his immoderate Lust; and by the same Nation Proox, for his Fear; and by the Latins Lopus, quast Levi-pes, signifying Swiftness of feet (alias) Light-

foot.

There are four forts of Haves; fome live in the Mountains, some in the Fields, some in the Marshes, some every where, without any certain place of abode. They of the Mountains, are most swift; they of the Fields, less nimble; they of the Marshes, most slow; and the wandering Hares are most dangerous to follow; for they are so cunning in the ways and muses of the Fields, running up the Hills and Rocks, because by custom they know the nearer way, with other tricks, to the consusion of the Dogs, and disencouragement of the Hunters.

In the next place, a description of the parts of an Have will not be unnecessary, fince it is admirable to behold how every Limb and Member of this Beast is composed for celerity. In the first place, the Head is round, nimble, short, yet of convenient longitude, prone to turn every way. The Ears long, and lofty, like an Asses: for Nature hath so provided, that every fearful and unarmed Creature should have long and large Ears, that by hearing it might prevent its Enemies, and save

ich

and

in

rn-

ni-

DY

by

44

The s

he

s,

e.

ne

1

1

10

10

of

0

\$

S

I

it felf by flight: The Lips continually move sleeping and waking; and from the slit they have in the middle of their Nose, cometh the serm of Hune-lips which are so divided in Men.

The Neck of an Hare is long, small, round, soft, and flexible: The Shoulder-bone streight and broad, for her more easie turning: her Legs before soft, and stand broader behind thon before, and the hinder Legs longer than the former: a Breast not narrow, but sitted to take more breath than any Beast of that bigness: a nimble back, and a sleshy Belly, tender Loins, hollow sides, fat Buttocks, silled up, strong and nervous Lines. Their Eyes are brown, and they are subtile, but not bold; seldom looking forward, because going by jumps. Their Eye-lids coming from the Brows, are to short to cover their Eyes, and therefore this sense is very weak in them. When they watch they shut their Eyes, and when they sleep they open them.

They have certain little Bladders in their Belly filled with matter, out of which both the one and the other Sex such a certain humour, and anoint their Bodies all over therewith, and so are defended against Rain.

Though their fight be dim, yet they have vifum indefessum, an indefatigable Sense of Seeing; so that the continuance in a mean degree, countervalleth in them the want of excellency.

They feed abroad, because they would conceal their forms; and never drink, but content themselves with the Dew, and for that cause they often sall rotten. As it is before, every Limb of a Here is composed for celerity, and therefore she never travelleth, but jumpeth: her Ears lead her the way in her Chase; for with one of them she hearkneth to the Cry of the Dogs, and the other she stretcheth forth like a Sail, to basten her Course; always stretching her hinder beyond her former, and yet not hinder-

ing them at all; and in Paths and High-ways fhe rum

more speedily.

The Haves of the Mountains do often exercife themselves in the Valleys and Plains, and through practice grow acquainted with the nearest ways to their Forms or Places of constant abode; so that when at any time they are Hunted in the Fields, such is their subtile Dodging, that they will dally with the Huntsman till they seem to be almost taken, and then on a sudden take the nearest way to the Mountains, and so take Sanctuary in the inaccessible places, whither Dogs nor Horse dare ascend.

Hares which frequent Bushes and Brakes, are not able to endure Labour, and not very fwift, by reafon of the pain in their Feet, growing fat through idleness and discontinuance of running. The Campeffrial or Field-Hare, being leaner of Body, and oftner chased, is taken with more difficulty, by reafon of her fingulary agility; the therefore when the beginneth her Course, leapeth up from the ground as if the flew, afterwards paffeth through Brambles, and over thick Bushes and Hedges with all expedition; and if at any time she come into deep Grass or Corn, the eafily delivereth her felf, and flideth through it, always holding up one Ear, and bending it at her pleasure to be the Moderator of her Chase. Neither is she so unprovident and prodigal of her Strength, as to spend it all in one Course, but observeth the force of her Prosecutor, who if he be flow and fluggish, she is not profuse of her Celerity, but only walketh gently before the Dogs, and yet fafely from their Clutches, referving her greatest strength to her greatest necessity: for she knoweth the can out-run the Dogs at her pleasure, and therefore will not trouble her self more than she is urged. But if there be a Dog following her more swiftly than the residue, then she setteth forward with all the force

runs

ercife

rough

YS to

that

ields

dal-

moft

Way

the

e af-

not

Les-

ough

am

and

rea-

the

und

oles,

edi-

rass

her igal but

he Ce-

gs,

ea-

ch

But

he

force she can; and when she hath less both Hunters and Dogs a great way behind her, she getteth to some little Hill or rising of the Earth, where she raifeth her self upon her hinder Legs, that thereby she may observe how far or near her Pursuers are distant from her.

The younger Hares, by reason of their weak Members, tread heavier on the Earth than the elder; and therefore leave the greater Scent behind them. At a year old they run very swift, and their Scent is stronger in the Woods than in the plain Fields; and if they lie down upon the Earth (as they love to do) in red Faslow-grounds, they are easily described.

Their Foot-steps in the Winter-time are more apparent than in the Summer, because, as the Nights are longer, so they travel farther: neither do they scent in the Winter-mornings so soon as it is day, until the Frost be somewhat thawed, but especially their Foot-steps are uncertain at the Full of the Moon, for then they leap and play together, scattering and putting out their scent or savour; and in the Spring-time also, when they do ingender, they consound one anothers Footsteps by multitudes.

Hare-Hunting.

IT is the Judgment of all, that a Have doth naturally know the change of Weather from twenty four Hours to twenty four Hours. When she goeth to her Form, she will suffer the Dew to touch her as little as she can, but followeth the High ways and beaten Paths.

They go to Buck commonly in January, February, and March, and fometimes all the warm Months; fometimes feeking the Buck feven or eight miles distant from the place where they usually sit, following the High-ways, &c.

If when a Hare rifeth out of her Form she couches her Ears and Scut, and runs not very fast at fift, it is an in-

fallible fign that she is old and crafty.

You may know a Buck-Have as you Hunt him to his Form by his beating the hard High-ways. He feedeth farther out into the Plains, and maketh his doublings and crossings much wider, and of greater compass than the Female doth: for she will keep close by some Covert-side, turning and winding in the Bushes like a Coney, and if she go to relief in the Corn-sields, she feldom crosseth over the Furrows, but solloweth them along, staying upon the thickest tusts of Corn to feed.

Likewise you may know a Buck at the rising out of his Form by his Hinder-parts, which are more whitely; or if you observe his Shoulders before he rise, which will be redder than the Does, having some loose long Hairs growing on them. Again, his Head is shorter, and better trussed; his Hairs about his Lips longer; and his Ears shorter and more gray. The Hairs upon the Female's Chine will be of a blackish gray.

Besides, when Hounds hunt a Female Hare, she will use more crossing and doubling, seldom making out end-ways before the Hounds: whereas the Male acts contrary; for having once made a Turn or two about his Form, then farewel Hounds; for he will frequently lead them five or six Miles before ever he will turn his

Head.

When you see that your Hounds have found where an Have hath pass'd to relief upon the High-way-side, and hath much doubled and crossed upon dry places, and never much broken out nor relieved in the Corn, it is a fign

fign she is but lately come thither; and then commonly she will stay upon some high place to look about her, and to chuse out a place to Form in, which she will be loth to part with.

uary,

ths;

ftant

the

s her

his

leth

ings

pass

ome

ce a

fhe

nem

to

JUO

ore

ife,

me

ba:

ips

he

ifh

ill

ut

As

ly is

m

d

d

Of the Craft and Subtiley of an Hare.

As of all Chases the Have makes the greatest passime and pleasure; so it is a great delight and satisfaction to see the crast of this little poor Beast in her own self-prefervation.

And that you may understand what these Subtilities are, you must first take notice what. Weather it is. If it be rainy, then the Hare wild hold the High-ways more than at any other time: and if sie come to the side of any young Grove or Spring, she will scarcely enter, but squat down by the side thereof, until the Hounds have over-shot her; and then she will return the self-same way she came to the place from whence she was started, and will not by the way go into any Covert, for fear of the Wet and Dew that hang upon the Boughs.

In this case, let the Huntsman stay a hundred paces before he comes to the Wood-side, by which means he shall perceive whether she return as aforesaid; which if she do, let him hallow in his Hounds, and call them back, and that presently, that the Hounds may not think it the Counter she came first.

The next thing to be observed, is the place where the Hare sitteth, and upon what Wind she makes her Form: for if she Form either upon the North or South-Wind, she will not willingly run into the Wind, but aun upon a side or down the Wind. But if she Form in the Water, it is a sign she is foul and measted. If you hunt such a one, have a special regard all the day to the Brook-sides, for there and near Plashes she will make all her crossings, doublings, &c.

I have feen a Hore fo crafty, that as foon as she heard the found of a Horn, she would instantly start out of her Form, tho' it was a quarter of a mile distant, and go swim in some Pool, and there rest her self upon some rushbed in the midst thereof, from whence she would not stirt till she heareth the Horn again; and then I have seen her start out again swimming to Land, and she hath stood up before the Hounds sour Hours before we could kill her swimming, and using all her Subtleties and Grossings in the Water.

Such is the natural Craft and Subtilty of a Hard, that sometimes, after she hath been Hunted three Hours, she will start a fresh Hare, and squar in the same Form. Others, having been Hunted a considerable time, will creep under the Door of a Sheep-coar, and there hide themselves among the Sheep; or when they are hard Hunted, will run in among a flock of Sheep, and cannot be gotten out from among them by any means, till the Hounds are coupled up, and the Sheep drive into their Pens. Some (and that is something strange) will take the Ground like a Coney, and that is called going to the Vant. Some Hares will go up one side of the Hedge, and come down the other, the thickness of the Hedge being the only distance between the Courses.

I have seen a Hare, that being forely Hunted, got upon a Quick-set Hedge, and ran a good way up on the top thereof, and then leapt off upon the ground. And they will frequently betake themselves to Furz-bushes, and will leap from one to the other, whereby the Hounds are frequently in default Nay, which is more, I have heard of a Hare, that being Hunted two Hours, or more, at length, to save her self, got upon an old Wall six soot high from the ground, and hid her self in the Hole that was made for a Scassold: and that several have swam over Treat

and Severn.

A Have liveth not above feven Years at most, especially the Buck; and if he and the Doe shall keep one Quarter together, they will never suffer any strange Have to sit by them; and therefore it is proverbially said, The more you hunt, the more Hares you shall have; because when you have killed one Have, another will

come and possess his Form.

eard

fher

d go

ruft

c ftir

n her

her,

gs in

Tare,

three

fame

rable

Chev

and

eans,

nge)

alled

fide

the

got

y up

the

elves

e-0-

abla

that

CO

from

made

Trem

An Hare hath greater Scent, and is more eagerly Hunted by the Hounds, when she feeds and relieveth upon green Corn, than at any other time in the Year: And yet there are some Hares which naturally give a greater Scent than others; as the great Wood-Hares; and fuch as are foul and meafled, and keep near to the Waters: But the little red Hare, which is not much bigger than a Coney, is neither of fo strong a Scent. nor fo eagerly Hunted. Such as feed upon the small branches of wild Thyme, or fuch like Herbs, are commonly very fwift, and will stand long up before the Hounds. In like manner you have some Hares more fubtile and cunning than others. Young Hares which have not been Hunted are foolish, and are neither of force nor capacity to use such subtilties and crafts, but hold on end-ways before the Hounds most commonly, and do fquat and ftart again oftentimes, which doth much encourage the Hounds, and enters them better than if the Hare flies end-ways, as sometimes they will five or fix mile an end.

The Females are more crafty and politick than the Bucks; for they double and turn shorter than they, which is displeasant to the Hounds; for it is trouble-some for them to turn often, delighting more in an end-way Chase, running with all their force: For such Hares as double and cross so often, it is requisite at default to cast the greater compass about, when you beat to make it out, for so you will find all her subtilties, and yet need to stick upon none of them, but only where she went on forwards: By this means you will abate her force, and compel her to leave doubling and crossing.

How to enter Hounds to the Hate.

Let the Huntiman be fure in the first place to make his Hounds very well acquainted with him and his Voice, and let them understand the Horn; and to this end let him never blow his Horn or hollow, but when there is good cause for so doing, and let him be sure that

his Hounds want no encouragement.

Here by the way observe two remarkable thing. The first is, if you intend to enter a young Kennel of Hounds, you must take notice of the Country when you will make your first Quarry, and whereof you make it: For according to the places wherein they are first entred, and the nature of the Quarry given them, they will prove accordingly for the future. Thus is they are first entred in the Plains and Champain Countries, they will ever after more delight to Hunt there than in any other place: And so it is the same with the Coverts.

But, say some of our Huntsmen, all strange Countries that differ from that to which Hounds are accustomed, causes them at first to be at seek: But good Hounds will soon be master of any Country; and therefore is that would have the best Hounds, must use them to alk hinds of Hunting: And it is easie to bring Hounds to enjoy a Scent from a bleak Down to a fresh Pasture. And therefore many of us love to enter in the work Countries.

Do not accustom your Hounds to Hunt in the Morning, because of the Dew and Moisture of the Earth; and besides, you will find by experience, that if afterwards you Hunt them in the Heat of the Day, they will foon give over the chase; neither will they call a willingly or chearfully, but seek out the shades to step in. Yet many of us agree, that to Hunt both early and late in the morning by Trayling, advantageth the Hounds to use their Noses; and by keeping them sometimes

nake

this

ings.

here

v are

nem,

15 H

-nuo

here

h the

tria

med.

unds

e he

toal

ds to

ture.

worth

Mot-

rth;

fter-

will 1 00

(leep

and

the

ome-

mes

el of

times in the Heat of the Day, or till Night, moves them to stoutness.

The best Season to enter your young Hounds is in September and Ottober; for then the Weather is temperate, neither too hot nor too cold; and then is the time this to find young Hares which have never been Hunted, which are foolish and ignorant of the politick Crossings, that Doublings, &c. of their Sires, running commonly end-ways, frequently fquatting, and as often starting, which encouragement the Hounds are the better enered.

A Hare hath greater Scent, and is more eagerly Hunted by the Hounds, when she feedeth and relieeth on green Corn, than at any other time of the Year.

Moreover, some Hares have naturally a greater scent han others, as the great Wood-Hares, and fuch as are oul and meafled, having their greatest refort near the Water and Plashes.

The little small red Hare, not much bigger than a Goney, is very feeble, and not much coveted by the lounds, having a bad Scent: But fuch as feed on the mall branches of wild Thyme are commonly very swift, nd will stand up a long time before the Hounds.

The Does are much craftier than the Bucks, doubng and turning oftner and shorter, which is very tratious and troublesome to the Hounds. Now for th Hares as double and crofs fo often, it is requisite at default to cast the greater compass about when you to make it out; fo shall you find all their subtils; though it is needless to flick upon any, but where eywent onwards: By so doing you will abate the ree of a Hare, and force her from croffing and doub-

Some Hares hold the high beaten ways only, where Hounds can have no Scent; wherefore when the timan finds his Hounds at a default in the High-The let him Hunt on until he find where the Hare hath oken from the High way, or hath found fome Dale or

G 2

fresh

fresh place where the Hounds may recover Scent, loi ing narrowly on the ground as he goeth, if he can in

the footing or pricking of the Hare.

There are other places wherein a Hound can in no fcent; and that is in fat and rotten ground, and sticketh to the Foot of the Hare, which is call'd crying, and so consequently she leaves no scent behinder. So likewise there are certain Months where a Hound can find no scent, and that is in the Sprintime, by reason of the fragrant smell of Flowers, and like.

Shun, as much as you can, Hunting in hard frosty we ther, for so you will surbate or sounder your House and make them lose their Claws: besides, at that is a Hare runneth better than at any other time, the Su

of her feet being hairy.

To conclude, the best way of entring your yes lounds, is by the help of old Staunch-Hounds; so they the better learn to cast for it at a doubling of

fault.

What time of the Year is best for Hare-Hunting: It to find her, start her, and chase her.

The best time to begin Hare-Hunting, is about middle of September, ending towards the latter of February, lest you destroy the early Brood of Larets. Moreover, upon the approach of Winter, moistness and coolness of the Earth increaseth, his agreeable to the nature of the Hounds, and very ceptable, they ever hating extream Heats and hot We ther.

Your Hounds being two Years old and upwar you may exercise them thrice a Week, and they be the better for so often Hunting, provided you well; and keep out your Hounds the greatest part the day, both to try their stoutness, and to make the stout. If there be any Hound which hath found the Trail of a Hare where she hath relieved that night, let the Huntsman then forbear being over-hasty, but let the Hounds make it of themselves: and when he shall perceive that they begin to draw in together, and to call on freshly, then let him encourage them, especially that Hound which Hunteth best, frequently calling him by his name.

in I

1 Ca

behi

pri

indi

) At

S

Li er, Here note, that a Have leaveth better scent when the goeth to relief, than when she goeth towards her Form: For when she relieveth in the Field, she coucheth her Body low upon the ground, passing often over one piece of ground, to find where lieth the best Food; and thus leaveth the better Scent, crotying also some-

befides, when she goes to her Form, she commonly takes the High-ways, doubling, crossing, and leaping alightly as she can; in which places the Hounds can stave no scent, (as is said before) by reason of the dust, oc. And yet they will squat by the sides of the Highways, and therefore let the Huntsman beat very well the sides of those High-ways.

Now having found where a Hare hath relieved in some Pasture or Corn-field, then must you consider the Season of the Year, and what Weather it is: for if it be in the Spring-time, or Summer, a Hare will not then seinthe Bushes, because they are frequently offended with Pismires, Snakes, and Adders, but will sit in Cornfields and open places.

In Winter they love to fit near Towns and Villages Tufts of Thorns and Brambles, especially when the Wind is Northerly or Southerly.

According to the season and nature of the place where the Hare is accustomed to sit, there beat with your Hounds and start her; which is much better sport than Trailing of her from her Relief to her form.

When the Hare is started and on foot, then stepin where you faw her pass, and hollow in your Hound until they have all undertaken it, and go on with ith full cry: Then Recheat to them with your Hon following fair and foftly at first, making neither to much hafte nor noise with Horn or Voice: for at the first, Hounds are apt to over-shoot the Chase through too much heat. But having ran the space of an home and that you fee the Hounds are well in with it. flick ing well upon it, then you may come in nearer with the Hounds, because by that time their Heat will be cooled and they will Hunt more foberly. But above all thing mark the first doubling, which must be your direction for the whole day; for all the doublings that the afterwards shall make, will be like the former: and according to the policies that you shall fee her use, and the place where you Hunt, you must make your compass great or little, long or fhort, to help the defaults, ways feeking the moistest and most commodious place for the Hounds to fcent in.

To conclude, those who delight in the commendable Exercise of Hunting the Hare, must rise early, lest the be deprived of the scent of her foot-steps, by which means the Dogs will be incapacitated to follow the Game; for the nature of the scent is such, that it will not remain long, but suddenly, in a manner every hour.

vanisheth away.

Of Parks and Warrens.

ftep in

th it is

er to

at th

hrone

hour.

ftick-

ith the

cooled

thing

ection

after

accor.

nd the

pole ts, al

place

dabk

which

thei

t will hour,

Aving thus discoursed of the Nature and Properties of the Hare, together with the manner of Hunting them; in the next place I hold it not improper in short to speak something of Parks and enclosed Warrens, wherein Hares, Coneys, Deer, &c. may always be ready as it were out of a Store-house or Seminary, to serve the use and pleasure of their Masters.

The first Roman that ever enclosed wild Beasts, was Fulvius Herpinus; and Varro had the first Warren of Hares. The largest Hare-Parks that ever I heard of, and the best furnished with those fearful, yet subtile Creatures, are in Ireland; the one belongs to the Lord-Lieutenant of that Kingdom, near Dublin; and the other in the North, and belongs to the Lord of Mazareen. It will be a tedious task for me to give you an account of the variety of Parks and Warrens within the three Kingdoms; I shall therefore only tell you in what manner they are erected, and that very briefly.

The Walls or Pales must be high, or close jointed, so as neither Badger nor Cat can creep through, nor Wolf nor Fox can leap over; wherein ought also to be Bushes and broad Trees to cover the Beasts against Heat and Cold, and other secret places to satisfie their Natures, and to defend the lesser Beasts, as Hares, Coneys, &c. from Hawks, Kites, and other ravening Fowls: in which three or four couple of Hares will quickly multiply into a great Warren.

It is very good to fow Gourds, Misceline, Corn, Barley, Pease, and such-like, wherein Hares delight, and will thereby quickly grow fat.

Warreners have a very crafty device to fatten Hares, which by experience is found effectual, and that is by putting Wax into their Ears, and so make them deaf; then turn them into the place where they should feed,

where being freed from the fear of Sounds (for want of Hearing they grow fat before other of their kind.

Here note, that when you have pitched your Hays for Coneys, found a Trumpet in fome of the Burrows, and scarce a Coney in the whole Warren but will start abroad.

I shall end this Chapter with Martial's Praise of a Hare and a Thrush.

Inter Aves Turdus si quis in Judice certet, Inter Quadrupedes georia prima Lepus.

Amongst all Birds none with the Thrush compare, And no Beast hath more glory than the Hare.

Of Coney-Catching.

Before we speak of the Hunting of the Coney, it will not be amiss to take notice of her Nature and Properties, which are these: She carrieth her young in her Belly thirty days; as soon as she hath kindned she goes to Buck. They begin to breed in England at a year old (but sooner in other places) and so continue, bearing at least seven times in a year if they Litter in March; this is the reason that a small stock will serve to increase a large Warren. The Does cannot suckle their young till they have been with the Buck, which must be done presently, or she will not be inclined sourceen days after.

When the Buck goes to Doe, he will beat very ftrongly with his fore-foot upon the ground, and by that means he heateth himself. When he hath buckt, he is accustomed to fall backwards, and lie as if he were in a Trance, or halfdead, at which time he is easi-

ly taken.

The

Vant

heir

Tays

OWS.

ftart

of a

TO-

her

goes

ring

ch :

eafe

ung

one

ter.

by.

kt.

he afiThe Latins call a Coney, Cuniculus, because it maketh Holes in the Earth; and Cuniculus was a Latin Word for a Hole or Cave in the Earth, before it was taken for a Coney.

The Bucks will kill the young if they can come at them, like to your Bore-cats; and therefore the Doe prevents that mischief, by covering her Stop or Nest with Earth or Gravel, that so they may not easily be discovered.

Those who keep Coneys tame for profit, may give them to eat Vine-leaves, Fruits, Herbs, Grass, Bran, Oatmeal, Mallows, Milk-thistles, Apple-parings, Cabbage, Lettice, or Carret-tops. In Winter they will eat Hay, Oats, and Chaff, being given to them thrice a day: but when they eat green things, they must not drink at all, because of the Dropsie which will follow: At all other times a little drink must serve their turn, and that must be always fresh. Here note, give them not too much green juicy meat, unless you intermix therewith what is dry, as Oats, Chaff, &c. otherwise they will be Cashed, of tun-belly d.

Now the way of taking them is either by small Currs or Spaniels bred up for that sport; and their places for Hunting are among Bushes and Hedges; or else by coursing them with small Grey-hounds. In their default they are commonly driven into their Burrows; and therefore it will be very requisite to set Purse-ners on the Holes, then put in a Ferret close muzzled, and she will make the Coneys bolt out again into the Purse-nets, and so you may take them. Some say the Drone of a Bag-pipe, put into a Coney-Burrow, and blown on a sudden, will make Coneys bolt.

For want of a Ferret, you may take the Pouder of Orpine and some Brimstone, and therewith make a smother in the Burrows, and so they will bolt out. But this way is not to be approved of; for by that means the Coneys will for sake those Burrows, and so in a little time a Warren will be deftroy'd, should this course be used

frequently.

But above Nets and Ferrets, Hays are to be preferred for the taking of *Coneys*; neither is the drawing Ferret to be despised when they are young. Likewise there is excellent sport to be made with our Tumblers, who will kill *Coneys* abundantly.

Let this suffice, since any farther Discourse hereof is neither proper nor pertinent to my present pur-

pose.

Of the Ferret.

The Ferret is a little Creature that is not bred in Spain, Italy, France, nor Germany; but in England they breed naturally, and are tamed for the benefit of such who keep Warrens, and others.

It is a bold and audacious Beaft, Enemy to all others but his own kind, drinking and fucking in the Blood of

the Beast it biteth, but eateth not the Flesh.

When the Warrenner hath an occasion to use his Ferret, he first makes a noise in the Warren to frighten what Coneys are abroad into their Burrows, and then he pitcheth his Nets; after that, he puts his Ferret into the Earth, having a long Strick, with Bells about her Neck, whose mouth must be muzzled, so that he may not seize, but frighten the Coneys out of their Burrows, and afterwards driven by Dogs into the Nets or Hays so planted for them.

The Body is longer for the proportion than the quantity may afford. Their colour is variable, fometimes black and white on the Belly, but most commonly of a yellowish sandy colour, like Wooll died in Urine. The Head is little like a Mouse's; and therefore into whatsoever Hole she can put it in, all her Body will easily

fol-

fed

ed

is

of

1

follow after. The Eyes are small, but siery like redhot Iron, and therefore she seeth most clearly in the
dark. Her Voice is a whining cry without changing it:
She hath only two Teeth in her nether Chap, standing out, and not joined and growing together. The
Genital of the Male is of a bony substance, and therefore
it always standeth siff, and is not lesser at one time than
another. The pleasure of the sence in Copulation is
not in the Genital Part, but in the Muscles, Tunicles, and
Nerves wherein the said Genital runneth. When they
are in Copulation, the Female lieth down, or bendeth
her Knees, and continually crieth like a Cat, either because the Male claweth her with his Nails, or by reason
of the roughness of his Genital.

She usually brings forth seven or eight at a time, carrying them forty days in her little Belly: The young ones newly littered are blind thirty days together; and within forty days after they can see, they may be used

as their Dam for Profit and Recreation.

When tamed, they are nourished with Milk or with Barley-bread, and they can fast a very long time. When they go, they contract their long Back, and make it stand upright in the middle round like a Bowl: when they are touched, they smell like a Martel; and they sleep very much. Thus much of the Ferret, which I thought good to place after the Chapter of Coney-catching, because this little Animal is such a necessary Instrument for that purpose.

Of Fox-Hunting.

HIs Shape and Proportion is so well known, being a Beast so common, that it will be needless to describe him.

His nature in many respects is like that of a Wolf; for they bring as many Cubs at a Litter one as the other: but thus they differ; the Fox Litters deep under

the ground, fo doth not the Wolf.

A Bitch-Fox is hardly to be taken when she is bragged and with Cub; for then she will lie near her Burrow, into which she runs upon the hearing of the least noise: And indeed at any time it is somewhat dissipant; for the Fox (and so the Wolf) is a very subtile crafty Creature.

Fox-Hunting is very pleasant; for by reason of his strong hot scent he maketh an excellent Cry: And as his scent is hottest at hand, so it dies soonest. Besides, he never slies far besore the Hounds, trusting not on his Legs, Strength, or Champion Ground, but strongest Coverts. When he can no longer stand up before the Hounds, he then taketh Earth, and then must he be digged out.

If Grey-hounds course him on a Plain, his last refuge is to piss on his Tail, and slap it in their faces as they come near him; sometimes squirting his thicker Excrement upon them, to make them give over the Course or

Purfuit.

When a Bitch-Fox goes a clicketing and feeketh for a Dog, she crieth with a hollow Voice, not unlike the howling of a mad Dog; and in the same manner she cries when she misseth any of her Cubs: but never makes any cry at all when she is killing, but defends herself to the last gasp.

A Fox will prey upon any thing he can overcome, and feeds upon all forts of Carrion; but their Dainties, and the Food which they most delight in, is Poultry. They are very destructive and injurious to Coney-Warrens, and will sometimes kill Hares by deceit and subtilty, and not by swift running.

The Fox is taken with Hounds, Grey-hounds, Ter-

riers, Nets, and Gips.

If;

ler

g-

r-If

fi-

lė

Ś

Of Terriers there are two forts. The one is crookedlegg'd, and commonly short-hair'd: and these will take Earth well, and will lie very long at Fox or Badger. The other fort is shagged and streight-legg'd: and these will not only Hunt above-ground as other Hounds, but also enter the Earth with wuch more sury than the former; but cannot stay in so long by reason of their great eagerness.

The time of entring these Terriers, is when they are near a twelve month old; for if you enter him not in within this time, you will hardly after bring him to take the Earth. And to encourage the young Terrier the more, put in an old one before him, than can better endure the fury of the Fox or Badger; and be careful that neither of them be old when you engage your young

Terrier with him.

The entring and fleshing them may be done several ways. In the first place thus: When Foxes and Badgers have young Cubs, then take your old Terriers and enter them in the ground; and when they begin to bay; you must then hold every one of your Terriers at a fundry Hole or Mouth of the Earth, that they may liften and hear the old ones Bay. Having taken the old Fox or Badger, and that nothing remains within but the young Cubs, then couple up all your old Terriers, and put in the young intheir stead, encouraging them by crying, To him, to him, to bim. And if they take any young Cub within the ground, let them alone to do what they please with him; and forget not to give the old Terriers their reward, which is the Blood and Livers, fried with Cheese and some of their own Greafe, shewing them the Heads and Skins to

encou-

encourage them. Before you reward them, wash them with Soap and warm Water, to clear their Skins from Earth and Clay that is clodded to the Hair, otherwife they are apt to be mangie. You may also enter them in this manner: Take on old Fox, or Badger, and cut away the nether law, but meddle not with the other. leaving the upper to shew the fury of the Beast, although it can do no harm therewith. Then dig an Earth in some convenient place in your own grounds. and be careful to make it wide enough, to the intent the Terriers may turn therein the better, and that there may be room enough for two to enter together: Then cover the Hole with Boards and Turf, putting the Fox or Badger first therein, and afterwards put in your Terriers both young and old, encouraging them with words that are the usual terms of Art, When they have bay'd fufficiently, then begin to dig with Spades and Mattocks, to encourage them against such time as you are to dig over them: then take out the Fox or Badger with the Clamps or Pinchers, killing it before them, or let a Grev-hound kill it in their fight, and make them reward thereof. Here note, that instead of cutting away the Taw, it will be every whit as well to break out all his Teeth, to prevent him from biting the Terriers.

Now to fay the truth, there is not much passime or pleasure in Hunting of a Fox under-ground; for as soon as that subtle Creature perceiveth the Terriers, if they bay hard, and lie near unto them, they will bolt out immediately, unless it be when the Bitch hath young Cubs,

then they will fooner die than ftir.

They make their Earths as near as they can in ground that is hard to dig, as in Clay, Stoney-ground, or amongst the Roots of Trees; and their Earths have commonly but one Hole, and that is streight a long way in before it come at their Couch. Sometimes crastily they possess themselves of a Badger's old Burrow, which hath variety of Chambers, Holes, and Angles.

m

m

fe

m

ıt

n

When a good Terrier doth once bind the Fox, he then yearns, and defends himfelf very notably, but not fo strenuously as the Badger, nor is his biting half fo dangerous. Here note, if you take a Bitch-Fox when fhe goeth a Clicketing, and cut out that gut which containeth her Sperm, together with the Kidneys which Gelders deprive Bitches of when they spay them, and cut them into small gobbets, mingling therewith the Gum of Mastich, and put them hot as they are into a Pot, and cover the fame close, it will ferve for an excellent train for a Fox, and will keep the whole Year Take the Skin of Bacon, and broil it well on a Gridiron, then dip it in the Ingredients of the Pot aforesaid, and make a train thereof, you well experimentally find, that if there be any Fox near to any place where the Train is drawn, he will follow it; but let him who makes the Train rub the Soals of his Feet with Cow-dung, left the Fox vent his Footing: And thus you may train a Fox to a standing, and kill him in an Evening with Gun or Cross-bow. likewise found by Experience, that if a Terrier be rubbed with Brimstone, or with Oil of Cade, and then put him into an Earth where either a Fox or Badger is, they will leave that Earth, and come not to it again a good while after.

Ishall conclude this Discourse with what I have obferved in Gesner's History of Beasts, tending to the same purpose: Saith he, As he frequently cheats the Badger of his Habitation by laying his Excrements at the mouth of his Earth or Burrow; so, for a smuch as the Wolf is an Enemy to the Fox, he layeth in the mouth of his Earth an Herb called a Sea-onion, which a Wolf naturally hates, and is so averse thereunto, that he will never come near the place where it either lies or grows.

Of Fox-Hunting above-ground.

To this purpose you must draw with your Hounds about Groves, Thickets, and Bushes near Villages: for a Fox will lurk in such places, to prey on young Pigs

and Pullein.

But it will be necessary to stop up his Earths, if you can find them, the night before you intend to Hunt; and the best time will be about midnight, for then the Fox goeth out to seek his Prey. You may stop his Holes by laying two white sticks across before them, which will make him imagin it is some Gin or Traplaid for him: or else you may stop them up close with black Thorns and Earth together.

The best Hunting a Fox above-ground is in January, February, and March, for then you shall best see your Hounds Hunting, and best find his Earthing; besides, at

those times the Fox's Skin is best in season.

Again, the Hounds best Hunt the Fox in the coldest Weather, because he leaveth a very strong scent behind him; yet in cold Weather it chills fastest.

At first only cast off your fure Finders, and as the Drag mends, so add more as you dare trust them.

Shun casting off too many Hounds at once, because Woods and Coverts are full of fundry Chases, and so you may engage them in too many at one time.

Let such as you cast off at first be old Staunch-Hounds, which are sure; and if you hear such a Hound call on merrily, you may cast off some other to him; and when they run it on the full cry, cast off the rest and thus you shall compleat your passime.

The words of comfort are the same which are used in the other Chases, attended with the same Hollowings

and other Ceremonies.

Let the Hounds kill the Fox themselves, and worry and hare him as much as they please: many Hounds will eat him with eagerness.

When

When he is dead, hang him at the end of a Pike-staff, and hollow in all your Hounds to bay him: but reward them not with any thing belonging to the Fox; for it is not good, neither will they eat it.

ids

for

OU

he his

ck

ıd

10

e o

d

....

Of Badger-Hunting.

A Badger is called by several Names, viz. a Gray, Brock, Boreson, or Bauson, and in French Tauson. The Male is called a Badger or Boar-pig; and the Female is called a Sow.

These Beasts are plentiful in Naples, Sicily, Lucane, and in the Alpine and Helverian Coasts; so are they also here in England.

There are two kinds of this Beaft, (faith Gefner), one resembling a Dog in his Feet, and the other a Hog in his cloven Hoos: they differ too in their snout and colour; for the one resembles the snout of a Dog, the other of a Swine: the one hath a greyer coat, or whiter coat than the other, and goeth farther out in seeking of its prey. They differ also in their meat, the one eating Flesh and Carrion like a Dog, the other Roots and Fruits like a Hog: both these kinds have been found in Normandy, France, and Sicily.

Mr. Turbervil makes mention of two forts of Badgers likewise, but in a different manner: For the one (saith he) casteth his Fiaunts long like a Fox, and have their residence in Rocks, making their Burrows very deep. The other fore make their Burrows in light ground, and have more variety of Cells and Chambers than the former. The one of these is called the Badger-pig, and the other the Badger-whelp; or call one Canine, and the other Swinish, The sirst hath his Nose, Throat, and Ears yellowish like a Martern's Throat; and are much blacker, and higher legg'd than the Badger-whelp.

whelp. Both forts live upon all Flesh, hunting greedily after Carrion. They are very mischievous and huntul to Warrens, especially when they are big with

young.

Badgers when they Earth, after by digging they have entred a good depth, for the clearing of the Earth out, one of them falleth one the back, and the other layeth Earth on the belly, and so taking his hinder feet in his mouth, draweth the belly-laden Badger out of the Hole or Cave; and having disburde ned her self, re-enters, and doth the like till all be finished.

These Badgers are very sleepy, especially in the daytime, and seldom stir abroad but in the night, for which cause they are called Lucifuge, avoiders of the

Light ...

It is very pleasant to behold them when they gather materials for their Couch, as straw, leaves, moss, and such-like; for with their feet and their head they will wrap as much together as a Man can well carry unler his arm, and will make shift to get it into their Cells and Couches.

He hath very sharp Teeth, and therefore is accounted a deep biting Beaft: his Back is broad, and his Legs are longer on the right fide than the left, and therefore he runneth best when he gets on the side of an Hill, or a Cart-road-way. His fore-Legs have very fharp Nails, bare, and apt to dig withal, being five both before and behind, but the hinder very much thorter, and covered with hair. His favour is strong, and much troubled with Lice about the Secrets. Both Male and Female have under their Hole another Hole outwardly, but not inwardly in the Male. If the be hunted abroad with Hounds, she biteth them most grieyously where-ever she lays hold on them. For the prevention thereof, the careful Huntimen put great broad Collars made of Grays Skins about their Dogs Necks. Her manner is to fight on her back, using thereby both her Teeth and her Nails; and by blowing up their Skin after

after a strange and wonderful manner, she defendeth her felf against any blow and teeth of Dogs; only a small stroke on her Nose will dispatch her presently; you may thrash your Heart weary on her Back, which she values as a matter of nothing.

In Italy they eat the Flesh of Badgers, and so they do in Germany, boiling it with Pears: some have eaten it here in England, but like it not, being of a sweet rankish

tafte.

eedi.

-חטרו-

with

have

out,

yeth

n his

Hole

ters,

day-

for

the

ther

and

will

r his

and

unt-

his

and

fide

nave

eing

uch

ong,

Both

lole

be

rie-

ore-

oad cks.

oth

kin

The Flesh is best in September, if it be fat; and of the two kinds, the Swinish Badger is better Flesh than the other.

They love Hogs-slesh above any other; for take but a piece of Pork and train it over a Badger's Burrow, if he be within, you shall quickly see him appear without.

Their Nature is very cold; and therefore when it

or four days together.

They live long, and by meer age will grow blind; then they will not fir out of their Holes, but are fed by

hose who have their fight.

This subtility they have, that when they perceive the Terriers begin to yearn them, they will stop the Hole between the Terriers and them: if the Terriers continue baying, they will remove their Baggage with them, ad go into another Apartment or Chamber of the Butow, (for know that some of their Houses have half a bren Rooms at least;) and so will remove from one to the other, till they can go no farther, barricadoing the my as they go.

The Hunting of a Badger must be after this manner: for must first seek the Earths and Burrows where he in the and in a clear Moon-shine night go and stop all the Holes but one or two, and therein place some Sacks afted with some drawing-strings, which may shut him

as foon as he straineth the Bag.

The Sacks or Bags being thus set, east off your Hounds, and beat all the Groves, Hedges, and Tuss within a mile or two about. What Badgers are abroad being alarm'd by the Dogs, will streight repair to the

Earths or Burrows, and so be taken.

Let him that standeth to watch the Sacks, stand close, and upon a clear Wind, for else the Badger will soon find him, and sly some other way for safety. But if the Hounds either encounter him, or undertake the Chase before he can get into his Earth, he will the stand at Bay like a Boar, and make most incomparable sport.

What Instruments are to be used in digging, and but to dig for Badger or Fox.

In the first place, you must have such as are able a dig; next, you must have so many Terriers garnish with Bells hung in Collars, to make the Fox or Bally bolt the sooner; besides, the Collars will be some small

defence unto the Terriers.

The Instruments to dig withal are these: A shap pointed Spade, which serveth to begin the Trench who the ground is hardest, and broader Tools will not well enter; the round hollowed Spade, which is used to dig amongst Roots, having very sharp edges; the broad Spade, to dig withal when the Trench is bear opened, and the ground softer; Mattocks and Pickars to dig in hard ground where a Spade will do but his service; the Cole-rake, to cleanse the Hole, and toke it from stopping up; the Clamps, whereby you make a Fox or Badger out alive to make sport therein afterwards. And it would not be amiss to have a soft Water to refresh your Terriers after they are cout of the Earth to take breath.

In this order you may besiege a Fox or Badger into strongest Holes or Castles, and may break their C mats, Platforms, Parapets, and work to them Mines and Counter-mines, until you have obtained your fatisfaction. But there is a shorter method than this, which by reason of its commonness I shall forbear to mention.

Tufu

road

their

Stand

afety.

l the

ble

nifte Badge final

That when the fall better

-are lim oke

a m

e co

n the

F C

W

Min

Of the Otter.

IT is supposed by some that the Otter is of the kind of Beavers, being it is an amphibious Creature, living both in the Water and on the Land; besides, the outward form of the Parts beareth a similitude of that Beast. Some say were his tail off, he were in all parts like a Beaver, differing in nothing but habitation: For the Beaver frequenteth both the Salt-water and the Fresh; but the Otter never goeth to the Salt.

Though the Otter liveth in the Water, yet it doth not breathe like Fishes through the benefit of the Water, it doth breathe like other four-footed Beasts, yet it will remain a long time underneath the Water without refoiration.

If he want Prey in the Waters, then will he quit them for the Land; and if by painful Hunting ashoar he cannot fill his belly, he will feed on Herbs, Snails, or Frogs; neither will he take less pains in the Water to satisfie Hunger: for he will swim two miles together against the stream, that so, when his belly is full, the current of the stream may carry him again down to his designed Lodging, which is near the Water, very artiscially built with boughs, sprigs, and sticks, couching together in excellent order, wherein he sitteth to keep him from the wet.

In the hunting of Fish, he often pops his Nose above water to take breath: It is a Creature of wonderful swiftness and nimbleness in taking his Prey, and for H 3 greedi-

greediness takes more than he knows what to do with.

It is a very fubtile and crafty Beaft, and endowed with a wonderful fagacity and fense of fmelling, infomuch that he can directly wind the Fishes in the Water

a mile or two off.

The Flesh of this Beast is both cold and filthy, because it feedeth on stinking Fish, and therefore no fit to be eaten; yet it is eaten in Germany; and the Carthusian Fryers, who are forbidden to eat all manner of Flesh of other four-footed Beasts, yet they are not prohibited the eating of Otters. Thereare those in England, who lately have highly valued an

Otter-Pie, much good may it do them with it.

These Otters must be hunted by special Dogs, such as are called Otter-Hounds, and also with special Instruments called Otter-Spears. When they find themselves wounded with a Spear, they then come to Land, where they fight with the Dogs furiously; and except they be first wounded, they forsake not the Water: for they are not ignorant how fafe a refuge the Waters are unto them, and how unequal a combat they shall sustain with Men and Dogs upon the Land : yet, because the cold Water annoyeth their green Wounds, therefore they fpin out their Lives to the length of the thread, chufing rather to die in torments among Dogs, than to die in the Waters.

The Food of an Otter (as I faid) is Fish; and her abode is commonly under the Root of some Tree near Rivers, Brooks, Pools, Meers, or Fish-ponds; and sometimes she will lie in a hollow Tree four or five foot above ground: and no Vermin can be more destructive to a Warren, than the Otter is to a Fish-pond; for she diveth and hunteth under water after that most wonderful manner, that few Fish escape her, unless they are

very swift and great.

do do

info-

aten

thy,

not s

and t all

they

e are

1 an

fuch

tru-

lves

ere

y be hey

nto

ith

old

hey

in

ner ear

nd

ot

he

n-

re

p

An Otter and Ferret grow falt much about the same time, and bring forth their young much after the same manner, neither having their constant number.

There is much craft and cunning in the Hunting them; yet with pains-taking you may enfinare them under the Water, and by River-sides, as you may a Hare with Hare-pipes and such-like Gins. They bite fore and venomously, and when occasion serves they will defend themselves stoutly. If after their ensuring they chance to abide there long, they will soon enlarge themselves with their teeth.

These Creatures are footed like your water-Fowl, having a web between their claws, and have no heel, but around ball under the soal of their feet: and their Track is called their Mark, as the Slot of a Hart; and their Excrements are called Spraints.

An Otter will not abide long in a place; for he is apt to be afraid and take diftafte, (having an excellent Ear and Nofe, for hearing and smelling; and then he will forfake his Couch, and shift a mile or two up or down the River: and this he will do according as he finds scarcity of Fishing.

In Hunting of the Otter observe this, to send some to one side of the River whilst you are on the other, and so beat on the Banks with your Dogs, and so you will soon find if there be an Otter in that quarter: for an Otter cannot endure long in the Water, but most come forth to make his Spraints, and in the night sometimes to seed on Grass and such Herbs as the Fields afford.

If any of the Hounds find out an Otter, then look in the foft grounds and moist places to see which way he bent his head: if the Marks make no discovery, you may partly perceive it by the Spraints, and so follow the Hounds, and lodge him as a Hart or Deer. If you find not the Otter quickly, you may then imagine he is gone to couch somewhere farther off from the River: for sometimes he will seek his food a mile

from the place of his rest, chusing rather to go up the River than down, because upwards he meets with better scent of Fish; and bearing his Nose into the Wind, he shall the sooner find any fault that is above him.

Remember, in the Hunting of the Otter, that you and your Friends carry your Otter-Spears to watch his Vents, for that is the chief advantage: and if you perceive where the Otter swims under water, then strive to get to a stand before him where he would vent, and there endeavour to strike him with your Spear; but if you miss, pursue him with the Hounds, which if they be good Otter-Hounds, and perfectly entred, will come chaunting and trailing along by the River-side, and will beat every Tree-root, every Osier-bed and tust of Bullrushes; nay, sometimes they will take the Water, and beat it like a Spaniel. And by these means the Otter can hardly escape you.

Of the Squirrel.

The first Author that ever wrote of this little Animal, was Oppianus, who liv'd in the days of Animus Casar, and wrote a Book also of Hunting.

A Squirrel is greater in compass than a Weaste, but the latter is longer than the other; the back-parts and all the Body is reddish except the Belly, which is white. In Helvetia they are black and branded, and they are Hunted at the fall of the Leaf, when the Trees grow naked: for they run and leap from bough to bough in a most admirable and agile manner; and when the Leaves are on, they cannot so well be discerned. They are of three colours; in the first age black, in the second of rusty Iron-colour, and lastly, when old, they are full of white hoar Hairs. Their teeth are like the teeth of Mice, having the two under-teeth very long and sharp. Their

Tail is always as big as their Body, and it lieth continually on their Back when they fleep or fit still, and it

feemeth to be given them for a covering.

he

ıd,

On nis

1.

to

nd

if

ey

ne ill

11-

nd

27

ĵ.

.

1

In

-

re

of a

In the Summer-time they build them Nests (which by some are called Drays) in the tops of the Trees very artificially with Sticks and Moss, with other things the Woods afford, and then they fill it with Nuts for Winter-provision, and do sleep like the Alpine Mouse most part thereof very foundly, in fuch fort, that the beating of the outside of their Drays will not wake them.

When they leap from Tree to Tree, they use their Tail instead of Wings, leaping a great distance, and are supported without finking to any one's appearance; nay, they will frequently leap from a very high Tree

down to the ground, and receive no harm.

Many must go together to Hunt them, and must carry Dogs with them; and the fittest place for the exercise of this sport, is in little and small slender Woods, fuch as may be shaken by the hand. Bows are requisite to remove them when they rest in the twists of Trees; for they will not be much terrified with all the hollowing, except they be struck now and then by one means or other. Well do they know what harbour a high Oak is unto them, and how fecure they can lodge therein from Men and Dogs; wherefore fince it is too troublesom to climb every Tree, that labour must be supplied with Bows and Bolts, that when the Squirrel resteth, presently he may be thumpt by the blow of an Arrow: the Archer need not fear to do her much harm, except he hit her on the head; for by reason of a strong back-bone, and fleshy parts, she will abide as great a ftroak as a Dog.

If they be driven to the ground from the Trees, and they creep into Hedges, it is a fign of their weariness: for fuch is the lofty Mind of this little Beaft, that while her strength lasteth, she saveth her self in the tops of high trees; but being wearied, she descendeth, and falls into the mouths of the yelping Currs that attend her.

The admirable Wit of the Squirrel appeareth (if it be true) in her fwimming, or passing over a River; for when Hunger constraineth her so to do, she seeks out some rind, or small bark of a tree, which she setteth upon the water, and then goeth into it, and holding up her Tail like a Sail, letteth the Wind drive her to the other side; and carry meat in their mouths, to prevent samine whatsoever should befall them,

Of the Martern and Wild Cat.

A Martern is about the bigness of a Cat, having a longer body, but shorter legs, with head and tail like a Fox; its skin is commonly brown, white on the throat, and somewhat yellowish on the back.

Their teeth are exceeding white, and unequal, being above measure sharp; the canine teeth both above and

below hang out very long.

This and the Wild-Cat are a fort of Vermin which we use here in England commonly to Hunt, and as necessary to be Hunted as any Vermin can be: For the question may be doubtful, whether either Fox or Badger do more hurt than the Wild Cat doth, since there are so many Warrens every where throughout the Kingdom of England which are very much insested by the Wild-Cat.

It is the Opinion of long-experienced Huntsmen, that she leaveth as great scent, and maketh as good a Cry for the time as any Vermin that is Hunted, especially the Martern passeth all other Vermin for sweetness of scent, and her Case is a noble Furr. The Wild-Cat's Case is not so good, but it is very warm, and medicinal for several Aches and Pains in the Bones and Joints: also her Grease is very good for Sinews that are shrunk.

Thefe

These two Chases are not to be sought purposely, unless the Huntsman do see them where they prey, and can go readily to them; but if a Hound chance to cross them, he will hunt it as soon as any Chase, and they make a nobly Cry as long as they stand up; when they can do it no longer, they will take a tree, and so deceive the Hounds; but if the Hounds hold in to them, and will not give it over so, then they will leap from one Tree to another, and make great shift for their Lives, with much pastime to the Huntsmen.

When they are killed, you must hold them up upon a piked staff, and hollow in all your Hounds, and then reward them with some meat; for the Flesh of these

Vermin is naught for Hounds.

T;

out

Ip-

ner

ner fa-

il

ASHORT

ACCOUNT

Of fome particular BEASTS that are not Hunted in England, but in Foreign Countries.

The Nature and Properties of a VVolf, and the manner of its Hunting.

Eretofore I read that there were many Wolves in England, but now there are none; however, they are still in Ireland, but their number is very much decreased within these thirty years; and that they may more and more decrease, being so pernicious to all sorts of Cattel, I thought good to publish the nature and manner of their Hunting.

First, as to their Nature: They go a Clicketting in February, and continue in that manner ten or twelve days. Where many Wolves are, many will follow one Bitch, as Dogs will follow a Bitch that is falt, but she

will be only lined with one.

A notable Story I have heard when I was in Ireland, and attested for a truth by the Inhabitants: That a Bitch-Wolf proud, will suffer a great many of the Male to follow her, and will carry them after her sometimes eight or ten days without Meat, Drink, or Rest; and when they are so tired that they cannot travel farther.

the will first lie down, then will the rest follow her example: when she perceives that they are all assep, and through weariness snore, then will she arise and awake that Wolf which she observed to follow her most, and having so done, entice him with her far from the rest, and suffer him to line her: the rest awaking and finding her missing, pursue her by the scent, and finding how she hath cunningly deluded them, they fall instantly on her Companion who hath been before-hand with them, and revenge themselves on him by depriving him of his life; which verifies the Proverb, Never Wolf yet ever saw his Sire.

Their Whelps are able to ingender at twelve months end, at which age they part with their Dam, that is, when those Teeth are grown which they cast the first half year, and being grown, they never shed them again: And here see their gratitude, (though bloody cruel Creatures) after they have preyed for themselves, if they chance to meet their Dam or Sire (for Turbervile doth not believe the aforesaid Story) they will fawn upon them, and lick them, rejoicing at the sight

of them.

The Dog will never bring any of his Prey to his Whelps till he hath filled his own Belly; whereas the Bitch will not eat a bit till she hath served them first: they go nine weeks with Whelp, and sometimes a little longer, and grow salt but once a year. As to number of Whelps, they have more or less as Dogs have; for doubtless both the Wolf and the Fox are but a kind of

wild Mastiffs and wild Currs.

They prey upon all kind of things, and will feed on Carrion, Vermin, &c. They will kill a Cow or a Bullock; and as for a Sheep, Goat, or good Porket, they will roundly carry him off in their Mouths, not touching ground with it, and will run fo fast away, notwithstanding the load, that they are hardly to be stopped but by Mastiss or Horse-men. There is no Beast which runneth faster than the Wolf, and holdeth wonder-

wonderfully also. When he is Hunted with Hounds, he flieth not far before them; and unless he be coursed with Grey-hounds or Mastiffs, he keepeth the Covert like the Bear, or Boar, and especially the beaten ways therein. Night is the usual time of his preying, though Hunger will force him to prey by day. They are more subtile and crasty (if more can be) than the Fox or any other Beast: When they are Hunted, they will take all their advantages; at other times they will never run over-hastily, but keep themselves in breath and force always.

A Wolf will stand up a whole day before a good Kennel of Hounds, unless that Grey-hounds or Wolf-dogs course him. If he stand at bay, have a care of being bitten by him; for being then mad, the Wound is de-

sperate, and hard to be cured.

When a Wolf falls into a Flock of Sheep, with his good will he would kill them all before be feed upon any of them, and therefore all means should be used to destroy them, as by Hunting at force, or with Greyhounds or Mastiffs, or caught in Gins and Snares; but they had need be strong. For encouragement to the meaner fort in Ireland, whosoever took a sucking Whelp, or preying Cub, a Dog or a Bitch-Wolf, and brought but the Heads of either to the next Justice of Peace, for reward for the sirst, he received twenty shillings; for the second, forty; for the third, sive pound; and for the last, six pounds: which late encouragement hath in a manner cleared that Kingdom of them.

They bark and howl like unto Dogs; and if there be but two of them together, they make fech a terrible hideous noise, that you would think there could be no

lefs than twenty of them in a body.

When any one would Hunt the Wolf, he must train him by these means: First, let him look out some fair place, a mile or more from the great Woods, where there is some close standing to place a brace of good

Grey-

1

t

1

g

a

(

1

Grev-hounds in, if need be, the which should be closely environned, and some Pond of Water by it: There he must kill a Horse that is worth little, and take the four Legs thereof, and carry them into the Woods and Forrests adjoining; then let four Men take every Man a Leg of the Beaft, and draw it at his Horse-tail all along the Paths and Ways in the Woods, until they come back again to the place where the Carcase of the said Beast lieth; there let them lay down their Trains. Now when the Wolves go out in the night to prey, they will follow the fcent of the Train till they come to the Carcafe where it lieth. Then let those who love the Sport, with their Huntimen come early and privately near the place : and if they are discernable as they are feeding, in the first place let them consider which way will be the fairest Course for the Grey-hounds, and place them accordingly, and as near as they can let them forestal with their Grey-hounds the fame way that the Wolves did. or are flying either then or the night before; but if the Wolves be in the Coverts near the Carrion that was laid for them to feed upon, then let there by Hewers fet round the Coverts to make a noise on every side. but only that where the Grey-hounds do stand; and let them stand thick together, making what noise they can to force them to the Grey-hounds: Then let the Huntsman go with his Leam-hound, and draw from the Carrion to the Thickets fides where the Wolves have gone in, and there the Huntsman shall cast off the third part off their best Hounds; for a Wolf will fometimes hold a Covert a long time before he will come out.

The Huntsmen must hold near in to the Hounds blowing hard, and encouraging them with their Voice: for many Hounds will strain Courtesse at this Chase, although they are strong and six for all other Chases.

When the Wolf cometh to the Grey-hounds, they who hold them will do well to fuffer the Wolf to pass by the first rank until he come further, and let the last Rank let slip their Grey-hounds sull in the face of the Wolf, and at the same instant let all the other Ranks let slip also: so that the first Rank staying him but ever so little, he may be assaulted on all sides at once, and by that means they shall the more easily take him.

It is best entring of Hounds at young Wolves which are not yet past half a year or a year old; for a Hound will Hunt such more willing, and with less fear than an old Wolf; or you may take Wolves alive in Eagines, and breaking their Teeth, enter your Hounds at them.

A Man may know a Dog-Wolf from a Bitch by the tracks of his feet; for the Dog hath a greater Heel, a greater Toe, greater Nails, and a rounder Foot. Besides, the Bitch casteth her Fiaunts commonly in the midst of an High-way, whereas the Dog casteth them either on the one side or the other of the Path.

The Reward of the Dogs is thus: when they have bit and shaked the dead Wolf, let the Huntsman then open his Belly streight along, and taking out his Borels, let him throw in Bread, Cheese, and other Scrap,

and so let the Dogs feed therein.

Wild

God

N.

or f

nd

age och

nev en o

1

dot

T

lew.

A.

nets

Th

u ke

Thick

Wild Goat Hunting.

Never cou'd read or hear that there was ever any fuch Chafe in England as the Hunting of the Wild-Goar : But fince there may be fuch Sport in Wales, as here hath been elfewhere, it will not be much amils to give fome fhort account thereof.

The Wild-Goat is as big as a Hart, but not fo long, or fo long Legg'd, but is as fleshy. They have Wreaths nd wrinkles on their Horns, which declare what their age is: for according to the quantity of the Wreaths, ich is the number of their Years; which Wreaths he neweth, but not his Beam, the which may be, if he be nold Gom, as big as a Man's Leg.

They have a great long Beard, and are of a brownish my colour very shaggy, having a long black List down he ridge of the Back, and the Track is bigger than the

lot of a Hart. als 10

9

They fawn as a Hind or Doe in May, and have but one which they fuckle and bring up as the tame Goat och her Kid.

They feed like Deer, only they will eat besides Ivy, and fuch like. In Spring they make their Funets round, and afterwards broad and flat, as the Hart

hen he comes to feed well.

They go to rut about Alhallontide, and continue berein a month or five weeks; that Season being over, bey descend from the Mountains and Rocks, their ode for the Summer-feason, and herd themselves, ot only to avoid the Snow, but because they can find o Food any longer; and yet they come not very low, tkeep at the foot of the Mountains, feeding there Teafer: then they return again, every one chuling me strong Hold in the Rocks, as the Harts in the hickets.

About Fawning-time the Females separate from the Males, attending till Rutting-time: In this interval they will run at Man or Beast, and fight as Harts dogs.

amongst the other.

When he goeth to rut, his throat and neck is most bigger than usual: He is very strong backt; and (which is wonderful) though he should fall from on high to Poles length, he will receive no harm; and will walk a securely on the sharp tops of Rocks, as a Horse in the High-way.

Alhallontide is the chiefest Season for Hunting the Wild-Goats, observing very well before you Hunt, the advantages of the Coasts, the Rocks and Places when

the Goats do lie.

Having thus done, fet Nets and Toils toward the Rivers and Bottoms; for you cannot expect your Hound should follow a Goas down every place of the Moutains.

Also it will be needful that some stand on the top of the Rocks, and throw down Stones as they see consion. Where the Goat goeth down to the small Brooks or Waters in the Bottom, there place you Relays, and let the Relays never tarry till the House come in which were cast off: and this is your best Help; for a Man can neither follow on foot nor house back.

n the

O One

mod

h te

lka

1 the

theé

e Ri-

新年星至恒谷克

Hunting of the Wild Boar.

The Boar is ever pigg'd with as many teeth at first as he shall have ever after, which will only increase in bigness, not number. Amongst the rest, they have four which are called Tushes, or Tusks, whereof the two biggest do not hurt when he strikes, but serve only to whet the other two lowest, with which they frequently kill.

They feed upon all kind of Corn and Fruits which they can come at; also Roots. In April and May they feed on the Buds of Plumb-trees, and Cheinut-trees, and all other sweet Buds they can find, especially on the Buds of Broom and Juniper, and are never meassed, as our tame Swine. Being near the Sea-coast, they will feed on all manner of Shell-

Their Season beginneth in the midst of September, and endeth about the beginning of December, at which time they go a Brimming. A Boar will commonly abide the Bay before he goes out of his Den; and he lies most commonly in the strongest Holds of Thorns and thick Bushes.

If it so chance that there is a Sounder of them together, then if any break sounder, the rest will run that way: and if you Hunt a Boar from a thick and strong Covert, he will not fail to go back by the same way he came thither: and when he is rear'd he never stays, but sies continually till he comes to the place where he was sarrow'd and brought up. This Mr. Turbervile obserred himself when he was in Prance; attesting he saw a same to the place of his farrowing, which was distant seven French Leagues. And this was performed by the track of his feet. If he be Hunted in a Forest or Hold where he was bred, he will hardly be forced out of it. Sometimes he will take head, and seem to go out, and will draw to the outsides of the Wood; but it is only to hearken to every side: and if he hear the noise of the Hounds then will he return, and will not be compelled to go that way till night. But having broken out of a Forest and taken head end-ways, he will not be put on of his way either by Man, Dog, Voice, Blowing, or any thing.

A Boar, especially a great one, will not cry when you kill him: The Sows and young Swine will some

times.

Terms to be used in Boar-Hunting.

If it should be demanded what you will call a Bar of three years old; you may answer, He is a your Boar which hath lately left the Sounder. An old Bar you must call a Singular, or Sanglier, that hath left the Sounder four or sive years since. In making of a report, if you are asked where the Boar fed the night before, you may say, he fed in the corn; but if in the fields or medows, you must then say, he hath been routing and worming in such a place, or such a fern-field. Where note that whatsoever he feeds on, excepting roots, is called feeding; the other is called routing, worming, or fearning; but when he feedeth and routeth not, you must then call that grasing.

Boar-Hunting with Hounds at Force.

Be advised not to Hunt a young Boar of three years old at force; for he will stand up as long, if not longer than any light young Deer which beareth but three in the top: but in the fourth year you may Hunt him at force, as you do a Harr at ten.

e

8

h

1

f

In the rearing of your Boar, you need not be afraid to come near him, for he values you not, and will lie still,

and will not be rear'd by you alone.

Here note, that if a Boar intend to bide in his den, couch, or fort, then will he make some crossing or doubling at the entry thereof, upon some high-way or beaten path; by such means a huntsman, being early in the woods, may judge of the subtilty of the Boar, and according may make preparations for his

game.

to

to

ds.

8

2

en

6

If he be a great Boar, and one that hath lain long to rest, let him hunt him with good store of hounds, and such as will stick close to him; and let him on horse-back be ever amongst them, charging the Boar, to discourage him: for if you hunt such a Boar with half a dozen couple of dogs, he will not value them? and they having chased him, he will take courage and keep them still at bays, running upon any thing he seeth before him. But if he be charged home, and hard laid unto with the hounds, he will turn head and

If you strike at him with your sword or Boar-spear, strike not low, for then you will hit him on the snout, which he little values; for he watcheth to take blows upon his tusks or thereabouts: but lifting up your hand, strike right down, and have a special care of your horse; for if you strike and hurt him, so will he you if

he can.

It behoveth the hunters of Boars to be very wary; for he will run fiercely without fear upon his purfuers: in which encounter, if he receive not his deaths wound, he overthroweth his adversary, except he fall flat on the ground, and then he need not fear much harm; for his teeth cannot cut upward but downward: but it is otherwise with a female; for she will bite and tear any way.

It is good to raise this Beast early in the morning before he hath made water, for the burning of his Bladder doth quickly make him weary.

When the Boar is first raised out of the wood, he

en

hi

te

to

th

25

ti

fnuffeth in the wind, lifting up his nose to fmell what is with him, and what against him; and rarely strikes

man till he be first wounded himself.

The hunting-spear must be very sharp and broad, branching forth into certain forks, so that the Box may not break through them upon the huntsman: The best places to wound him in therewith, are the middle of his forehead betwixt his eye-lids, or else upon the shoulder; either of these wounds is more

tal.

If the Boar make head against the hunter, he must not fly for it, but must meet him with his spear, holding one hand on the middle of it, and the other at the end, standing one foot before another, having an especiall eye to the head of the beast which way so ver he windeth or turneth the fame : for fuch is the mture of the Boar, that fometimes he fnatcheth the fpear out of their hands, or else recoileth the force bach again upon the hunter, by both which means he is in great danger of life: whenfoever this hapneth there is but one remedy, which is; another of his companions mult come and charge the Boar with his spear, and then pretend to wound him with his dart, but not casting it for fear of hurting the hunter. The Boar feeing this, forfaketh the first man, and rusheth upon the second, who must look to defend himself with all dexterity, composing his body, and ordering his weapons according to artificial Boar-hunting: in the mean time he that was overthrown must rife again, taking fresh hold on his fpear, and with all courage affault his adverfary. and affift his friend who was the cause of the faving of his life.

When he feeleth himself so wounded that he cannot live, were it not for the forks of the Boar-spear, he would

would press it on his vanquisher, and so revenge his death: For such is the sury of this Beast, that he will endeavour to wound and kill, although he feel upon him the pangs of death; and what place soever he biteth, whether man or dog, the heat of his teeth causeth the wound to be instand: and for this cause, if he but touch the hair of a dog, he burneth it off: nay, huntimen have tried the heat of his teeth, by laying hairs on them as soon as he was dead, and they have shrivel'd up as with a hot-iron.

he

hat

52

d,

ar

1:

le

1-

£

1

Ó

0

To conclude; the same devises, diligence, labour, prosecution, and observations are to be used in the hunting of the Boar, which are prescribed for the hunting of the Hart. Not but that there are several policies and stratagems which have been invented, and are still used in several countries, whereby to take them without the pursuit of dogs; for the knowledge whereof I shall refer the reader to Blondus, Oppianus, Ossini, Turbervile, and many others both antient and modern writers, who have largely treated on this subject.

Of the Nature and Properties of a Bear, and after

There are two forts of Bases, a greater and leffer; the last is more apt to climb trees than the others.

Bearing bred in many countries; in the Helvetian April region they are so strong and courageous, that they can tear in pieces both oxen and horses; for which coule the inhabitants are studiously laborious in the taking them.

A Bear is of a most venereous and lustful disposition; for night and day the females with most arient insam'd desires, do provoke the males to copulation; and for this cause at that time they are most serve and angry. The time of their copulation is in the beginning of Winter, and the manner of it is like to a Man's; the Male moving himself upon the belly of the Female, which lieth flat on her back, and they embrace each other with their fore-feet: they remain a very long time in that act; insomuch (as some have observed, how true I cannot say) that if they were very fat at their suffernmence, they disjoin not themselves again till they be lean.

There is a strange report in History, (if it be true) That in the Mountains of Savoy, a Bear carried a young Maid into his Den by violence, where in a veneral manner he had the carnal use of her Body; and while he kept her in his Den, he daily went forth and brought her the best Fruits he could get; presenting them to her as Food, as courtly as he could do it; but always when he went to Forrage, he rowled a very great Stone to the mouth of his Den, that the Virgin should not make her escape from him: at length her Parents, with long search, found their Daughter in the Bear's Den, who delivered her from that bestial Captivity.

They are naturally very cruel and mischievous unto all tame Beasts, and are very strong in all parts of their Body but their Head, whereon a small Blow will kill

them.

They go to mate in the beginning of the Winter, fome sconer, some later, according to their rest and seeding; and their Heat lasteth not passing sisteen days.

When the she-Bear perceiveth her self with Whelp, she withdraws her self into some cave, or hollow rock, and there remains till she brings forth her Whelps, where without meat they grow very fat, especially the Males, only by sucking their fore-feet. When they enter into their Den, they convey themselves backward, that so they may put out their soot-steps from the sight of the Hanters.

The

The nature of all of them is to avoid Cold , and therefore in the Winter-time they hide themselves, chusing rather to suffer Famine than cold; lying for the most part three or four Months together and never fee the light, whereby in a manner their guts are clung together: coming forth, they are so dazled by long darkness, being in the light again, that they stagger and reel to and fro; and then by a fecret inftinat they remedy the straightness of their guts by eating an Herb called Arum, in English Wake robbin or Calvesfoot, by the acidity whereof their guts are enlarged; and being recovered, they remain more fierce and cruel than at other times, during the time their Young are with them: and this is the Herb, some fay, which they eat to make them sleep so long in Winter without sense of Cold or Hunger.

They are Whelped most commonly in March, sometimes two, and not above five in number; the most part of them are dead one whole day after they are whelped; but the Bear doth so lick them and warm them with her breath, and hug them in her bosom, that she quickly re-

vives them again.

ginn's;

ale.

10-

ime

first

i be

tic)

ing

ile

ght

al-

Ty in

he

2

Ú

V

e,

9

3

It is commonly received as a truth, (though it be a palpable vulgar errour) That the Whelps of Bears at their first Listering are without all form and fashion, and nothing but a listle congealed Blood like a lump of Flesh, which afterwards the old one frameth with her Tongue by licking them to her own like. This Opinion may be easily disproved; for they are only littered blind without Hair, and the hinder-legs not perfect, the forefeet folded up like a fist, and other members deformed, by reason of the immoderate Humor or Moistness in them; which also is one cause why she cannot retain in her womb the seed to the perfection of the young ones, whereof foachimus Rheticus is an eye-witness.

As foon as the Dam perceiveth her Cubs to grow frong, the fuckleth them no longer, by reason of their curst-

curftness; for they will surely bite her if they cannot get suck enough. After this she preyeth abroad upon any thing she can meet with, which she eats, and casts up again to her young ones, and so feeds them till they can prey for themselves: They will climb a tree for the fruit.

If they be Hunted, they will follow a Man, but not run upon him unless they are wounded. They are very firong in their paws, in such fort, that they will so hug a Man or Dog till they have broke his back, or squeez'd his guts out of his belly: with a single paw they will pull a lusty dog to their tearing and devouring mouth. They bite very severely; for they will bite Man's Head to the very Brains; and for an Arm or Leg, they will crash it as a Dog may do a slender Bone of Mutton.

When they are Hunted, they are so heavy that they make no speed, and so are always in sight of the Dogs: They stand not at bay as a Boar, but siy wallowing; but if the Hounds stick in, they will sight valiantly in their own defence; sometimes they stand up streight on their hinder-seet, and then take that as a sign of sear and cowardize; they sight stoutest and strongest on all four.

They have an excellent scent, and smell farther of than any other Beast except the Boar; for in a whole Forest they will smell out a Tree laden with Mast.

They may be Hunted with Hounds, Mastiffs, or Greyhounds; and they are chased and killed with Bows, Boar-spears, Darts, and Swords; so they are also taken

in Snares, Caves, Pits, with other Engines.

They do naturally abide in great Mountains; but when it snoweth, or in hard weather, then they descend into Valleys and Forests for provision. They cast their Lesses sometimes in round Croteys, and sometimes shat like a Bullock, according to their feeding.

They go forectimes a gallop, and at other times an amble ; but they go most at ease when they wallow.

When

When they come from their feeding, they beat commonly the high-ways and beaten paths: and wherefoever they go out of the high-ways, there you may be fure they are gone to their Dens; for they use no doublings nor subtilties.

They tumble and wallow in water and mire as Swine, and they feed like a Dog. Some fay their flesh is very good food, let who will eat it for me, who are not so

nicely palated as my felf.

e

1

3

1

3

1

The best finding of a Bear is with a Leam-hound; and yet he who is without one may trail after a Bear as we do after a Buck or Roe, and you may lodge and hunt them as you do a Buck. For the more speedy execution, mingle Mastiss among your Hounds; for they will pinch the Bear, and so provoke her to anger, until at last they bring her to the bay; or else drive her out of the plaininto the covert, not letting her be at rest till she tight in her own desence.

Of the Beaver.

A Beaver differeth but a little from an Otter but in his Tail: His colour is somewhat yellow and white, aspersed with ash-colour, which stand out beyond the storter Hairs, double their length; and are neat and soft like an Otters.

There is plenty of them in the River Pontus, whence the Beaver by fome is called Canis Ponticus: They are alfo bred in Spain, fome few in France, Germany, Polonia, Selevonia, Russia, Prussia, Lithuania; and abundance of

them in New England.

These Beasts are amphibious, living both on land and water both fresh and sait, keeping the last in the day-time, and the first in the night: Without water they cannot live; for they participate much of the nature of sish, which may be gathered from their tails and hinder-legs.

They

They are about the bigness of a Country cut; their head short: their ears small and round; their teeth very long, the under-teeth standing out beyond their lips three singers breadth, and the upper about halfa singer, being very broad, crooked, strong, and sharp, standing very deep in their mouth, wherewith they defend themselves against Beasts, take sishes as it were upon hooks, and will gnaw in sunder trees as his

as a Man's thigh.

Their fore-feet are like Dogs, and their hinder like Geese, made as it were on purpose to go on the Land, and swim in the water; but the tail of this Beast is most strange of all, being without Hair, and covered over with a Skin like the Scales of a Fish, it being like Soal, and for the most part six singers broad, and halfa foot long. They are accounted a very delicate Dish, and eat like Barbels: the manner of their dressing is by roasting them sirst, and boiling or stewing them afterwards; they must be food that is very sweet, since this Proverb proceeded from them: Sweet is that Fish which is no Fish at all.

As for the wonderful manner of their Building, I shall let that alone, fince it is at large described by Gesura

his History of Beasts, pag. 36.

There is nothing so valuable in this Beast as his Stones; for they are in great esteem, and a precious

Commodity.

It hath been the opinion of some, that when a Beaunis hunted, and is in danger to be taken, he biteth off his own Stones, knowing that for them only is he thus pursued: But this is found to be a meer fiction; for their Stones being small, and placed like a Boar's, it is impossible for them to come at them.

They are taken for their Skins, Tails, and Cods, and that many ways. First, when their Caves are found: (in which are several Chambers built one over another by the water-side, to ascend or descend according as the water rise or falleth) I say, their abode being

found,

0

上京市中山市市市市市

found, they make a breach therein, wherein is put a little Dog, which the Beaver perceiving, flies instantly to the end of her Cave, and there defendeth herself with her teeth, till all her building be raised, and she laid open to her Enemies, who kill her with Instruments for that purpose. These Dogs for the Beaver are the same which Hunt Otters.

They cannot dive long time under water, but must put up their Heads for breath; which being seen by those who are Hunting them, they kill them with gunflot or Otter-Spears: His nature is, if he hear any noise, to put up his Head above water, whereby he is discovered, and so loseth life. Those skins are best which

are blackeft.

ť

ď

h

t

8

.

2

2

y

5

Ä

15

7

5

5

r.

5

d

ment the congress of the Elk. De set said tavils

modern at and comment of the form

This Beaft is twice as big as a Hart, whose upperlip is so great, and hangeth over the nether so far, that he cannot eat going forward; but as he eateth he goeth backward, and so gathereth up his sustenance.

His Mane is divers both on the top of his neck, and underneath his Throat, which buncheth like a beard, or curled lock of hair; his neck is very short, dispropor-

tionable to his body.

He hath two very large Horns bending towards the back in a plain edge, and the Spires stand forward to the face: Both Males and Females have them; they are solidat the root, and round, but afterwards branched; they are broader than a Harr's, and are very heavy, being not above two foot long; and these Horns they mew every year: He is colour'd for the most part like a Horn, and hath cloven feet, but without Joints (like an Elephant) in his fore-legs, and therefore sleepeth leaning to posts or trees; and sighteth not with his Horns, but Fore-feet.

It is a most timerous Creature, not desiring to the much, unless provoked thereunto by Hunting. There is no danger in Hunting this Beast, except a Man come right before him: for if this Beast falten his fore-fea on him, he cannot escape alive; but if it receive an

fmall wound, it instantly dies.

They are taken by Nets and Toils, or as Elephant are taken; for when they have found the trees where unto they lean, they so cut and saw them, that when the Electometh, he overthroweth the tree, and fallet with it; and being not able to rise, is so taken alive. When they are chased eagerly, and can find no place to rest themselves, and he secret, they run to the Waters, and therein stand, taking up Waters into their mouths; and in a little time do so heat it, that squirting it upon the Dogs, the heat thereof so scalded them, that they dare not come nigh or approach them any more.

Many more exotick Beafts I might here infert, defenbing their natures, and the manner of their foreign Hunting; but fince they are not to be found in England

let thele fuffice which I have already defcribed.

DOGS Diseases Remedied, and their Hurts Healed;

According to the Best Prescriptions of Ancient and Modern Huntsmen.

Of a Fivefold Madness in a Dog; the Symptoms of the Maladies, and their Cure.

The Ancients have derived Rabies, Madness, from Ranies, hoarsness of voice, for mad Dogs have no perfect Voice: but it is more probable, that Rabies cometh à Rapiende; because when a Dog beginneth to go mad, he biteth, runneth, snatcheth, and roves to and sto, to his own perdition. A mad Dog is most dangerous in the Dog-days; for at that time the very soam of spittle falling on a Man breeds danger.

There are properly feven forts of Madnesses which affict a Dog, whereof two of them are incurable, and therefore I shall speak little of them, only so much as may give you warning to shift them from your other Dogs, because their Disease is infectious; and that you may beware of them your felf, lest they injure you; for

their biting is dangerous.

acc /2-

.

The first of these incurable Madnesses is called the Hot burning Madness, and is known by these symptoms: First, when they run they raise their tails bolt-upright, and run upon any thing that stands before them, having no respect where nor which way they run:

run: also their mouths will be very black, having no foam in nor about them. They will not continue thus above three or four days, after which time they die, their pain being so intolerable. Where note, that all those Dogs they have bitten and drew blood from, will be mad in like manner.

The fecond is called the running Madness, and is less dangerous, however incurable. The Dogs that are troubled with this madness run not on Men, but Dogs, and no other Beasts. The symptoms are, they will smell on other Dogs, and having smelt them, will shake and bite them, yet shaking their Tails, and seeming to offer no harm: with other tokens I omit for brevity sake.

of the Dumb Madness.

The five Madnesses (or rather Sicknesses) which are

curable, are thefe:

The first is called the *Dumb* Madness, and is thus known: The Dog that is troubled therewith will not feed, but hold his mouth wide open continually, putting his fet to his mouth frequently, as if he had a bone in his throat.

The Cure is thus: Take four ounces of the Juice of Spathula putrida, and put it into a pot; then take the like quantity of the Juice of black Hellebore, and as much of the Juice of Rue: having strained them all well through a fine cloth, put them into a glass: then take two drams of scammony unprepared, and having mingled it with the former Juices, put it into a horn or funnel, and convey it down his throat, keeping his head up streight, less the cast it up again: then bleed him in the mouth, cutting three or four veins in his gums that he may bleed the better; and in a short time you will find amendment. Or you may only take eight drams of the juice of an Herb called Hartshorn, or Dogs-tooth, and you will find it a most excellent receipt against any madness whatsoever.

Of the Falling Madness.

t

The second is called the Falling Madness: the disease lieth in their Heads, which maketh them reel as they go, and fall.

The cure is thus: Take four onnces of the juice of Piony, with the like quantity of the juice of Briony, the like of the juice of Cruciata, and four drams of Stavefacre pulverized: mingle these together, and give it your Hound or Dog as aforesaid: then let him blood in the ears, or the two veins which come down the shoulders; and if he is not crued at first, give it him a second or third time.

Of the Lank Madness.

The third kind of Madness is called the Lank Madness, by reason of the leanness of their bodies, occasioned by shummering.

The cure is thus: First, purge your Dog with this potion: Take an ounce and a half of Caffia fiftularis well cleanfed, two drams and a half of Stavefacre pulverized, and the like quantity of Scammony prepared in White-wine vinegar, and four ounces of Oil-olive; temper these, and warm them over the fire, and give ityour Dog. In the morning put him into this bath falting as followeth: Put into fix pails full of water ten handfuls of Mugwort, of Rolemary, of red Sage, of the roots or leaves of Marsh-mallows, of the roots or leaves of Wall-wort, of the roots or stalks of Fennel, of the leaves or stalks of Elecampane, Bawm and Rue, Sornl, Bugloss, and Melilot; let these boil together in two thirds of Water and the other Wine, until one third be confumed: the bath being no hotter than your Dog can endure it, bathe him therein for the space of an hour; then taking him out, put him in some warm place for har of catching cold. Do this four or five times in the sime bath, and it will cure.

1

t

r

fi

b

of

m

tu

da

H

ter

Of the Sleeping Madnefs.

The fourth Madness is called the Sleeping Madness and is caused by some little Worms breeding in the mouth of the Stomach from corrupt Humors, the repours and sumes whereof ascending into the Head, main the Dog sleep continually, and frequently he dieth stepping.

For the cure, you must take five ounces of the juic of Wormwood, with two ounces of the pouder of Hartshorn burned, and two drams of Agarick: mingle these together; and if they be too thick, thin them with

White-wine, and give it your Dog to drink.

Of the Rheumatick or Slavering Madness.

This Madness is called so, because, when a Dog hat got it, his head swelleth, his eyes are as yellow as Kite's soot, and he commonly slavereth at the mouth.

The Cure is thus: Take fix ounces of the juice of Fennel-roots, and the like quantity of the juice of Mifeltoe, four ounces of the juice of Ivy, four ounces of the pouder of the roots of Polypody; boil these in White-wine, and give it your Dog to drink as hot as a can suffer it.

Here note, that when a Dog hath any of these kindsof Madnesses, he will have no desire to eat, sasting frequently eight or nine days, and so starving to death Nay, if they are troubled with any distemper, they will result their meat, nay, the daintiest bit you can give them, until they have eaten grass, and have cleared their stomach of what did offend it, and then they will eat.

Concerning the Madness of Dogs, and their Venemin Bitings.

I think no reasonable Man ought to question why the teeth of a mad Dog should do more harm than those of a sound one; because in rage and anger the teeth of every Beast and Creature receive venom and poison from the

the Head, whereby when they bite at that time they do

much more harm.

Against the simple biting of a Dog, take the urine of a Dog, which is sufficient, since there is but little venom in those wounds. To lay the hair of the same Dog thereon (tho' so much talkt on) I look upon as a meer soppery. Or being bit by a Dog, take vinegar, and with your hand rub the wound very well; then pour into it vinegar mixed with water or nitre; then wet a spunge in the same liquids, and so let it remain bound up three days; then take Pellitory of the wall, mingled and beaten with salt, or any other plaister for green wounds.

uice of ogle

lif-

of

to it.

H 100 H

Divers are the cures and remedies for biting of mad Dogs; which I omit in this place, as belonging not to my subject, but to Physick.

A Remedy against the common Mange.

This diftemper befals a Dog frequently for want of fresh water to drink when he desires it, and sometimes by foul kennelling, and sometimes by foundering and melting his greate.

You may cure it in this manner: Take two handfuls of wild Cress, two handfuls of Elecampane, and as much of the leaves and roots of Roerb and Sorrel, and two pound of the roots of Frodels; make them all boil well in ley and vinegar: having strained the decoction, put therein two pound of gray soap; and when it is melted therein, then rub your Dogs with it four or sive days together, and it will cure them.

Abrief Discourse of the Cure of Maladies belonging to Spaniels, with other Accidents happening.

How necessary a thing a Spaniel is to Faulconry, and for those that delight in that noble Recreation, beeping Hawks for their pastime and pleasure, I think mobody need question, as well to spring and retrive a

fowl being flown to the mark, as also divers other ways

to help and affift Faulcons and Goshawks.

Now fince they are subject to many diseases and casualties, I shall endeavour to propound a suitable cure for them; and first, I shall begin with the Mange, as the capital enemy to the quiet and beauty of a brave Spaniel, wherewith, poor creatures, they are often grievously

tormented, and as frequently infect others.

For the cure of this distemper, take a pound of Barrow flick, common Oil three ounces, Brimstone well pulverized four ounces, Salt well beaten to pouder, Ashes well fisted and searced, of each two ounces; boil all these in a kettle or earthen-pot, and when they are all well incorporated together, anoint your Spaniel with this thrice every other day, either against the Sun of Fire: wing so done, wash him all over with good strong Ley, and this will kill the Mange. Remember you shift his kennel and litter often.

If the Spaniel lose its Hair, as it often happens, the bathe your Spaniel in the water of Lupines or Hops, and

anoint him with stale Barrows-flick.

This ointment, besides the cure, maketh his skin look slick and beautiful, and kills the sleas, the Dogs dif-

quieters, and enemies to his eafe.

If this be not strong enough to destroy this malady, then take two quarts of strong vinegar, common oil is ounces, brimstone three ounces, soot six ounces, braid salt and searced two handfuls: boil all these together in the vinegar, and anoint your Dog as aforesaid. This receipt must not be administred in cold weather, for it may hazard his life in so doing.

If a Spaniel be not much troubled with the Mange,

then it is easie to cure him thus :

Make bread with wheaten bran, with the roots, leaves, and fruit of Agrimony, beating them well in a mortar, and, making it into a paste or dough, bake it in an oven; and so made, give thereof to your Spaniel, giving him no other bread for some time, letting him eat as long as he will.

Curt

Cure of the Formica.

Ways

cafn-

e for

miel

vilue

Bar-

well

der,

boil

ate

With

n or

iber

her

and

kia dif-

dy,

lix

aid

r in his

rit

ge,

its,

0 2

eit

iel.

im

476

In the Summer-time their is a scurvy malady which very much afflicts a Spaniel's ears, and is occasioned by sies, and their own scratching with their feet: We term it a Mange, the Italians Formica, and the French Fourmier.

For the cure, take Gum-dragaganth four ounces, infufed in the strongest vinegar may be gotten, for the space of eight days, and afterwards bruised on a marble stone, as Painters do their colours, adding unto it Roch-allum and Galls beaten to pouder, of either two ounces; mingle all these well together, and lay it on the place afflicted.

For Swelling in the Throat.

By reason of a Humor distilling from the Brain, the throat of a Spaniel will often swell unreasonably: For ture whereof, anoint the grieved place with oil of Camomil; then wash it with vinegar not over-strong mixed with salt. Probatum est.

Of Worms breeding in the Hurts and Mangy parts of a Spaniel.

These Worms do hinder the cure of the Mange or Wounds, causing them to conuinue at one stay, or to grow worse and worse. To remove this hindrance, take the gum of Ivy and convey it into the Wound, and let it there remain a day or two, washing the Wound with Wine; and after that anoint it with Bacon-grease, oil of Earth-worms, and Rue.

The pouder of wild Cucumbers is excellent good to kill these Worms, and will prove a good corrosive, also eating away the dead slesh, and encreasing the good.

If the Worms be within the Body, you must destroy them in this manner: Cause your Spanies, by fair means or foul, when fasting, to eat the yolk of an egg with two scruples of saffron pulverized and confected with the same egg, keeping him after it sasting till night.

K 3

When

When a Spaniel is hurt, as long as he can come to he the Wound with his tongue, he needs no other remed his tongue is his best Chirurgeon: but when he can do that, then such wounds as are not venomous you me cure with the ponder of Marrestva died in an oven, or the Sun. If it be a bite of a Fox, anoint it with oil when in Earthworms and Rue have been boiled together, by a mad Dog, let him lap twice or thrice of the broof Germander, and eat the Germander too boiled.

Others bore the skin of his neck through with a hiron just betwixt his ears, so as the fire may touch be sides of the hole made: after that, plucking up the shi of the Dog's shoulders and flanks backwards, thrust through with a hot iron in like manner: by giving the

venom this vent, it is a ready way to cure him.

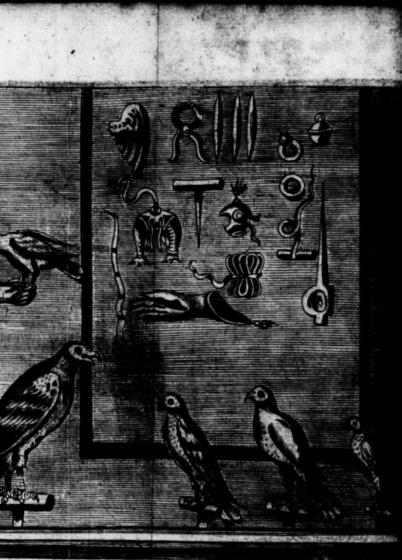
To belp a Spaniel that has loft bis Sense of Smellinge

Spaniels, fometimes, by reason of too much rest a grease, or some other accident, do lose their Sense Smelling, so as they cannot spring or retrieve a Fowl ter their usual manner: To recover it again, take Agrick two drams, Sal-gemma one scruple; beat these to pouder, and incorporate them with Oxymel, make a pill as big as a nut, cover it with butter, and give itt Dog by fair means or soul. This will bring nim into quick scent, as I have oftentimes proved it.

The benefit of cutting off the tip of a Spaniel's Tail
Stern.

It is necessary for several reasons to cut off the tipe a Spaniel's Stern when it is a Whelp: First, by so doin Worms are prevented from breeding there; in the net place, if it be not cut, he will be the less forward pressing hastily into the Covert after his Game; beside this benefit, the Dog appears more beautiful.





W Dolle fe

TREATISE

O F

lawking and Faulconry, &c.

PART II.

The Introduction.

HE Element wherein the Faulconer nieth to trade, is the Air; and though he dealeth fometimes in the Water, yet he prefers the Air before it, that yielding him most Recrefor it is unable to stop the high Soarings of his ons Faulcon: in it the flies to fuch a height, that, left to the fight of Mortals, the feems to converfe Heaven alone; and, like Icarm, endangers her to be foorched by the Sun-beams; and yet is efs, cutting the fluid Air with her nimble Pinions. ing her High-way over the steepest Mountains and peft Rivers, and in her lofty career looks down with ming contempt on the greatest Glories we most nate: and yet fuch is her Loyalty and Obedience to Master, that a word from his mouth shall make her op and condescend.

K 4

Of

on

el: Pr

This Element of Air is not only to be praised for the Recreation it affords the Faulconers, but for its usefulness to all, no Creature being in a condition to live without it: for if the inspiring or expiring Organ of any Creature be stopt, it must speedily die, and pay the Debt that's due to Nature.

And as this Element justly merits praise, so do its wing'd Inhabitants, both feeding and refreshing Mankind: with their Bodies they perform the first, and the

latter with their harmonious Voices.

The number of Heaven's Airy Choir is so great, I cannot here well enumerate them; yet I must not pass by these nimble Musicians of the Air, which warble forth such curious Notes as puzzle Art to imitate.

I mean to speak of a few, and first of the Lm: When she means to recreate her self and Heares, she quits the Earth, and sings as she ascends; and having made an end of her Heavenly Ditty, he seems to swound to think she must descend again unto the dull Earth, which she would scorn to tread but for necessity.

Again, observe how the Black bird and the Thrash contend who shall with their unimitable Voices bid the

best welcome to the fragrant Spring.

Nor doth the Nightingale come short in breathing out her loud Musick through the small Organ of her Throat. How have I oft admired in a still Night the clearness of her Airs, the sweetness of her Descants, her natural Risings and Fallings, her Doublings and Redoublings!

Much more might be faid of these, which I hall wave, being a digression form my purpose, which is to treat of another Bird of Pleasure, viz. the Hamk.

HEre note, that the Hawk is distinguished into two Kinds; the Long-winged, and Short-winged Hawk

Of the first kind there are these, which are here amongst

The Gerfaulcon and Jerkin,
Faulcon and Tiercel-gentle,
Lanner and Lanneret,
Bockerel and Bockeret,
Saker and Sakaret,
Merlin and Jack-merlin,
Hobby and Jack,
The Stelletto of Spain,
The blood-red Rook of Turkie,
The Wakite from Virginia.

Of the Short-winged Hawks there are thefe:

The Eagle and Iron,
Goshawk and Tiercel,
The Sparrow-hawk and Muket,
Two forts of the French Pie.

Of inferiour fort, are thefe:

The Stanyel or Ring-tail,
The Raven and Buzzard,
The Forked Kite and bold Buzzard,
The Hen-driver, &c.

It is not to be expected that we should treat of all these and many others bearing different Names, but only such which are most in use, of which I shall regularly treat concerning their Eyries, Mewings, Castings, Renovation of Feathers, &c. with their Reclaiming, Dieting, Diseases, Cures, and Method of Practice.

Terms of Art in Faulconry,

As they were used by Ancient Faulconers, and are now by Modern Practitioners, with their Explanations.

THe Age of a Hawk:

The first year, a Sourage.
The second year, an Enverview.
The third year, a White Hawk.
The fourth year, a Hawk of the first Com.
Arms, are the Legs from the Thigh to the Foot.

Bate, is when the Hawk fluttereth with her Wings, either from Pearch to Fift, as it were striving to get

Bathing, is when the Hawk washeth her felf at homeor abroad.

Beak, is the upper part of the Bill that is crooked.

Beam Feathers, are the long Feathers of the Hawk
Wings.

Beavy of Quails, are a broad of young Quails.

Bewiss, are the Leathers with Bells buttoned about the Hawks Legs.

Binding, is tyring, or when a Hawk feizeth.

Bowet, is when a young Hawk draweth any thing out of her Nest, and covers to clamber on the Boughs.

Bowling, is when the Hamk drinks often, and yet conti-

Branch or Stand, is to make the Hawk leap from Tree to Tree till the Dog springs the Partridge.

Brancher, is a young Hank newly taken out of the Nort.

Cadge,

64

Can

h

Car

Cat

Can

Cra

Crei

Chec

Cap

Com

10

Crin

th

Difci

and carried when they are exposed to sale.

Canceleer, is when a high-flown Hawk in her stoopingturneth two or three times upon the wing, to recover her self before she seizeth.

Carry, is flying away with the Quarry.

Caf your Hawk to the Pearch, is to put your Hawk on the Pearch.

Cafing, is when you give your Hank any thing to

cleanse and purge her Gorge.

Covif; a Hawk may be so called at the beginning of the year, and signifies as much as to carry on the Fist.

Current, a Disease in Hawks so called.

Camerizing-Irons, are Irons to fear with.

Carting-time, is Treading-time.

Ording, is when Hanks, standing too near, light with one another.

Crosses, is a fine small long Line of strong and evenwound Pack-thread which is fastned to the Hawki Lease or Leash when she is first Lured.

Check, that is when the Hamb forfakes her proper Game tofly at Pies, Crows, or the like, croffing her in her flight

Cap, is the nether part of the Hawks Beak.

Going-Irons, are used in coping or paring the Hawks Beak, Pounces, or Talons, when over-grown.

Cowing, is when young Hawks quiver and shake their Wings, in testimony of obedience towards the old ones.

Crimers, are the small black Feathers like Hairs about

bifolofed, is when the young just peep through the shell bipping, is when the Hawk muteth directly downward in feveral drops, not yerking it streight forwards.

Endew, is when the Hawk digesteth her meat, that she not only dischargeth her Gorge thereof, but likewise cleanseth her Pannel.

Enseame, is the purging of a Hawk of her Glut and

Greafe.

Enter a Hawk, is when she first begins to kill.

Eyefs, is a young Hawk newly taken out of the Neft, not able to prey for himself.

Eyrie, is that place where Hawks build, and hatch ther

young.

Feaking, is when the Hawk wipeth her Beak after feeding.

Filanders, a fort of little red Worms that usually breed

in Hawks.

Flags, Feathers next the principal Feathers in the Hand Wing.

Fly on head, is missing her Quarry, and betaking her felf to the next Check, as Crows, &c.

Formale, is the Female Hawk.

Formica, a Disease in Hanks so called.

Frounce, is a Difease common in the Mouth or Throat of a Hawk.

Gleam, after a Hawk hath cast she gleameth, or throweth up filth from her Gorge.

Glue, is the flimy fubstance that lies in the Hawks Par-

Gorge, is called in other Fowl the Craw or Crop. Gurgiting, is when the is stuff and suffocated.

Hack, is the place where the Hawks Meat is laid.

Hawk keeps her Mark, is when she waits at the place where she lays in Partridge, or the like, until it be retrieved.

Hern at seidge, is when you find a Hern standing by the Water-fide watching for Prey, or the like.

Fach

94

90

In

In

In

70

L

Le

Le

AZ

Ma

Ma

Ma

Ma Ma

V

Me

Mu

it

Mit

N

gack, is the Male Hawk,

Jesses, are those short straps of Leather which are fastned to the Hawks Legs, and so to the Lease or Leash by Vervails, and such-like.

Imp, is to infert a Feather into the Wing of a Hawk, in

the place of one that is broken.

Inte, is the Neck from the Head to the Body of any

Bird which the Hawk doth prey upon.

Intermewing, is from the first exchange of the Hawks Coat, till she turn white: and this is so called from the first Mewing.

Jonketh, is when she sleepeth.

Lure, that is when a young Hank is called by the Faulconer thereunto, and is made of Feathers and Leather, not much unlike a Fowl, which he casteth up into the Air.

Leafe or Leafh, is a small long thong of Leather by which the Faulconer holdeth his Hawk fast, folding it many times about his Finger.

Lean, is when the Hawk holds in to you.

A Make-Hawk, is an old Staunch-Hawk which used to fly, will easily instruct a young Hawk.

Managing a Hawk, is to use her with Art and Skill.
Make out, is when the Hawk goeth forth at Check,

Mailes, are the Breast-feathers.

Manning, is making a Hawk endure company.

Mantlerb, is when the Hawk stretcheth one of her Wings after her Legs, and so the other.

Mew, is the place where you fet down your Hawk du-

ring the time the raifeth her Feathers.

Muting, is the Excrements or Dung of a Hawk, and so it is of a Hern.

Mises, are a fort of Vermine that trouble the Head and Nares of a Hawk. Nares, are the little Holes in a Hanks Beak.

Pearch, is the Hawks resting-place when she is off the Faulconers Fist.

Pelt, is the dead Body of any Fowl the Hawk hath killed.

Pill or Pelf, is what the Hawk hath left of her Prey after the is relieved.

Plume, is the general mixture of Feathers and Colour by which the Constitution of a Hawk is known.

Plumage, are small Feathers given the Hawk, to make her cast.

Pluming, is after the Hawk hath seized her Prey, and dismantles it of the Feathers.

Pannel, is the Pipe next the Fundament of a Ham, where she digesteth her meat from her body.

Pantas, a Disease in Hawks so called.

Pendant-Feathers, those Feathers behind the Thigh of a Hawk.

Perry-fingles, are the Toes of the Hawk.
Pounces, are the Claws of the Hawk.

Principal-Feathers, are the two longest Feathers in the Hawks Wings.

Pruneth, is when the Hawk picketh her felf.

Put over, is when a Hawk removeth her Meat from the Gorge into her Bowels, by traverling with her ody, but chiefly with her Neck.

Quarry, is the Fowl which the Hamk flies at, dead or alive.

Raifed in Flesh, is when a Hank grows fat.

Rate, is when the Hawk flies out too far from the Fowl.

Ramage, is when a Hepk is wild, and difficult to be reclaimed.

Rangle, is when we give a Hawk Gravel to bring her to her Stomach.

Restieves

R

R

R

R

R

Sa

Sei

See

Sei

Set

Slic

Slig

Smi

Som

Spri

Stoc

Spi

Tier

Tiri

Trai

Pi

Sum

E

Retrieve, is when Partridges, having been sprung, are

Ronze, is when a Hook lifteth her felf up, and shaketh her felf.

Ruff, is when the Hawk hits the Prey, and yet not truf-

Rufter-hood, is a plain and easie Leather-hood, being large, wide, and open behind, and is to be worn by the Hawk when you first draw her.

Reclaim, is to make a Hawk tame, gentle, and familiar.

Sails, are the Wings of a Hawk.

Sear or Sere, is the yellow between the Beak and Eyes of the Hawk.

Seeling, is when a Hank first taken is so blinded with a Thread run through the Eye-lids, that she seeth not, or very little, the better to make her endure the Hood.

Stizing, is when a Hawk gripes her Prey, or any thing elfe, fast within her Foot.

Suting down, is when the Hawk is put into the Mew. Slice, is when a Hawk muteth a great diffance from her. Sliming, is when a Hawk muteth without dropping. Sniting, s when a Hawk as it were sneezeth.

Som-hawk, that is from the first taking her from the Eyries till she hath Mewed her Feathers.

Spring, is when any Partridge or Pheafant rife.

Stooping, is when the Hawk is aloft upon her Wing, and then descends to strike her Prey.

Summ'd, is when the Hawk is in all her Plumes-Swied, is that which keepeth a Hawk from twifting.

Tirred or Vaffel, is the Male Hawk.

Tiring, is when you give your Hawk a Leg of Pinion of a Pullet, Pigeon, &c. to pluck at.

Train, is the Tail of a Hawk.

Traffing, is when the raiseth any Fowl aloft, and soaring with it, at length descendeth with it to the ground.

Varvels.

Varvels, little Rings of Silver at the end of the Jesses, whereon the Owners of the Hank have their Names ingraven.

Unreclaimed, is when a Hawk is wild.

amon's pood onit

Unseeling, is when you take away a Thread that runs through the Hanks Eye-lids, and hinders her fight

Unfirike the hood, is to draw the Strings, that it may be in a readiness to pull off.

Unsumm'd, is when the Feathers of a Hawk are not fully grown.

Urines, are Nets to catch Hawks withal.

Warbling, is after a Hawk hath mantled her felf the croffes her Wings together over her Back.

Weathering, is when you air your Hank in Frost, Sun, or by the Fire-fide.

Whur, is the rifing and fluttering of Partridge or Phen-

The Names and Natures of Hawks in general: and first of the Haggard-Faulcon.

Begin with the Haggard-Faulcon, fince it is a Hawk which most men now-a-days covet, to fit and prepare for their delight and pleasure; although hereto-fore I hear less spoken of her praise by the Antients than she deserves.

Some of old have preferred the Faulcon-gentle for mettle and courage, being of a loving disposition, strong and daring, and hardy in all seasons; and by a mere mistake have undervalued the Haggard-faulcon, condemning her as being a Bird too tender to endure rough and boisterous weather.

Experience confutes this Opinion, she being known to be able to indure as much the extremity of weather, or more than the *Tiercel*, Faulcon-gentle, or most other Hawks whatsoever; and therefore she shall first

take place in this manner.

The Haggard-faulcon, wild, and unreclaimed, takes a large liberty to her felf for her abode, either by Sea or Land; and is so absolute in her power, that wherever she comes, all flying Fowl stoop under her subjection. Nay the Tiercel-gentle, although her natural companion, dares not sit by her or come near her residence but in cawking-time, and that is in the Spring; and then for procreation sake, she will admit him to come near her with submission, which he manifests by bowing his head at his approach, and by calling and cowring with his Wings, as the young ones do, in testimony how fearful he is of incurring her displeasure.

Whilst she is very young (and so will a Passenger-Sour-faulcon) she will prey upon Birds which are too big to encounter withal; and this she doth for want of understanding: and she continues this rashness and

folly, till experience and a found beating have reclaimed her.

The Haggard-faulcon will prey on any other Fowl fine can meet with advantageously, especially tame Pidgeons, or such as belong to a Dove-house; for these

th

yo

He

fer

qu

at

wh

me

voi

fro

Per

po

hav

wit

to

her

if y

Wh

toy

and

bit o

TOU

V

COT

and I

gcon

HE O

1

they frequently meet withal.

This Hawk is an incessant Pains-take; no weather discourageth her from her Game, but that only wherein no Fowl can well ftir abroad to feek for fustenance; otherwise she is continually working either in the Air or elsewhere, unless she stoop and miss of her Prey, and then she will rest a little, to take breath and renew her courage. Nay, if the hath laboured in boifterous and tempestuous weather three or four days together, she will be fo far from being the worfe for it, that she will appear much better, and more lively. And therefore it is a vulgar errour, for men not to fly their Hawks but after three or four days rest, some a week or fortnight. For old Staunch-hawks, I judge a little rest will do no harm; but for the young, till the is blouded give her but little; and if you can fly her every day, you will find it fo much the better.

When the Faulcon unreclaimed hath feized her Prey and broke her Neck, (in artificial terms, her Ink) she then falls on the Crop, and feeds first on what is there contained, afterwards on other parts; and having filled her Gorge, she will sty to some solitary place which is near water, or what liketh her best, and there she will sit all day: upon the approach of night she takes Wing, and slies to some convenient place she hath afore purposed, to pearch therein till

the morning.

Thus much of her as she is wild and unreclaimed. In the next place it will be requisite to inform you with the manner of reclaiming of a Hagyard-faulcon,

and her entry to the Lure.

Having taken or purchased one of them, set her down, and let her rest quietly the first night in a Rusterhood.

The

Hood

The next day take her up easily on your Fist, and carry her up and down that whole day; using a Feather to stroke her withal instead of your hand. When you find her not impatient of being toucht, take her Hood off speedily, and put it on again as speedily, observing thus to do till she is willing to feed: then frequently offer her food, but let her have but a little at a time; never pulling her Hood off or on but you must gain her love with a bit or two, using your voice unto her when you are taking off her Hood, and all the while she is feeding, and no longer; that by that means, after she is reclaimed, she may know by your voice she shall be fed.

Having thus done, teach her to come to your Fift from the Pearch by doing thus: Let her stand on a Pearch about breast-high; if lower, kneel, for this low posture will less affright than any other: after this, unstrike her Hood, and lure her, using your voice; and have a special care that you affright her not or distaste her, and fo cause her to bate from you. But you must, before you unstrike her Hood, encourage her with a bit or two, which will make her the more eager to come to you: For it is her Stomach that rules her, and is the Bridle that keeps her in subjection, pricking her forward to perform her duty: wherefore if you keep not her Appetite sharp and truly edged. instead of Submission, you will find Disobedience. When you find the will willingly feed from and come to your hand, you may then let her fit bare-fac'd, now and then diverting her starting about by giving her a bit or two, to direct her face towards you: after this you may fet her to the Lure.

When you find she will come readily to the Lure, garnisht with meat in the Creance, fearing less she from this was of Luring, six a livePidgeon to the Lure, and lure her therewith. When she hath killed the Pidgeon and eaten the Head, take her up gently with a set of meat, and put on her Hood; then unstrike her

Hood and lure her to the Pelt, doing thus twice of thrice, and no more: if you do it oftner, fine will become in time very loth to part with the Pelt, and by this means you will provoke her to carry. This is a great fault, and more incident to and worse in Field-Hawks than such as are fitted for the River.

But be fure you lure her not far till her Stomack be perfect; for otherwise she may discover something by the which she hath a greater esteem for, and so be lost for that time; which will be very detrimental to her, although you should happen to recover and re-

claim her afterwards.

Here observe, in the time of her making (while she is on the ground either pluming or feeding) forget not to walk round her, using your voice, and giving her many bits with your hand; continuing so to do till you have won her to a more than ordinary familia-

rity.

But above all, mark this; fpring her fome living Doves between the Man and the Lare, and let them be given in a long Creance, that she may kill them near you, in such manner that she may truss them over your head: by this means she will not be afraid when you come to her from afar off; the neglect whereof will make her timorous: thence will proceed her dragging and carrying from you; nay sometimes she will leave her Prey, and totally forsake you.

There are some Hawks will not be taken up without striking or rapping in the Creance, which must be infallibly the loss of such a Hawk without such a device: this is a great fault in the Hawk, and argueth great negligence in the Faulconer, in suffering, and not remedying that ill property in her sirk making.

Rules

1

Rules for ordering a Haggard-faulcon in the Luring: with the Causes and Remedies of Carrying, and other il qualities.

Having thus far acquainted your Hawk with the Lure, take her out some convenient Evening, and be no farther from her than she can see and hear you; then hold in your Lure, and fuffer her to fly about you, holding her as near you as you can with your Voice and Lure, teaching her to do her business, and work it on your head, and than cast up a live Dove: Which ' some disapprove of, because (say they) the lightness of the Dove inclines the Hawk to that ill quality of Carrying; but I rather impute that fault to the ignorance, or negligence and harshness of the Faulconer. who hath been either unskilful, remifs, or hath not used that gentleness which is requisite in Reclaiming a Hawk in her first Making: so that instead of gaining her love by fair Allurements, he hath converted it into Hatred, Abhorrency, and Disdainful Coyness.

Another cause of this Dragging or Carrying proceeds from the Keepers ill or slender Rewarding his Hawk in the Luring, in giving her the Pelt of a Pidgeon or some other dead thing, which gives her no delight. It is the pleasure she takes in the Reward that engages her coming to you: If then she chance to find her expectation frustrated in her usual satisfaction, she will ever after shun you; and though you should throw her a live Pidgeon, she may seize it, and keep close to it, or remove it as you approach, for fear that your unkindness should deprive her of it. Wherefore you must have a special care you disoblige

her not in her Luring.

There are several other errours which must be redified in a Haggard-faulcon, Faulson-gentle, or Slightfaulcons, (which naturally are all of one kind, yet differ much in quality and condition) which I shall leave to the study of the Ingenious and icclustrious Faulcouer or Keeper. I say, the first fault is, that though you have lured your Hawk well, and given her all the content and satisfaction imaginable, yet will she not tarry with you, but take her slight and forsake you. This argueth an aversion in her from you to something else. This sault Mr. Turbervile, and Mr. Latham say they have known remedied but because I look upon the trouble therein to be so great, and the suture satisfaction so small and uncertain, I shall not lay down what means are commonly made use of in

the cure of this ill quality.

But there is another fault, which at first may be eafily prevented; and that is, an aspiring quality and working humour, when although the Hawk never shewed any dislike to the Keeper or discontent, yet by observation she hath been found conceited, and would not endure the fociety of another Hawk; and having been well blouded on Fowl, she would not be kept down near her Keeper. To remedy this, let no scope be given to the Haggard in the time of making; let her not fly high, but be held down and near you: and if you should let this Hawk in to another Hawk, and find her fall to her work without any regard or notice taken of the other Hawk, suspect her instantly, and let her fee Fowl in due time, left when she comes to her due place, she go her way; for she will prove impatient: wherefore the shorter work you make with her, the greater delight you give her, and fo confequently you engage her love continually towards you.

Having taught your Hawk to fit bare-faced in the Evening among company undisturbed, and that she knows your Voice, and will come to the Lure, then give her every night stones, till you find her stomach good: after that, profer her Casting, and let her not receive it unless she likes it well; otherwise she is apt

to take a diflike, and will never afterwards receive

it willingly.

These Stones aforesaid prepare and make ready the way for casting, stirring, and dissolving whatever is offensive within, and fitting it to be carried down-ward in her Mutes, or upwards in her Castings. The time for giving these Stones is, when she hath put away her Supper from above; then geve her half a dozen above the hand, if you have so much skill; if not, otherwise as you are able. Do thus often, until such time as you shall give her such things whereof she shall take Plumage in her living or training. But of this, more hereafter.

How to know the Nature and Disposition of feveral HAWKS, and what must be observed from thence.

There is a certain Hawk called a Blank Hawk, which is a kind, loving, and docible Hawk; for she will diligently listen and give ear unto you, and your voice; she will soon learn to come to hand, being very eager and hot to seize on what you shall either throw or give her, and will be very familiar: Lastly, having done your will on the ground, she will look up for your Fist, and will readily jump thereon.

They are much subject to little Grubs, which are ingendered in the Guts, and discover themselves in their Mutes, crawling out from them, shrinking themselves up, and so instantly dying. These Worms do little harm, and that Hawk which hath them is seldom bad. The colour of these Worms is red in a Stight Faulcon, and red in a Barbary-Faulcon; and when dead, in both white.

There is a fort of Swartby black-plum'd Hawk, that

is good-mettled,& a high flier, yet hard to be reclaimed: for she will neither mind you nor your voice; but when you lure her, will look any other way than that she should. However, you must shew your self very loving towards her, though you shall get no more from her than what you extort by force. For her due reclaiming, lessen her pride by ordering her Diet with measure, with respect had unto the Weather; which if it be mild and temperate, you need not fear to hold her down until you have quarried her; and as you shall see her amend her manners, alter her Diet, and add to her strength according to reasonable expedition; which will be soon obtained if she be sound, and the weather moderate. But if the weather be frosty, have a care of abating sless.

When at any time you fly any one of these black or tawny Hawks, and she stoops foul, and falls in her flight, you must take her down with some living thing.

If she be young, suffer not her (or any other Hawk) to fly too long; for nothing is more prejudicial and distasteful to a young Hawk at her first making, than to let her toil and make many stoopings before she be served: by this dislike she is induced to fly wide and carelesly, and frequently to go away through displeature.

Now to the intent I may go on methodically, and with as little confusion as may be, I shall in the next place here nominate what Hawks I intend to treat of; and in the same order as I name them, in like manner I will discourse of them. Take them thus

incoming of their	1.	I are mem u	ius .
Faulcon,	3. 6	Tiercel-gent	le,
Gerfaulcon,		Ferkin,	٠.
Mylion,	Males	Tiercel,	
Merlin,	Z	Jack,	
Hobby,	[H	Robbin,	
Gofhawk,	Their	Tiercel,	
Sparrow-bank,	1	Musket,	
Lanner,	4	Lanneret.	3

Here

Here note, that the Female of all Birds of Prey are much larger, and of greater bulk than the Male, and are more ferviceable, being more warchful, hardy, and bold: but of such Birds as do not Prey, the Coeks are the larger.

The Faulcon, Gerfaulcon, Mylion, Merlin, and Hobby do stoop and seize their Prey with their Foot, breaking with their beak the Neck-bone of the Fowl, without pluming or tiring thereupon till the Fowl hath

left busking and bating on the foot.

The Golhawk with her Male the Tiercel, and the Sparrow-hawk, kill their Game by strength and force of Wing at random, and do instantly plume and tire upon their Prey.

Of the Faulcon.

There are seven kinds of Faulcons, viz.

Faulcon-gentle,
Haggard-faulcon,
Saker,
Barbary or Tartaret-faulcon,
Tunician.

The Faulcon-gentle is so called for her familiar courteous disposition; she is withal valiant, strong, and better able to endure any fort of weather that any o-

ther Hawk.

She hath a natural inclination and love to fly the Hern every way, either from her Wings to the downcome, or from the Filt and afore-hand. She is most excellent at the Brook or River, especially at large Fowl, as the Shoveler, Wild-goose, &c. If she be an Eyes, you may venture her at the Crane; otherwise she will not be hardy and bold. Where note, Hawks prove valiant or cowards according as they are first quarried

quarried: and if you take them out of the Eyrie before they are fully summed and hard penned, you must never expect their Wings should grow to perfection, but their Legs will be apt to wear crooked, and their Train, their long Feathers and their Flags also will

be full of Taints.

In the choice of your Faulcon, observe that she have wide Nares; high and large Eye-lids; a great black Eye; a round Head, somewhat full on the top; a short, thick, azure Beak; and indifferent high Neck: barb Feathers under the clap of the Beak; a good large, round, sleshy Breast: let her be strong, hard, and stiff bonded, broad-shouldered: having slender Sails, full Sides, long and great Thighs: strong and short Arms: large Feet, with the Sear of the Foot soft and blewish: black Pounces, long Wings, and crossing the Train, which Train must be short and very pliable.

Here observe, that Faulcons of one kind differ much, and are diversly named, according to the time of their first Reclaiming, places of Haunt, and Countries from whence they come: as Mew'd-Hawks, Rammage-Hawks, Soar-Hawks, Eyesses: and these again are divided into large Hawks, mean Hawks, and slender Hawks. All these have different Males and Plumes, according to the nature of the Countries from whence they come: as some are black, some blank, or russet: and they differ in disposition: some are best for the

Field, others for the River.

Names are bestowed on a Faulcon according to her

Age or Taking.

The first is an Eyes, which Name lasts as long as she is in the Eyrie. These are very croublesome in their feeding, do cry very much, and are difficultly entred but being well entred and quarried, prove excellent Hawks for the Hern, River, or any fort of Fowl, and are hardy and full of mettle,

The fecond is a Rammage-faulcon, and referves the name after she hath left the Eyrie, being so called May, June, July, and August. These are hard to be manned, but being well reclaimed, they are not inferiour to any Hawk.

The third is a Soar-bawk, so called September, Offober and November. The first Plumes they have when they forsake the Eyrie, they keep a whole year before they mew them, which are called Soar-feathers.

The fourth is termed Murzarolt, (the latest term is Carvist, as much as to say, Carry on the Fist:) they are so called January, February, March, April, and till the middle of May, during which time they must be kept on the Fist. They are for the most part very great Baters, and therefore little eaters: They are bad Hawks, frequently troubled with Filanders worms, and are rarely brought to be good for any thing.

The fifth are called Enter-mcws, from the middle of May, to the latter end of December. They are so called becase they cast their Coats. They were excellent Hawks, could they be trusted; therefore they must be kept hard under, and must make your Fist their Pearch. Having discoursed of the Names and Nature of the Faulcon, I next come to his Manning, Luring, Flights, and Mewing in every condition; which course I shall orderly take in my ensuing discourse of the other Hawks I have onely named heretofore. And because what Diseases or Casualties are incident to one are likewise to all, I shall put their Cores at the latter end all together.

of the Manning Luring Flights and Mewing of a Faulcon, with other things properly belonging to an Oftrager.

Having taken a Faulcon, you must Seel her, in such manner, that as the Seeling slackens, the Faulcon may be able to fee what provision is straight before her, which she will better fee so than any other way: and

be fure you Seel her not too hard.

A Hawk newly taken ought to have all new Furniture, as new Jesses of good Leather, mailed Leases with Buttons at the end, and new Bewets. You must have a small round stick likewise hanging in a string, with which you must frequently stroak your Hawk: the oftner you do it, the sooner and better you will man her. She must have two good Bells, that she may the better be found and heard when she either streth or scratteth: Her Hood must be well sashioned, raised and bossed against her Eyes, deep and yet straight enough beneath, that it may the better fasten about her Head without hurting her: and you must cope a little her Beak and Talons, but not so near as to make them bleed.

Take notice, if you take a Soar-faulcon which hath elready past the Seas, althought she be very hard to be

reclaim'd, yet she is the best of Faulcons.

Her food must be good and warm twice or thrice a day, till she be full gorg'd; which food must be either Pigeons, Larks, or other live Birds: and the reason is, because you must break her by degrees off from her accustomed feeding.

When you feed her, you must whoop and lure as you do when you call a Hawk, that she may know when

you will give her meat.

You must unhood her gently, giving her two or three bits; and putting on her Hood again, you must give her as much more, and be sure that she be close Seeled: and after three or four days lessen her diet: and when you go to bed, set her on some Pearch by you that you may awaken her often in the night. Thus you must do till you observe her grow tame and gentle: and when you find she begins to feed eagerly, then give her a Sheep's-heart. And now you may begin to unhood her by day-time, but it must be far from com-

pany;

pany; first giving her a bit or two, then hood her again gently, and give her as much more. Be sure not to afright herwith any thing when you winhood her. And when you perceive her to be acquainted with company, and that she is sharp set, unhood her, and give her some meat, holding her just against your Face and Eyes, which will make her less afraid of the countenances of others. If you can, reclaim her without over-watching.

You must bear her continually on the Fist till she be throughly Manned, causing her to feed in Company, giving her in the Morning about Sun-rising the Wing of a Pullet, and in the Evening the Foot of a Coney or Hare cut of above the joynt, say'd and laid in Water; which having squeez'd, give it her with the Pini-

on of a Hen's Wing.

For two or three days give her washt meat, and then Plumage, according as you think her foul within. If she Cast, hood her again, and give her nothing till she Gleam after her Casting: having gleamed and casted, then give her a breching of hot meat in company; and towards the Evening let her plume a Hen's Wing in company also.

If the Feathers of her Casting be foul or slimy, and of a yellowish complexion, then be sure to cleanse her well with washt meat and Casting: if clean within, give her gentle Castings, as the Pinions of an old Hens Wing, or the Neck-bone chopped four or sive times between the joynts, washt and steeped in fair Wa-

ter.

Having well reclaimed her, throughly manned her, and made her eager and sharp set, then you may ven-

ture to feed her on the Lure.

But before you shew her the Lure, you must consider these three things: 1. That she be bold in and familiar with Company, and no ways asraid of Dogs and Horses. 2. That she be sharp set and hangry, regarding the hour of the Morning and Evening when

you will Lure her. 3. And lastly, she must be clean within, and the Lure must be well garnished with meat on both sides, and you must abscord your self when you intend to give her the length

of a leafe.

You must first unhood her, giving her a bit or two on the Lure as she sitteth on your Fist: afterwards take the Lure from her, and so hide it that she see it not; and when she is unseized, cast the Lure so near her that she may catch it within the length of her Lease. When she hath seiz'd it, use your voice according to the custome of Faulconers, and feed her upon the Lure on the ground with the Heart and warm Thigh of a Pullet. Having so lured her, in the Evening give her but a little meat; and let this luring be so timely, that you may give her Plumage and a luck of a

joynt.

In the Morning betimes take her on your Fift, and when the hath cast and gleamed, give her a little beaching of warm meat. Towards Noon take a Creance and tie it to her Leafe, and go into some pleafant Field or Meadow, and give her a bit or two on the Lure; then unseize her: and if you find she is sharp set, and hath seized on the Lure eagerly, then give her fome one to hold, to let her off to the Lure; then unwind the Creance, and draw it after you a good way, and let him which holds the Hawk hold his right hand on the Tassel of the Hawks Hood in readiness, so that he may unhood her assoon as you begin to lure: and if she come well to the Lure, and stoop upon it roundly, and seize it eagerly, then let her eat two or three bits thereon; then unseixe her and take her off the Lure, hood her, and deliver her to him again that held her, and going farther off lure her, feeding her as before with the accuftomed voice. Thus lure her every day farther and farther off till the is accustomed to come freely and eagerly to the Lure.

After

After this, lure her in company, but have a care that nothing affright her; and when you have used her to the Lure on foot, then lure her on Horse-back : which you may effect the fooner, by causing Horsemen to be about you when you lure her on foot : also you may do it the fooner by rewarding her upon the Lure on Horse-bach among Horsemen. When this way the grows familiar, let fome body afoot hold the Hawk, and he that is on Horse-back must call and cast the Lure about his Head; then must the holder take off the Hood by the Tassel: and if she feize eagerly on the Lure without fear of Man or Horse, then take off the Creance, and lure her at a greater diffance. And if you would have her love Dogs as well as the Lure, call Dogs when you give her Tiring or Plumage.

Of Bathing a Faulcon lately reclaimed; how to make her Flying, and to hate the Check.

Having wean'd your Faulcon from her Rammagefooleries, being both ways lured, rewarded, and throughly reclaim'd, offer her some Water to bathe her felf in, in a Bason wherein she may stand up to the Thighs, chusing a temperate clear day for that purpose. Then having lured your Hawk, and rewarded her with warm meat, in the morning carry her to some Bank, and there hold her in the Sun till the hath endewed her Gorge, taking off her Hood that the may prune and pick her felf: that being done. bood her again, and fet her near the Bason, and taking off her Hood, let her bathe again as long as she pleafeth: After this, take her up, and let her pick her felf as before, and then feed her. If the refuse the Bason to bathe in shew her some small River or Brook for that purpose.

By this use of bathing the gains strength and a sharp appetite, and thereby grwos bold: but that day where-

in the batheth give her no washt meat.

If you would make your Faulcon upwards, the next day after she hath bath'd get on Horseback, either in the Morning or Evening, and chuse out sme fioeld wherein are no Rooks or Pidgeons; then take your Lure well garnished on both sides, and having unhooded your Hawk, give her a bit or two on the Lure, then hood her: afterwards go leisurely against the Wind, then unhood her: and before the bate, or find any Check in her Eye, whiltle her off from your Fift fairly and foftly. As she flieth about you, trot on with your Horse, and cast out your Lure, not fuffering her to fly long about you at first : continue thus doing Morning and Evening for feven or eight days. But if you find your Hawk unwilling to fly about you or stoop to the Lure, then must you let her fly with some Hawk that loves the company of others, and will not rove at any change or check; and that must first be done at the Partridge, for they will not fly far before the Hawk. If she hath flown twice or thrice, cast out the Lure, and reward her on Horseback. If the Fowl you flew her at be killed by another Hank, let her feed with him a little, and then farther reward her on the Lure.

If you would have your Faulcon prove upwards and a high-flying Hawk, you must let her fly with such as are so qualified. If she love the company of others, and is taught to hold in the Head, then if the Fowl be in Pool, Pit, or Plash, cast off your high-flying Hawk, and let him that hath your new-lur'd Hawk get under the Wind, and when he seeth his advantage, let him unhood her; and if she bate, then it is to get up to the other Hawk.

Let him then cast her off, and before she get up to the other near his full pitch, lay out the Fowl: if she kill her Game, reward her with the Heart, and let her participate of the Breast with the other

To take your Faulcon from going out to any Check, thus you must do: If she hath kill'd a Check, and hath fed thereon before you could come in, rebuke her not severely at first, but take her down to the Lure, give her a bit or two, hood her, and sly her not in three or four days; and if you do, let it be where no Checks are: but if you come in before she hath tasted the Check she hath killed, then take the Gall of an Hen, and anoint the Breast of that Check she hath killed, (any other bitter thing will do) and this will make her hate to go at Check again.

How to enfeam a Falcon with her Castings and Scowrings.

When you feed your Faulcon, call and lure as if you called her to the Lure, and every day profer her Water, and every night give her Castings accordingly as she endeweth. Take off her Hood frequently in company; and that you may hinder her from bating, hold always the Hood ready by the Tassal in your hand.

In the Evening by candle-light take off her Hood among company, until she Rouze and Mewt; then fet her on the Pearch, and not before, fetting a light before her.

Every Faulcon ought to have a Make-Hawk to teach her to hold in the head if that will not do, cut of lone part of her two Principals in each Wing, the

V. A. Y

long Feather and that next to it, which will force her to hold in.

Be sure to reward your Hawk well at the beginning, and let her feed well on the Quarry; which will so encourage her, that she will have no fancy to go out to the Check. When she is well in bloud and well quarried, then let her fly with other Hawks.

If you would make your Faulcon to the Crane, her Lure should be a counterfeit Crane. If you would make her to the Hare, her Lure should be then a Hares Skin stuft with some light matter: When she is well lured, and you would enter her, tie the Hares Skin so stuft to the end of a Creance, and fasten it to your Saddle-pummel, by which means when you gallop it will resemble a running Hare: then unhood your Hawk, and cry, Back with the Dogs, back with the Dogs. When you find she bath seized it, let go your Creance, and suffer her to sasten thereon; then instantly reward her upon it, and encourage her as much as is possible.

When she is well entred after this manner, take a living Hare and break one of her hinder Legs, and having before well acquainted your Faulcon with your Dogs by continual feed among them, I fay then put your Hare out in some fair place with your Dogs, and the Faulcon will stoop and ruff her until the Dogs may take her; then take the Hare from the Dogs, and cast her out to the Faulcon, crying, Back, back

there.

If you would make your Hawk flying to the Partridge or Pheafant after she is reclaimed and made, then every time you lure her, cast your Lure into some low Tree or Bush, that she may learn to take the Tree or Stand if she take the Stand before she sees the Lure, let her stand a while; and afterwards draw the Lure out before her, and cry with what words you have acquainted her to understand you by, and then reward

reward her well. After this manner she will learn to

Feed her always on the ground, or in some thick place, for in such places she must encounter with the Pheasant at Pearch.

At first fly with her at young Pheasant or Partridge, to encourage her by advantage, and afterwards at the old.

If a Faulcon will not take Stand but keep on the Wing, then must you sly her in plain places where you may always see her upon you.

Draw your Faulcon out of the Mew twenty days before you Enseam her. If she trust and carry, the remedy is to cope her Talons, her Powlse and Petrysingle.

Never reward your Hamk upon River-fowl but upon the Lure, that she may the better love and eltern thereof.

The Crane ought to be flown at before Sun-rising; for she is a slothful Bird, and you may cast off to her a Cast or Lease of Faulcons, or a Coshawk from the fift, without Dogs. You must fly but once a day at the Crane, after which you must reward your Hawk very well, ever succouring her with a Grey-hound, which is the best of Dogs for that purpose.

Give your Faulcon a Beaching very early in the morning, and it will make her very eager to fly when it is time for it.

If you would have her a high-flying Hawk, you must not feed her highly, but she should be fed nine days together before Sun-rising, and at night late in the cool of the Evening.

The Faulcon will kill the Hern naturally if she be a Peregrin or Traveller: yet you will do well to give her Trains.

A Faulcon may fly ten times in a day at a River, if the feason be not extream; but more is inconvenient.

A Hawk ought to have forty Castings before she be perfectly made. And indeed all Hawks ought to have Castings every night, if you would have them clean and sound: for Hawks which have not this continual no cturnal Casting will be surcharged with abundance of superstuous Humours, which ascending to the Brain, breed so great a disturbance that they cannot sly so high as otherways they would. And it is good to give them Tiring or Plumage at night, especially field-Hawks, but not River-Hawks, for fear of weakning their Backs.

When your Hawk hath flown or bated, feed her not fo long as she panteth, (but let her be first in breath again;) otherways you may bring her into a Disease

called the Pantas.

If a Faulcon or other Hawk will not Seize nor Gorge, take the Quill of a Wild-goose, and tie it under her long Single; then will she Seize and Gripe. When she beginneth to seize, take away the said Quill, and she will seize long afterwards.

If you cannot give Covert to your Faulcon or Gofhawk, then cast her off with the Sun in her back,

When you draw your Hawk out of the Mew, if the be greazie, (which you shall know by her round fat Thighs and her full Body, the flesh being round, and as high as her Breaft-bone) and if she be well mew'd. and have all her Feathers summed, then give her at feeding-time in the morning two or three bits of hot meat; and at night give her less, unless it be very cold; and if the feed well and without compultion, give her washt meat. Thus prepared take the Wings of a Hen for her Dinner and wash them in two waters. in the morning give her the Legs of a Hen very hot, at Noon meat temperately warm, a good Gorge; then let her fast till it be late in the Evening If she have put over her meat, and there is nothing left in her Gorge, then give her warm meat, as in the morning. Thus diet her till it be convenient to give her Plu-

mage,

mage, the which you may know by these tokens: First, the Flesh of the end of the Pinion of the Hawk's Wing will seem softer and teaderer than it did before she did eat washt meat. Secondly, if her Mewte be white, and the black thereof be very black, and not mingled with any other colour. Lastly, if she be sharp set, and doth plume eagerly, you may give her Casting either of a Hare's or Coney's Foot, or the small feathers on the joint of the Wing of an old Hen.

Having set her on the Pearch, sweep clean underneath, that you may see whether the Mewt be full of streaks, or skins, or slimy: if it be, then continue this fort of Casting three or four nights together, but if you find the Feathers digested and soft, and that her Casting is great, then take the neck of an old Hen, and cut it between the joynts, then lay it in cold water, and give it your Faulcon three nights together; in the day-time give her washt meat, after this Casting or Plumage, as you shall see requisite: and this will bear all down into the Pannel.

When you have drawn her out of the Mew, and her principal Feathers are summed, give her no washe meats, but quick Birds with good Gorges, and set her

out in open places.

General Instructions for an Ostrager or Faulconer.

Let his Jeffes and Bewets be of good Leather, having Bells big and shrill according to the proportion of the Hawk, with a Hood that is boffed at the

Eyes, and fizable for the Head.

He must use his Hawk in such manner, that he may make her grow familiar with him alone or in company, and to that end he must often unhood and hood her again.

M 3

In nine nights the Faulconer ought not to let his Hawk Jouk at all, nor fuffer her to pearch, but keep her during that time continually on his Fift.

When the Faulconer would call his Hawk, let him fet her on the Pearch, unhood her, and shew her some meat within his Fist, call her so long till she come to it, then feed her therewith: if she come not, let her stand without food till she be very sharp set. Observe this

order for about nine days.

When you would lure her give her fome man to hold, and call her with a Lure well garnisht with meat on both fides, and give her a bit: use her to this fix or feven days; then cause her to be held farther from you, and cast the Lure about your Head! and throw it on the ground a little way from you: if The come to it roundly reward her bountifully. Having used her to this some certain days, take your Lure garnished as aforesaid, and every day call her to you as far as it is possible for her to see or hear you, and let her be loofe from all her Furniture, without Loins or Creance. If the come freely, reward her, and ftop her now and then in her feeding; for that will make her come the better. You may do well to stop the Lure upon her fometimes, and let her fly upon you. Here note, it is requisite to bathe her before you take this course, lest when she is at liberty she rangle to fee Water, and in the mean time you lose your Hawk; therefore bathe her every feven or eight days, for her nature requireth it.

When you have thus manned, reclaimed, and lured your Hawk, go out with her into the fields, and white her off your Fift, stand still to see what she will do, and whether she will rake out or not: but if she fly round about you, as a good Hawk ought to do, let her sly a turn or two, and sling her out the Lure, and let her foot a Chicken or Pullet, and having killed it,

let her feed thereon.

itt ile.

Unhood her often as you bear her; continue fo doing till she hath endewed and mewted sufficiently.

Your Hawk being thus made and manned go abroad with her every morning when it is fair, and let the place where you intend to fly her be plashy, or some narrow Brook; and when you cast her off, go into the Wind so far, that the Fowl may not discover you. When she is cast off, and beginneth to recover her Gate, make then to the Brook or Plash where the Fowl lie, always making your Hawk to lean in upon you: and when you fee her at a reasonable pitch, (her Head being in) lay out the Fowl, and land it if you can; and if you cannot, take down your Hawk, and let her kill some Train; to which end you must always carry some live Fowl with you, as a Duck, &c. And having flipt one of her Wing feathers, thrust it through her Nares, and cast her up as high as you can underneath your Hawk, that she may the better know your hand.

If you would have your Hawk fly at one particular Fowl more then at another, you must then feed her well upon a Train of the same kind, as thus: Take a Creance, and tie that Fowl you would accustom her to fly to by the Beak, with meat on her Back, and cause one to stand close that shall hold the Creance; then standing afar off, unhood your Hawk, and let the Fowl be stirred and drawn with the Creance until your Hawk perceive it stir; and if she foot it, make another Train thus: Take a living Fowl that can fly, half seel it and cast it out; then let your Hawk fly to it; and if she kill it, reward her well

upon it.

Of the Rammage-faulcon.

If a Faulconer chance to recover a Rammage-Hawk that was never handled before, let him immediately feel her, and at that instant put on her Jesses made of M 4 fort

foft leather; at the end thereof fix two Varvels, the one may bear your Coat of Arms, and the other your Name, that if she chance to be loft, they that take her up may know where to return her: put her on also a pair of Bells with two proper Bewets. Having thus surnished her, youmust begin her manning by gentle handling. To avoid the danger of her Beak, you must have a smooth Stick about half a foot in length, with which you must stroak your Hawk about the Pinions of her Wings, and so downwards thwart her Train. If the offer to snap at the Stick, withdraw not your hand, and let her bite thereon, the hardness whereof will soon make her weaty of that sport.

If you would man her well, you should watch all the

night, keeping her continually on your Fift.

You must teach her to feed seel'd; and having a great and easie Ruster-hood, you must hood and unhood her often, seel'd as she is, handling her gently about the head, coying her always when you unhood her, to the intent she may not be displeased with her Keeper.

Let her plume and tire fometimes upon a Wing on your Fift, keeping her fo day and night, without pearching, until she be weary, and will fuffer you to hood

her without ftirring.

If your Hank be so rammage that she will not leave her snapping or biting, then take a little Aloes succession, na, and when she offers to snap, give it her to bite; the bitterness whereof will quickly make her leave that ill quality. Garlick I have heard will do the like, the strong scent thereof being equally offensive.

How to Hood a Hamk.

Having feel'd your Hawk, fit her with a large ease Hood, which you must take off and put on very often, watching watching her two nights, handling her frequently and gently about the Head as aforefaid. When you perceive she hath no aversion to the Hood, unfeel her in an Evening by Candle-light; continue handling her foftly, often hooding and unhooding her, until she takes no offence at the Hood, and will patiently endure handling.

Take this Observation by the way, That it is the duty of a Fanlconer to be endowed with a great deal of Patience; and in the next place he ought to have a natural love and inclination to Hawk; without these two Qualifications, all the Professors of this Art will prove Man-Hawk; instead of good Faulconers.

But to return where I left off: If your feel'd Hook feeds well, abides the Hood and handling without Ariking or biting then by Candie-light in an evening unseel her, and with your Finger and Spittle anoint the place where the Seeling-thread was drawn through; then hood her, and hold her on your Fife all night, often hooding, unhooding and handling her, stroaking her gently about the Wings and Body, giving her fometimes a bit or two, also Tiring Being well reclaimed, let her fit upon a or Plumage. Pearch; but every night keep her on the Fift three or four hours, stroaking, hooding, and unhooding, &c. as aforefaid: and thus you may do in in the daytime, when she hath learn'd to feed eagerly without fear,

How to make a Hawk know your Voice, and her own Feeding.

Having mann'd your Hawk so that she feeds boldly, acquaint her with your Voice, Whistle and such words as Faulconers use: you may do it by frequently repeating them to her as she is feeding on your Fist, &c. But I think the best way of making her acquainted with them, is by your experience and practice.

When

When she feeds boldly, and knows your Voice and whistle, then teach her to know her feeding, and to bate at it in this manner: Shew her some meat with your right hand, crying and luring to her aloud; if she bate or strike at it, then let her quickly and neatly soot it, and feed on it for sour or sive bits. Do thus often, and she will know her Feeding the better.

After this, give her every night fome Casting either of Feathers, or Cotton with Cloves or Aloes wrapt up therein, &c. These Castings make a Hamk

clean and eager.

How to make your Hawk bold and venturous.

In the first place, to make her hardy, you must permit her to Plume a Pullet or large Chicken in a place where there is not much light: her Hood in a readiness, you must have either of the aforesaid alive in your hand; then kneeling on the ground, luring and crying aloud to her, make her plume and pull the Pullet a little; then with your Teeth drawing the Strings, unhood her softly, suffering her to pluck it with her Beak three or four times more; then throw out the Pullet on the ground, and encourage her to seize it. When you perceive she breaks it and takes blood, you must lure and cry aloud to her, encouraging her all the ways imaginable: then hood her gently, and give her Tiring of the Wing or Foot of the said Pullet.

How to make a Hawk know the Lure.

Your Hawk having three or four times thus killed a Pullet or large Chicken in some secret place, then thus teach her to know the Lure.

Having fastned a Pullet unto your Lure go apart, giving your Hank unto another, who must draw loose

the strings of her Hood in readiness: Being gone a little way, take half the length of the String, and cast it about your Head, luring with your voice at the same time; then let your Hank be unhooded as you are throwing your Lure a little way from her, not ceasing luring all the while. If she stoop to the lure and seize, suffer her to plume the Pullet, still coying and luring with your voice; then let her feed on the Pullet upon the Lure: After that, take her on your fist together with her meat, then hood her, and let her tire as aforesaid. And thus you may teach her to come by degrees to a very great distance.

How to make a Hawk flying.

When your Hawk or Haggard-faulcon will come and stoop to the Lure roundly without any fear or coyness, you must put her on a great pair of Luringbells; the like you must do to a Soar-Hawk: by so much greater must the Bells be, by how much your Hawk is giddy-headed, and apt to rake out at Check

That being done, and she sharp set, go in a fair morning into some large Field on Horseback, which field must be very little incumbred with Wood or Trees: having your Hawk on your Fist, ride up into the wind and having loosned her Hood, whistle softly to provoke her to sty; and then you will observe she will begin to bate, or at least to slap with her Flags and Sails, and to raise her self on your Fist: then suffer her until she rouze or Mewt: when she hath done either of them, unhood her, and let her sty with her Head into the Wind; for thereby she will be the better able to get upon the Wing; then will she naturally climb upwards, slying in a circle.

When she hath flown three or four Turns, then cry and Lure with your Voice, casting the Lure about your head, unto which you must first tie a Pullet: and if your Faulcon come in and approach near you, then

cast out the Lure into the Wind; and if she stoop to

it, reward her as before.

There is one great fault you will often find in the making of a Howk flying, and that is, when she flieth from the Fift she will not get up, but take stand on the ground; a frequent fault in Soar-faulcons. must then fright her up with your Wand, riding in to her; and when you have forced her to take a Turn or two, take her down to the Lure and feed her. But if this do no good, then you must have in readiness a Duck feeled, fo that the may fee no way but backwards, and that will make her mount the higher. This Duck you must hold by one of the Wings near the body in your right hand, then here with your voice to make your Faulcon turn the head: when the is at a reasonable pitch, cast up your Duck just under her, that she may perceive it: if she strike, stoop, or truss the Duck, permit her to kill it, and reward her: giving her a reasonable Gorge. Use this custom twice or thrice, and your Hawk will leave the Stand, delighting on the Wing, and will become very obedient.

Here note, that for the first or second time it is not convenient to shew your Hawk great or large Fowl, for it often happens that they slip from the Hawk into the wind; the Hawk not recovering them, raketh after them, which puts the Faulconer to much trouble, and frequently occasions the loss of his

Hawk.

But if it so chance that your Hawk so rake out with a Fowl that she cannot recover it, but gives it over and comes in again directly upon you, then cast out a seeled Duck; and if she stoop and truss it, cross the Wings, and permit her to take her pleasure, rewarding her also with the Heart, Brains, Tongue, and Liver. For want of a quick Duck, take her down with the dry Lure, and let her plume a Pullet, and feed her upon it.

By

By so doing, your Hank will learn to give over a fowl that rakes out, and hearing the Lure of the Faultoner, will make back again to the River, and know the better to hold in the Head.

A Flight for a Haggard.

When you intend a Flight for a Haggard, for the first, second, and third time, make choice of such a place where there are no Grows, Rooks, or the like, to take away all occasion of her raking out after such Check.

Let her not fly out too far on head at the first, but run after and cry, Why lo, why lo, to make her turn Head. When she is come in, take her down with the Lure, unto which must be fastned a live Pullet, and

let her Tire, Plume, and feed as aforesaid.

Sometimes a Haggard out of pride and a gadding humour will rangle out from her Keeper: then clog her with great Luring-bells, and make her a Train or two with a Duck feeled, to teach her to hold in and know her keeper: take her down often with the dry Lure, and reward her bountifully, and let her be ever well in bloud, or you may whoop for your Hank to no purpose.

How to make a Soar-faulcon or Haggard k Game at the very first.

If she be well lured, flieth a good Gate, and stoopeth well, then cast off a well-quaried Hank, and let her stoop a Fowl on Brook or Plash, and watch her till she put it to the plunge: then take down your Make-Hank, reward her, hood her, and set her; so you may make use of her if need require.

Then take your Hamk un-entred, and going up the wind half a Bow-shot, unloofe her Hood, and foftly

whiftle

whistle her off your Fist, untill she have rouzed or mewted: then let her sly with her Head into the wind, having first given notice or warning to the company to be in readiness against the Hawk be in a good Gate, and to shew Water and to lay out the Fowl.

When she is at a good pitch, and covering the Fowl, then notifie that all the company make in at once to the Brook upon the Fowl, to land her: if your Faulcon strike, stoope or truss her Game, run in to help her, and crossing the Fowls Wing, let her

take her pleafure thereon.

If she kill not the Fowl at first stooping, give her then respite to recover her Gate. When she hath got it, and her Head in, then lay out the Fowl as aforesaid, until you land it at last; nor forgetting to help her as soon as she hath seized it, giving also her due Reward.

Remedy for a Hawk's taking Stand in a Tree.

In the first place you must chuse such places where are no Wood or Trees, or as little as may be. If you cannot avoid it, then have two or three live Trains, and give them to as many Men, placing them conveniently for to use them. When therefore your Hawk hath stooped, and endeavours to go to stand, let him to whom the Hawk most bends cast out his Train-Duck seeled if the Hawk kill her, reward her therewith. If this course will not remedy that fault in her by twice or thrice so doing, my advice is then to part with the Buzzard.

How to help a Hawk forward and coy through pride of Greafe.

There is a fearvy quality in some Hawks, proceeding from pride of Grease, or being high kept, which is a disdainful coynels. Such a Hawk therefore must not be rewarded altho she kill; yet give her leave to plume a little; and then let the Faulconer take a sheeps-Heart cold, or the Leg of a Pullet, and whilst the Hawk is busic in pluming, let either of them be conveyed into the Body of the Fowl, that it may savour thereof; and when the Hawk hath eaten the Brains, Heart, and Tongue of the Fowl, then take out your Inclosure, and call your Hawk with it to your Fist, and feed her therewith: after this give her some Feathers of the Neck of the Fowl to scowr and make her cast.

To make a Hawk hold in her Head, and not mind. Check.

Take a piece of a Leafe, and fasten it to your Lurefring, the other end to the Wing of a Pidgeon, which you may put in and pull out of your Hawking-bag at your conveniency: when you find your Hawk apt to go out, shew your Pidgeon. I would not have you use it often; for it draws a Hawk from her place if well flown.

How to continue and keep a Hawk in her high-flying.

If your Hawk be a stately high-slying Hawk, you ought not to engage her in more slights than one in a Morning: for often slying brings her off from her stately pitch. If she be well made for the River, sly her not above twice in a Morning; yet feed her up tho she kill not.

When a high-flying Hawk being whiftled to, gathers upward to a great gate, you must continue her therein, never flying her but upon broad Waters and open Rivers; and when she is at the highest, take

her down with your Lure; where when she hath plumed and broken the Fowl a little, then feed her up; and by that means you shall maintain your Faulcon high-flying, inwards, and very fond of the Lure.

Some will have this high-flying Faulcon feldom to kill, and not to froop: yet if she kill every day, altho she froop from a high Gate, yet if she be not rebuked or hurt therewith, she will, I can affure you, become a higher flier every day than other; but she will grow less fond of the Lure. Wherefore your high-flying Hawks should be made inwards, it being a commendable quality in them to make in and turn head at the second or third toss of the Lure, and when she poureth down upon it as if she had killed.

And as the teaching of a Faulcon, or any other Hawk to come readily to and love the Lure, is an Art highly commendable, because it is the effect of great labour and industry: so it is the cause of faving many a Hawk, which otherwise would be lost irrecovera-

bly.

Mark this by the way, that some naturally highflying Hawks will be long before they be made upwards, still fishing and playing the slugs; and when they should get up to cover the Fowl, they will stoop before the Fowl be put out: And this may proceed from two causes. In the first place, she may be too sharp set, and in the next place, it may be she is slown antimely, either too soon or too late.

When you see a Hawk use those evil Tatches without any visible cause, cast her out a dead Fowl for a dead Quarry, and hood her up instantly without Reward to discourage her from practising the like another time: half an hour afterwards call her to the Lure and feed her, and serve her after this manner

as she fisheth in that fashion.

Besides, to correct this errour, the Faulconer ought to consult the natures and dispositions of his Hawks,

nd

Fo

and fhould carefully observe which fly high when in good plight, and which best when they are kept low; which when sharpest fet, and which on the contrary in a mean between both; which early at Sun-rising, which when the Sun is but two hours high; which sooner, and which later in an evening.

For know, that the natures of Hawks are different; fo are the time to fly each one: for to fly a Hawk in her proper times, and to fly her out of it, is as difagreeable as the flight of a Gerfaulcon and a Buzzard. Therefore the Oftrager must fly his Hawks according to their natures and dispositions, keeping them al-

ways in good order.

Where by the by take notice, all Hawks, as well Sour-hawks as Mew'd-hawks and Haggards, should be set out in the Evening two or three hours, some less, having respect to their nature as it is stronger or weaker; and in the morning also according as they cast, hooding them first, and then setting them abroad a weathering, until you get on Horseback to prosecute your Recreation.

A Flight for the Hern.

This Flight hath less of Art in it than Pleasure to the beholders; and, to say the truth, the Flight is

stately and most Noble.

As it is less difficult to teach a Hawk to fly at fowl than it is to come unto and love the Lure, the first being natural, and not the last; so there is less industry to be used in making a Hawk fly the Hern than Water-sowl. To the first she is instigated by a natural propensity and inclination; to the latter she is brought with art, pains, and much diligence.

At the beginning of March Herns begin to make their Passage: if therefore you will adapt your Faulons for the Hern, you must not let them sly longer, at the River, and withal you must pull them down to
N

make them light; which is done by giving them Hearts and flesh of Lambs and Calves, also Chickens;

but give them no wild meats.

To the intent you may acquaint them one with the other, so that they may the better fly the Hern and help one another, you must call a cast of them to the Lure at once; but have a care they crab not together, for so they may endanger one another in their

flight

When your Hawk is scowred and clean and sharp fet, you must get a live Hern, upon the upper part of whose long sharp Bill you must place a joynt of a hollow Cane, which will prevent her from hurting the Flank: that being done, tie the Hern in a Creance; then fetting her on the ground, unhood your Hamk, who will fly the Hern as foon as she fees her. If the feize her, make in a pace to fuccour her, and let her plume and take bloud of the Hern: then take the Brains, the Marrow of the Bones, and the Heart, and laying it on your Hawking-glove, give it your Faulcon. Afterthis, rip her Breaft, and let your Hawk feed thereon till she be well gorged : this being done, hood her up upon the Hern, permitting her to plume at her pleasitre; then take her on your Fift, and let her tire on the Foot or Pinion.

Became Herns are not very plentiful, you may preferve one for a Train three or four times, by arming Bill, Head, and Neck, and painting it of the same colour that the Hern is of and when the Faulcon seizeth her, you must be very nimble to make in, and deceive her by a live Pidgeon clapt under the Wing of the Hern for the Faulcon, which must be her Reward.

The Hawk having thus feveral times taken her Train without discovery of the delusion, you may then let the Hern loose in some fair Field without a Creance, or without arming her: when she is up of a reasonable height, you may cast off your Faulcon;

who if she bind with the Hern and bring her down, then make in apace to rescue her, thrusting the Hern's Bill into the ground, and breaking his Wings and Legs, that the Hawk may with more ease plume and soot him. Then reward her as before, with the Brains, Marrow of the Bones, and Heart, making

thereof an Italian Soppa.

Thus much of a Train-Hern. Now to fly the wild Hern, it is thus: If you find a wild Hern at Siege, win in as nigh unto her as you can, and go with your Hawk under the Wind; and having first loosed her Hood in a readiness, as soon as the Hern leaveth the Siege, off with her Hood, and let her fly. If she climb to the Hern and bring her down, run in (as I said before) to rescue her, thrusting her Bill into the ground, breaking her Wings and Legs, and rewarding her as aforesaid on your Hawking-glove.

Now if your Faulcon beat not down the Hern, or do give him over, never fly your Faulcon again at a Hern, unless with a Make-hawk well entred; for the Coward by this means, seeing another fly at the Hern and bind with her, takes fresh courage. And if they kill the Hern flying both together, then must you reward them both together while the Quarry is hot, making for them a Soppa as aforesaid. This is the onely way to make them both bold and perfect Her-

ners.

Of the HAGGARD-FAULCON;

why so called; her good Shape and Properties: And what difference there is between a Haggard and a. Faulcon-gentle.

The Haggard is by some called the Peregrin-Faulcon, because, say some, she is brought from a country forrein and remote; and therefore others ca il them Travellers; or Passengers. But if there be no other reason for the name but this, all other Hanks coming from exotick places might borrow that appellation.

Upon a threefold confideration, I conceive they are

called Haggard or Peregrin-faulcons.

First, because their Eyrie was never found in any Country by any man that ever I could hear or read of.

Secondly, because these faulcons rangle and wander more than other Faulcons do, still seeking strange and forreign Coasts; so that wherever they come they may be justly called *Peregrins* or *Forreigners*.

Thirdly, and lastly, the never takes up her habita-

tion long in a place.

This Haggard is not inferiour to any other Faulcon, but very tender, and cannot endure hard weather, say some; but my experience hath found it otherwise. The reason that may be alleadged is this; first, she travels far, as a stranger, and comes into Countries commonly in the hardest time of the year: next, she is a hot Hawk, which may be gathered from her high slying, where the Air is much colder than below, and therefore ought to be more hardy: lastly, she meweth with more expedition (if she once begin to cast her Feathers) than other Faulcons do.

They are of shape like other Faulcons; but as to mould they are of three forts, large, middle-fiz'd, and little; some long-shaped, some short-trussed;

fome larger, fome less.

They have a fourfold Mail, blank, ruflet, brown

and Turtle.

The goodness of her Shape, consists in having her Head plum'd dark or blank, flat on the top with a white Wreath environing the same, a large blue bending Beak, wide Nares, a great black full Eye, high stately Neck, large Breast, broad Shoulders, a great Turtle-coloured Feather, long Veins and Sails, but stander

slender shaped, a long Frain, high Thighs, and white on the Pendant Feathers, a large wide Foot, with flender Stretchers, and Talons tending somewhat to an

azure colour.

You may know her in her flight from another by the stirring of her Wings; for she wieth no thick ftroak, but getteth up to her Mountee leisurely, without any great making out : besides she may be known by her extraordinary large Sails.

The differences between the Haggard and Faulcon-

gentle are thefe.

First, the Haggard is larger, being longer-armed with longer Beak and Talons, having a higher Neck,

with a long and fair-feafoned Head.

Secondly, her Beam-feathers in flight are longer than the Faulcon-gentle's, her Train somewhat larger: again, the Haggard hath a flat Thigh, and the other's is round.

Thirdly, the Hoggard will lie longer on the Wing. Fourthly, the Haggard at long flight exceeds the Faulcon-gentle; which last flieth with more speed from the Fift than the other. For maintenance of Flight and Goodness of Wing the Haggard exceeds all other Hawks.

Fifthly, and lastly, the Haggard is more deliberate and advised in her Stooping than the Faulcon-gentle, who is more hot and hafty in her Actions, and miffing the Fowl, is apt presently to fly on head at the

Check.

Of the BARBARY-FAULCON.

THe Barbary, or, as some call her, the Tartaret-Faulcon, is a Bird feldom found in any Country. and is called a Paffenger as well as the Haggard. They are somewhat lesser than the Tiercel-gentle, and plum'd N 3

red under the Wings, ftrong-armed, with long Talons

and Stretchers.

The Barbary-Faulcon, is venturously bold, and you may fly her with the Haggard all May and June. They are Hawks very slack in Mewing at first; but, when once they begin, they mew their Feathers very fast.

They are called Barbary-Faulcons, because they make their passage through that Country and Tunis, where they are more frequently taken than in any other place, namely in the Isles of the Levant, Candy, Cyprus, and Rhodes. In my opinion, she is a Hawk of not much value, and therefore I shall leave her, to speak of another of greater reputation.

Of the GERFAULCON.

The Gerfaulcon is a very fair Hank, and of great force, especially being mewed she is strong-armed, having long Strechers and Singles; she is sierce and hardy of nature, and therefore difficultly to be reclaimed. She is a lovely Bird to behold, larger than any kind of Faulcon: her Eyes and Head are like the Haggard's.

Her Beack is great and bending: she hath large Nares, and a Male like a Lanner's: her Sails are long and sharp-pointed; her Train much like the Lanner's; she hath a large Foot marble-seared, and is plumed blank, brown, and russet. She expects great civility from her Keeper, who must exercise a great deal of pa-

tience on her.

War Line

The Gerfaulcon's Eyrie is in some parts of Prussia, and on the borders of Russia; and some come from the Mountains of Norway, and from Germany: These may be also called Passengers.

By

By reason of the stereeness and hardness of this Bird, she is very hardly manned and reclaimed; but being once overcome, she proves an excellent Hank; and will scarce resuse to sty at any thing.

Their beaks are blue, so are the Sears of their Legs and Feet, having Pounces and Talons very long.

These Hanks do not fly the River, but always from

the Fift fly the Herns, Shovelers, &c.

In going up to their Gate they do not hold that course or way which others do; for they climbe up upon the Train when they find any Fowl, and as soon as they have reacht her they pluck her down, if not at the first, yet at the second or third encounter. You must feed and reward them like other Faulcons.

They are very crafty, and covet to keep their Cafling long through floth; therefore instead of Cotton give them a Casting of Tow, and be sure to keep them

sharp fet.

In the manning and Reclaiming you must by kindness make her gentle and familiar with you. When you have taught her to be lured loose, then leath her to come to the Pelts of Hens, or any other Fowl: but let her not touch any living flesh, for fear that draw

her love away from your Voice and Hand.

All this time you must be close by her, about her, and upon your Knees, using your Voice unto her, with her dinner and supper clean drest and washt, giving her still some bits thereof with your hand, that she may the more delight therein. By doing thus frequently you will so win her, that should she be guilty of Carrying, yet by this means she will be reclaimed, and forget that errour.

Let the Oftrager have special care how he make his Gerfaulcon at first, and indeed all other Hamks; for as they are made then, he shall ever find them after; and if they are well made, they are twice made, and for ever made: and therefore have a care of two much

N 4

precipitation

Precipitation in posting them forward from one lesson to another before they are perfect in any thing.

If you train her with Doves, she will not carry a feather from you. But first be before you spring her any Dovs, let her kill four or five at Lure close by your foot, having a pair of short Creances at your Lure.

Here note, that the Gerfaulcon is most desired for her high-flying, and is best at Hern and the Mountee: and that you may bring her to perfection herein, play with your entermewed Gerfaulcon the first year, shewing her all imaginable kindness, and shew all possible means to make her love you. When you have brought her forward, give her often Castings to cleanse and purge her, also to prevent the growth of too much glut and fatness in her inward parts, which will indanger her life.

Of the SAKER.

The Saker is a Passenger or Peregrin-Hawk, for her Eyrie hath not been found by any. They are found in the Isles of the Levant, Cyprus, Rhodes, and Candia, and in several other Islands in the Sea.

She is somewhat larger then the Haggard-faulen; her Plume is rusty and ragged; the Sear of her soot and Beak like the Lanner; her Pounces are short, however she hath great strength, and is hardy to all kind of Fowl. She is more disposed to the Field a great deal than to the Brook, and delights to prey on great Fowl, as the Hern, the Goose, &c. As for the Crane, she is not so free to say at her as the Haggard-faulcon. The Saker is good also for lesser Fowl, as Pheasant, Partridge, &c. and is nothing so dainty of her Diet as Hawks long-winged.

This

This Hawk will make excellent foort with a Kite, who, as foon as the fees the Saker (the Male thereof is called a Sakaret) cast off, immediately betakes her self to, and trusts in the goodness of her Wings, and getteth to her pitch as high as possibly she may, by making many Turns and Wrenches in the Air: which if well observed, together with the variety of contests and bickerings that are between them, it cannot but be very pleasant and delightful to the beholder. I have known in a clear day and little wind stirring, that both the Saker and Kite have soar'd so high that the sharpest eye could not discern them, yet hath the Saker in the encounter conquered the Kite, and I have seen her come tumbling down to the ground with a strange precipitancy.

Of all Birds the Saker hath the longest Train. This Hawk will fly at Hern Kite, Pheasant Partridge, Quail, and sometimes at the Hare: but her chiefest excellency consists in her flying at the Crane. Now because we have but few of them in England, I shall desist from speaking farther of the Saker, only that she is made to the Lure as other Hawks are: and indeed all Faulcons are made after the same manner, yet are not flown withal alike; for Sakers, Lanners, Gerfaulcons, Mylions, and Merlins do not fly the River; if

any do, it is very rarely.

Of the LANNER, LANNERET, and TUNISIAN.

The Lanner is a Hawk common in all Countries, especially in France, making her Eyrie on high Trees in forrests, or on high Cliffs near the Seafide.

She is lesser than the Faulcon-gentle, fair-plumed when an Enter-mewer, and of horter Talons than

With the Lamer or Lameret you may fly the Rivers

and both are very good also for the Land.

They are not very choice in their Food, and can better away with gross Victuals than any other Hawk.

Mew'd Lanners are hardly known from the Soarbanks, (and so likewise the Saker) because they do not

change their Plume.

You may know the Lamers by these three tokens.

1. They are blacker Hamks than any other. 2. They have less Beaks than the rest. 3. And lastly, They are less armed and pounced than other Faulcons.

Of all Hawks there is none fo fit for a young Faulconer as the Launer, because she is not inclined to Surfeits and seldom melts Grease by being over-flown.

There are a fort of Lanners which Eyrie in the Alps, having their Heads white and flat aloft, large and black Eyes, slender Nares, short and thick Beaks, and lesser than the Haggard or Faulcon-gentle. Some are indifferent large, some less, and others middle-fized.

Their Tail is marble or ruflet; their Breaft-feathers white and full of ruflet spots; the points and extremities of their Feathers sull of white drops; their Sails and Train long: they are short Leg'd, with a foot less than that of a Faulcon, marble-seer'd; but being mew'd the Seer changeth to a vellow.

The Lanner newer lieth upon the Wing after she hath flown to Mark, but after once stooping she maketh a Point, and then, like the Goshawk, waits the Fowl.

If the miss at the first down-fall and kill not, the will

confult her advantage to her greatest ease.

These kind of Hanks are highly prized in France and Italy, neither is the despiteable in England; but

we look upon them as flothful and hard metled : and therefore if you intend to have any good of her keep a firit hand over her; for the is of an ungrateful disposition, and will slight your Kindnesses. contrary to the nature of the Faulcon-gentle, who for one good usage will return a treble courtese, and the better fhe is rewarded, the better fhe will fly.

They are flown at Field or Brook, and are Hawks that maintain long flights, whereby much Fowl is killed (and more than by a better Hank) by reafor

of Dogs and Hawking-poles.

If you will fly with a Lamer, you must keep her very fharp : and because they keep their Castings long, by reason they are hard-metled Hawks, give them therefore hard Castings made of Tow and

knots of Hemp.

In the reclaiming the Lanner and the Lanneret much pains and labour must be taken, and the chiefest thing is to make her well acquainted with the Lure which must be garnished with hard washt meat, and let her receive the Major part of her reward in bits from your hand : as for the rest of her Training take the same course which I have directed in the manning and ordering of the Haggard-faulton. But above all take pains to fray her, and by your utmost Art restrain her from dragging or carrying any thing from you, to which ill quality she is more inclined than any other Hawk whatever.

To conclude this Chapter, I come next to the Tumisan-Faulcon, which is not much different in nature from the Lanner, yet somewhat less, but in Foot and Plume much alike. She hath a large round Head. and is more creese than the Lanner, and more heavy

and fluggish in her flight.

She is called a Tunifian-faulcon, from Tunis the Metropolis of Barbary, the Country where the usually

makes her Eyric.

They are excellent Hawks for the River, lying long spon the Wing, and will fly the Field also very well.

They naturally delight to feize upon the Hare, and will strike boldly at her. Much more might be said of her, which I here omit, she being a Hawk not very

common in England.

Having cursorily discourst in as good a method as I could of the seven sorts of Faulcons, with their Manning, Reclaiming, Luring, Training, Staying, &c., I shall proceed to give you an account of some other Hawks, which I propounded and promised in the beginning of this Treatise: take them thus in order.

Of the MERLIN.

The Merlin in Plume is much like the Haggard-Faulcon, also in the Sear of the Foot, Beak, and

Talons, and is much alike in Conditions.

A Merlin well mann'd, lur'd, and carefully lookt after, will prove an excellent Hawk. Their flight is fwifter than any other Hawk, and naturally they flie

at Partridge, Thrush, and Lark.

It is a Bird very busic and unruly, and therefore the Faulconer ought to take special heed and care of them, lest unnaturally they eat off their own Feet and Talons, which several of them have been known to do, and die thereby. For which cause, Merlins ought not to be mew'd or intermew'd, because in the Mew they often spoil themselves.

She is accounted a Hawk of the Fift, and not of the Lure: but to my knowledge she may be brought to

love the Lure very well.

She is very venturous and hardy, which may apa pear by her flying at Birds as big or bigger than her felf, felf, with such eagerness, as that she will pursue them even into a Town or Village.

If you will flie with a Merlin at a Partridge, chuse the Formal, which is the Female. The Jack is not

worth the Training.

When you have made her to the Lure, and that she will patiently endure the Hood, then make her a Train with a Partridge: if she foot and kill it, reward her well, suffering her to take her pleasure thereon. After this, sly her at the wild Partridge, if she take or mark it at first or second slight, being retrieved by the Spaniels, feed her upon it with a reasonable Gorge, chearing her with your Voice in such a manner that she may know it another time. If she prove not hardy at first Train, try her with a second or third: if she prove not then, she will prove nothing worth.

If you fly the Merlin at Lark or Linnet, let it be with a Cast of Merlins at once, because they love to fly in company: besides, it is a greater delight to the Spectators to see them fly together; you shall observe the one climb to the Mountee above the Lark, and

the other to lie low for her best advantage.

When your Merlin is throughly manned and made gentle, (which you must bring to pass according to the method propounded for other Hamks) I say, when she is reclaimed, you may then carry her into the fields; where having found a Lark or Linnet, get as hear as you can into the Wind to the Bird; and as soon as the Bird riseth from the ground, unhood your Cast of Merlins and cast them off, and when they have beaten down the Lark, let them feed a little thereon.

There is a fort of Larks which I would not advise the Faulconer to fly at, and they are called Cut-larks, which do not mount as the long-spur'd field-Lark but fly straight forward, to the endangering the loss of

your Hawk without any pastime or pleasure.

Of the Mewing of Merlins, Faulcons, Gerfaulcons, and Mylions at Stock or at Large : and which is the best way of Mewing.

It is the opinion of some, (but how commendable, I will leave the Reader to Judge) that Merlins cannot be mew'd, or if they be, that they are very rarely good afterwards. Experience tells me the contrary: for if they be hardy, and have flown well in their Soarage, they have proved much better after mewing than before.

The time of mewing for Faulcons should be about the latter end of April; at which time fet down your Faulcons, diligently observing whether they be louzy or not : if they are, pepper them, and that will infallibly kill the Lice. You must also four them, be-

fore you cast them into the Mew.

Mewings are of two forts; the one loofe and at

large, the other at the Stock or Stone.

Mewing at large is thus in fhort : If your Room be large, by divisions you may mew four Faulcons at once, each partition confifting of about twelve foot fquare, and as much in height, with two Windows two foot broad, the one opening to the North, for the benefit of cold Air; the other to the East, for the beneficial warmth of the Sun. At your Eastwindow let there be a Board two foot broad, even with the bottom of the Window, with a Lath or Ledge round; in the middle fet a green Turff, laying good store of Gravel and Stones about it, that your Hawk may take them at her pleasure.

If your Faulcon be a great Bater, let your Chamber be on the ground, which must be covered four fingers thick with gross Sand, and thereon fet a Stone somewhat taper, of about a Cubit in height, on which they love to fit, by reason of its coolness,

Make

Make her two Perches, at each Window one, to recreate her felf as the pleafeth, either with Heat or Cold.

Every week or fortnight fet her a Bason of Water to bathe in; and when she hath bathed therein, take

it away the night following.

Your Mew must have a Portal to convey in the Hack, a thing whereon the Meat is served. I need not prescribe the manner how to make it, since it is a thing so generally known already.

You ought to keep one fet hour in feeding; for so will she mew sooner and better: when she hath fed and gorged her self, then remove the Stick from the Hack on which the meat was fastened, to keep her

from dragging it into the Mew.

In the opinion of most, it is better Mewing at the Stock or Stone, which must be performed thus: Make choice of a Ground-room remote from noise or concourse of people, and therein set a Table of what length you think is most convenient for the number of your Faulcons, and of about fix foot in breadth, with thin Boards along the fides and ends, about four fingers high from the superficies of the Table, which must stand on Tressels about three foot high from the ground. Let this Table be covered indifferently thick with great Sand mixt with small Pebbles in the midst whereof place a pyramidal Free-stone about a yard in height, unto which tye your Faulcon, Gerfaulcon, Merlin or Mylion: then take a small Cord of the bigness of a Bow-string, and put it through a Ring or Swivel, and bind it about the Stone in such fort that the Swivel may go round the Stone without let or hindrance, and thereunto tye the Leafe of your Hamk.

Here note, that if you mey more than one Hank in one Room, you must set your Stones at that distance, that when they bate they may not crab one another. The reason of placing this Stone is, because the Faulcon delights to sit thereon for its coolness sake, and the little gravelly stones the Hawk frequently swallows to cool her within. The Sand is necessary to preserve their Feathers when they bate, and their Mewets are the more easily cleansed. The little Cord with the Swivel tyed about the Stone, is to keep the Hawk from tangling when she bateth, because the Ring will still follow her.

All day let your Hawk stand hooded, onely when you take her on your Fist to feed: at night unhood her; and lest any accident should happen in the night, prejudicial to the Hawk, the Faulconer ought to lie in

the Mew.

Of the HOBBY.

The Hobby is a Hawk of the Lure, and not of the Fift, and is a high flier, and is in every respect like the Saker, but that she is a much lesser Bird.

The Hobby hath a blue Beak, but the Seer thereof and Legs are yellow: the Crinets or little Feathers. under her Eye are very black; the top of her head is: betwixt black and yellow, and the hath two white feams on her Neck; the Plumes under the Gorge and about the Brows, are reddiff, without fpot or drop; the Breaft-feathers are brown for the most part, yet powdered with white spots; her Back, Train, and Wings are black aloft, having no great scales upon the Legs, unless it be a few beginning behind the three Stretchers and Pounces, which are very large in respect of her short Legs; her Brail feathers are engouted betwixt red and black; the Pendant-feathers (which are those behind the Thigh) are of a rusty Imoaky complexion. The daring Hobby may be well called fo, for the is nimble an dlight of Wing, and dares. encoun-

ti

encounter Kites, Buzzards, or Crows, and will give fouse for souse, blow for blow, till sometimes they seize and come tunibling down to the ground both together.

They are chiefly for the Lark, which poor little creature so dreads the fight of a Hobby soaring in the Air over her, that she will rather chuse to commit her self to the meroy of Man or Dogs, or to be trampled on by Horses, than venture her self into that Element

where the fees her mortal Enemy foaring.

The Hobby makes excellent sport with Nets and Spaniels, which is preformed after this manner. The Dogs range the field to spring the Fowl, and the Hobbits soar over them aloft in the Air: the filly Birds, searing a Conspiracy between the Hawks and Dogs to their utter destruction, dare not commit themselves to their Wings, but think it safer to lie close to the ground, and so are taken in the Nets. This sport is called Daring,

Of the GOSHAWK.

There are several sorts of Goshawks, and they are different in goodness, force, and hardness, according to the diversity of their choice in Cawking: at which time when Hawks begin to fall to liking, all Birds of Prey do assemble themselves with the Goshawk, and slock together.

The Female is the best: and although there be some Goshawks which come from Sclavonia, Sardinia, Lombady, Russia, Puglia, Germany, Armenia, Persia, Greece, and Africa; yet there are none better than those which are bred in the North parts of Ireland, as in the Protime of Vister, but more especially in the County of

Tyrone.

Take these Rules as to the goodness of her propor-

tion or fhape.

She ought to have a small Head, her Face long and straight, a large Throat, great Eyes, deep set, the Apple of the Eye black, Nares, Ears, Back, and Feet, large and blank; a black long Beak, long Neck, big Breast, hard siesh, long Thighs, sleshy, the bone of the Leg and Knee short, long large Pounces and Talons. From the Stern or Train to the Breast forward she ought to grow round; the Feathers of the Thighs towards the Train should be large, and the Train-feathers short, and soft, somewhat tending to an IronMail. The Baryl-seathers ought to be like those of the Breast, and the Covert-seathers of the Train should be spotted and full of black rundles; but the extremity of every Train-feather should be black-streaked.

The fign of force in a Goshawk is this: Tye divers of them in several places of one Chamber or Mew, and that Hawk that doth slife and Mewt highest and farthest off from her, is without question the strongest Hawk; for the high and far mewting argues a strong

Back.

I might tell you the ill shape of a Goshawk; but since I have declared the good, the bad may be collected from thence: Contraria contrariis dignoscunter. However take this general rule, That Goshawk that hath pendant Plumes over her Eyes, the whites whereof are waterish and blank, that is red-mail'd or bright tawny, hath the most assured tokens of a Hawk that is ill conditioned.

The Goshawk preyeth on the Pheasant, Mallard, Wild-goose, Hare, and Coney; nay, she will venture to seize on a Kid or Goat; which declareth the inesti-

mable courage and valour of this Hank.

She ought to be kept with great care, becanse she is very choice and dainty, and looks to have a nice hand kept over her.

How to make the Soar or Haggard-Goshawk.

First trim them with Jesses, Bewets, and Bells, as foon as they come to your hands; keep them feeled fome time, hooding and unhooding them often, teaching them to feed on the Fift three or four days, or till they have left their Rammageness and become gentle: having fo done, unfeel them by Candle-light at night, causing them to tire or plume upon a Wing or Leg of a Pullet; and be fure to deal gently and mildly with them until you have won and throughly manned them: then you may go into some pleasant field, and first give them a bit or two hooded on your Fist, and the like unhooded, cast them down fair and softly on some Perch, and make them come from it to your Fift calling to them with a Faulconer's usual terms: and when they come, feed them, calling all the while in the fame manner to make them acquainted with your voice. The next day you may call them with a Creance at a farther distance, feeding them as before.

When you have thus called your Goshawk abroad three or four days, and that you find her grow cunning, then take her on your Fift, and mount on Horseback, and ride with her an hour or two, unhooding and hooding her sometimes, giving her a bit or two in fight of your Spaniels, that she may not be afraid of them: this being done, fet her on a Tree with a short Creance tied to her Loins, and going half a fcore yards from her on Horseback, call her to your Fist according to art; if she come, reward her with two or three bits, and cast her up again to the Tree; then throw out a dead Pullet (to which she was used before) about a dozen yards from her; if she fly to it and feize it, let her feed three or four bits upon it; ride the mean while about her on Horseback, and rate back your Spaniels, because they shall not rebuke her at first, 0 2

and make her ever after afraid of them: then aligh, and gently take her en your Fift, feed her, hood ther

and let her plume or tire.

Here note, that the Goshawk is a greater Poulterer, and therefore it would be more requisite to throw out a dead Partridge, or one made artificially with its Wing, Tail and Plumage; which will cause her to know Partridge better, and Poultry less.

How to make a Goshawk fly to the Partridge.

Having manned your Goshawk, go into the field with her, carrying with you a Train-Partridge, and unhooding your Hawk, bear her as gently as you can; and you will do well to let her plume or tire, for that

will make her the more eager.

If the Partridge spring, let her sly: if she mark one, two, three, or more on the ground, than go to her and make her take Pearch on some Tree thereby: then if you can retrive the Partridge with your Spaniels, as soon as they spring it, you must cry, Homit, bomit, and retrive it the second time, crying when it springeth as aforesaid: if your Hamk kill it, feed her upon it.

If it so happen your Spaniels should take it (as it is very frequent for hot Spaniels to light upon the Partridge, being either flown out of breath, or overcharged with fear) then alight from your Horse, and taking it speedily from the Dogs, cast it out to your Hawk-crying, Ware Hawk ware, and let her feed thereon at her

pleasure.

After this you must not fly her in two days: for having sed on bloudy meat, she will not so soon be in good case to fly again; for such meat is not so easily endewed by a Hawk as the Leg of a Chicken or the like. Using her thus three or four times, she will be well in bloud, and become an excellent Flier at this pleasant Field flight.

Here

a rain.

Here note, that you must do at first with her as with other Hawks, that is, feel and watch her, and win her to feed, to the Hood, to the Fift, &c. and then enter her to young Partridges till November, at which time both Trees and Fields become bare and empty: then you may enter her to the old Remen, fetting her short and eager; if she kill, feed her up with the Partridge three or four times, and this will bring her to perfection.

If your Hank be a good Partridger, let her not fly at the Powt or Pheasant, for they fly not so long a Flight as the Partridge; and therefore the Gofhank, being more greedy of Prey than any other Hawk, (yet defirons of ease.) would always covet short Flights, not caring to hold out: not but that there are fome good both for long and short flights, but they

are rarely found.

Besides, you must have a great care in keeping them in good order, with Flying, Bathing, Weathering,

Tiring, and Pluming.

How to help a Goshawk that turneth Tail to Tail, and giveth over her Game.

It is usual for a Goshamk to fly at a Partridge, yet neither kill it, nor fly it to mark, but to turn Tail to Tail; that is having flown it a Bow-shot or more, she giveth over her Game, and takes a Tree: then must you call in your Spaniels to the Retrieve that way your Hawk flew the Partridge; let the Faulconer draw himself that way also, and carrying with him a quick Partridge, let him cast it out to her, which will make her believe it is the same she flew at. When you cast it out, cry, Warey Hawk, ware; make her feize it, and feed her upon it: and this will encourage her to fly out her Flight another time. If the next time you fly her (which must be the third day) she serve you so

0 3

again, then must you do as aforesaid with a live Par-Eridge carried about you for that purpose : if she ferve you fo the third time, I would advise you to rid your hands of her as foon as you can.

How to make a Goshawk fly quickly.

The Gofhawk (especially Soars and Niasses) are very loving to and fond of man, and therefore should be flown with a little more Rammage, else frequently, after two or three stroaks with their Wings, they will give over the flight, and return to the Keper : wherefore you must fly with them as foon as you can. yet there is an evil which attends this direction, and that is, by flying over-foon you will pull down your Hawk and make her poor, from whence proceeds fearfulness and cowardise. To remedy which you must give your Hank some respite, and set her up again before you fly her. There are some Goshawks (but very few) which will not fly when they are in good plight: then must you bate their flesh, and pinch them with fcouring, washt meat, and the like. But the best way of flying fuch an one is when the is lufty and high; and to add to her vivacity and courage, let her be fet abroad in the morning an hour or two, when the weather is not very cold; for being so weather'd, when she hath flown a Partridge to the Mark, she will not away until it be retrieved by the Spaniels.

How to fly a Goshawk to the River.

A Goshawk (but no Tiercel) may fly the River at Mallard, Duck, Goofe, or Hern, with other large · Water-fowl: She is made for that purpose after this manner.

First, make her to the Fist, as is prescribed in her making to the Field: then carry her into the field without Bells, and with a live Duck, which you must

give

give to one of the company, who must hide himself in some Ditch or Pit with the Duck tied to a Creance: then must you draw near him with your Hawk unhooded on your Fift, and giving him some private notice to throw out the Duck, cast off your Hank; and if she take it at the Source, let him reward and feed her with a reasonable Gorge: then take her upon your Fist and hood her, permitting her to tire and plume upon the Leg or Wing of the Duck. The third day go again. with her into the Field in like manner, or elfe find out some Plash or Pool where Wild-Fowl lie, taking the advantage of the rifing Bank : being near the Fowl, et fome of the company raise them up, and your Hawe being unhooded, cast her off; if she kill any of them at Source, make in to her quickly, and cross the Fowl's Wings, so that she may Foot and plume it at her pleafure, rewarding her as before. After this, take her on your Fift, and let her tire and plume the Leg or Wing of the Fowl aforesaid.

When your Goshawk is throughly nouzled, and well in blond, you may fly her twice a day or ottner, rewar-

ding her as before.

d

ľ

nt - Y

h

d

ge

er ild

YE

An excellent way to preserve a Goshawk in the time of her flying, especially in bot weather.

Take a pint of Red-rose-Water, put it into a Bottle, bruise one stick or two of green Liquorish and put init, likewise a little Mace, and the quantity of a Wallnut of Sugar-candy, and draw her meat through it twice or thrice a week, as you shall sind occasion: It prevents the Phantass, and several Diseases they are subject to: besides, it gives a huge Breath, and gently soureth her.

0 4

How to fly the Wild-goose or Crane with the Goshawk.

Having mann'd your Gashawk, brought her to the Fish, and train'd her with a Goose in the Field, then thek out where Wild-geese, Cranes, or other large Wild-fowl lie: having found them afar off, alight and carry your Hawk unhooded behind your Horse, stalking towards them until you have got pretty night them, holding down your Hawk covert under the Horse's Neck or Body, yet so that she may see the Fowl: then you must raise them, and casting off your Hawk, if she kill, reward her. And thus she may kill four or five in a day.

In like manner, you may make her to the Crane, and may stalk to Fowl which lie in Ponds or Pits as

aforefaid.

Here note, that if you can fly at great, flight the leffer Flights, which will make your Hawk the bolder.

How to mew a Goshawk, and draw her out of the Mew, and make her Flying.

Having flown with a Goshamk, Tiercel, Soar, or Haggard till March, give her some good Quarry in her Foot, and having seen her clean from Lice, out off the Buttons of her Jesses, and throw her into the Mew; which Room should be on the ground, and scituated towards the North, if possible.

Let the Pearches therein be lined with Canvas or Cotton for otherwife by hurting her Foot the may

get the Gout or Pynn.

Let the Mew have also a Window towards the East, and another Northward. There must be also a Bason of Water in the Mew for bathing, which must be shifted every three days. Feed your Hank with

with Pigeons, or elfe with the hot Flesh of Weather-Mutton.

About the beginning of Ollober, if you find your Golhawk fair mew'd and hard penn'd, then give her Chickens, Lambs-hearts or Calves-hearts, for about twenty day's together, to fcour her, and make her flife out the flimy substance and glitt out of her Pannel, and enseam her.

Having done thus, some Evening draw her out of the Mew, and new furnish her with Jesses, Bells, Bewets, and all other things needful for her: then keep her seel'd two or three days, till she will endure the Hood patiently; for mewed Hawks are impati-

ent of the Hood as those newly taken.

d

ay

le,

as

he

ol-

in

the and

10

nay

alfo

hich

lank vith When you have won her to endure the Hood, then in an Evening by Candle-light you may unfeel her, and the next day shew her the Fist and Glove, making her to tire and plume morning and evening, giving her sometimes in the morning (when her Gorge is empty) a little Sugar-candy, which will help her in an excellent manner to endew.

When you find your Gefhawk feed eagerly, and that you think in your Judgment she is enseamed, and that you may boldly fly with her, then go with her into the Field; she will then bate, (if empty) and fly of her own accord: if she kill, feed and reward her; but if she fly to the mark with a Partridge, then must you retrive it, and serve her as afore declared.

Some general Observations for an Ostrager or Falconer in Keeping and Reclaiming a GOSHAWK.

It frequently happens that a Gofhank or Tiercel, where good in their Sourage, become worse after they are mewed: and the reason may be, because she

was not cherished nor encouraged, to make her take

delight in her Soarage.

For in a manner the major part of a Faulconer's skill consists in coying and kind usage of his Hawk, to cherishing her that she may take delight in her

Flight.

At the first entring of his Hawk he ought always to have a Train-Patridge in his Bag, to serve her with when need requires, to purchase her love: and let him take such observations which may keep his Hawk always in good order. As first, he must know naturally all Goshawks are full of moist humours, especially in the Head, and therefore let him ply them with Tiring and Pluming morning and evening; for that will open them in the Head, and make them cast water thereat. Let the Goshawk's tiring be a Rum of Beef, a Pinion or the Leg of a Chicken, given by the fire, or in the warm Sun: this not onely opens her Head, but keeps her from slothfulness in good exercise.

Give her every night Casting of Feathers or Cotton, and in the morning mark whether it be wrought round or not, whether sweet or not, whether moist or dry, and of what colour the water is that drops out of the Casting: by these means he shall know

what condition his Hawk is in.

He also ought to regard her Mewts, to see whether they be clean or not, and give remedies accordingly. He ought also to consider the season; for in cold weather he must set his Hawk in some warm place where fire is made; he must line the Pearch with Canvas or Cotton, and must set it so far from the Wall that the Hawk hurt not her Feathers when she bateth. If the weather be temperate, he may then set her in the Sun-shine for an hour or two in the morning.

Let no Hens or Poultry come near the place where your Hank doth Pearch; and in the Spring offer her water every week, or else she will foar away from you

when the flieth, and you may go look her.

If your Hawk bathe her felf spontaneously in cold weather after her flight, go presently to the next house and weather her with her Back to the fire, and not her Gorge, for that will make her sick: and dry your Hawk if you have carried her in the Rain.

A good Faulconer will always keep his Hawk high and lufty, yet so that she may be always in a conditi-

on to fly best.

Also he must keep his Hawk clean, and her Feathers whole: and if a Feather be broken or bruised, he must presently imp it; and to that end he must have his imping-needles, his Semond, with other In-

ftruments always in readiness.

The first year it is most requisite to fly your Go-shawk to the Field, and not to the Covert; for so they will learn to hold out, and not turn tail in the midst of their flight: and when they are mewed Hawks, you may make them do what you will: and it is better to let her be a little rammage than to be overmanned.

Her feeding is best on hot meats: and if you would instruct her to kill great Fowl, make her Trains thereof; and if you would have her continue those Flights, never sly her at less, for that will take her off from them and spoil her. If you will make her to sly with a Dog to assist her, then feed your Hawk with great Fowl, and your Dogs with sless tied under their Wings. If you train your Hawk with them, rewarding her upon the Train, and your Dog with her, this will make them acquainted together.

Thus continue doing till your Dog throughly knows his duty: and be fure to keep your Dog tied up; for if you let him go loose, it will spoil the best Dog that is: and never give him a reward, but when he maketh in at such Fowls to rescue the Hawk.

Call your Goshawk to no other thing than your Fist, and oftentimes spurt good wine on your Goshawks Sears: And note, that in all her Distempers sweet things

Of the SPARROW-HAWK.

The last Hank which we shall treat of, is the Sparrow-hank; of which there are several kinds, and of different Plumes.

For the kinds, there is the Sclavonian, Calabrian, Corfican, German, Vicentian, and Veronian, Alpifan, Sabbean, and Bergamascan, in the black Vale near the Confines of Valtolina. It is needless to give you a

particular account of them.

Their Plumes are different: some are small plumed and blank Hawks, others of a larger Feather, some plumed like the Quail, some brown or Canvas-mail'd, and other have just thirteen Feathers in their Train,

To be short, this Character I may justly give the Sparrow-bank in general, that she is in her kind, and for that Game her strength will give her leave to kill, a very good Hank. Besides, he that knows how to man, reclaim, and sy with a Sparrow-bank, may easily know how to keep and deal with all other Hanks.

And herein lieth an excellency in the Sparrow-bank, she serves both for Winter and Summer with great pleasure, and will sly at all kind of Game more than the Faulcon. If the Winter-Sparrow-bank prove good, she will kill the Pie, the Chough, the Jay, Wood-cock, Thrush, Black-bird, Felfare, with divers other Birds of the like nature.

How to make a Sparrow-hawk, whether Eyess, Brancher, Soar, Mew'd, or Haggard.

Sparrow-hawks are to be considered as all other kinds of Hawks are, according to their age and difposition.

The feveral kinds of Sparrow-hawks may be comprehended under these five heads; the Eyesses or Nyesses, Branchers, Soars, Mew'd, and Hagg ards

Eyesses, are mewed in the wood, and are taken in

the Eyric.

Branchers, are those which have forsaken the Eyrie, and are fed near it by the old ones on Boughs and Branches.

Sour-hawks, are so called, because, having forsaken the Eyrie, and beginning to prey for themselves, they four up alost for pleasure.

Mew'd Hawks, are such which have once or more

shifted the Feather.

Lastly, Haggards, are they which prey for themfelves, and do also mew in the Wood or at large.

This division of kindes is not peculiar to the Sparrew-bank, but common to all: give me leave to run

them over in order as I have fet them down.

For the Eyess or Nyess, (which is of greatest difficulty to bring to any perfection) you must first feed her in some cool Room which hath two Windows, the one to the North, and the other to the East, which must be open, and barred over with Laths, not so wide for a Hawk to get out, or Vermin to come in: strow the Chamber with fresh Leaves, and do in every respect to this Room as I have ordered in a former Chapter for the Mewing the Faulcon.

You must feed your Eyess with Sparrows, young Pigeons, and Sheeps-hearts. Whilst she is very young and little you should cut her meat, or fixed it into

[mal

finall pellets, and feed her twice or thrice a day, according as you find her endew it or put it over.

When the is full fummed and flieth about, then give her whole small Birds and sometimes feed her on your Fift, fuffering her to ftrain and kill the Birds in your hands; and fometimes put live Birds into the Chamber where she is, that she may learn to know to foot and to kill them; and let her feed upon them in your presence: by this course you will not onely neul her, but take her off from that scurvy quality of hiding her Prey when she hath seized it, a natural property belonging to all Eyesses. Likewise every morning go into the Room, call her to your Fift, whiftle and use such terms as you would have her hereafter acquainted with. When she hath put forth all her Feathers and is full fummed, then take her out of the Chamber, and furnish her with Bells, Bewets, Jesses, and Lines.

It will be altogether requisite to seel her at first, that she may the better endure the Hood and handling: and let it be a Ruster-hood that is large and easie, which you must pull off and put on frequently, stroaking her often on the head, till she

will stand gently.

In the Evening by Candle-light unfeel her, giving her fomewhat to tire upon, handling and stroaking her Feathers gently, hooding and unhooding her as

often as you think fit.

Before I proceed any farther, I shall inform you how to Seel a Hawk after the best manner. Take a Needle threaded with untwisted Thread, and casting your Hawk take her by the Beak, and put the Needle through her Eye-lid, not right against the sight of the Eye, but somewhat nearer the Beak, that she may have liberty to see backward; and have especial care that you hurt not the Web; then put your Needle through the other Eye-lid, drawing the ends of the Thread together, tie them over the Beak not with a straight

ftraight knot, but cut off the Threads near to the end of the knot, and so twist them together, that the Eye-lids may be raised so upwards that the Hank may not see at all, but as the Thread shall slacken, she shall be able to see backwards only, which is the cause that the Thread is put nearer the Beak.

When your Eyes is well won to the Hood, and to the Fist, let her kill small birds thereon; then call her two or three days or longer, till she will come far off; then take a live Pidgeon tied by the Foot with a Creance, and kir it till your Hawk will bate at it and seize it, but not far off, that you may quickly help her at the first, lest the Pidgeon struggling with her she prove too strong, and discourage your young Hawk: then let her plume and feed her thereupon, whistling the while, that she may know it another time: then hood her, and let her plume and tire a little.

You may use her to Trains of Chicken and Quail: and when she will seize readily by often Training, ride out with her in the morning into the Fields, where calling your Sparrow-bank to your Fist, and giving her a bit or two, go with your Spaniels to seek some Beavy of young Quails, advancing your Fist alost, that your Hank may see them when they spring, slying her at advantage: if she kill reward her, &c. if she miss, serve her with the Train of a Quail.

Let your Dogs hunt on your right hand when they range, but especially when they quest and call, to the end you may the better cast off your Hawk. When your Hawk is throughly entred and well nouzled, you may then hold your hand low, for she will now bate at the Whur: but whatsoever you do, have a quick eye and a good regard to the Spaniels, not covering to be too near them, but a little above them, that you may let your Hawk sty coasting at the advantage when the Game springeth.

Of the Brancher, Soar, Men'd, and Haggard Sparrow-hawk.

Having spoken of the first kind of Sparrow-hawks, viz. the Eyes, and other four in the Title of this

Chapter, must consequently be discoursed of.

I shall give you but few instructions, for in effect the same Precepts that serve for the Eyess will serve also for the Brancher, Soar, Mew'd, and Haggard Hawks; onely this, these four last require not so much pains to be taken to make them know their Game as the Eyes, because they have been accustomed to prey for themselves.

Above all things, the Faulconer must take them off from their ill custome of carrying, and that may be done by serving them with great Trains, whereby

they will learn to abide on the Quarry.

Be very mindful of coying them as much as you can, for they will remember a kindness or injury better

than any other Hawk.

If the Hawk be newly taken, and will not feed, then rub her Feet with warm flesh, and whistling to her, and sometimes putting the flesh unto her Beak: if she will not yet feed, rub her Feet with a live Bird; if at the crying of the Bird the Hawk seizeth it with her Feet, it is a signe she will feed; then tear off the Skin and Feathers of the Bird's Breast, and put the Bird to her Beak, and she will eat.

When she will feed upon your whistle and chirp, then hood her with a Rufter-hood, and feed her betimes in the morning; and when she hath endewed, give her a Beaching in the day-time, and every time you hood her, give her a bit or two; at evening give her the Brains of a Hen for her supper: and in every thing else order these Hawks aforesaid, as you do the

Faulcop and the reft.

Others

How to mew Sparrow-hawks.

Some use to put their Sparrow-hawk into the Mew as soon as they leave dying her, cutting off both her Bewets, Lines, and knots of her Jesses, and so leave them in the Mew till they are clean mewed..

If you will have your Sparrow-bank to fly at Quail, Partridge, or Pheafant-powt, then you must draw her in the beginning of April, and bear her on the Fist till she be clean and throughly enseam-

ed.

Others keep their Sparrow-hawks on the Pearch until March, and then throw them into the Mew, pepering them for Lice, if they have any. Her Mew should be a Chamber aloft from the ground, eight or nine foot long, and about six foot broad her Windows and Pearches must be like the Go-shawks.

Her Mew being thus provided, in May go in to her in an Evening by Candle-light, and taking her up foftly, pull out all her Train-feathers one after another: this shall make her mewthe faster, especially if you feed her with hot meat and Birds, observing a certain hour

to feed her in.

Once in fourteen days fet water before her in the Mew: if you perceive she hath any Feathers or Down which stand staring upon her Back, sitting as if she would rouze, then set her water sooner. If you put water by her continually, it delays her Mewing; and to keep it always from her, causeth her to mew her Feathers uncleanly: but water once in a fortnight is the best Medium for her Mewing between those two extreams.

Thus having given you a furnmary account of most Hawks commonly in use in England, and in most parts of Europe, shewing their Shapes, Complexions, Natures, manner of Manning, Reclaiming, Ordering, P

Luring, Flying, Mewing, &c. I shall next give you an account of the several Diseases and Maladies they are subject to, with their proper Cures and Remedies: but before I shall enter thereon, give me leave to inform the Ostrager or Faulconer of his necessary duties.

The Duty of a Faulconer; with necessary Rules and Observations for him to follow.

A Faulconer ought to consult and consider the quality and mettle of his *Hawks*, and to know which of them he shall fly with early, and with which late.

He must be fond of his Hawk, patient, and cleanly in keeping her from Lice, Mites, and the like Vermin. He must rather keep his Hawks high and full of flesh, than poor and low, which makes them more subject to infirmities than when they are in very good plight.

Every night after flying, he must give his Hawk Cafting, sometimes Plumage, sometimes Pellets of Cotton, and sometimes Physick, as he shall find her di-

feafed by her Casting or Mewt.

Every night he must make the place very clean under her Pearch, that he may know by her Casting whether the Hawk stands in need of Scourings upwards or downwards.

Let him remember every Evening to weather his Hawk, excepting such days wherein she hath bathed; after which, in the Evening she should be put into a warm Room on a Pearch with a Candle burning by her, where she must sit unhooded, if she be not rammage, to the intent she prune and pick her self, and rejoyce by enoiling her self after bathing: and in the morning he ought to weather her, and let her cast, if

fhe hath not done it already, keeping her still hooded till he carry her in the field.

In feeding his Hawk he must have a care of feeding her with two forts of meat at one time; and what he

giveth her must be very sweet.

If he have an occasion to go abroad, let him have a care that he pearch not his *Hawk* too high from the ground for fear of bating and hanging by the Heels, whereby the may spoil her felf.

He ought to carry to the Field with him Mummy in powder, with other Medicines; for frequently the Hawk meets with many accidents, as bruiles at encounters, &c. neither must be forget to carry with him any

of his necessary Hawking-implements.

Lastly, he must be able to make his Lures, Hoods of all forts, Jesses, Bewets, and other needful Furniture for his Hawk: neither must he be without his Coping-Irons to cope his Hawk's Beak, if it be overgrown, and to cope her Pounces und Talons, as need shall require: neither must he be without his Cauterizing-Irons.

Let these Instructions suffice, I being willing to leave the rest to the care and observation of the ingenious

Faulconer.

1ne-

or

115

by

nd

he

he

Of Diseases and dangerous Accidents incident to HAWKS, and their several Cures.

IT is necessary for a skilful Faulconer not onely to know how to Man, Reclaim, Keep, Fly, Imp, and Mew his Hawks, with other things pertinent to that purpose; but also to know their Diseases, with the proper Cures of them, and other Accidents frequently befalling Hawks, both in their Fights and otherways.

P 2

Before

Before we shall characterize their Maladies and prescribe Rules for their Cares, it will not be irrequifite to tell you what Hawks, as well as men, (which feems fomewhat (trange) have four Complexions, the true indicators of their natures: and as in man his natural Complexion and Constitution is known by his Skin, fo is the Temperament and natural Disposition of a Hank by her Coat and Plume. This opinion hath not been onely averr'd by the Ancients but confirmed by the modern experience of the Skilful in the Noble Art of Hawking. Take it in this manner.

Faulcous that are black are Melancholick, and are to be Phylicked with hot and moist Medicines, because their Complexion is cold and dry; for which purpose Alocs, Pepper, Cocks-flesh, Pigeons, Sparrows, Goats-

flesh, and the like, are very good.

Faulcons blank are Phlegmatick, and must have Phyfick hot and dry, because Phlegm is cold and moist; to which purpose Cinamon, Cloves, Cardamomum,

Goats-flesh, Choughs, &c. are very good.

Faulcons Ruffet are Sanguine and Cholerick indifferently mix'd, and their Physick must be cold, moderately moift and dry, as Myrtles, Cassia-fiftula, Tamarinds, Vinegar, Lambs-fleft, and Pullets.

Thus much for the Complexions: Now for the

Difeases and their Cures.

Of Castings, and Mewtings, either good or bad according to their several Complexions and Smells.

Castings are of two forts, Plumage, or Cotton: the latter is most commonly given in Pellets, which must be about the bigness of an Hazle-nut, made of fine soft white Cotton: after she hath supp'd you must convey this into her Gorge.

In the morning diligently observe how she hath rolled and cast it, whereby you shall know whether

fhe

she be in a bad or good condition: for example, if she cast it round, white, not stinking, nor very moist or waterish, you may conclude her found; but if she roll it not well, but cast it long, with properties contrary to the former, then she is unsound and full of Diseases.

Besides, if her Casting be either black green, yellowish, slinny, or stinking, it denotes your Hawk to be disasted. The former Casting is remedied by hot meats; the latter by feeding her well, and washing her meats in cool water, as of Endive, &c. and give her one or two Castings of Cotton, incorporating therewith Incense and Munimy. But if she continue notwithstanding in this condition, give her an upward Scowring made thus. Take Aloes pulverized one scruple, powder of Clove four grains, powder of Cubebs three grains; incorporate these, and wrap them in Cotton, and give it your Hawk empty, having no meat in her Pannel.

Casting of Plumage is to be observed as the former Casting: that is, if in the morning you find them round and not stinking, it is a good signe: but if long, slimy, with indigested stess sticking to the same, and having an ill scent, it is very bad. Here note, that by how much the more sweet or stinking the Casting is, by so much is the Hawk in a better or worse condition.

Memts must be observed as well as Castings, in this manner: If the Mewt be white, not very thick nor clear, having no black spot in it, or but very little, it is a signe of the healthy constitution of the Hamk; but if it be white and very thick in the middle, though it doth not import sickness, yet it sheweth her to be too gross and over-full of Grease; which you must remedy by giving her moist meats, as the Heart of a Calf or Lamb, Ge, and for two mornings after give her some Sugar-candy, or else the Gut of a Chicken well washt and fill'd with Oyl-Olive: either of these will scour her and make her to slife freely.

It is a very bad and mortal figne, to fee your Hamk's Mewt full of variety of colours: therefore you must speedily prevent ensuing mischies by giving her Mummy purished and beaten to powder, wrapping it

in Cotton.

If the Mewt be more yellow than white, then doth fhe abound with Choler proceeding from great Flights in hot weather, also from much Bating. This is remedied by washing her meat in Bugloss, Endive, Borage, and such-like cold Waters, wringing the said meat as-

ter you have fo washed it.

The black Mewt is a most deadly signe, and if it continue four days she will peck over the Pearch and die. If she mewt so but once, there is no great danger, for it proceeds either from the Blood or Guts of the Fowl in tiring, of else from being gorged with filthy meats in this case give her good warm meat and Cotton-casting, with the powder of Cloves, Nutmeg, and

Ginger, or Mummy alone:

If the mewt be green, it is a bad figne, and denotes her troubled with an infected and corrupt Liver, or with some Apostume, unless she be a Rammage-Hamk, and then that figne holds not good. Her cure is, by feeding her with meat powdered with Mummy; if she will not take it with her Food, then give it her in a Scowring or Casting: but if this ill-colour'd Mewting continue still, then give her a Scowring of Agarick, and after that another of Incense pulverized to comfort her.

The dark fanguine Mewt with a black in it is the most deadly signe of all, and differs but little, if any thing, from the former black Mewt. A Hank mewting after this manner is irrecoverable, and therefore

it is needless to prescribe a Cure.

Lastly, the gray Mewt like sour Milk, is a mortal token, yet curable, as shall be shewen hereafter.

Thus you may fee how requisite it is for a Faulconer to observe diligently every morning his Hawk's Cast-

ings and Mewtings, that knowing thereby their Maladies, he may timely find out their Remedies. Let us now proceed to their particular Diseases.

Of the Cataract.

The Catarast in the Eyes of a Hawk, is a malady not easily removed, and sometimes incurable, when it is too thick and of a long continuance.

It proceedeth from gross Humours in the Head, which frequently do not only dim, but extinguish the fight: and sometimes the Hood is the cause of this

mischief.

The cure must be effected by Scowring her two or three days with Aloes or Agarick: then take the powder of washt Aloes sinely beaten one scruple, and two scruples of Sugar-candy; mingle these together, and with a Quill blow it into your Hawk's Eye afflicted as aforesaid three or four times a day. This is the gentlest and most Soveraign Medicine of any yet I have tried. But if this will not do, you must use stronger Medicines as the juice of Celandine-roots, bathing their eyes often with warm Rose-water wherein hath been boil'd the seed of Fenugreek.

Of the Pantas or Afthma.

The Pantas is a dangerous Distemper, and few Hawks escape which are afflicted therewith. It happens when the Lungs are as it were so baked by excessive heat, that the Hawk cannot draw her breath, and when drawn, cannot well emit it again. You may judge of the beginning of this Distemper by the Hawk's labouring much in the Pannil, moving her Train often up and down at each motion of her Pannel; and she cannot many times mewt or slife, or if she do, she drops it fast by her. It is known likewise by your Hawk's frequent opening her Clap and Beak.

P. 4

The best Remedy is, to scour your Hawk with good Ovl-Olive well washed in several Waters till it become clear and white, which you must do after this manner: Take an earthen Pot with a small hole in the bottom thereof, which you must stop with your Finger; then pour therein your Oyl with a quantity of Water, and coil these together with a Spoon till the Water grow darkish; after which remove your Finger. and the Water will run out, but the Oyl remain behind floating on the top; thus do feven or eight times, till you have throughly purified the Oyl: Then take a Sheep's Gut above an Inch long for a Faulcon and Gothawk, but of less length for lesser Hawks, and fill it with this Oyl, and fasten it with a Thread at both ends. Your Hawk having first cast convey this Gut into her Throat holding her on the Fift till she makea Mewt; an hour after she hath done mewting feed her with aCalf's Heart or a Pullet's Leg, giving her every third or fourth day a Cotton casting with Cubebs and Cloves. I shall onely add one Receipt more for the Pantas or Ashma, and that is the Oyl of sweet Almonds poured into a washt Chicken's Gut, and given the Hawk; which is of great efficacy in the cure of this Difease.

Of Worms.

There are a fort of Worms an Inch long, which frequently afflict Hawks, proceeding from gross and viscous Humours in the Bowels, occasioned through

want of natural heat and ill digestion.

You may know when she is troubled with them by her casting her Gorge, her stinking Breath, her trembling and writhing her Train, her croaking in the night, her offering with her Beak at her Breast or Pannel, and by her Mewt being small and unclean.

You may cure her of them with a Scowring of washt Aloes, Hepatick, Mustard-seed, and Agarick, of each each an equal quantity; or the powder of Harts-horn dried; or lastly, a Scowring of white Dittander, Aloes, Hepatick washt four or five times, Cubebs, and a little Saffron wrapt in some flesh, to cause her to take it the better.

Of the Filanders-

There are several forts of Filanders, but I shall speak but of one sticking to the Reins. They are Worms as small as a Thread, and about a Inch long, and lie wrapt up in a thin Skin or Net near the Reins, of a

Hamk, apart from either Gut or Gorge.

iis

he

of

he T,

ill

1

0-

it

n-

ea

er

TY

nd

he

his

ch

nd

by

mhe

of of

ich

You shall know when your Hawk is troubled with them, by her poverty, by russing her Train, by straining the Fist or Pearch with her Pounces, and lastly, by croaking in the night when the Filanders prick her. You must remedy this Malady betimes, before these Worms have enlarged themselves from their proper station, roving elsewhere to your Hawk's ruine and destruction.

You must not kill them as other Worms, for fear of Impostumes from their corruption, being incapable to pass away with the Hawk's Mewt; but onely stupishe them, that they may be offensive but seldom; and that is done thus; Take a head of Garlick, taking away the outmost rind; then with a Bodkin heated in the fire, make holes in some Cloves, then steep them in Oyl three days, and after this give her one of the Cloves down her Throat, and for forty days after she will not be troubled with the Filanders. Wherefore a Foulconer will shew himself prudent, if, seeing his Hawk low and poor, he gave her once a month a Clove of this Garlick for prevention of the Filanders.

Another approved Medicine for Filanders or Worms in Hawks.

Take half a dozen Cloves of Garlick, boil them in Milk until they are very tender, then take them out and dry the Milk out of them; then put them into a fpoon-ful of the best Oyl of Olives you can get, and when she hath cast, in the morning give these to your Hawk, feed her not in two hours after, and be sure it be warm meat, and not much, and keep her warm that day for fear of taking cold; give her the Oyl with the Garlick: they must steep all night.

Of Hawks Lice.

These Lice do most infect the Head, the Ply of a Hank's Wings, and her Train. In the Winter you may kill them thus: Take two drams of Pepper beaten to powder, and mingle it with warm Water, and with this Lotion wash the places infested with these Lice or Mites: then set your Hank on a Pearch with her Back and Train against the Sun; then hold in your hand a small Stick about an handful long, with a piece of soft Wax at the end of it, and with that (whilst the Hank is weathering her self) take away those Vermin crawling upon the Feathers. You may do well to add to the Pepper and Water some Staves-acre.

In the Summer-time you may kill the Lice with Auripigmentum beaten to powder, and strowed on the

places where they lie.

A safe and easie way to kill Lice in Hawks.

Mail your Hawk in a piece of Cotton, if not in fome Woollen-Cloth, and put between the Head and her Hood a little Wooll or Cotton: then take a pipe

of Tobacco, and, putting the little end in at the Tream, blow the Smoak, and what Lice escape killing, will creep into the Cloath. This is a certain way.

How to keep and maintain all manner of Hawks in health, good plight and liking.

In the first place, never give them a great Gorge, especially of gross meats, as Beef, Pork, and such as are hard to be endewed and put over.

Secondly, never feed them with the fiesh of any Beast that hath lately gone to Rut; for that will in-

fenfibly destroy them.

Thirdly, if you are constrained to give your Hawk gross food, let it be well foaked first in clean Water, and afterwards sufficiently wrung; in Summer with cold Water, in Winter with luke-warm Water.

Ever observe to reward your Hamks with some good live meat, or else they will be brought low: however, the serving them with washt meats is the

way to keep them in health.

I shall conclude how to keep Hawks in perfect health with this most excellent Receipt. Take Germander, Pelamountain, Basil, Grummel-seed, and Broom-slowers, of each half an ounce; Hyssop, Sassifras, Polpodium, and Horse-mints, of each a quarter of an ounce, and the like of Nutmegs; Cubebs, Borage, Mummy, Mugwort, Sage, and the four kinds of Mirobolans, of each half an ounce; of Aloes Succotrine the fifth part of an ounce, and of Sassifron one whole ounce. All these you must pulverize, and every eighth or twelfth day give your Hawks the quantity of a Bean thereof with their meat. If they will not take it so, put it into a Hens Gut tied at both ends, and let him stand empty an hour after.

Of the Formica.

This is a Distemper which commonly seizeth on the Horn of Hawks Beaks, which will eat the Beak away; and this is occasioned by a Worm, as most men are of opinion.

You may perceive it by this; the Beak will grow rugged, and it will begin to separate from the Head.

To remedy this Malady, you must take the Gall of a Bull, and break it into a Dish, and add thereto she powder of Aloes-Succatrine: mingle these well together, and anoint the Clap or Beak of your Hank therewith, and the very place where the Formica grows, twice a day; but touch not her Eyes or Nares: continue thus doing till your Hank be perfectly cured, and bathe her with Orpiment and Pepper to keep her from other Vermin.

Of the Frownce.

The France proceedeth from moist and cold Humours which descend from the Hanks Head to the Palate and root of the Tongue, by means whereof they lose their appetite, and connot close their Clap. This by some is called the Eagles-bane; for she seldom dieth of age, but of the over-growing of her Beak.

You may know if your Hawk be troubled with this Diftemper, by opening her Beak, and feeing whether her Tongue be swoln or not: if it be, she hath it.

There are several ways to cure this Distemper, but the best that ever yet I could find for it, is, only to take the powder of Alume reduced to a Salve, with strong wine-vinegar, and wash the Hawk's Mouth therewith.

To care the dry Frownce.

on

ak

en

ıd.

of

he

e-

re-

n-d,

er

1

115

th

nis

er

ut

to

th

th

Take a Quill and cut it in the shape of a Pen, and at the other end tie a fine little Rag; with one end fcrape off the white Skin, which you will fee in the Mouth or Throat of your Hawk until it bleedeth: then with the other end wash it with the juice of Lemon or White-wine-Venegar very clean; then take a little burnt Alume, and some of a Shooe-soal burnt upon Wood-coals and beaten to powder; mix them, and lay them on the place or places; but let your Hawk have no meat above, nor be ready to be fed: by this I have cured many.

Of the Pip.

The Pip frequently troubleth Hawks, as it doth Chickens, and proceedeth from cold and moistness of the Head, or from feeding on gross meat not well washt in warm Water in the Winter, and cold Water in the Summer.

The Symptoms of this Diftemper are the Hawk's frequent Sniting, and making a noise twice or thrice in her Sniting.

For the Cure hereof, you must cast your Hawk, gently, and look upon the tip of her Tongue, and if you find the Pip there, you must scour her with a Pill made of Agarick and Hiere piera given two or three days together with her Casting at night; this will cleanse her Head, and the sooner if she be made to tire against the Sun in the Morning: Then bind a little Cotton to the end of a Stick, and dipping it in good Rose-water wash her Tongue therewith: after this amoint it three or four days with Oyl of sweet Almonds and Oyl-olive well washed as aforesaid. Having so done, you find the Pip all white and soft then take an Awl, and with the point thereof life

up the Pip foftly, and remove it, as Women pip their Chickens, but remove it not till it be throughly ripe; and wet her Tongue and Palate twice or thrice a day with the aforesaid Oyl, till she be throughly cured.

How to remedy that Hawk which Endeweth not, nor putteth over as she should do.

This happens either by being foul within, or by a Surfeit; or else when she was low and poor her Keeper over-gorged her, by being too hasty to set her up, and she being weak was not able to put over

and endew, and furfeited thereupon.

The Cure whereof is this: You must feed her with light meats, and a little at once, as with young Rats and Mice, Chickens or Mutton dipt in Goats-milk or otherwise; or give her a quarter of a Gorge of the

yolk of an Egg.

If you feed her with the flesh of any living Fowl, first steep it well in the blood of the same Fowl, so shall your Hawk mount her flesh apace; if you also scour her with Pills made of Lard, Marrow of Beef, Sugar and Saffron mix'd together, and given her three mornings together, giving her also a reasonable Gorge two hours after.

How to make a Hawk feed eagerly that hath lost her Appetite, without bringing her low.

A Hank may lose her Appetite by taking too great Gorges in the Evening, which she cannot well endew; or by being foul in the Pannel; or sometimes by Colds.

To remedy which, take Aloes Succotrina, boil'd Sugar, and Beef marrow, of each alike, onely less of

the

ıly

ice

ily

the Aloes; incorporate these, and make them into balls or Pills as big as Beans, and give of them to your Hawk and hold her in the Sun till she hath cast up the filth and slime within her; then feed her not till noon, at which time give her good meat; and three days after for the same Disease it is good tiring on Stock-doves, small Birds, Rats or Mice.

How to raise a Hawk that is low and poor.

The Poverty of a Hawk happens several ways: either by the ignorance of the Faulconer of some latent lurking diffenper; or by her soaring away, and so being lost four or five days, in which time, finding

little or no Prey, she becomes poor and lean,

To fet her up you must feed her, a little at once, and often, with good meat and of light digestion, as small Birds, Rats, Mice, &c. Or thus: take two spoonfuls of Honey, four of fresh Butter, and boil them together in a new earthen pot of Water; then take Pork well washed, and steep it in that Water, giving your Hawk a reasonable Gorge thereof twice a day, warming the said Water when you intend to feed your Hawk; and get some Snails that breed in running Waters, and give them her in the morning, and they will not onely scour away the gross slimy humours which are within, but also nourish her exceedingly.

How to remedy a Hawk that is slothful, and is averse to slying.

A Hawk frequently hath no mind to fly, either by reason of her ill keeping, that is, when she is kept by those who know not how to give her her Rights, as bouzing, bathing, &c. or because the Hawk is too high and full of grease, or too poor and low: by the first

first she becomes proud and coy, and by the latter so weak that she wants strength and spirit to perform it.

For the curing of which Diftemper, she ought to be thoroughly view'd by some skilful Faulconer, by whom such Remedies should be administred to her as are needful for her: but above all, there is nothing like giving her in a morning three or four Pills of Celandine well washt.

Of Swoln Feet in a Hawk.

Hawks have Swelling in their Feet upon feveral accounts: fometimes by chafing their Feet in flying their Prey, firiking it, and taking cold thereupon; fometimes for want of rolling or lining the Pearch with fome foft warm cloath; or elfe through groß humours and foulness within, which through exercise drop down into their Feet, and so cause them to swell: Lastly, this swelling happens by pricks when they sly

fiercely into Bushes after Game.

For a Remedy, you must scour your Hawk three mornings together with the Pills of Lard, Marrow, Sugar and Saffron, and set her in the Sun: two days after this seed her with good meat: then take Bole-Armoniack, and half the quantity of Sanguis Dracomis; and having made them into powder, temper them well together with the White of an Egg and Rose-water, and anoint her Feet twice a day three or four days together, setting her on some Cloth to keep her Feet warm.

How to scour Hawks before you cast them into the Mew.

When Mewing time is come, you must scour and cleanse your Hawks; for in luring and slying time by foul feeding they ingender Filanders and other Distempers, whereof they die for want of timely care and cure. When

When you fet down your Hawk use the same as you find Page 246, which will not only kill the

Worm, but fcour a Hawk alfo.

The best way is, (when you mean to cast a Hawk into the Mew) first to scour her well according to former directions, to cope her, and set her up well in stellar, to discharge her as near as we can of all Diseases, also to free her from Mites and Lice, to set her Water, sometimes to feed her with young Rats, Mice, Dogs-siesh, Pidgeons, Rabbets, and now and then with some liquid thing and meats laxative.

Take notice of this special Observation: A Haggard is not to be cast in loose to the Mew, but is to be mewed on the Fist; for otherwise she will become too coy and strange: and if she fall to bating and beating her self for heat, then must you hood her up, or bespout her with cold water, which is the readiest

way to make her leave Bating.

You must continue her on the Fist till she begin to shed her Feathers; then set her down, and tie her to a Stone or Pearch, as you do the rest; and after she hath mewed and comes to fly, then let her stand on a Block or Billet cased or rolled. In the same manner mew Goshawks, Tierces, and Sparrow-hawks; onely they will not be born on the Fist, but be at liberty in the Mew, and very cleanly served.

Fifteen or twenty days before you draw your Hawk out of the Mew, you must begin to abate her of her diet, the sooner and better to enseam her. And forget not to feed her with washed meat, which

will prevent many dangers that may follow.

Many more diseases there are incident, and Accidents happening to Hawks, of which with their cures there are large Discourses written in Italian, French, and English, and therefore I thought sit to insert in this place no other Maladies than what most usually occur: If you desire to be further satisfied, I shall refer you to those larger and (it may be) less useful Volumes.

On This

. In it was the ball

GENTLEMAN'S

Recreation:

OWLING

floibar and ai With a Mort Account of

Singing-Birds

What Fowling is; with the Nature and Diversity of all manner of Fowl.

TOWLING is used two manner of ways either by Enchantment, or Enticement; by winning or wooing the Fowl unto you by Pipe, Whiftle, or Call; or else by Engine, which unawares furprizeth them.

Fowl are of divers forts, which alter in their na-ture as their Feathers; but by reason of their multiplicity, I shall for brevity-fake distinguish them onely

into two kinds, Land and Water-Fowl.







The Water-fowl are so called from the natural delight they still take in and about the Water, gathering from thence all their food and nutriment.

Here note, that Water-fowl are in their own nature the subtilest and wisest of Birds, and most careful of their own safety: Hence they have been formerly compared to an orderly and well-governed Camp, having Scouts on land afar off, Courts of Guards, Sentinels, and all forts of other watchful Officers surrounding the body, to give an alarm on

any approach of feeming danger.

For in your observation you may take notice, that there will be ever some straggling Fowl, which sie aloof from the greater Number, which still call sirst. Now it is the nature of Water-sowl to sly in great flocks, having always a regard to the general safety; so that if you see a single Fowl, or a couple sly together, you may imagine they have been somewhere affrighted from the rest by some sudden amazement or apprehension of danger: but so naturally are they inclined to Society, that they seldom leave wing till they meet together again. And this is occasioned not only by the near approach of Men, but also by the beating of Haggards on the Rivers, as also by the appearance of the very bold Buzzard and Ring-tail.

Of Water-fowl there are two forts; fuch as live of the water, and such as live on the water: the one taking their sustenance from the water without swimming thereon, but wading and diving for it with their long Legs: The other are Web-footed and

lwim, as the Swan, Goofe, Mallard, &c.

Of the Haunts of Fowl.

The thing of greatest moment for the Fowler to understand, is the Haunts of Fowl. In order thereunto you are to understand, that all forts of greater Fowl, viz. those who divide the foot, have

their residence by the edge of Rivers that are shallow, Brooks, and Plashes of water: and these appear not in Flocks, but you shall see here one single, there a couple, and the like; which makes them dissicult to be taken by Engine or Device; but they are the best slights for Hawks that can be imagined.

Likewise these Fowl delight in low and boggy places; and the more sedgie, marish and rotten such grounds are, the sitter they are for the haunting of

thefe Fowl.

They love also the dry parts of drowned Fens, which are overgrown with tall and long Rushes,

Reeds, and Sedges.

Lastlyy, they delight in half drowned Moors, or the hollow vales of Downs, Heaths, or Plains, where there is shelter either of Hedges, Hills, Tusts of Bushes or Trees, where they may lurk obscurely.

Now the lesser Fowl, which are Web-sooted, haunt continually drowned Fens, where they may have continually plenty of Water, and may swim undisturbed by Man or Beast: Their haunt is likewise in the main Streams of Rivers, where the Current is swiftest and least subject to freez; and the broader and deeper such Rivers are, the greater delight these Fowl take therein, the Wild-goose and Barnacle excepted, who abide no Waters above their sounding; for when they cannot reach the Ouze, they instantly remove thence, seeking out more shallow places. These two last named are infinitely delighted with green Winter corn, and therefore you shall see them evermore where such Grain is sown, especially if the ends of the Lands have much water about them.

Likewise these smaller Fowl do very much frequent small Brooks, Rivers, Ponds, drowned Meadows, Pastures, Moors, Plashes, Meres, Loughs and Lakes, especially if well stored with Islands unfrequented, and well furnished with Shrubs, Bushes,

Reeds,

Reeds, &c. and then they will breed there, and frequent fuch places both Summer and Winter.

The readiest way of taking great Fowl with NETS.

The first thing you are to consider, is the making of your Nets, which must be of the best Packthread, with great and large Meshes, at least two Inches from point to point: for the larger the Meshes are, (so that the Fowl cannot creep through them) the better it is; for they more certainly intangle them.

Let not your Nets be above two fathom deep, and fix in length, which is the greatest proportion that a man is able to overthrow. Verge your Net on each side with very strong Cord, and extend it at each end upon long Poles made for that purpose.

Having thus your Nets in readiness, let the Fowler observe the haunts of Fowl, that is to fay, their Morning and Evening feedings, coming at least two hours before those seasons; then spreading his Net fmooth and flat upon the ground, staking the two lower ends firm thereon, let the upper ends stand extended upon the long Cord, the farther end thereof being staked fast down to the Earth two or three fathom from the Net; and let the stake which staketh down the Cord stand in a direct and even line with the lower Verge of the Net, the distance still obferved: then the other end of the Cord, which must be at least ten or twelve fathom long, the Fowler shall hold in his hand at the uttermost distance aforefaid, where he shall make some artificial shelter either of Grass, Sods, Earth, or such like matter, whereby he may lie out of the fight of the Fowl.

Q3

Observe to let the Net lie so ready for the Game, that upon the least pull it may rise from the Earth

and fly over.

Strew over all your Net, as it lies upon the ground, fome Grass, that you may hide it from the Fowl. It will not be amiss (but altogether requisite) to stake down near your Net a live Hern, or some other Fowl formerly taken, for a Stale. When you observe a competent number of Fowl come within the verge of your Net, then draw your Cord suddenly, and so cast the Net over them: Continue thus doing till the Sun be near an hour high, and no longer; for then their feeding is over for that time; and so do at Evening from about Sun-set till Twilight. By this means you may not only take great quantities of larger Wild-sowl, but also Plover, which takes his food as much from Land as Water.

How to take small Water-fowl with Nets.

Let your Nets be made of the smallest and strongest packthread, and the Meshes nothing near so big as those for the greater Fowl, about two foot and a half or three foot deep; line these Nets on both sides with false Nets, every Mesh being about a foot and a half square each way, that as the Fowl striketh either through them or against them, so the smaller Net may pass through the great Meshes, and so

streighten and entangle the Fowl.

These Nets you must pitch for the Evening-slight of Fowl before Sun-set, staking them down on each side of the River about half a foot within the water, the lower side of the Net being so plumb'd that it may sink so far and no farther: Let the upper side of the Net be placed slantwise, shoaling against the water, yet not touching the water by near two foot; and let the strings which support this upper side of the Net be fastured to small yieldin Sticks prickt in the

ne

to

the Bank, which as the Fowl strikes may give liberty to the Net to run and entangle them. Thus place several of these Nets over Divers parts of the River, about twelvescore one from another, or as the River or Brook shall give leave; and be consident, if any fowl come on the River that night, you shall have your share.

And that you may the sooner obtain your desire, take your Gun and go to all the Fens and Plashes that are a good distance from your Nets, and fire it three or four times; which will so affright the Fowl, that they will instantly post to the Rivers; then plant

your Nets upon these Fens and Plashes.

In the Morning go first to the River and see what Fowl are there surprized; and having taken them up with your Nets, if you elpy any Fowl on the River, discharge your Gun, which will make them sly to the fens and Plashes, and then go and see what you have taken: Thus you shall be sure to be surnished with some, tho there be never so few abroad.

How to take all manner of small Birds. with Bird-Lime.

IN cold weather, that is to fay, in Frost or Snow, all forts of small Birds do congregate in Flocks, as Larks, Chaffinches, Leanets, Gold-sinches, Tellow-hammers, Buntings, Sparrows, &c. all these but the Lark do perch on Trees or Bushes as well as feed on the ground: If you perceive they resort about your House or Fields adjacent, then use your Bird-lime that is well prepared, and not over old; order it after this manner. Take an Earthen dish and put the Bird-lime into it, and add thereunto some fresh Lard, or Caponsgrease, putting an ounce of either to a quarter of a pound of Bird-lime; then setting it over the fire, let it melt gently together; but let it not boil by any means, for if you do, you will take away the strength

of the Bird-lime, and so spoil it. Having thus prepared it, get a quantity of Wheat-ears, as many as you think you shall conveniently use, and cut the Straw about a foot long besides the Ears; then from the bottom of the Ears to the middle of the Straw lime it about six inches: the Lime must be warm when you lime the straw, that so it may run thin upon the straw, and therefore the less discernable, and

confequently not suspected by the Birds.

Having thus got your Limb'd-straws in this manready, go into the field adjacent to your house, and carry a bag of Chaff and thresht Ears, and scatter these together twenty yards wide, (it is best in a Snow) then take the Lim'd-ears and stick them up and down with the Ears leaning, or at the end touching the ground; then retire from the place, and traverse the grounds all round about; the Birds hereupon being disturbed in their other haunts sly hither, and pecking at the Ears of Corn, sinding that they stick upon them, they straightways mount up from the Earth, and in their slight the Bird limb'd straws lap under their Wings, and salling are not able to disengage themselves from the Straw, and so are certainly taken.

By the way take this caution; do not go and take up five or fix you fee entangled, for that may hinder you it may be from taking three or four dozen at one time. If they be Larks that fall where your Bird-lim'd Straws do lie, go not a near them till they spontaneously rife of themselves, and flying in great Flocks; I can assure you I have caught five dozen at one lift.

You may lay some nearer home to take Finches, Sparrows, Tellowhammers, &c. who resort near to Houses, and frequent Barn-doors, where you may easily take them after the same manner as aforesaid. The taking of Sparrows is a very great benefit to the Husbandman, for they are his and the Farmers principal Enemies, of all small Birds; insomuch as I dare assure

affure them, that every dozen of Sparrows taken by them in the Winter, shall fave them a quarter of Wheat before Harvest be ended. In the taking of them, you may flick the top of your House if thatcht: and the you never have the Birds, yet the destruction of them will be a great advantage. Before a Barn door if you lay your Twigs, or Lim'd-straws, you may there take them with abundance of other small Birds. The Sparrow is excellent food and a great restorer of decayed Nature. You may also take them at rooft in the Eaves of Thatcht-houses, by coming in the night with a Clap-net, and rubbing the Net against the hole where they are flying out, you Clap the Net together, and forfake them : the darkeft night with a Lanthorn and Candle is the chiefest time to take them.

Having performed your Morning Birding-recreation, go bait the same place where you were before, and bait it with fresh Chass and Ears of Corn, and let them rest till next Morning; then take some fresh Wheat-ears again, and stick them as aforesaid: and when you bait in the Afternoon, take away all your Lim'd Ears, that so the Birds may feed boldly, and not be freshted or disturbed against next Morning.

How to take Great Fowl with LIME-TWIGS.

YOU must supply your self with good store of Rods, which are long, small, and straight-grown Twigs, being light and apt to play to and fro.

Lime the upper-part of these Twigs, holding the Bird-lime before the fire, so that it may melt, for the

better befmearing them.

Having first well acquainted your felf, where these Fowl do frequent Morning and Evening, you must then observe before Sun-set for the Evening-slight,

and before day, for the Morning, that you plant your Lime-twigs where these Fowl haunt, pinning down for a Stale one of the same Fowl alive (which you have formerly taken for that purpose) which you intend to catch with your Bird-lime. Round about the Stale (giving the Fowl liberty to flutter to and fro) prick your Twigs in rows a foot distant one from the other, till you have covered all the place so haunted, that there shall be no room left, but that they must certainly sall foul with the Lime-twigs.

Prick the Rods floaping with their heads bending into the Wind about a foot or fomewhat more above ground: If you please (and I think it the best way) you may cross-prick your Rods, that is, one point into the wind, and another against the wind; by which means you may take the Fowl which way soever they

come.

Place also a Stale some distance from your Limetwigs, and fasten small strings to it, which upon the sight of any Fowl you must pull, then will your Stale

flutter, which will allure them down.

If you fee any taken, do not run instantly and take them up if you fee any Fowl in the Air; for by their fluttering others will be induced to swoop in among them. It will not be amis to have a well-taught Spaniel with you for the retaking of such Fowl (as it is common) which will flutter away with

the Limetwigs about them.

If you intend to not these Twigs for smaller Wildfowl, and such as frequent the water only, then must you fit them in length according to the depth of the River; and your Lime must be very strong Waters lime, such as no wet or frost can injure. Prick these Rods in the water, as you did the other on the Land, as much of the Rod as is limed being above water; and here and there among your Rods you must stake down a live Stale, as a Mallard, a Widgeon, or Teal: and thus you may do in any shallow Plash or Fen.

You

You need not wait continually on your Rods, but come thrice a day, and fee what is taken, viz. early in the Morning, at high Noon, and late in the Evening; but come not unattended with your Water-fpaniel: for if you perceive any of your Rods miffing, you may conclude some Fowl are fastned to them which are crept into some Hole, Bush, or Hedge by the River side, and then will your Dog be very necessary for the discovery.

Do not beat one Haunt too much, but when you find their numbers fail, remove and find out another, and in three weeks time your first will be as good as

ever.

Of the great and leffer SPRINGES.

HAving noted the Morning and Evening feeding of divided-footed-Fowl, observing the Furrows and Water-Tracts where they usually stalk and paddle to find Worms, Float-Grass-roots, and the like; you must mark where many Furrows meet in one, and break out as it were into one narrow passage. which so descending, afterwards divides it self into other parts and branches; then mark how every Furrow breaketh and cometh into this Center or little Pit which is most paddled with the Fowl, or which is easiest for Fowl to wade in: This being done, take fmall and short Sticks, and prick them cross-wife athwart over all the other passages, one Stick within half an Inch of the other, making as it were a kind of Fence to guard every way but one which you would have the Fowl to pass : if they stand but somewhat more than a handful above the Water, fuch is the nature of the Fowl that they will not pass over them, but stray about till that they find the open way.

Having thus hemmed in all ways but one, take a fliff Stick cat flat on the one fide, and prick both ends down into the Water, and make the upper part of the flat fide of the flick to touch the water. and no more: then make a Bow of small Hazel or Willow made in the fashion of a pear, broad and round at one end, and narrow at the other, at least a foot long, and five or fix Inches broad, and at the narrow end make a small nick : then take a good stiffgrown plant of Hazel, clean without knot, three or four Inches about at the bottom, and an Inch at the top, and having made the bottom end harp, at the top you must fasten a very strong Loop of about an hundred Horse-hairs plaited very fast together with strong Packthread, and made so smooth that it will run and flip at pleafure: Let the Loop be of the just quantity of the hoop, made Pearwife as aforefaid: then hard by this Loop you must fasten a little broad Tricker within an Inch and half of the end of the Plant, which must be made equally sharp at both ends: thrust the bigger sharp end of the Plant into the ground close by the edge of the water, the smaller end with the Hoop and the Tricker must be brought down to the first Bridge, and then the Hoop made Pearwise being laid on the Bridge, one end of the Tricker must be set upon the nick of the Hoop. and the other end against a nick made on the small end of the Plant, which by the violence and bend of the Plant shall make them stick and hold together until the Hoop be moved. This done, lay the Swickle on the Hoop in such fashion as the Hoop is proportioned; then from each fide of the Hoop prick little Sticks, making an impaled path to the Hoop; and as you go farther and farther from the Hoop or Springe, so make the way wider and wider. that the Fowl may enter a good way before it shall perceive the Fence. By this means the Fowl will be enticed to wade up to the Springe, which shall be no fooner

fooner toucht, but that part of the Bird fo touching will be inftantly enfnared: And thus according to the strength of the Plant you shall take any Fowl of what bigness soever.

The Springe for leffer Fowl, as Woodcock, Snipe, Plower, &c. is made after the fashion aforesaid, only differing in strength according unto the bigness of

the Birds you intend to catch.

The main plant or Sweeper you may make of Willow, Ofier, or any flick that will bend and re-

turn to its proper straightness.

This device is for the Winter only, when much wet is on the ground, and not when the Furrows are dry. Now if the waters be frozen, you must make plasses; and the harder the Frost, the greater resort will there be of these smaller Fowl.

Of the FOWLING-PIECE and the STALKING-HORSE.

That is ever effeemed the best Fowling-piece which hath the longest Barrel, being five foot and a half or six foot long, with an indifferent bore,

under Harquebuss.

Provide the best fort of Powder as near as you can, and let it not be old, for keeping weakens it much, especially it it grow damp; therefore when you have occasion to use it, dry it well in a Fireshovel, and sift it through a fine Searcher to take away that dust which hindresh the more forcible esfects, and souleth your piece.

Let your Shot be well fized, and of a moderate bigness; for if it be too great, then it scatters too much; if too small, it hath not weight nor strength

fufficient to do execution on a large Fowl.

Shot being not to be had at all times, and in all places, fuitable to your occasions and desires, I shall therefore here fet down the true process of making

all forts and fizes under Mould-shot.

Take what quantity of Lead you please, and melt it down in an Iron Vessel, and as it melts keep it stirring with an Iron-Ladle, and clear it of all impurities whatfoever that may arise at the top by skimming them off. Then when the Lead begins to be of a greenwish colour, strew on it Auripigmentum finely powdered, as much as will lie on a Shilling to 12 pound of Lead. Then stir them together, and the Auripigmentum will flame.

Your Ladle ought to have a Notch on one fide of the Brim for the more easie pouring out of the Lead. and the Ladle ought to remain in the melted Lead, that the heat may be agreeable to it, to prevent all inconveniencies which may happen through excess of heat or cold. Then try your Lead by dropping it into water. If the drops prove round, then the temper of the heat is right; but if the shot have Tails, then there is want both of heat and Auripigmentum.

Then take a Copper-plate about the fize of a Trencher-plate, with an hollowness in the midst about three inches compass, with about forty holes bored according to the fize of the Shot you intend to cast. The hollow bottom should be thin, but the thicker the brim the better, because it will longer retain the heat. Place it on an Iron frame over a Bucket of water, about four Inches from it, and spread burning Coals on the plate to keep the Lead melted upon it.

Then take up some Lead and pour it gently on the Coals on the plate, and it will force its way through the holes into the water, and form it felf into Shot. Thus do till all your Lead be run through the holes of the plate : observing to keep your Coals alive, that the Lead may not cool, and fo ftop up the holes. Whilft Whilst you are casting Shot, another person may catch some of the shot with another Ladle, placed four or five inches (underneath the bottom of the plate) in the water, and by that means you may difeern if there are any defects in your process, and

rectify them.

The chief business is to keep your Lead in a just degree of heat, that it be not fo cold as to fill up the holes, nor fo hot as to make the Shot crack. To remedy the coolness of your Lead and plate, you must blow your Coals; to remedy the heat, you must refrain working till it be cool enough, observing, that the cooler your Lead, the larger your Shot; the

hotter, the smaller.

When you have cast your Shot, take them out of the water and dry them over the fire with a gentle heat and be fure to keep them continually ftirred that they melt not. When they are dry you are to feparate the great Shot from the small, by the help of Sieves made on purpose, according to their several fizes. If you would have very large Shot, you may with a stick force the Lead to trickle out of your Ladle into the water without the plate.

If it stop on the plate, and yet the plate be not too cool, give but the plate a little knock, and it will run again. Take care that none of your Instruments be greasie. When you have separated your Shot, if any prove too large for your purpose, or any ways imperfect, 'tis only your pains loft, and it will ferve

again at your next operation.

In shooting, observe always to shoot with the wind, if possible, and not against it; and rather fide-ways, or behind the Fowl, than full in their faces.

Next, observe to chuse the most convenient shelter you can find, as either Hedge, Bank, Tree, or any thing else which may abscond you from the view of the Fowl.

Be fure to have your Dog at your heels under good command, not daring to ftir till you bid him, having first discharged your Piece: for some ill-taught Dogs will upon the snap of the Cock presently rush our

and spoil all the sport.

Now if you have not shelter enough, by reason of the nakedness of the Banks and want of Trees, you must creep upon your hands and knees under the Banks, and lying even flat upon your Belly, put the nose of your Piece over the Bank, and so take your level; for a Fowl is so fearful of man, that the an Hawk were soaring over her head, yet at the sight of a man she would betake her self to her wing, and run the risque of that danger.

But sometime it so happeneth that the Fowl are so shie, there is no getting a shoot at them without a Stalking-horse, which must be some old Jade trained up for that purpose, who will gently, and as you will have him, walk up and down in the water which way you please stodding and eating on the Grass that

grows therein.

You must shelter your self and Gun behind his fore-shoulder, bending your body down low by his side, and keeping his body still full between you and the Fowl: being within shot, take your level from before the forepart of the Horse, shooting as it were between the horses Neck and the water; which is much better than shooting under his Belly, being

more fecure, and less perceiveable.

Now to supply the want of a Stalking-horse, which will take up a great deal of time to instruct and make fit for this exercise, you may make one of any pieces of old Canvas, which you must shape into the form of an Horse, with the head bending downwards as if he grazed. You may stuff it with any light matter; and do not forget to paint it of the colour of an horse, of which the brown is the best; and in the midst let it bestx'd to a staff with a sharp Iron at the end, to stick into

into the ground as you shall fee occasion, standing fast

whilst you take your level.

It must be made so portable, that you may bear it with ease in one hand, moving it so as it may seem to graze as you go. Let the stature of your artissical Stalking-horse be neither too low nor too high; for the one will not abscond your body, and the other

will be apt to frighten the Fowl,

Instead of this Stalking-horse, you may fashion out of Canvas painted an Ox or Cow: and this change is necessary, when you have so beaten the Fowl with your Stalking-horse, that they begin to find your deceit, and will no longer endure it, (as it frequently salls out.) Then you may stalk with an Ox or Cow, till the Stalking-horse be forgotten, and by this means make your sport lasting and continual.

Some there are that stalk with Stags or Red-Deer form'd out of painted Canvas, with the natural Horns of Stags sixt thereon, and the colour so lively painted, that the Fowl cannot discern the fallacy; and these are very useful in low Fenny grounds, where any such Deer do usually feed; and are more familiar with the Fowl, and so feed nearer them than Ox,

Horse, or Cow: by which means you shall come within a far nearer distance.

There are other dead Engines to stalk withal, as an artificial Tree, Shrub or Bush, which may be made of small Wands, and with painted Canvas made into the shape of a Willow, Poplar, or such Trees as grow by Rivers and Water-sides; for these are the best.

If you stalk with a Shrub or Bush, let them not be so tall as your Tree, but much thicker; which you may make either of one entire Bush, or of divers Bushes interwoven one with another, either with small Withy-wands, Cord, or Paek-thread, that may not be discerned; and let not your Bush exceed the height of a Man, but be thicker than four or five, with a R Spike

Spike at the bottom to stick into the ground whilst you take your level.

How to take all manner of Land-fowl by day or night.

Since the diffolution and spoil of Paradise, no man hath either seen, or can give the names of all Land-sowl whatever, there being such great variety, every Country producing some particular sorts which are unknown to other Nations.

To avoid prolixity, I shall rank them under two

heads.

The first are such who are either fit for Food or Pleasure, either for eating or singing: for eating, Pidgeons of all sorts, Rook, Pheasant, Partridge, Quails, Rail, Felfares, &c. and for eating or singing, the Blackbird, Throstie, Nightingale, Linnet, Lark, and Bull finch.

Secondly, such as are for Pleasure onely, and they are all manner of birds of Prey, as Castrels, Ring-

tails, Buzzards, &c.

The general way of taking these Land-sowl of several sorts together, is either by day or by night. If by day, it is done with the great Net, commonly called the *Crom-net*, and not at all differs in length, depth, bigness of Mesh, manner of laying, &c. from the *Plovernet*; onely it will not be amiss if the Cords be longer.

This Net you may lay before Barn-doors, or where Corn hath been winnowed, also in Stubble-fields, so concealing the Net that the Fowl may not discern the Snare. When you perceive a quantity within the Net scraping for food, and you he concealed afar off, with your Cord in your hand, suddenly pull the Net

over upon them.

You may do well to take notice of their Morning and Evening Haunts, to worm and feed upon the Green-

Greenwarth; and here lay your Net, and it will prove as effectual as in other places, so that you observe to abscord your self in some Covert so as not to be descried: in the next place, pull not too hastily, but wait for a good number of Fowl within the Net, and then pull freely and quickly; for the least deliberation after the Net is raised, is the ruine of your design.

Thus much for Day-fowling with the Net: now if you will profecute your fport by Night, you must do it according to the nature and manner of the Country, or situation or fashion of the ground, whether

Woody, Mountainous, or Champain.

In plain and Champain Countries you must use the Low-bell, from the end of October until the end of

March; and this method you must follow.

The day being that in, the air mild without Moonshine, take a Low-bell, (which must have a deep and hollow found, for if it be shrill it is stark naught) and with it a Net whose Mesh is twenty yards deep, and fo broad, that it may cover five or fix Lands or more, according to the company you have to carry it. With these Instruments go into any stubble Cornfield, but Wheat is the best. He that carries the Bell must go foremost, tolling the Bell as he goes very mournfully, letting it but now and then knock on both sides: after him must follow the Net, born up at each corner and on each fide by feveral persons; then another must carry some Iron or stony Vessel which may contain burning, but not blazing Coals, and at these you must light bundles of straw: or you may carry Links with you. And having pitcht your Nets where you think the Game lies, beat the ground and make a noise, and as the Fowl rise they will be entangled in the Net. Thus you may take good store of Partridge, Rails, Larks, Quails, &c.

Having so done, extinguish your Lights, and proceed, laying your Net in some other place as beforementioned.

R 2

Here

Here note, that the found of the Low-bell makes the Birds lie close, so as they dare not stir whilst you are pitching the Net, for the found thereof is dreadful to them; but the sight of the Fire much more terrible, which makes them instantly to sly up, and so they become entangled in the Net.

Furthermore, if you intend to have the full fruition of your sport, you must be very silent, and nothing must be heard but the sound of the Low-bell till the Net is placed and the Lights blazing; but as soon as they are extinguished, a general silence must be

again.

The Trammel is much like this Net for the Lonbell, and may be necessarily used on the same grounds; onely it ought to be longer, tho not much broader.

When you come to a place fit for your purpose where Birds lodge on the Earth, you shall then spread your Tranmel on the ground; and let the farthest end thereof, being plumb'd with Lead, lie loose on the ground; but let the foremost ends be born up by two men, and so trail the Net along, keeping the foremost ends a yard or more distance from the ground.

On each fide of the Net carry Wisps of Straw lighted, or Links, and let some beat the ground with long Poles; and as the Birds rise under the Nets, take them. And thus you may continue doing as long as you please, to your great profit and pleasure.

Of BAT-FOWLING.

B AT-FOWLING is the taking of all manner of Birds, great and small, by night, which rooft in Bushes, Shrubs, Hawthorn-trees, &c.

The manner is: you must be very silent till your Lights are blazing, and you may either carry Nets or none: if none, you must then have long Poles with

great

great bushy tops fixt to them; and having from a Cresset or vessel to carry fire in lighted your Straw, or other blazing combustible matter, then must you beat those Bushes where you think birds are at rooft; which done, if there be any in those Bushes or Trees, you will instantly see them sly about the Flames: for it is their nature, through their amazedness at the strangeness of the Light, and extream darkness round about it, not to depart from it, but they will even scorch their Wings in the same, so that those who have the bushy Poles may beat them down as they please, and take them up. Thus may you continue your sport as long as it is very dark, and no longer.

Of the DAY-NET, and how to take

The D.y-Net is generally used for the taking of Larks, Buntings, Merlins, Hobbies, or any Birds which play in the Air, and will stoop either to Stale,

Prey, Gig, Glass, or the like.

The scason for these Nets is from August to November: the time you must plant these Nets must be before Sun-rising. Where note, the milder the Air, the brighter the Sun, and the pleasanter the Morning is, the better will your sport be, and of longer continuance.

Let the place you elect for this purpose be plain and Champain, either on Barley-stubbles, green Lays, or level and flat Meadows; and the places must be remote from any Villages, but near adjacent to Cornfields.

The fashion of a Day-net is this: you must make them of fine Packthread, the Mesh mall, and not above half an Inch square each way; let the length be about three fathom, the breadth one sathom and no more: the shape is like the Crow-net, and it must be verg'd about in the same manner with a strong small R 3 Cord.

Cord, and the two ends extended upon two small long Poles suitable to the breadth of the Net, with four stakes, Tail-strings, and Drawing-lines, as afore-mentioned: only whereas that was but one fingle Net, here must be two of one length, breadth and fashion. These Nets must be laid opposite to each other, yet so close and even together, that when they are drawn and pulled over, the fides and edges may meet and touch one the other.

These Nets being staked down with strong Stakes very ftiffly on their Lines, fo as with any nimble twitch you may cast to and fro at your pleasure; you shall then to the upper ends of the foremost staves fasten your Hand-lines or drawing Cords, which must be at the least a dozen, a fathom long; and so extend them of fuch a reasonable streightness, as with little strength they may raise up the Nets and cast them

over.

When your Nets are laid, fome twenty or thirty paces, beyond them place your Stales, Decoys, or playing Wantons, upon some pearching Boughs, which will not only entice Birds of their own Feather to floop, but also Hawks and Birds of Prey to swoop into your Nets.

Remember to keep the first half dozen you take alive for Stales, and to that end have a Cage or Linnen-bag to put them in : The rest squeez in the hinder-part of the head, and so kill them. And thus

do every day.

Of taking small Birds which use Hedges and Bulbes with Lime-twigs.

THe great Lime-bush is best for this use, which you must take after this manner : Cut down the main Arm or chief Bough of any bushy Tree, whose branches or Twigsare long, thick, smooth and straight, without either pricks or knots; of which the Willow or Birch-tree are the best, when you have pickt it and trimm'd it from all superfluity, making the Twigs neat and clean; take then of the best Bird-lime, well mixed and wrought together with Goose-grease or Capon's-grease, which being warmed, lime every Twig therewith within four singers of the bottom. The body from whence the branches have their rise, must be untouch'd with Lime.

Be fare you do not dawb you Twigs with too much Lime, for that will give distaste to the Birds; yet let none want its proportion, or have any part left bare which ought to be toucht: for, as too much will deter them from coming, fo too little will not

hold them when they are there.

Having so done, place your Bush on some Quick-set or dead Hedge neer unto Towns-ends, back-yards, old houses, or the like; for these are the resort of small Birds in the Spring-time: in the Summer and Harvest in Groves, Bushes, White-thorn-trees, Quick-set-hedges near Corn-fields, Fruit-trees, Flax and Hemp-lands; and in the winter about Houses, Hovels, Barns, Stacks, or those places where stand

ricks of Corn, or scattered Chaff, &c.

As near as you can to any of these haunts plant your Lime-bush, and plant your self also at a convenient distance undiscovered, imitating with your mouth the several Notes of Birds, which you must learn by frequent practice, walking the Fields for that very purpose often, observing the variety of several birds sounds, especially such as they call one another by. I have known some so expert herein, that they could imitate the Notes of twenty several forts of Birds at least, by which they have caught ten Birds to anothers one that was ignorant therein.

But if you cannot attain to it by your industry, you must then buy a Bird-call, of which there are several

forts, and easie to be framed, some of Wood, some

of Horn, some of Cane, and the like.

Having first learned how to use this Call, you shall sit and call the Birds unto you; and as any of them light on your Bush, step not to them till you see them sufficiently entangled: Neither is it requisite to run for every single Bird, but let them alone till more come, for the sluttering is as good at a Stale to entice more.

This Exercise you may use from Sun-Rising till ten a clok in the Morning, and from one till almost

Sun-fet.

You may take these small Birds with Lime twigs onely, without the Bush. When I was a boy, I have taken two or three hundred small Twigs about the bigness of Rushes, and about three Inches long, and have gone with them into a field where were Hempcocks; upon the tops of half a score, lying all round together, I have stuck my Twigs, and then have gone and beat that field, or the next to it, where I saw any Birds; and commonly in such fields there are infinite numbers of Linnets and Green-birds which are great lovers of Hemp-seed. I say, they sly in such vast slocks, I have caught at one sall of them upon the Cocks eight dozen at a time.

But to return, there is a pretty way of taking Birds with Lime-twigs, by placing near them a Stale or two made of living Night-baits, placing them aloft, that they may be visible to the Birds thereabouts; which will no fooner be perceived, but every Bird will come and gaze, wondering at the strangeness of the fight: then they having no other convenient lighting-place but where the Lime-twigs are, you

may take what number you lift of them.

But the Owl is a far better Stale than the Bat, being bigger, and more easily to be perceived; besides, he is never seen abroad, but he is followed and persecuted by all the birds near adjacent.

lf

If you have not a living Bat or Owl, their skins will ferve as well being stuffed, and will last you twenty years. There are some have used an Owl cut in Wood, and naturally painted, with wonderful success.

It is strange to me that this Bird above all others should be so persecuted by all Birds whatsoever, especially by the Goose; and therefore some arch Cracks in Lincoln-shire and other places, where are great quantities of Geese, observing their tempers, have made great advantage of them; for by only throwing a live Owl among a slock of Geese, they got as many Quills as they knew what to do with; for the Geese endeavouring to beat the Owl with their wings, never left till they did beat the Quills out of their wings, and commonly the best, which are Seconds.

How to make the best sort of Bird-lime, and how to use it.

TAke at Midfummer the bark of Holly, and pill it from the Tree, fo much as will fill a reasonable big Vessel; then put to it running Water, and set it over the fire, and boil it till the grey and white bark rife from the green, which will take up fixteen hours in the boiling: then take it from the fire, and separate the barks after the water is very well drain'd away : then take all the green bark, and lay it on the ground in a close place and moist floor, and cover it over with all manner of green Weeds, as Hemlock, Docks, Thistles, and the like; thus let it lie ten or twelve days, in which time it will rot, and turn to a filthy flimy matter. Then take it and put it into a Mortar. and there beat it till it become univerfally thick and tough, without the discerning of any part of the bark or other fubstance; then take it out of the Mortar, and carry it to a running Stream, and there wash it exceedingly, not leaving any mote or foulness within it; then put it up in a very close Earthen pot, and let it

fland and purge for divers days together, scumming it s often as any foulness arises for four or five days: when you perceive no more Scum, you shall then take it out of that Pot, and put it into another clean Earthen Vessel, cover it close, and keep it for your use.

When you are about to use your Lime, take what quantity you think fit and put it into a Pipkin adding thereto a third part of Goofe-greace or Caponsgreace finely clarified, and fet them over a gentle fire. and there let them melt together, and ftir them continually till they are well incorporated: then take it

from the fire, and ftir it till it be cold.

When your Lime is cold, take your Rods and warm them a little over the fire; then take your Lime and wind it about the tops of your Rods, then draw your Rods afunder one from the other, and close them again, continually plying and working them together, till by fmearing one upon another, you have equally bestowed on each Rod a fufficient proportion of Lime.

If you Lime any strings, do it when the Lime is very hot and at the thinnest, besmearing the Strings on all fides, by folding them together and unfolding

them again.

If you Lime Straws, it must be done likewise when the Lime is very hot, doing a great quantity together, as many as you can well grafp in your hand, tolling and working them before the fire till they are all besmear'd, every Straw having his due proportion of Lime: having fo done, put them up in cases of Lea-

ther till you have occasion to use them.

Now to prevent the freezing of your Lime either as it is on Twigs, Bushes, or Straws, you must add a quarter as much of the Oyl called Petroleum as of your Capons-greafe, mix them well together, and then work it on your Rods, &c. and fo it will ever keep supple, tough, and gentle, and will not be prejudiced should it freez never so hard.

The best and most Experienced way of making Water-Bird-Lime.

Bly what quantity you think fit of the strongest Bird-lime you can procure, and wash it as long in a clear Spring-water till you find it very pliable, and the hardness thereof removed; then beat out the water extraordinary well, till you cannot perceive a drop to appear, then dry it well; after this, put it into a Pot made of Earth, and mingle therewith Capons-greafe unfalted, fo much as will make it run; then add thereto two spoonfuls of strong Vinegar, a spoonful of the best Sallet-Oyl, and a small quantity of Venice-Turpentine: This is the allowance of these Ingredients which must be added to every pound of strong Bird-lime, as aforefaid. Having thus mingled them, boil them all gently together over a small fire, stirring it continually; then take it from the fire and let it cool: When at any time you have occasion to use it, warm it, and then anoint your Twigs or Straws, or any other small things, and no Water will take away the strength thereof. This fort of Bird-lime is the best, especially for Snipes and Felfares.

In what manner a man may take Snipes with this Bird-lime.

Take what number you shall think most expedient for your purpose of Birch-twigs, and lime sifty or fixty of them very well together. After this, go and seek out those places where Snipes do usually frequent, which you may know by their Dung.

In very hard frosty or snowy Weather, where the Water lies open, they will lie very thick: Having observed the place where they most feed, set two hundred of your Twigs, more or less, as you please, at a yard distance one from the other, and let

them

them fland floaping some one way and some another then retire a convenient distance from the place, and you shall find there shall not one Snipe in ten mis your Twigs, by reason they spread their Wings, and fetch a round close to the ground before they light. When you fee any taken, ftir not at first, for he will feed with the Twigs under his Wings; and as others come over the place, he will be a means to entice them down to him. When you fee the Coast clear and but few that are not taken, you may then take up your Birds, fastning one or two of them, that the other flying over, may light at the same place. If there be any other open place near to that where your Twigs are planted, you must beat them up: The reason why they delight to haunt open places. and where Springs do gently run, is because they cannot feed, by reason of their Bills, in places that are hard and ftony; and about these Plashes, in snowy Weather, they very much refort.

The manner of taking Felfares by Water-Bird-lime.

A Bout Michaelmas, or when the cold Weather begins to come in, take your Gun and kill some Felfares; then take a couple of them, or one may serve, and fasten them to the top of a Tree, in such manner that they may seem to be alive: Having so done, prepare two or three hundred Twigs, take a great Birchen bough, and therein place your Twigs, having first cut off all the small Twigs; then set a Felfare upon the top of the bough, making of him sast, and let this bough be planted where the respect to resort in a Morning to seed; for they keep a constant place to feed in, till there is no more food lest. By this means others slying but near, will quickly espie the top-bird, and fall in whole slocks to him. I have seen at one fall three dozen taken.

How to take Pigeons with Lime-twigs.

Pigeons are great devourers and destroyers of Corn; wherefore when you find any ground much frequented by them, get a couple of Pigeons, either dead or alive; if dead, put them in such a stiff posture as if they were living and feeding; then at Sun-rising take a quantity of Twigs, as many as you think fit, let them be small, (but I Judge Wheaten-straws are better for this purpose) and lay them up and down where your Pigeons are placed, and you shall find such sport at every fall that is made, that you may quickly be rid of them without offending the Statute of there come good slights, you may easily take four or sive dozen of them in a morning.

How to take Mag-pies, Crows, and Gleads with Lime-twigs.

When you have found any Carrion on which Crows, Pies, Kites, &c. are preying upon, over night fet your Lime-twigs every where about the Carrion; but let them be small, and not set too thick; if otherwise, being subtile Birds, they will suspect some danger or mischief designed against them. When you perceive one to be fast, advance not to him presently; for most commonly when they are surely caught, they are not sensible thereof.

You may take them another way, and that is by joyning to a Packthread several Nooses of Hair up and down the Packthread, and peg it down about a yard from the Carrion; for many times when they have gotten a piece of Flesh, they will be apt to run away to feed by themselves; and if your Nooses be thick, it is two to one but some of the Nooses catch him by the Legs.

How to take Rooks, when they pull up the Corn by the Roots.

Take some thick Brown-paper, and divide a sheet into eight parts, and make them up like Sugarloaves; then lime the infide of the Paper a very little: (let them be limed three or four days before you fet them) then put some Corn in them, and lay threescore or more of them up and down the ground; lay them as near as you can under some clod of Earth, and early in the Morning before they come to feed and then stand at a distance, and you will see most extellent fport; for as foon as Rooks, Crows, or Pigeons come to peck out any of the Corn, it will hang upon his nead, and he will immediately fly bolt upright so high, that he shall foar almost out of sight; and when he is fpent, come tumbling down as if he had been shot in the Air. You may take them at Floughing-time when the Rooks and Crows follow the Plough; but then you must put in Worms and Maggots of the largest fize.

How to take Birds with BAITS, either Land or Water-fowl.

F you have a defire to take House-doves, Stock-doves, Rooks, Coughs, or any other-like Birds, then take Wheat, Barley, Fetches, Tares or other Grain, and boil them very well with good store of Nux vomica in ordinary running water: when they are almost boil'd, dry and ready to burse, take them off the fire, and set them by till they be throughly cold. Having so done, scatter this Grain in the Haunts of those Birds you have a mind to take; and as soon as they have tasted hereof, they will fall down into a dead swand, and shall not be able to recover themselves in a good while.

And as you take these great Land-sowl with this drunken device, so you may take the middle and smaller sort of Birds, if you observe to boil with what some, instead of Nux vomica, use the Lees of Wine, the sharper and quicker they are, the better, boiling their Grains in these Lees, also Seeds or any other food, and strewing them in the Haunts of those Birds you would surprize. These do as effectually as Nux vomica; and it's the cleanlier and neater way, there being not that poysonous quality in them.

You may chuse whether you will boil your Grain or Seed in the aforesaid Lees; for they will be every whit as effectual if onely steeped a considerable while therein, giving them leave to drink in the Lees till.

they are ready to burst before you use them.

Others, having neither Nux vomica, nor Wine-lees, take the Juice of Hemlock, and steep their Grains therein, adding thereto some Henbane-leed or Poppy-seed, causing them to be insufed therein four or five days; then draining the Grain or Seed from the Liquor, strew them as aforesaid. The Birds having tasted hereof, are immediately taken with a dizzines, which will continue some hours, so that they cannot sie; but they will recover again, if you kill them not. If you intend them for food, let them be first recovered.

Thus much for the Land; now let us speak of the

Water-fowl.

The ready way by Bait to take such Fowl as receive part of their food by land, and part by water, as Wild-Geefe, Barnacle, Grey-plover, Mallard, Curlen, Shoveler, Bitter, Bustard, with many more; I say, the best way my experience hath found out is, to take Bellenge-leaves, Roots and all, and having cleanfed them very well, put them into a Vessel of clear running Water, and there let them sie in steep twenty four hours; then never shift them from the Water, but boil them together till the Water be almost consumed:

fumed: then take it off, and fet it a cooling. Then take a quantity hereof, and go to the Haunts of any of the aforesaid Fowl, and there spread of this Bait in sundry and divers places; and those that shall taste hereof will be taken with the like drunken dizziness as the former. To make this Confection the more effectual, it will be requisite to add a quantity of Brimstone thereunto in its boiling.

How to recover Fowl thus entranced.

If you would restore of these entranced Fowl to their former health, take a little quantity of Salletoyl, according to the strength and bigness of the Fowl, and drop it down the Throat of the Fowl; then chase the head with a little strong White-wine-Vinegar, and the Fowl will presently recover, and be as well as ever.

And thus much for taking Fowl of all forts by Baits,

A most excellent and approved way how to take the HERN.

A Hern is as great a devourer of Fish as any is; nay some dare affirm, ten times as much as an Otter, and shall do more mischief in one week than an Otter shall do in three months: for I have been told by one that hath seen a Hern that hath been shot at a Pond, to have had seventeen Carps at once in his Belly, which he will digest in six or seven hours, and then betake himself to sishing again. I have been informed by another, that he saw a Carp taken out of a Hern's Belly which was nine Inches and an half long.

Several Gentlemen that have kept Herns tame, have put Fish in a Tub, and tried the Hern how many small Roaches and Dace he would eat in a day, and they have found him to eat about fifty in a day, one

day with another.

One

One Hern that haunts a Pond, in a Twelvemonths time, shall destroy a thousand Store-Carps; and when Gentlemen sue their Ponds, they think their Neighbours have robbed them, not in the least considering an Hern is able to devour them in half a years time, if he put in half as many more.

Now fince this ravenous Fowl is so destructive to Ponds and Fish of the River, it will be very necessary to find out a way to destroy that, that destroys so

many; which may be done in this manner.

Having found out his haunt, get three or four small Roaches or Dace; and have a strong Hook with Wyre to it, draw the Wyre just within the skin of the faid Fish, beginning without side of the Gills, running of it to the Tail, and then the Fish will live five or fix days. Now if the Fish be Dead, the Hern will not meddle with him. Let not your Hook be too rank; then having a strong Line with Silk and Wyre, about two yards and a half long, (if you twift not Wyre with your Silk, the marpness of his Bill will bite it in two immediately) and tye a round Stone about a pound-weight to the Line, and lay three or four Hooks, and in two or three nights you shall not fail to have him if he comes to your Pond. Lay not your Hooks in the water so deep that the Hern cannot wade unto them. Colour your Line of a dark green, for an Hern is a fubtile Bird. There are several other Fowl devourers of Fish, as Kings-fisher, More-hens, Balcoots, Cormorant, &c. but none like the Hern for Ponds and fmall Rivers.

How to take PHEASANTS several ways.

The taking of *Pheasants* is to be performed three feveral ways, by Nets, by Lime-bush, or else by other particular Engines, which shall be discours'd of hereafter.

The taking of *Pheafants* with Nets, is done either generally, or particularly: generally, when the whole Eye of *Pheafants* is taken, that is the old Cock and old Hen with all their Powts, as they run together in the obscure Woods; or particularly, when you take none but the old *Pheafants*, or the young, being of an age fit to couple or pair.

For the greater facility of taking *Pheafants*, you must first understand their Haunts, which are never in open Fields, but in thick young Copies well grown.

and not in old high Woods.

Having thus found out their Coverts, which must be folitary and untraced by Men or Cattel, the next thing will be how to find out the Eye or Brood of

Pheafants.

The first way, is by going into these young Copses, and carefully viewing the same, searching every where; and by that means at last finding where they run together, as Chickens after a Hen. Or secondly, you must rise early in a Morning, or come late in the Evening; and observe how and when the old Cock and Hen call their young ones to them, and how the young ones answer back unto them again; and so from that sound direct your Path as near as you can to the place where they are, lying there down so close you may not be discerned; by which means you will know where they meet, and how accordingly you may pitch your Nets.

But the most certain way of finding them out, is to have a natural *Pheasant*-call, which you must learn how to use, understand all their Notes, and how to apply them: For they have several Notes, and different; one to cluck them together when the Hen would brood them, another to chide them when they straggle too far, a third to call them to meat when she hath found it, a fourth to make them look out for food themselves, and a fifth to call them about her to sport withal. You must use your Call in the moring early,

at which time they ftraggle abroad to find Provender; or elfe in the Evening just about Sun-fetting,

which is their time likewise for feeding.

Now altho these are the best times to use your Call, yet you may call them at any other time of the day, onely altering your Note. Just at, or before Sunnising, your Note must be to call them to feed, and so at Sun-set: but in the Forenoon and Asternoon your Notes must be to cluck them together to brood, or to chide them for straggling, or to give them notice of

fome approaching danger.

Knowing your Notes, and how to apply them, with the places where *Pheafants* haunt, which you shall know by the strength of the under-growth, obscureness, darkness, and solitariness of the place, you must then lodge your self as close as possible, and then call at first very softly, less the *Pheafants* being lodg'd very near you, should be affrighted at a loud Note; but if nothing reply, raise your Note higher and higher, till you extend it to the utmost compass: and if there be a *Pheafant* within hearing, she will answer in a Note as loud as your own, provided it be not

untunable, for that will spoil all.

As foon as you hear this Answer, if it be from afar, and from one fingle Fowl, creep nearer and nearer unto it, still calling, but not fo loud; and as you approach nearer to it, so will the Pheasant to you; and as you after your Note, fo will she: and in all points you must endeavour to imitate her, and in fine you will get fight of her, either on the Ground or Pearch: Then cease your calling, and spread your Net between the Pheafant and your felf, in the most convenient place you can find, with all fecrecy and filence, making one end of the Net fast to the ground, and holding the other end by a long Line in your hand; by which, when any thing straineth it, you may pull the Net close together: which done, call again, and as soon as you perceive the Pheasant come underneath your

Your Net, then rife up and fhew your felf, that by giving the Pheasant an affright, he may offer to

mount, and fo be entangled within the Net.

Now if it so fall out that you hear many Answers, and from divers corners of the Wood, then stir not at all, but keep your place; and as you hear them by their sounds to come nearer and nearer unto you, so shall you in the mean time prepare your Nets ready, and spread them conveniently about you, one pair of Nets on the one side, and another on the other side; then lie close, and apply your self to the Call till such time as you have allured them under your Nets; then stand up and shew your self, which will affright them and make them mount, whereby they will be entangled.

The fashion of Pheasant-Nets.

You must make these Nets of double-twined brown Thread died blue or green; let the Mesh be reasonably large and square, almost an inch between Knot and Knot; let the length of it be about three fathom, and the breadth about seven foot, and verge it on each side with strong small Cord and let the ends be also so, that it may lie compass-wise and hollow.

Some make these Nets of a much larger size; but then they are too cumbersome, and hardly to be ruled with one hand: but the other are readier to pitch, and better to take, also more nimble for any purpose

you shall employ them to.

Of Driving of Pheasant-powts.

The driving and taking young Pheasants in Nets is done after this manner. Having either by your eye or Call found out an Eye of Pheasants, you must then (taking the wind with you, for they will naturally run down the wind) place your Nets cross the little

Pads and ways which you fee they have made, (for they will make little Paths like Sheeps-tracks) and as near as you can, come to fome special Haunts of theirs, which you shall know by the bareness of the ground, Mutings, and loose Feathers which you shall find there: and these Nets must be placed hollow, loose, and circularwise, the neither part thereof being fastened to the ground, and the upper side lying hollow, loose, and bending, so that when any thing rusheth into it, it may fall and entangle it: which done, you must go before where you found the Haunt, and there with your Call (if you find the Eye is scattered and separated one from the other) you must call them together.

Then take your Instrument called a *Driver*, which is made of strong white Wands or Oliers set fast in a handle, and in two or three places twisted about and bound with other Wands, bearing the shape of those things Cloath-dresses usually dress their Cloath withal: I say, with this Driver you must make a gentle noise, raking upon the Boughs and Bushes round about you; which as soon as Powts do hear, they will instantly run from it a little way, and then stand and listen, keeping all close together: then give another rake, at which they will run again as before; And by thus raking, you will drive them like so many Sheep before you which way or whither you please, and

consequently at last into your Nets.

In using your Driver there are two things to be observed. The first is Secrecy, in concealing your self from the sight of the Fbeasints; for if they chance to see you, they will instantly hide themselves in Holes and bottoms of Bushes, and will not stir from thence by any means whatever, as long as any day endureth.

The other thing to be observed, is Time and Leifure in the work; for there is nothing obstructs this Pastime more than too much haste: for they are very \$ 3 fearfearful Creatures, and are soon startled; and when once alarm'd, their fears will not suffer them to argue or dispute with the affrighting object; but the very sirst apprehension is sufficient to make them all fly at an instant, without staying to behold what they are so much afraid of.

Of taking Pheasants with a Lime-bush.

Having observed their Haunts as aforesaid, take a Bush, or single Rods, and trim them with the best and strongest Lime that can be got: let your Rods be twelve inches; your Lime-bush must not contain above eight Twigs, being the Top-branch of some Willow-tree, with an indifferent long Handle, made sharp either to stick into the ground, or into Shrubs and Bushes. You may plant your Bush near the branch of some little Tree which the Pheasant usu-

ally pearcheth on.

Hill Come

When you have placed your Bush or Rods, take out your Call, but remove not from your place, lying close without discovery. If your Call be good, and you have skill to use it, you will quickly have all the Pheasants within hearing about you; and if one happen to be entangled, she will go near to entangle all the rest, either by her extraordinary sluttering, or their own amazement and consuson. And as they are taken by the Rods on the ground, so you will surprize them with your Bushes; for being scared from below, they will mount to the Pearch or Bushes, to see what becomes of their Fellows, and be there taken themselves.

Here note, That it is very requisite to count all your Rods, and when you have gathered up your Pheasants, see what Rods you have missing, and then conclude from the miss of them, that some Pheasants are run with them into the Bushes; and therefore it will be necessary to have a Spaniel

which

which will fetch and carry, and one that will not break nor bruife either Flesh or Feather.

The Seasons for the use of Nets or Lime.

The Lime is onely for the Winter-season, beginning from November, when the Trees have shed their Leaves, (and then Lime-bushes and Branches of Trees are alike maked and of the same complexion) and ending at May, at which time the Trees begin to be furnished with Leaves.

The true use of the Nets is from the beginning of

May till the latter end of October.

So that there is no time of the year but their Breeding-time, which may not be exercised in this pleafure; whence what profit may arise, I shall leave to the judgment of those who keep good houses, and such as have good Stomacks.

How to take PARTRIDGES several ways, either by Net, Engine, Driving, or Setting.

Partridges are naturally cowardly, fearful, simple, and foolish, and therefore most easily to be deceived or beguiled with any Train, Bait, Engine, or other Device whatever, whether by Enticement, Call, or Stale.

It will he necessary in the first place to consider their Haunts, which are not (like the Pheasants) certain, but various; any covert will ferve their turn,

and sometimes none at all.

The places they most delight in are the Cornfields, especially whilst the Corn grows; for under that covert they shelter, ingender and breed. Neither

ther are these places unfrequented by them when the Corn is cut down, by reason of the Grain they find therein, especially in Wheat-stubble; and the height thereof they delight in, being to them as a covert or a shelter. Now when the Wheat-stubble is much trodden by Men or Beasts, then they betake themselves to the Barley-stubble, provided it be fresh and untrodden; and they will in the Furrows amongst the Clots, Brambles, and long Grass, hide both themselves and Covies, which are sometimes twenty in number, sometimes sive and twenty: nay, I have heard of thirty in a Covie.

Now after the Winter-feafon is come, and that these Stubble-fields are plough'd up, or over-soiled with Cattle, then do these Partridges resort into the up-land Meadows, and do lodge in the dead Grass or Fog under Hedges, amongst Molehills, or under the Roots of Trees: Sometimes they resort to Copses and Underwoods, especially if any Corn-fields are near adjacent, or where grows Broom, Brakes, Fern, or any Covert what-

loever.

In the Harvest-time, when every Field is full of Men and Cattle, then you shall find them in the daytime in the Fallow-fields which are next adjoyning to the Corn-fields, where they lie lurking till the Evening, and then they feed among the Shocks or Sheaves of Corn; and so they do likewise early in

the Morning:

When you know their Haunts according to the scituation of the Country and season of the year, your next care must be to find them out in their Haunts; which is done several ways. Some do it by the Eye onely; and this Art can never be taught, but learned by frequent Experience, distinguishing thereby the colour of the Partridge from that of the Earth, and how and in what manner they lodge and couch together: for which purpose you may come near together.

enough to them, for they are a very lazy Bird, and fo unwilling to take the Wing, that you may even fet your foot upon them before they will stir, provided you do not stand and gaze on them, but be in continual motion; otherwise they will spring up and

be gone.

t-

of

in

i-

ar

h,

11

There is another way to discover them, and that is by going to their Haunts very early in the Morning, or at the close of the Evening, which is called the Jucking-time, and there listening for the calling of the Cock-Partridge, which will be very loud and earnest; and after some few calls the Hen will answer, and by this means they meet together; which you shall know by their rejoycing and chattering one with another: upon the hearing of which, take your range about them, drawing nearer and nearer to the place you heard them juck in; then cast your eye towards the Furrows of the Lands, and there you will soon find where the Covie lies, and so take them as your fancy shall lead you.

The best, safest, and easiest way for finding of Partridges, is by the Call, having first learn'd the true and natural Notes of the Partridge, knowing how to tune every Note in its proper Key, applying them

to their due times and seasons.

Being perfect herein, either Mornings or Evenings (all other times being improper) go to their Haunts, and having convey'd your felf into some secret place where you may see and not be seen, listen a while if you can hear the *Partridges* call; if you do, answer them again in the same Note, and as they change or double their Notes, so must you in like manner: thus continue doing till they draw nearer and nearer unto you. Having them in your view, lay your self on your back, and lie as if you were dead without motion, by which means you may count their whole number.

Having attained to the knowledge of discovering them where they lie, the next thing will be a ready way how to catch them.

Of taking Partridges with Nets.

The Nets wherewith you enfnare Partridges must be every way like your Pheasant nets, both for length and breadth; onely the Mesh must be smaller, being made of the same Thread, and died of the same colour.

Having found out the Covie, draw forth your Nets, and taking a large circumference, walk a good round pace with a careless eye, rather from than towards the Partridges, till you have trimmed your Nets, and made them ready for the purpose: which done, you must draw in your circumference less and less, till you come within the length of your Net: then pricking down a Stick about three foot in length, fasten one end of the Line of your Net, and make it fast in the Earth as you walk about; (for you must make no stop nor stay;) then, letting the Net slip out of your hands, spread it open as you go, and so carry and lay it all over the Patridges.

But if they should lie straggling, so that you cannot cover them all with one Net, then you must draw forth another, and do with that as you did with the former; doing so with a third, if occasion require: having so done, rush in upon them, who affrighted, will slie up, and so be entangled in the

Nets.

How to take Partridges with Bird-lime.

Take of the fairest and largest wheat-straws you can get, and cut them off between Knot and Knot, and lime them with the strongest Lime. Then go to the Haunts of Partridges, and call: if you are an swered.

fwered, then prick at some distance from you your limed Straws in many cross rows and ranks cross the Lands and Furrows, taking in two or three Lands at least: then lie close and call again, not ceasing till you have drawn them towards you, so that they be intercepted by the way by your limed Straws, which they shall no sooner touch, but they will be ensured; and by reason they all run together like a brood of Chickens, they will so besmear and daub one another, that very sew of them will escape.

This way of taking Partridges is onely to be used in Stubble-fields from August till Christmas. But if you will take them in Woods, Pastures, or Meadows, then you must lime Rods, as was afore expressed for the Pheasant, and stick them in the ground

after the fame manner.

How to drive Partridges.

The Driving of Partridges is more delightful than any other way of taking them: The manner of it is thus.

Make an Engine in the form and fashion of a Horse, cut out of Canvas, and stuff it with Straw, or such light matter: with this artificial Horse and your Nets you must go to the Haunts of Partridges, and having sound out the Covie, and pitcht your Nets below, you must go above, and taking the advantage of the Wind, you must drive downward: Let your Nets be pitcht sloop-wise and hovering. Then, having your Face covered with something that is green, or of a dark blue, you must, putting the Engine before you, stalk towards the Partridges with a slow pace, raising them on their Feet, but not their Wings, and then will they run naturally before you.

If they chance to run a by-way, or contrary to your purpose, then cross them with your Engine, and by so facing them, they will run into that track you would have them: Thus by a gentle slow pace you may make them run and go which way you will, and at last drive them into your Net, and so dispose of them at your pleasure.

How to take Partridges with a Setting-dog.

There is no Art of taking Partridges fo excellent and pleasant as by the help of a Setting-dog: wherefore, before we proceed to the Sport, we shall give

you an account what this Setting-dog is.

You are to understand then, that a Setting-dog is a certain lusty Land-spaniel, taught by nature to hunt the Partridge more than any chace whatever, running the fields over with fuch alacrity and nimbleness, as if there was no limit to his fury and defire, and yet by Art under fuch excellent command, that in the very height of his career by a Hem or found of his Master's voice he shall stand, gaze about him, look in his Masters face, and observe his directions, whether to proceed, stand still, or retire: nay, when he is even lust upon his Prey, that he may even take it up in his mouth, yet his obedience is fo framed by Art, that presently he shall either stand still, or fall down flat on his belly, without daring either to make any noise or motion till his Master come to him, and then he will proceed in all things to follow his directions.

Having a Dog thus qualified by Art and Nature, take him with you where Partridges do haunt, there cast off your Dog, and by some word of encouragement which he is acquainted with, engage him to range, but never too far from you; and see that he beat his ground justly and even, without casting about, or slying now here now there, which the mettle of some will do, if not corrected and reproved. And therefore when you perceive this fault,

you must presently call him in with a Hem, and so check him that he dare not do the like again for that day; so will he range afterwards with more Temperance, ever and anon looking in his Master's Face, as if he would gather from thence whether he did well or ill.

If in your Dog's ranging you perceive him to stop on the sudden, or stand still, you must then make in to him, (for without doubt he hath set the Partridge) and as soon as you come to him, command him to go nearer him: but if he goes not, but either lies still or stands shaking of his Tail, as who would say, Here they are under my nose, and withal now and then looks back; then cease from urging him surther, and take your circumference, walking fast with a careless Eye, looking straight before the Nose of the Dog, and thereby see how the Covy lie, whether close or stragling.

Then commanding the Dog to lie still, draw forth your Net, and prick one end to the ground, and spread your Net all open, and so cover as many of the Patridges as you can; which done, make in with a Noise, and spring up the Patridges; which shall no sooner rise, but they will be entangled in the Net. And if you shall let go the Old Cock and Hen, it will not only be an act like a Gentleman, but a means to increase your

Pastime.

How to take RAILS, QUAILS, MORE-POOTS, Oc.

Rom what is contain'd in the foregoing Chapters, you may collect a method how to take other Fowl, as Rails, Quails, Morepoots, &c. all which are very good flights for Hawks.

Their haunts are much alike with those of the Partridges, only the Quail loves most the Wheat-fields. the Morepoot most the Heath and Forest-grounds, and the Rails love the loug high Grass where they may lie obscure.

The way of finding them is like that of the Partridge, by the Eye, the Ear and Haunt: but the chief way of all to find them out is the Call or Pipe; to which they liften with fuch earnestness, that you can no fooner imitate their Notes, but they will answer them, and will purfue the Call with fuch greediness, that they will play and skip about you, nay run over you, especially the Quail.

The Notes of the Male and Female differ very much. and therefore you must have them both at your command; and when you hear the Male call, you must anfwer in the Females Note; and when the Female calls, you must answer in the Males Note: and thus you will not fail to have them both come to you, who will gaze

and liften till the Net is cast over them.

The way of taking these Birds is the same with that of the Partridge, and they may be taken with Nets or Lime, either Bush or Rod, or Engine, which you must Ralk with; or by the Setting-Dog, which I shall treat of in the next Chapter.

How to Elect and Train a SETTING-DOG from a Whelp till he come to Perfection.

THE Dog which you elect for Setting must have a perfect and good scent, and be naturally addicted to the hunting of Feathers: and this Dog may be either Land-spaniel, Water-spaniel or Mungrel of them both; either the shallow-slewed Hound, Tumbler, Lurcher, or small Bastard Mastiss. But there is none better than the Land-spaniel, being of a good and nimble size, rather small than gross, and of a courageous Mettle; which tho you cannot discern being Young, yet you may very well know from a right breed, which have been known to be strong, lusty and nimble Rangers, of active Feet, wanton Tails and busic Nostrils; whose Tail was without weariness, their Search without changeableness, and whom no delight did transport beyond Fear or Obedience.

When you have made choice of your Dog, begin to instruct him about 4 months old, or 6 months at the

uttermost.

The first thing that you shall teach your Dog, is to make him loving and familiar with you, knowing you from any other person, and sollowing you where-ever you go. To effect this the better, let him receive his sood as near as you can from no other hand but your own; and when you correct him to keep him in awe, do it rather with words than blows.

When you have so instructed your Dog that he will follow none but your self, and can distinguish your frown from your smile, and smooth words from rough, you must then teach him to couch and lie down close to the ground; first, by laying him often on the ground, and crying, Lie close. When he hath

done any thing to your mind and pleasure, you must then reward him with a piece of Bread: if otherwise.

chastise him with words; but few blows.

After this, you must teach him to come creeping unto you with his Belly and Head close upon the ground, as far or as little a way as you shall think sit: And this you may do by saying, Come nearer, Come nearer, or the like; and at first, till he understand your meaning, by shewing him a piece of Bread or some other food to entice him to you. And this observe in his creeping to you, if he offer to raise his Body or Head, you must not only thrust the rising-part down, but threaten him with your angry voice; which if he seem to slight, then add a sharp jerk or two with a Whipcord-lash.

You must often renew his Lessons till he be very perfect, still encouraging him when he does well.

If you walk abroad with him, and he take a fancy to range, even when he is most buse speak to him, and in the height of his pastime make him fall upon his Belly and lie close, and after that make him come creeping to you.

After this teach him to lead in a String or Line, and to follow you close at your heels without trouble

or ftraining of his Collar.

By that time he hath learned these things aforesaid, I conceive the Dog may be a twelvemonth old; at which time the season of the Year being sit, take him into the Field and permit him to range, but still in obedience to your command. But if through wantonness he chance to babble or open without cause, you must then correct him sharply, either with a Whipcord-lash, or biting him hard at the Roots of his Ears.

Having brought him to good temper and just obedience, then, as soon as you see him come upon the Haunt of any Partridge, (which you shall know by his greater eagerness in Hunting, as also by a kind of whimwhimpering and whining in his voice, being very desirous to open, but not daring) you shall speak to him, bidding him take heed, or the like: but if notwithstanding he either rush in and spring the Partridge, or opens, and so the Partridge escapeth, you must then correct him severely, and cast him off again, and let him hunt in some haunt where you know a Covy lies, and see whether he hath mended his fault: And if you catch any with your Nets, give him the Heads, Necks, and Pinions for his stuture encouragement.

Many more observations there are, which are too numerous here to recite; wherefore I shall delist, and give you an account of a Water-dog, and so finish this

present Discourse.

How to train a WATER-DOG, and the use thereof.

I Shall begin with the best proportion of a Water-dog, and first of his colour. Although some do attribute much to the colour, yet experience lets us

know they are uncertain observations.

To proceed then, your Dog may be any colour and yet excellent; but chuse him of Hair long and curled, not loose and shagged: his Head must be round and curled, his Ears broad and hanging; his Eye full, lively and quick, his Nose very short, his Lip Hound-like, his Chaps with a full set of strong Teeth, his Neck thick and short, his Breast sharp, his Shoulders broad, his Forelegs straight, his Chine square, his Buttocks round, his Belly gaune, his Thighs brawny, cre.

For the training this Dog, you cannot begin too foon with him; and therefore as foon as he can lap, you must teach him to couch and lie down, not daring to stir from that posture without leave. Observe in his sirst teaching to let him eat nothing till he deserve

it; and let him have no more Teachers, Feeders, Cherishers, or Correctors but one; and do not alter that word you first use in his information, for the Dog

takes notice of the found, not the language.

When you have acquainted him with the word suitable to his Lesson, you must then teach him to know the word of Reprehension, which at first should not be used without a Jerk. You must also use words of cherishing, to give him encouragement when he does well: and in all these words you must be constant, and let them be attended with spitting in his mouth, or cherishing of the hand. There is also a word of Advice, instructing him when he does amis.

Having made him understand these several words, you must next teach him to lead in a string or Collar orderly, not running too forward, nor hanging backward. After this you must teach him to come close at your heels without leading; for he must not range by any means, unless it be to beat Fowl from their

Covert, or to fetch the wounded.

In the next place you must teach him to fetch and carry any thing you throw out of your hands. And first try him with the Glove, shaking it over his Head, and making him snap at it; and sometimes let him hold it in his mouth, and strive to pull it from him; and at last throw it a little way, and let him worry it on the ground: and so by degrees make him bring it you where-ever you throw it. From the Glove you may teach him to fetch Cudgels, Bags, Nets, Oc.

If you use him to carry dead Fowl, it will not be amiss; for by that means he will not tear or bruise

what Fowl you shoot.

Having perfected this Lesson, drop something behind you which the Dog doth not see; and being gone a little way from it, send him back to seek it, by saying, Back, I bave lost. If he seem amazed, point with

with your Finger, urging him to feek out, and leave him not till he hath done it. Then drop fomething at a greater distance, and make him find out that too, till you have brought him to go back a mile.

Now may you train him up for your Gun, making him stalk after you step by step, or else couch and lie

close till you have shot.

Many more necessary Rules there are, which for

brevity fake I must omit.

The last use of the Water-dog is in moulting-time, when Wild-fowl cast their Feathers and are unable to fly, which is between Summer and Autumn: at this time bring your Dog to their Coverts, and hunt them out into the stream, and there with your Nets furprize them, driving them into them; for at this time sheep will not drive more easily. And though fome may object, that this fickly time is unfeafonable; yet if they consider what excellent food these Fowl will prove when cramm'd, the taking of them may be very excusable. I have eaten of them after they have been fed a while with Livers of Beaft, Whey, Curds, Barley, Paste, scalded Bran, and such-like; they have proved exceeding fat, and have tasted not fo fifty as they do by their natural feeding, but exceeding fweet, and deserve to be preferred before any Fowl whatever.

How to take, preserve, and keep all sorts of Singing-birds that are commonly known in England. Giving also an account of their Nature, Breeding, Feeding, Diseases of the same, with their Remedies.

IN the proceeding Discourse I have given you a Summary account of the several ways and artisses which are ased to take either Land-sowl, or Fowl properly belonging to the Water. Upon second thoughts I look upon this Third part of the Gentlemans Recreation, called a Treatise of Fowling impersed, if I add not now what I omitted before; a small Essay as to the Taking, Preserving, and Keeping all forts of Singing-birds commonly known in these his Majesties three Kingdoms. They are thus called.

The Gold-finch. The Nightingal. The Starling. The Black-bird The Tit-lark. The Green-finch. The Wood-lark. The Bull-finch. The Wren. The Canary-bird. The Red-start. The Linnet. The Throftle. The Hedge-spar-The Chaff-finch. The Rob. Red-breaft. The Skie-lark. row. Laftly, their Difeases and Cures.

Of the NIGHTINGAL.

A Coording to the judgment of most men, the Nightingal carries the Bell from all other Singing-birds, opening her charming Mouth out onely sweetly, but with much variety of pleasant Notes: It is but a small Bird, yet hath a loud voice; which made the Poet call her—Vox, & praterea nibil. They are so well known, a description of them would be needless; and are not onely esteemed of here, but in Italy and other parts.

They appear to us at the latter end of March, or beginning of April, and very few know where they inhabit all the Winter; fome think they fleep all that

feafon.

r

She makes her Nest commonly about two foot above ground, either in thick Quick-set-hedges, or in Beds of Nettles where old Quick-set hath been thrown together. She hatcheth her young ones about the beginning of May, and naturally delighes to frequent cool places, where small Brooks are garnished with pleasant Groves, and Quick-set-hedges are not far distant.

That Nighting ale which in my opinion is the best to keep, is he that is the earliest Bird of the Spring a soluhe will sing the better, having more time to hear the Old one sing than those that are hatched later.

The young Nighting ales must be taken out of their Nests when they are indifferently well fledg'. In mediocrity: for if well feathered, they will be missing and if too little, they are fo tender the will kill them.

For their meat give them lean Beef, Sheeps-hear or Bullocks-heart, taking away first the fat Skin the covereth it, and take away the Sinews; after the

foak the like quantity of white Bread in water, and fqueeze out some of the water; then mince it small, then feed them with a Stick, taking upon the point thereof the quantity of a Grey Pea, and give every one of them three or four fuch gobbets in an hour, as long as they shall endure to be in the Nest: when they are able to flie out of the Nest, then put them into a Cage with feveral Pearches for them to fit upon, and line them with some green Bays, for they are very subject to the Cramp at first; and at the bottom of the Cage put in some Moss or Hey, as well for other Birds as the Nightingale : it is fafe to line their Cages against Winter, or keep them in some When they are first Caged, continue warm place. for a while to put some of their Meat by them mingled with Ants, which will induce them to feed themfelves.

In the Summer you must feed them every day with fresh Meat, otherwise it will quickly grow state or stink. When they begin to moult, give them half Egg hard boiled, and half Sheeps-heart mingled with Saffron and water. Here note, Duck-eggs will kill them you may give them sometimes red Worms, Caterpillars, and Hog-lice; Meal-worms make them familiar, suffering them to take them out of your

hand.

The way of taking Old and Young is thus: For the Young, observe where the Cock sings; and if he sings long, the Hen is not far from that place, who oftentimes betrays her Osf-spring by being too careful; for when you come near her Nest, she will Sweet and Cw: if notwithstanding this, you cannot find her Nest, slick a Meal-worm or two upon a Thorn, and then lying down or standing, observe which way it is carried by the Old one, and drawing near, you will hear the young ones when she feeds them. When you have found out the Nest, touch not the young; for if you do, they will not tarry in the Nest.

nt

ry

Ir,

en

m

lit

ey

1

ie

ie

The way to take Branchers, by others called Pulhers, (because when throughly fleg'd the Old ones push them out of the Nest) I say you must take them after this manner: When you have found where they are, which you shall know by their Curring and Sweeting; for if you call true, they will answer you immediately:) having your Tackle all ready, scrape, in the Ditch or Bank-side, the Earth about three quarters of a yard square, that it may look fresh; then take a Bird-trap, or Net-trap, which you must make after this fashion.

How to make a Net-trap for Nightingales.

Take a Net made of green Silk or Thread, about the compass of a yard, made after the fashion of a Shove-net for Fishes; then get some large Wyre, and bending it round, joyn both ends, which you must put into a short Stick about an Inch and an half long; then you must have a piece of Iron with two Cheeks and a hole on each fide, through which you must put fome fine Whip-cord three or four times double that so it may hold the piece of Wood the better into which the ends of the Wyre are put, and with a Button on each fide the Iron, twist the Whip-cord that fo the Net may play the quicker: you must fasten the Net to the Wyre as you do a Shove-net to the Hoop; then get a Board of the compass of your Wyre, and joyn your two cheeks of Iron at the handle of your Board; then make a hole in the middle of your Board; and put a piece of Stick of about two Inches long, and a Hole at the Top of your Stick, which you must have a Peg to put in with two Wyers, an Inch and half long, to stick you Meal-worm upon; then tye a String in the middle of the top of your Net, drawing the Net up, having an eye at the end of the handle to pit your Thread through, pull it till it stands upright. then pull it through the hole of the Stick that stands

in the middle of your Board, and put your Peg in the hole, and that will hold the String that the Net cannot fall down: you must put Worms upon the Wyres, before you put it into the hole, and fet it as gently as you can, that it may fall with the first touch of the Nightingale: When you have your Net and Worm ready, having first scraped the place, then put some Ants in your Trap-cage, and upon your Board put some Worms upon Thorns, and set them at the bottom of your Trap-cage, little holes being made for the same purpose to stick in the ends of your Thorns: Then plant your Trap near to the place where you heard them call, either in the Ditch, or by the Bank-side, or corner of a Hedge, and then walk away; you may fet what number of Trap-cages you thing convenient. Do what is here proposed, and you need not doubt the having of your defires fatisfied.

Having taken your Nightingales, (the times is in July or August) tye the ends of their Wings with some brown Thread, that so they may be disenabled to hurt themselves by beating their tender bodies

against the top and Wyres of the Cage.

Let the Cage be covered above half with green Bays, and for four or five dayes let him be very little disturbed by company; but withal forget not to feed them half a dozen times a day with Sheepsheart and Egg shred very fine, and mingle red Ants therewith, and a few red Earth-worms would not do amis.

Here note, that no Nightingale at first taking will eat any other food than what is living, as Worms, Ants, Flies, or Caterpillars; which through sullenness if he will not eat, then take him out, and upon the point of a Stick (first opening his Bill) give him four or five gobbets one after another; then turn him into the Cage, strowing the bottom thereof with Egg and minced Sheeps-heart mingled with some Pismires.

These

These Nighting ales that are taken at this time of the year, will not fing till the middle of Odeber, and then they will hold in fong till the middle of June : But the Nightingales that are taken from the first of April to the twentieth, are the best Birds for Song in the whole Universe; and these are taken with Trap-cages or Trap-nets, as the Branchers aforesaid in June. July, and August. Here observe, that Nestlings nor Branchers (except they have an an old Bird to fing over them) have not the true Song for the first 12 Months. When you have fo tamed them that they begin to Cur and Sweet with chearfulness, and record foftly to themselves, it is a certain sign that they eat, and then you need not trouble your felf with feeding them; but if they fing before they feed, they commonly prove most excellent Birds: Those Birds that are long a feeding, and make no Curring nor Sweeting, are not worth the keeping. If you have a Bird that will flutter and bolt up his head in the Night against the top of the Cage, keep him not, for he is not onely good for nothing, but his bad example will teach the best of your Birds to do the like.

ır

Now to the intent you may not keep Hens instead of Cocks, and fo not onely be at useless charge, but be frustrated of your expectation, you shall distinguish their Sexes by these observations. The Cock in the judgment of some, is both longer and bigger: others fay, the Cock hath a greater Eye, a longer Bill, and a Tail more reddiff. others pretend to know them by the Pinion of the Wing, and Feathers on the Head. These rules I look not upon as infallible. having found them contrary to truth by my own experience: Now to undeceive you, take these true Experimental Observations. First, take notice, that if any of your Nestlings (before they can feed themfelves) do Record a little to themselves, and in their Recording you perceive their Throats to wag, you need not doubt that they are Cocks; but when they well as the Cock; therefore mark them when young, for it is very difficult to distingish afterwards.

Branchers, whether Cocks or Hens (when taken and do feed themselves) will Record; but the Cock

does it much longer, louder and oftener.

The best fort of Nighting ales frequent High-ways, Orchards, and fing close by Houses: these when taken will feed soonest, being more acquainted with the company of People; and after their feeding will grow familiar, and sing speedily. Observe, not to untye too soon the Wings of your Nighting ale; for if he be not very familiar and tame when he is untyed, he will be apt to beat himself against the Cage,

and fo spoil himself.

Now as to their Difeafes and Cures, observe this, that at the latter end of August they grow very fat, either abroad or in a Cage: when it begins to abate when they do not fing it is a dangerous fign; wherefore to remedy this, keep them very warm, giving them Saffron in their meat or water: when you perceive the growth of their fat, purge them thrice a Week for a Month, either with a Worm which is found in Pigeon-houses, or with a speckled spider, which you may find plentifully about Vines, Currans, or Goofe-berry buffies in August, and at no time else. If they are melancholy, put into their Drinking-pot fome Liquorish, with a little white Sugar-candy, giving them to feed on Sheeps-heart shred small, some Meal-worms, and Eggs mingled with Pifmires. It is strange that some of these Birds, when fat, will fast three Weeks, which I have known; but it is better when they eat.

Nighting ales kept in a Cage two or three years, are subject to the Gout: for their Cure, take fresh Butter and anoint their Feet four or five days, and they will be well again. Here note, that for want of keeping them clean, their Feet are clog'd, and then their

Claws

Claws will rot off, and are subject to Gout and Cramp, and will take no delight in themselves; to prevent these mischiefs, put dry Sand into the bottom of their Cages.

They are likewise troubled with Aposthumes and breaking out about their Eyes and Neb; for which, use Capon's-grease. And thus much of the Diseases

of the Nightingale.

Of the CANARY-BIRD.

Though many of these Birds are lately brought from Germany, and therefore are called by the name of that Country, yet undoubtedly their Original proceeded from the Canary-Islands. They are in colour much like our Green-birds, but differ much in their Song and Nature; and, in this, they differ from all Birds: For, as others are subject to be fat, the Cocks of these never are, by reason of the greatness of their mettle, and their lavish singing; either of these will not suffer him to keep hardly flesh on his back.

The best of them are shaped long standing straight

and boldly.

Before you buy either these German or Canary-birds, hear them sing, and then you will know how to please your Ear or Fancy, either with Sweet-song, Lavish-note, or Long-song, which is best, having most variety of Notes. Some like those that whisk and chem like unto a Tit-Lark; others are for those that begin like a Skie-lark, and so continue their Song with a long, yet sweet Note; a third fort are for those that begin their Song with the Skie-lark, and then run upon the Notes of the Nightingale, which is very pleasant if he does it well: The last is for a loud Note and lavish, regarding no more in it than a noise.

If you would know whether your Canary-bird be in health before you purchase him, take him out of the

Store-cage, and put him into a clean Cage alone: where, if he stand boldly without crouching, without fhrinking Feathers, and his Eyes looking brisk and chearfully; these are good signs of a healthy Bird: But now observe, if he bolts his Tail like a Nightingale after he hath dunged, it shews he is not well; though he feem lively for the present, there is some Distemper near attending : likewise if he either dung very thin and watry, or of a flimy white, and no blackness in it; these are dangerous signs of death

approaching, Id-

These Birds are subject to many Diseases, as Imposthumes which afflict their head, and are of a yellow colour, causing a great heaviness, and withal a falling from the Pearch, and death enfuing, if this Malady be not speedily cured. The most approved Cure is to make an Ointment of fresh Butter and Capon's-greafe melted together, and anoint therewith the Bird's Imposthume three or four days together: if it become foft, open it gently, and let out the matter; then anoint the place with some of the same Ointment, and this will immediately cure him: during the Cure, give him Figs, and Liquorish, and

White Sugar-candy in his Water.

Canary-birds above three years old are called Runts; at two years old they are called Eriffs; and those of the first year are called Branchers; when they are new flown and cannot feed themselves, they are called Pushers; and those that are brought up by hand, Nestlings. Now fince there are but few Canary-birds which breed in England, it being so great a trouble to look after them, I shall here insert nothing concerning the ordering when they intend or begin to build; what things are necessary for them when they begin to breed; how to order them when they have young ones; or how to breed the young ones when taken out of the Nest: Those who intend to be informed of every thing hereunto belonging, may eafily be inftructed by applying themselves to several Germans in and about the City, who make it their business to breed Canary-birds after the best (German) fashion.

Of the BLACK-BIRD.

A S fome do esteem the Nightingale to be the best Singing-bird in the World, so in my opinion the Black-bird is the worst; yet they are as frequently kept as their betters, and are in great estimation amongst the Vulgar; for no other reason that I know, than for the loudness and coarseness of his Song, as they are Borish in their Speech, and have little but rusticity in their Conditions. To be short, he is better to be eaten than kept, and is much sweeter to the Palate when dead, than to the Ear when living.

She builds her Nest upon old Stumps of Trees by Ditch-sides, or in shick Hedges. As they begin betimes, that is, in the beginning of March, (when many times the Woods are full of Snow) so they breed often, that is, three or four times a year, according

as they lofe their Neft.

The young Black-birds are brought up almost with any Meat whatsoever; but above all, they love Ground-worms, Sheeps-heart, hard Eggs, and white-

bread and Milk mixt together.

March of the Morth, a climiler

of a let his Wine'l Climiler

for and

of the Missiler Control

of the Morth of the Morth

of the Morth of the Morth of the Morth

of the Morth of the Morth of the Morth of the Morth

of the Morth of the Morth of the Morth of the Morth

of the Morth of the Morth

This Bird sings somewhat more than three months in the year; his Note, as I said, is harsh, therefore to add a value to him, let him be taught to Whistle; yet put Song and Whistle together, in my judgment it is fitter for a large Inn than a Lady's Chamber.

Of the THROSTLE.

OF Throftles there be five kinds; the Miftle-throftle, the Northern-throftle or Felfare, the Wind-throftle,

the Wood-fong-throftle, and the Heath-throftle.

The first is the largest of all the sive, and the most beautiful: it feeds, for the most part, on the Berries of Missec: and since that they are so good against the Falling-sickness and Convulsions; these Throssies, when dried and pulverized, and drank in the water of Missec, or Black-cherry-water, are much more effectual against those two Distempers. He sings but little, and therefore though the young ones are easie to be brought up, being hardy, yet he is not worth the keeping; for his Notes are rambling, and confused, yet not lavish neither.

The fecond is the Felfare, who comes into England before Michaelmas, and goes away about the beginning of March. In hard weather they feed on Hips and Haws; but when it is indifferently warm, there being neither Frost nor Snow on the ground, they

feed on young Grafs and Worms.

They breed upon certain Rocks near the Scotish-Shore three or four times a year, and are there in very great numbers: They are not so fit for the Cage as the Spit, having a most lamentable untured chattering tone: in Frost and Snow they are very fat, and then are most delicate Food; but being killed in open weather, they are so bitter, that they are not worth the eating.

Thirdly, The Wind-throfile, (or Whindle) which travels with the Felfare out of the North, is a smaller Bird, with a dark-red under his Wing. He breeds in Woods and Shaws as Song-Throfiles use to do, and hath an indifferent Song, exceeding the two fourmer;

but

but yet they are fitter for the Pot or Spit than for

a Cage or Avery.

The Fourth is the Wood-fong-throfile, and fings most incomparably, both lavishly, and with variety of Notes: To add to his estimation, he sings at least

nine of the twelve months in the year.

They build about the fame time, place, and manner as the Black-bird does: her policy in the building of her Nest is much to be admired, since the compositive cannot be mended by the art of Man: besides the curious building, she leaves a little hole in the bottom of her Nest, as I conceive to let out the Water, if a violent shower should come, that so her Eggs or young ones may not be drowned.

They go very foon to Nest if the Weather favour them, and breed three times a year, that is, in March or April, May and June; but the first Birds usually

prove the best.

Take them in the Nest when they are fourteen days old, and keep them warm and clean, not suffering them to sit on their Dung, but so contrive it, that they dung over the Nest. Feed them with raw Meat and some Bread chopped together with bruifed Hemp-seed, wetting your Bread before you mingle it with the Meat.

Being throughly fledg'd, put them into a Cage where they may have room enough, with two three Pearches, and some Moss at the bottom of the Cage, to keep them clean; for otherwise they will be troubled with the Cramp, and for want of delighting in themselves the singing will be spoil'd.

Bread and Hemp-seed is as good food for them as can be given: and be mindful of furnishing them at least twice a week with fresh water, that they may bathe and prune themselves therein, otherwise they

will not thrive.

The Fifth and last is the Heath-throftle, which is the least we have in England, having a dark breast. Some

are of opinion, that this Bird exceeds the Songthroftle, having better Notes, and neater Plume.

The Hen builds by the Heath-side in a Furn-bush or stump of an old Haw-thorn, and makes not Shaws and Woods her haunt as other Throsses do. She begins not to breed till the middle of April, and breeds but twice in a year; and if kept clean and well sed, will sing three parts in sour of the whole year. Their manner of breeding is in like-sort as the former.

To know the Cock from the Hen, according to old Country-judgment, is to chuse the Top-bird of the Nest, which commonly is most sleg'd. Others think that to be the Cock which hath the largest eye, and most speckles on his breast. Others chuse the Cock by the pinion of his Wing, if it hath a very dark black that goes a-cross it; but above all, chuse him thus: If his Gullet be white, with black streaks on each side, his spots on his Breast large and black, having his head of a light shining brown, with black streaks under each Eye, and upon the pinion of the Wing; these are the best marks that ever I observed.

Of the ROBIN-RED-BREAST.

T is the opinion of some, that this little King of Birds, for sweetness of Note, comes not much short of the Nighting ale. It is a very tender Bird, and therefore must have its Cage lined. They breed we ry early in the Spring, and commonly thrice a year.

When the young are about ten days old take them from the old ones, and keep them in a little Bower-basket: if they tarry long in the Nest, they will be fullen, and therefore more difficulty brought up: you must feed them as you feed the Nightingale in all respects: finding them grow strong, put them into a Cage, put Moss in the bottom thereof, and let them and warm.

The way of taking a Robin sed-breaft is so easie and common, that every Boy knows how to take him in a Pit-fall; but with a Trap-cage and a Meal-worm you may take half a score in a day: Hearing them sing, keep those birds which most delight you. If you take any without hearing them sing, thus you shall know whether he be Cock or Hen; if a Cock, his breast will be of a darker red, and his red will go farther up upon the head than the Hens.

Of the WREN.

This Bird in my opinion is a pretty sweet dapper Songster, being of a nature chearful; as he is pleasant to the Ear, so he is to the Eye; and when he sings cocks up his Tail, and throws out his Notes with so much alacrity and pleasure, that I know not any bird of its bigness more delights the sense of Hearing.

This bird builds twice a year, about the latter end of April, in thrubs where Ivy grows thick, and fometimes in old Hovels and Barns. They lay a numerous quantity of Eggs; and I can affure you I have seen a Mest containing two and twenty: herein are two things greatly to be wondred at; first, that so small a bird should cover such a great quantity of Eggs; secondly, when they have hatched, to feed them all, and not to miss one bird, and in the dark also.

Their second time of breeding is in the middle of Jung: of either breed, what you intend to keep must be taken out of the Nest at thirteen or fourteen days old. Let their food be Sheeps-heart and Egg minced very small, or Calves or Heisers-heart; but be sure to clear them of the Fat and Sinews, which must be a general rule to be observed for all Meat-birds. Feed them in the Nest every day very often, but a little at a

time;

time; let the inftrument you feed them with be a Stick; and when you observe them to pick it off of their own accord, then cage them, and putting meat to them in a little Pan, and about the sides of the Cage, to entice them to eat; however, have a care to feed them too, less they neglect themselves and die. When they can feed themselves very well, give them once in three days a Spider or two. You may teach them to whistle tunes if you so desire it; for they are easily taught, being a bird that's very docible. Here note, if they be fed with Paste, they will live longer than if they fed upon Hearts. The brownest and largest of the young Wrens are the Cocks.

Of the WOOD-LARK.

Some prefer the Wood-lark before the Nightingale; but it is of this bird as all others, fome are more excellent in length and fweetness of Song.

This bird breeds the foonest of any we have, by reafon of his extraordinary mettlesomeness: and therefore if they are not taken in the beginning of February at least, they grow so rank that they will prove good

for nothing.

The places this bird most delights in are gravelly grounds, and Hills lying towards the Orient, and in Oat-stubs. Their building is in your Laiers grounds, where the Grass is rank and russet, making their Nests of Bennet-grass, or dead Grass of the field under some large Tusset, to shelter them from the injury of the weather.

This Bird hath very excellent pleasant Notes, with great variety, insomuch that I have observed some have had almost thirty several Notes; which if they sing lavish, is a most ravishing melody or harmony, if

the Nightingale joyn in confort.

These

These Birds are never bred from the Nests as ever I could hear: I have several times attempted it, but to no purpose; for notwithstanding my greatest care, they died in a Week, either of the Cramp or Scowring.

The times of the year to take them are June, July, August; and then they are called young Branchers, having not yet moulted. They are taken likewise at the latter end of September; but having then moulted, the

young and old are not diftinguishable.

Lastly, they are taken from the beginning of January to the latter end of February, at which time they are all coupled and returned to their Breeding.

places.

The way to take them in June, July, and August, is with an Hobby, after this manner: get out in a dewy Morning, and go to the sides of some Hills which lie to the rinng of the Sun, where they most usually frequent; and having sprung them, observe where they fall; then surround them twice or thrice with your Hobby on your Fist, causing him to hover when you draw near, by which means they will lie still till you clap a Net over them, which you carry on the point of a Stick.

If three or four go together, take a Net like one made for Partridges: when you go with a Setting-dog onely, the Mesh must be smaller, that is, a Lark-mesh; and then your Hobby to the Lark is like a Setting-dog to Partridges, and with your Net at one draught you

may take the whole flock.

The Wood-lark that is taken in June, July, and August will sing presently, but will not last long, by reason of their moulting. That which is taken in January and February will sing in five or six days, or sooner; and these are the best, being taken in full stomack, and are more perfect in their Song than those taken at other seasons.

If in the Cage you find him grow poor at the beginning of the Spring, give him every two or three days a Turff of Three-leav'd-grass, (as is used to the Skie-lark) and boil him a Sheeps-heart and mince it small, mingling it among his Bread, Egg, and Hemp-seed, which will cause him to thrive extraordinarily.

If he be troubled with Lice, (a Distemper he is commonly afflicted withal) take him out of the Cage, and smoak him with Tobacco; give him fresh gravel, and fet him in a hot place where the Sun shines, and this will cure him if he have strength to bask in the

Sand.

If you would have him fing lavish, feed him with Sheeps-heart, Egg, Bread and Hemp-seed mixt together, and put into his water a little Liquorish, white Sugar-candy, and Saffron: Let this be done once a

week.

Upon the first taking of your Wood-lark thus must you do; you must put into your Cage two Pans, one for mine'd meat, and another for Oat-meal and whole Hemp-seed. Then having boil'd an Egg hard, take the crumbs of white Bread, the like quantity of Hemp-seed pounded in a Mortar, and mingle your Bread and it with your Egg mine'd very small, and give it him. Let there be at the bottom of the Cage sine red Gravel, and let it be shifted every week at farthest; for he delights to bask in the Sand, which will not be convenient if foul'd with his Dung. Let the pearch of the Cage be lin'd with green Bays, or which is better, make a pearch of a Mat: and least they should not find the Pan so soon as they should do, to prevent famine, strew upon the Sand some Oat-meal and Hemp-seed.

How to know the Cock is thus: first, the largeness and length of his Call: Secondly, his tall walking: Thirdly, at Evenings the doubling of his Note, which Artists call Cuddling; but if you hear him sing strong,

you cannot be deceived.

Here

ne

d

i-

d

đ

S

e

ît

d

t

i- ie

Here note, that if a Bird fings not that is taken in February and January, within one month after, you may conclude him not worth the keeping, or elfe is an Hen infallibly.

The Wood-lark as it is naturally endewed with incomparable notes, so it is a tender Bird, and difficult to be kept; but if rightly ordered, and well look'd to will be a most delightful Songster to its Master; growing better and better every year to the very last.

These Birds are very subject to the Cramp, Giddiness in the Head, and to Louziness. The best remedy to prevent the Cramp, is to shift the Cage often with fresh Gravel, otherwise the Dung will clog to their feet, which causeth the Cramp, The giddiness of the Head proceedeth from feeding upon much Hemp-seed: perceiving this distemper, give him some Gentles, (the common Bait for Fisher-men) Hog-lice, Emmets and their Eggs, with Liquorish, all put into water, will serve in their stead, and will cure immediately. Louziness (which causeth leanness in this bird) is cured as I said before by smoaking Tobacco.

Of the SKIE-LARK: The several ways to take them; and when taken, how to order them.

There is great difference between one Skie-lark and another; for one may not be worth two pence, when another shall be worth two pounds.

This bird is very hardy, and will live upon any food in a manner, so that he have but once a week a Turff of three-leav'd-grass. As the Wood-lark hath young ones in March, the Skie-lark hath rarely any till the middle of May. They commonly build in Corn, or thick high grass Meadows, and seldom have more

than four: take them at a fortnight old, and at first give them minced sheeps-heart with chopt hard Egg mingled: when they can feed alone, give them Bread, Hemp-seed, and Oat-meal; let the Bread be mingled with Egg, and the Hemp-seed bruised: Let them have sand in the bottom of their Cage; Pearches

therein are to no purpose.

As the Wood-lark is taken with Net and Hobby, fo may the Skie-lark be taken also. They are taken likewife in dark nights with a Trammel; this Net is about fix and thirty yards long, and fix yards over run through with fix ribs of Pack-thread; which ribs at the ends are put upon two Poles fixteen foot long, made taper at each end, and fo is carried betwen two men half a yard from the ground; every fix steps touching the ground, to cause the Birds to fly up, otherwise you may carry the Net over them without disturbing them: hearing them fly against the Net. clap it down and they are fafe under it. This is a very murdering Net taking all forts of birds that it comes near as Partridges Quails Woodcocks, Snipes, Felfares, and what not almost in every dark night.

The next way of taking them is with a pair of Day-nets and a Glass, which is incomparable pastime in a Frosty Morning. These Nets are commonly seven Foot deep, and Fifteen long, knit with your French Mesh, and very fine Thread. These Nets take all forts of small Birds that come within their Compass, as Benting-Larks, and Linnets in abun-

dance

These Larks are also taken by a Low-bell, with a great light carried in a Tub both by one man, and the Net by another; this Bell and light so amazeth them, that they lie as dead, and stir not till the Net overcast them. By this Bell are all sorts of Fowls and Birds taken, as Partridge and Pheasant; and if the Bell be loowd, or very deep Duck, Mallard, Woodcock, and the may be taken.

The

ft

mes

fo.

1-

in

it

t,

d

ir

he

The last way of taking Larks is in a great Snow, by taking an hundred or two hundred yards of Packthread, fastning at every six inches a Noose made with Horse-hair; two hairs are sufficient. Now since I have already described this way of taking Larks, I shall desist, and onely inform you that those Larks you intend to preserve for singing, must be taken in October or November: Chuse the straightest, largest, and lost-iest Bird, and he that hath most white on his Tail, for these are the marks of the Cock. Observe in this Bird as in all others, that you give no salt Meat, nor Bread season'd with salt.

Of the LINNET.

THeir Nests are usually in thorn-bushes tnd Furzbushes; and some of the hotter fort of them will breed four times a year. The young ones may be taken at four days old, if you intend to teach them to whiftle, or learn the Song of other Birds: for being fo young, they know not the tune of the old Bird. Being fo young, keep them very warm, and feed them often, and a little at a time: there must be bruised soaked Rape-feeds, with the like quantity of white bread, of which there must be fresh made every day to prevent fowring, which will make them fcowr to death : let not their Meat be too dry, for fear of being Ventburnt. If you intend they shall whistle, do you whistle to them in the time of feeding, being more apt to learn before they can crack hard feeds. Whatever Bird you intend your Linnet shall learn his Notes of, hang him under it, and he will perfectly imitate him: nay, so docible this Bird is, as I have been credibly informed, that some of them have been taught to speak. To know the Cock from the Hen, must not always be discovered by their Breasts; but the Cock is best known by the brownness of his Back and the white

in his Wing; that is to fay, take your young Lime when the Wing-feathers are grown, and firetch out his Wing, holding his body fast with the other hand; and then observe the white upon the fourth, fifth, and fixth Feather; if it cast a glistering white, and the white goes close to the Quil, this is a sure sign of a Cock.

Many are the Discases of this Bird, as the Ptisick, known by his panting, staring Feathers, lean Breast, and spilling his Seeds up and down the Cage; and this Difease happens for want of Water, or for want of Green Meat in the Spring: He is troubled also with Streins or Convulsions of the Breast : Sometimes he is afflicted with hoarfness in his voice, being over-strein'd in Singing: he is sometimes melancholy, at other times afflicted with scowring of which there are three forts; the first is thin, and with a black or white substance in the middle, not very dangerous; the fecond is between a black and white, clammy and flicking, this is bad; but the third and last is most mortal, which is the white clammy The feveral Cures I shall not here fer fcowring: down for brevity fake, but refer you to the care of the Bird-merchant.

Of the GOLDFINCH, or CHRIST-MASFOOL, so called in Norfolk.

They are taken in great plenty about Michaelmas, and will foon become tame. The beauty of this Bird's feverally-colour'd Feathers is not much taken notice of, because they are so common among us; but they have been so noted and valued beyond Sea, that they have been transported in Great quantities for Great Rarities.

They breed commonly in Apple-trees and Plam-trees thrice a year. You must take the young ones with the nest at ten days old, and feed them after this manner: Take some of the best Hemp-seed, pound it, sift it, and mix it with the like quantity of white bread, with some slower of Canary-seed; and taking up the quantity of a white Pea upon a small Stick, seed them therewith three or four bits at a time, making fresh every day: You must keep these Birds very warm till they can feed themseves, for their nature is very tender.

á

1

-5

1-

h

1

ne

et

of

Γ-

his

en

oot

nat

or

ley

For the purgation of this Bird, as well as all others which feed on Hemp-feed, take the feeds of Mellons, Succory, and Mercury, which is a principal Herb for the Linnet; but the best for the Gold-fines are Lettice and Plantain; and nothing can be more wholesome for him than Wall or Loom-earth, and some sine Sand, and a lump or two of Sugar put always into his Cage.

Of the TIT-LARK.

This Bird is very short in his Song, and no variety in it; yet some fancy him for his Whisking, Turring, and Chewing: He commonly appears at that time of the year that the Nighting ale does, which is the beginning of April, and leaves us at the beginning of September: They are fed when taken as the Nighting ale; you must cram him at first, for he will not feed himself, by reason he always feeds on live meat in the field, for which cause he is unacquainted with the meat we offer him: when he comes to feed of himself he will eat what the Wood-lark eats, or almost any other meat.

This Bird breeds about the latter end of April, or beginning of May, and builds her Nest on the ground by some Pond-side or Ditch-side, and feeds her young

with Caterpillars or Flies. They are easily brought up being hardy, and are not subject to Colds or Cramps as other Birds are, but live long if preserved with care. If you breed up this Bird young and cleanly, you may please your self with his Song; all that I can say of it is, Short and sweet.

Of the CHAF-FINCH.

There is no scarcity of this Bird, and in my mind fitter for the Spit than a Cage, having but one short plain Song, yet for that he is admired by some.

and kept very charily.

They build their Nests in Hedges and Trees of all forts, and have young ones twice or thrice a year; they are seldom bred up from the Nest, because they are not apt to take another Bird's Song, or to whistle. The Essex-finch is best both for length of Song, and variety, concluding it with several Notes very prettily. He is very little subject to any Disease, onely he is inclinable to be very lousiy, if he be not sprinkled with a little Wine twice or thrice a month.

Of the STARLING.

This Bird is generally kept by all forts of people above any other bird for whistling; but their greatest fault is, they have them too fledg'd out of the nest, and that makes them retain commonly so much of their own harsh Notes: therefore those who do intend to have them excellent, and avoid their own squeaking Notes, must take them from the old ones at the end of three or four days; and thus you must do to all birds you would learn to whistle, or speak, or learn another Birds Song by hanging under him.

Of the RED-START.

This Bird is a Fore-runner of the Nightingale, and is of a very fullen dogged temper in a Cage; but abroad is very chearful, and hath a very pleasant kind of Whistling Song.

The Cock is fair and beautifully coloured, and is delightful to the eye. They breed thrice a year; the latter end of April, in May, and towards the lat-

ter end of June.

They build usually in holes of hollow Trees, or under house-eaves: She is the choisest Bird I know of her building; for when she is about her Nest, if she perceive any to look on, she forsakes it; and if she have young ones and you do the like, she will either starve them, or break their Necks over the Nest. Now tho' the old ones be thus dogged, yet if you bring up their young, their nature will alter,

and become very tame.

You must take them out of the Nest about ten days old; if they stay longer, they will learn somewhat of the old one's sullen temper. You must feed them with Sheeps-heart and Eggs chopped and mixt together, about the quantity of three white Peas, upon the end of a stick, when they open their mouths: when they will thus feed, put them into a Cage with meat about it, and a Pan of meat therein; and though he feed himself, yet it will be very sparingly for four or five days, wherefore you must now and then feed him your self. Keep him warm in the Winter, and he will sing as well in the night as the day.

Of the BULL-FINCH.

THe Bull-finch hath no Song of his own, nor Whifile neither, but is very apt to learn any thing almost, if taught by the mouth.

Of the GREEN-FINCH.

This Bird is not worth a keeping for his Song, but for his colour, and being a hardy heavy Bird to

ring the Bells.

They breed very fillily by the High-way fide, and early, before the Hedges have leaves upon them; which causes every one to see their Nests at first, so that seldom their first Nests come to any thing. They breed three times a year, and the young ones are very hardy Birds to be brought up. You may feed them with white Bread and Rape bruised and soaked together: He is apter to take the Whistle than another Bird's Song. All that can be said of him, he is a very dust Bird, and will never kill himself either by Singing or Whistling.

Of the HEDGE-SPARROW.

This is not so despicable a Bird as some would have it; for if you will mind its Song, you will find very delightful Notes, and Sings early in the Spring with great variety. Old or young become tame very quickly, and will Sing, in a short time, after they are taken; so that you take them at the latter end of January, or beginning of February: they will feed almost on any thing you can give them.

They

They commonly build in a White-thorn, or private Hedge, laying Eggs much different from other Birds, being of a very fine blue colour. This Bird is very tractable, and will take any Bird's Song almost if taken young out of the Nest. I shall only speak a few Experiments of others, and deliver some Observations of my own concerning the length of Birds lives, and which are most proper for Whistling, and so shall end this Treatise.

First, As to the length of Birds Lives; Among Nighting ales some live but one year, some three, some five, some eight, and some twelve; singing better and better for the first seven or eight years, and after that decline by little and little; They must have careful keepers that can preserve their lives to the fifth year; experience informs us, where one lives

to that age, an hundred die.

The Wood-lark feldom lives in a Cage above fix

years, and hardly five.

The Robin-red-breast rarely lives above seven years; for he is a tender Bird, and much subject to the Falling-sickness, Cramp, and Oppression of the Stomack.

The Skie-lark, as he is a hardy Bird, so he is long liv'd also. All forts of Seed-birds live longer than any soft-beak'd Birds, especially the Canary and Linnet. I have known a Canary-bird live and sing within a year of Twenty; in like manner the Linnet.

So much as to the Lives of Singing-Birds; let us now consider which are most fit for Whistling.

In the first place I look upon the Starling to be the best; and never heard better than at the Greybound in St. Mary Ax, taught and sould by the ingenious Master of that House. But since I have spoken of the Starling and Bull-finch already, I shall insist no farther.

The Black-bird hath a kind of rude Whiftle; and if young taken out of the Nest, is very apt to learn.

The Robin-red-breast is a most incomparable Bird for the Whistle, and to Speak also. A Robin is a hot-mettled Bird, and therefore he must not be in the hearing of another; wherefore if you breed two, let them be separated into two several Rooms, that they may not hear, and so consequently spoil each other.

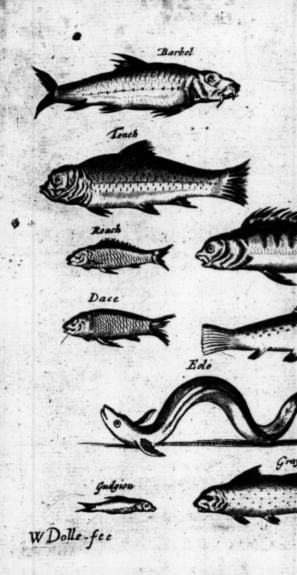
The Canary-bird will learn to Whistle any thing almost, if taken young out of the Nest, otherwise not: for being a very hot-metled Bird, he will run

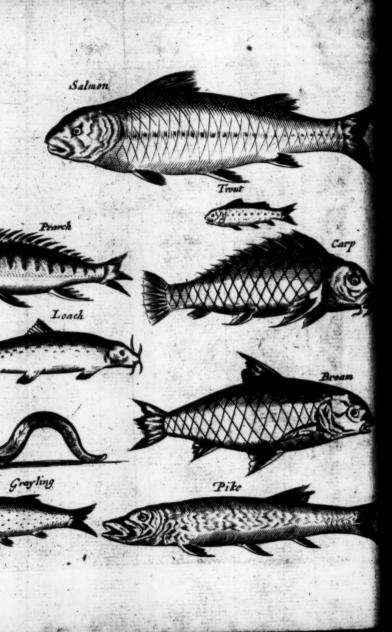
upon his own Song do what you can.

The Limet will learn any Tune almost, if not too long, and too full of variety. Learn him one Tune first, then another, keeping him dark and still, out of

the noise of other Birds.

Take this for a general Rule for all Birds, That the younger they be, the better they will prove, and answer your expectation for all your trouble and pains in bringing up and keeping them.





GENTLEMAN'S RECREATION,

FOR THAT

Noble and Delightful

ART OF

Angling.

The Introduction.

NGLING is an excellent Art, which, as it pleads great Antiquity, so the knowledge thereof is with much difficulty to be obtained: and indeed it bears some similated to Poetry in this, that as it is said, Poeta nascitur, non sit, so ought the Piscator, or Fisherman, to have a natural inclination unto the Art of Angling, or his knowledge

knowledge therein will be always dull and imperfed; not but that it may be much heightned by practice

and experience.

Now he that intends to be his Crafts-mafter in this harmless Pastime or Recreation, must not onely diligently search and enquire into the mysteries & depths of this Art, but must also be surnished, as aforesaid, with a natural propensity thereunto, attended with Hope and Patience? And having gotten by observation and practice a competent knowledge, or having conquer'd the difficulties of Angling, it will then not onely prove pleasant, but profitable, and be like Vertue, a Reward to it self.

Now that I may farther commend this ingenious profession, be pleased to take notice of the Antiquity thereof; some saying it is as ancient as Deucalion's Flood. Some attribute it to the invention of one Belly, the sirst Author of vertuous Recreations. Others say that Seth left the knowledge of Angling to his posterity ingraven on brazen Pillars with the sirst Rudiments of the Mathematicks, and other useful Arts; by which means they were preserved from perishing

in the univerfal deluge.

Divers are the opinions of men concerning the Antiquity of this Art: let it suffice, that certainly it is older than Chrisi's Incarnation; for both Job and the Prophet Amos make mention of Fish-hooks, and consequently there must be Anglers then in those

days.

The next thing that offers it felf in the commendation of this Art, is the benefit of Contemplation, which is acquired hereby; which is a thing (according to the opinion of some learned Cloister'd men) to be preferred before action, because say they) it makes us mortals the nearer to come to the Creator by way of imitation; for he is all Contemplation of his own infinite Power, Goodness, &c.

But waving this, I cannot let slip the expression of an ingenious Forreiner, who said, That Rivers and the Inhabitants of the watry Element were made for wise men to contemplate, and fools to pass by without consideration. Modesty will not permit me to rank my self in the number of the first; and I shall endeavour to clear my self from the scandal of the last, by giving you a short account of Rivers and their watry Inhabitants.

I shall first discourse of Rivers: One whereof I have read of, scituate in Epirus, which hath a strange double and contrary property; the one is, that is will extinguish any Torch that is lighted; and the other is, to light a Torch never lighted before.

The River Silarus in a few hours will (as report faith) convert a Rod into Stone. And I my felf know a Lough in Ireland, that in some years will convert Wood into Stone, of which are made the best Hones. Cambden makes mention of a Well near Karby in Cumberland, that ebbs and flows several times every day.

The same Author makes mention of the River Mole in Surrey, which, running several miles under ground, being opposed by Hills, at last breaks out again so far off, that the Inhabitants thereabout boast (as the Spaniards of the River Ama) that they feed several Flocks of Sheep on a green Bridg. There is such another green Bridge in Wales, the River running a great way under ground, and there disemboguing it self into the Sea. Some thereabout report, that they have put a living Goose into the Hole where the Water falls, and she hath swam out at the other end; but with no Feathers on her back.

Mr. Thomas May in his History of the Reign of King Henry II. relates two strange things from Gricaldus Cambrensis, of certain Wells in Iroland. His words are

thefe:

The Introduction.

A Well there is in Munster to be seen,
Within whose Waters whose're hath been
Once drench'd, his Hair streight takes an heary dye.
Another Fountain of quste contrary
Effect to that in Ulster Springs; for there
Those that have washed once, how old soe're,
Shall never after have an hoary Hair.

Another thing, though against Nature, yet for the strangeness of it I cannot choose but relate, and that is of a certain River near Harwood in Bedfordshire, which in the year of our Lord, 1399, (a little before the Civil Wars between the Houses of York and Lancaster burst forth) of a sudden stood still, and divided it self as under, so that men might pass three miles together on foot down the midst of the Channel, leaving the Waters like a Wall behind them. Speed

in his Descript. Bedford.

I shall conclude with two of the strangest Rivers that ever were heard of. The first is a River called Elevisia, which is so merrily disposed, (if you will believe a man of no less Authority than Aristotle) that it will dance to a Fiddle, bubling at the noise of Musick, and will grow very muddy; but as soon as the Musick ceaseth, it ceaseth its motion, returning to its former calmness and clearness. The other is as wonderful, and (if you will believe Josephus that learned Jew) it is a River in Judaa, which runs very swiftly all the six days of the Week, but resteth on this seventh, which is the Jewish Sabbath.

And now a word or two concerning Fish: Pliny faith, That Nature's great and wonderful power is more demonstrated in the Sea than on the Land: and this may appear by those numerous and various Creatures which inhabit in and about that Element; which will appear more at large, if you will read the History written either by Rondeletius, Gesner, Johnstonus,

or Aldrovandus. The number and the various shapes of these Fishes are not more strange, than their different Natures, Inclinations and Actions. Give me

leave to speak a little hereof.

There is a Fish called the Cuttle-Fish, which will cast a long Gut out of her Throat, with which she angles: For lying obscurely in the Mud, she permits small Fish to nibble at it, and by that means draws them near her by little and little, till coming within her reach, she leaps upon them and devours them: Hence she is called the Sea-Angler.

The Hermit is a Fish that when she grows old will seek out a dead Fish's shell, fit for her purpose, and there dwell secluded from all company, studying no thing more than how to defend her self against the

injuries of Wind and Weather.

The sargus is a Fish so lascivious, (as Du-Bartas expressed it rarely well) that when he cannot find change of Mates enough in the Sea, he will get ashore and Cuckold a Goat.

Goes courting She-Goats on the graffy Shore, Horning their Husbands that had Horns before:

Whereas it is reported that the Mullet is so chast, that when she is deprived of her Mate, she will follow

him to the shore and dye.

The Torpedo, or Cramp-filb, is a Fish of so baneful and poysonous a nature, that all other Fish that come within her reach are immediately stupished and without motion, so that they easily become her Prey; nay, she will so suddenly convey her Poyson up the Rod and Line of the Angler, when she feels her self entangled, that his Hands and Arms immediately losing their strength, become nummed and senseless.

The Scolopendra hath as rare and strange a way of deending her felf from the Anglers subtilty, as any Fish whatever, if we may credit the Relation of Du Bartas, whose words are these:

But if the Scolopendra have sucht in
The sowre-sweet morsel with the barbed Pin,
She hath as rare a Trick to rid her from it;
For instantly she all her Guts will vomit;
And having clear'd them from the danger, then
She fair and softly sups them in again,
So that not one of them within her Womb
Changeth his Office or his wonted room.

The Remora is a Fish of so strange and secret a property (and for that reason is often used for a Metaphor) that as the same Du-Bartas saith,

Let all the Winds in one Wind gather them,
And (seconded with Neptune's strongest stream)
Let all at once blow all their stiffest gales,
A stern a Galley under all her sails;
Let her be holpen with an hundred Oars,
Each lively handled by sive lusty Rowers;
The Remora sixing her feeble Horn
Into the Tempest-heaten Vessels Stern,
Stays her Stone still.

In the year of our Lord 1180, near Orford in Suffolk, there was a Fish taken in the perfect shape of a Man; he was kept by Bartholomew de Glanvile in the Castle of Orford above half a year; but at length, not being carefully looked to, he stole to the Sea, and was never seen after. He never spake, but would eat any Meat that was given him, especially raw Fish, when he had squeezed out the juice: He was often had to Church, but never shewed any sign of Adoration.

Let

Let what is already spoken of Fish suffice, since it will not onely be impertinent to enlarge farther, but impossible here to give an account of the natures of all Fish: I shall therefore refer you to such Authors who have made it their business to write large Volumes.

Before I put an end to this Introduction, permit me to infert fomething in the praise of Fishermen and Fishing.

A short Encomium, or somewhat in Praise of Fisher-men and Fishing.

IT is very remarkable, that amongst the Twelve Holy Apostles there were sour of them Fisher-men, whom our Saviour elected and inspired to preach the Gospel. And the reason that some give for this choice is, that he knew and found the hearts of such men naturally more sitted for Contemplation and quietness, having Spirits mild, sweet, and peaceable.

Besides, our Saviour seems to have a more than common respect for their Occupation, for two reasons. First, He never reproved these for their profession, as he did others, viz. the Scribes and Moneychangers. Next, He dignified these poor Fisher-men with the priority of Nomination in the Catalogue of his Twelve Apostles. Nay, that which is more observable is this, that our Saviour took only three of these Fisher-men with him when he ascended the Mount to bear him company at his Transfiguration.

Now as to the lawfulness of Fishing, I think none can speak against it, since our Saviour himself commanded St. Peter to fish to pay Casar his Tribute.

And as the Ancients have highly applauded and approved of this ingenious Exercise, several of the Hero's of old, in the height of their glory, having exercifed themselves herein: so several of our eminent late Divines have done the like; as Dr. Whitaker. learned Perkins, Dr. Nowel Dean of St. Pauls, London and the incomparable Sir Henry Wotton Provost of Eaton-Colledge, who was a great lover of Angling. and would frequently fay thereof, that it was after his Study a Rest to his mind, a chearer to his Spirits. a diverter of fadness, a Calmer of unquiet thoughts, a Moderator of Passions, a procurer of Contentedness; and that it begot habits of Peace and Patience in those that profess and practice it. And thus I conclude the praise of Angling, tho much more might be spoken thereof.

How to Improve Fish-ponds, and the Fish therein contained.

Before I shall lay down such Observations and Inferructions, which with much pains and cost I have collected, to render a Fisher-man compleat in that delightful Exercise of taking Fish: I shall give an account of Ponds, and how they may in the best

manner he improved.

Imprimis. Consider the scituation of your Pond, and the nature of those Currents which run into it, In the next place, observe whether it be a Breeder, or not: if it be a Breeder, experience will instruct you never to expect any large Carps from such Ponds, for the greatness of the number of the Spawn will over stock the Pond; therefore for large Carps a Store-pond is ever accounted best.

Now to make a Breeding-pond become a Storepond, when you cannot make a Store-pond become a Breeding-pond, thus you must do. When you sue

vour

your Pond, consider what quantity of Carps it will maintain; then put in all Milters, or all Spawners, by which means in a little time you will have Carps that are both large and fat beyond your expectation, By puting in but one Sex of them, there is an impossibility of encreasing of them; but of the Roach it will notwithstanding multiply abundantly: Therefore it is needful, and altogether necessary for such who keep Breeding-ponds, to fue them once in three years, for fear of the encrease of Roaches, tho none were ever put in, which may feem very strange, if the truth thereof could not be made manifest; as thus : there are several Ponds frequented by Wildducks, which usually come at night to feed with the Tame ones there abiding: Now those Wild ducks bring these Roaches with them, for their feeding amongst weeds in Rivers.

Besides the Spawn of Roaches will hang about their Feet and Feathers, which is washed off by the water of those Ponds they are accustomed to haunt; by which means in a few years they become so numerous though you your self did not put one into the Breeding pond; for which cause you find your Carps

so lean, and almost hunger starved.

By the way, give me leave to infert this true story. A Gentleman not far from the City of London, had a large pond of about four Acres of ground; a Gentleman standing by at the suing thereof, and seeing not only a great quantity of Fish, but the best grown that ever he saw, he advised him to put in two or three hundred of stores of Carp, about three or four years growth, out of a pond that was overstocked, and to put Sixty of those he had taken out; which accordingly he saw done, fancying to see stately Carps at the next suing.

After the expiration of four years, this Gentleman was advised to fue his Pond, to see what Monsters four years addition to their growth would produce;

for those fixty Carps were from Eye to Fork from fifteen Inches to eighteen Inches when he put them in: now having fued his Pond, he found almost the whole number of his Carps; but they were in fuch a lean condition, that he did not know them; for they were Monsters in Nature their heads being bigger than their whole bodies, and almost as heavy; and this happened it feems by his own folly, by putting in but twenty Roaches; and when the Pond was fued, there were bushels of small Roaches, and these Roaches eat up all the sweet feed from the Carps; for Roaches are like sheep to great Cattle, which eat up and devour all the sweet feed, and what affords the greatest nutriment. This Gentleman was very much frustrated of his expectation; and the Fish-monger which came from London to buy a penny-worth as foon as he perceived the Monsters, he mounted his Horse, and rid as if the Devil drove him, not so much as bidding the Gentleman farewel. Here is to be noted, that Ponds which will not breed one Carp; Roaches in one year will multiply by thousands; therefore you must be careful every year to view your Pond, and observe if any such fry appears, lest when you come to fue your Pond, you be deceived in your expectation.

How to make Carps grow to an extraordinary bigness in a Pond.

Perceiving about the month of April that your pond begins to grow low in Water, then with an Iron-Rake, rake all the sides of your pond where the water is fallen away; then sow some Hay-seeds, and rake it well; by this means at the later end of Summer there will be a great growth of Grass; which when winter comes, and the pond being raised by Rain to the Top, will overflow all that Grass; and then the Carps having water to carry them to the feed.

feed, will fill themselves, and in a short time become as fat as Hogs that are kept up for that purpose: Do this everySummer till you sue your Pond, and you will find no River-Carp to surpass them either in fatness or sweetness.

General Observations to be understood by all such who desire to attain to the compleat and perfect Art of Angling.

By no means fish in light and dazling Apparel but let your Cloathing be of a dark dusky colour.

Wherefoever you use to Angle (for the Angler hath his peculiar haunt) cast in once in four or five days Corn boiled soft; if for Carp and Tench, oftner: also you may cast in Garbage, Livers of Beasts, Worms chopt in pieces, or Grains steeped in Blood and dried. This will attract the Fish unto the place; and to keep them together as you fish, throw in half a handful of Grains of ground Malt. This must be done in still water; but in a Stream you must cast your Grains above your Hook, and not about it; for as tney float from your Hook, so will they draw the Fish after them.

If you will bait a Stream, get some Tin-boxes made full of holes no bigger than just fit for a Worm to creep through; then fill these Boxes with them, and having fastned a Plummet to sink them, cast them into the Stream with a string fastned thereto, that you may draw them forth when you please, by the smalness of the holes aforesaid, the Worms can crawl out but very leasurely, and as they crawl the Fish will resort about them.

If you would bait for Salmon, Trout, Umber and the like, in a Stream, then take some blood, and there-

therewith incorporate fine Clay, Barley, and Malt ground, adding thereto some Water; make all in a Paste with Gum of Ivy; then form it into Cakes, and cast them into the stream. Some will knead or stick Worms therein sast by the head. If you find your bait take no effect in the attracting of the Fish, you may then conclude some Pike or Pearch lurketh thereabout to seize his Prey, for fear of which the Fish dare not venture thereabout: you must therefore remove these obstructions of your sport, by taking your Trowl; and let your Bait be either Brandlings or Lob-worms; or you may use Gentles or Minows, which they will greedily snap at.

Keep your Rod neither too dry nor too moift, left the one make it brittle, and the other rotten. If it be very foultry dry Weather, wet your Rod a little before you Angle: and having ftruck a good fift, keep your Rod bent, and that will hinder him from running to the end of the Line, by which means he will either break his hold or the Hook.

If you would know what Bait the Fish loves best at the time of your fishing, having taken one, slit his Gill, and take out his Stomach, and open it without bruising, and there you will find what he last fed on and had a fancy to; by which means you may bait your Hook accordingly.

When you fish, shelter your felf under some Bush or Tree, or stand so far from the brink of the River that you can only discern your Float: for Fish are timorous, and are affrighted at the least sight or motion. The best way of Angling with the Fly is down the River, and not up, as you will find by experience.

You never need make above half a dozen tryals in one place, either with Fly or Ground-bait, when you Angle for Trout; for by that time he will either offer to take, or refuse the Bait, and not stir at all.

IF

If you will have Fish bite eagerly and freely, and without suspition, you must present them with such Baits as naturally they are inclined to, and in such manner as they are accustomed to receive them.

If you use Pastes for Baits, you must add Flax or Wool, mix a little Butter therewith and that will preserve the Paste from washing off your Hook.

The Eyes of fuch Fishes as you kill, are most excellent Baits on the Hook for almost any fort of Fish.

Lastly, make not this or any other Recreation your daily practice, lest your immoderate Exercise therein bring a Plague upon you rather than a pleafure.

Astrological Elections for Angling in general.

If as the Wise man saith, (and I think there is none that dare question his Authority) that There is a proper time and season for every assim under the Sum, I hope it will not be offensive nor impertinent to show what time and seasons the intelligent Angler ought to make choice of, that may answer his expectation. For my own part, I have so often experimented the truth of these Rules, that by my good will I would never Angle but at an elected time: the ingenious will not despise them, and for others they were not intended: And they are these;

If you would Neptune's scaly Subjetts get,
Nights horned Queen in the Midheaven set:
Thence let her on the Paphian Goddess shine
I th' West, and greet her with a friendly Trine.
Be sure you always fortify the East,
And let the Maiden-Star possess the West:

My

However let some Aquatick Sign ascend, And let all power his happy Lord attend.
Then see the setting Constellation be
Afflicted by some hateful Enemy,
At least his Lord, the sixth with strength defend;
Let active power his Radiant Lord attend.
Then may you boldly venture to the Flood,
And take from thence what Fishes you see good.

What provision is to be made for Angling-Tools.

THE time of providing Stocks is in the Winter-Solftice, when the Trees have shed their Leaves, and the Sap is in the Roots: For after January it ascends again into the Trunk and Branches, at which time it is improper to gather Stocks or Tops.

Let your Stocks be taper-grown, and your Tops the best Rush-ground-shoots you can get, not knotty, but proportionable and slender; otherwise they will neither cast nor strike well, and by reason of their unpliableness your Line will be much endanger'd.

Having gathered your Stocks and Tops all in one feafon, and as straight as you can, bathe them, saving the Tops, over a gentle fire, and use them not till fully seasoned, till about a year and four months:

they are better if kept two years.

Now to preferve these stocks or Tops from rotting, or worm-eating, rub them over thrice a year with Sallet or Linseed-oyl; sweet Butter will serve, if never salted; and with any of these you must chase well your Rods: if bored, pour in either of the Oyls, and let them bathe therein twenty four hours, then pour it out again; and this will preserve your Tops and Stocks from injury.

How

How to joyn the Stock or Top together, or how to make all forts of Rods for Fly, Ground, or otherwife, with what lengths are best for several forts of Fifning, I need not here relate; fince without putting your felf to the trouble, you may purchase them of fuch as fell them at no dear rates.

How to make a Line after the best manner.

I ET your Hair be round, and twist it even, for that strengthens the Line; and let your Hair, as near as you can, be of an equal bigness: then lay them in Water for a quarter of an hour, by which means you will find which of the Hairs do fhrink ; than twift them over again.

Some intermingle Silk in the twifting, but I cannot approve of it; but a Line of all Silk is not amis; also a Line made of the smallest Lute-string is very good, but that it will foon rot by the Water.

The best colour for Lines is the forrel, white, and grey; the two last for clear waters, and the first for muddy Rivers: neither is the pale watry green to be contemned, which colour you may make after this manner.

Take a pint of strong Ale, half a pound of Soot. a small quantity of the juice of Walnut-leaves, with the like quantity of Alum; put these into a Pipkin, and boil them together about half an hour : Having fo done, take it off the fire, and when it is cold put

in your Hair. Or thus:

Take a Pottle of Alum-water, somewhat more than a handful of Marigold-flowers, boil them till a yellow foum arise; then take half a pound of green Copperas, with as much Verdegreece, and beat them together to a fine powder: put these with the Hair into the Alum-water, and let it lie ten hours or more; then take the Hair out, and let it dry.

In the making your Line leave a Bought at both ends, the one to put it to and take it from the Rod, the other to hang your lowest link upon to which your Hook is fastned; and so you may change your Hook as often as you please.

Of the Hook, Flote, and other things.

Your Hook ought to be long in the shank, somewhat round in its circumference, the point standing even and straight; and let the bending be in the shank.

Use strong, but small Silk, in the setting on of your Hook, laying the Hair on the inside of your Hook: for if it be on the outside, the Silk will fret

and cut it afunder.

As for the Flotes, there are divers way of making them: Some use your Muscovy-Duck-quills, which are the best for still Waters; but for strong streams take good sound Cork without slaws or holes, and bore it through with a hot Iron; then put into sta Quill of a sit proportion; then pare your Cork into a Pyramidal form of what bigness you think sit; after this grind it smooth.

To plum your Ground, you must carry with you a Musquet-bullet with a hole made through it, or any other fort of Plummet, tying this to a strong twist, hang it on your Hook, and so you will find the depth

of the Water.

And that you may not incommode your Tackle, it will be very requisite to make several partitions in pieces of Parchment fowed together, by which each Utenfil may have a place by it felf.

In any wife forget not to carry a little Whetstone with you to sharpen your Hooks if you find them

blunt and dull.

I need not advise you how to carry your BOB and PALMER, or put you in mind of having several Boxes of divers sizes for your Hooks, Corks, Silk, Thread, Lead, Flies, &c. or admonish you not to forget your Linnen and Wollen Bags for all sorts of Baits; but let me forwarn you not to have a PAUNDER that is heavy, for it can never be light enough: Those which are made of Osiers I think are the best.

Laftly, forget not to carry with you a finall Pole with a Loop at the end thereof, to which you may

fasten a small Net to land great Fish withal.

There is another way much better, and that is by the Landing-hook, which hath a Screw at the end of it to screw it into the Socket of a Pole: to which Socket may be fitted also two other Hooks, the one to pull out Wood, and the other sharp to cut away Weeds.

Of Flies Natural and Artificial, and how to use them.

Natural Flies are innumerable, there being as many kinds as there are different forts of Fruits, to avoid prolixity, I shall only name some of them, wiz. the Dun-fly, the Stone or May-fly, the Red-fly, the Moor-fly, the Tawny-fly, the Shel-fly, the Cloudy or Blackish-fly, the Flag-fly, the Vine-fly; also Caterzillers, Canker-flies, and Bear-flies, with Thousands more which frequent Meadows and Rivers, for the contemplation of all, but particularly the recreation of Anglers.

There come in sooner or later, according to the season of the year, that is, sooner, or later according to the forwardness or backwardness of the Spring; for Flies being bred of Putrefaction, commence their being according as the Heat doth surther their semi-

nal vertue unto animation.

I cannot prescribe you Rules to know when each Fly tometh in, and is most grateful to every fort of Fish; and therefore I shall leave the knowledge hereof to your own observation.

Moreover, there are feveral forts of Flies according to the feveral natures of divers Soils and Rivers, or diversity of Plants; yet some there are common

to all, altho but few.

All Flies are very good in their feafons for fuch Fish as rife at the Fly; but some more peculiarly good, as being better beloved by some fort of fish.

Fish generally rife at these Flies most eagerly when most fort of Flies resort to the Water-side, hanging in a manner in clusters on Trees and Bushes, delighting themselves to skip thence and play upon the water; and then do the fish shew their craft in

catching them.

To the intent you may the better know what kind of Fly the Fish then most covet, observe thus to do; coming in the Morning to the River-side, beat the Bushes with your Rod, and take up what variety you may of all forts of Flies, and try them all; by which means you will quickly know which are in greatest estimation among them. Not but that they will change their Fly sometimes, but then it is when they have glutted themselves therewith for sive or six days together, which is commonly upon the going out of that Fly: for Fish never covet that Fly more than when there is greatest plenty, contemning them at their first coming in.

There are two ways to fish with these natural Flies; either on the surface of the water, or a little underneath it. Now when you Angle for Chevin, Roach, or Dace with the natural Fly, move it not swiftly when you see the Fish make at it, but rather let it glide spontaneously towards it with the Stream: If it be in a still and slow water, draw the Fly

low-

15

howly sideways by him, that will make him eager in pursuit of it; whereas if you should move it swiftly, they will not follow it, being a lazy fish and slow of motion. These fish delight to shew themselves in a Sun-shiny-day almost on the very surface of the Waiter, by which means you pick and choose.

The Artificial Fly is feldom used but in blittering weather, when by the Winds the Waters are for troubled, that the Natural Fly cannot be seen, nor

rest upon them.

There are (according to the opinion of Mr. Walton, a very ingenious Man, and an excellent Angler) twelve forts of Artificial Flies to Angle with on the top of the Water, of which there are the principal.

The first is (to use his own words) the Dun-fly, in March, made of dun Wool, and the Feathers of

a Partridge's Wing ..

The second is a Dun-fly too, and made of black Wool, and the Feathers of a black Drake; the Body, and of the first, and the Wings of the latter.

The third is the Stone-fly, in April; the Body is made of black Wool made yellow under the Wings

and Tail.

The fourth is the Ruddy-fly, in the beginning of May; the Body being made of red Wool, and bound about with black Silk, with the Feathers of a red Capon, which hang daugling on his fides next his Tail.

The fifth is the Yellow or Greenish Fly, in June of the Body is made of black Wool, with a yellow Life on either side, and the Wings taken off the Wings of Buzzard, bound with black braked Hemp.

The fixth is the Moorifh-fly; the Body made of duthis Wool, and the Wings made of the blackill Mail

of the Drake,

The feveralh is the Tanny-fly, good until the mid-

Wings made contrary one against another, of the whitish Mail of the white Drake.

The eighth is the Wafe fly, in July, the Body made of black Wool lapt about with yellow Silk, the Wings made of Drake-feathers.

The ninth is the Shel-fly, good in the middle of Jub; the body made of greenish Wool lapt about with the Herle of a Peacock's Tail, and the Wings

made of Buzzards Wings.

The tenth and last is the Drake-fly, good in Augult; the Body made of black Wool lapt about with black Silk, his Wings of the Mail of the black Drake with a black head.

And then having named two more, he concludes wittily. Thus have you a Jury of Flies, likely to betray

and condemn all the Trouts in the River.

This in my opinion feems a tedious and difficult way. I should rather think it better to find the Fly proper for every feafon, and that which the Fish all that time most eagerly covet, and make one as like it as possibly you may, in colour, shape, and proportion; and for your better imitation lay the natural Fly before you.

There are several ways of making these artificial Flies, which I shall forbear here to relate, thinking it more proper to leave it to the ingenuity of every particular person, which will be very much help'd by feeing and observing the Artist's method in their

composition.

The best Observations I can collect for artificial

Fly-Fishing, are these:

First, Observe to fish in a River somewhat disturbed by Rain, or in a cloudy day, when the Waters are moved by a gentle breez : the South-wind is beft, the West indifferent, but the East is stark naught. But as to this I give not much credit; for let the Sky be cloudy, and the Season not too cold, I'le bid defiance to any Wind that blows not too hard.

it blow high, yet not so high but that you may conveniently guide your Tackle, they will rife in plain Deeps, where you shall kill the best Fish: but if the Wind be small, then is the best angling in swift Streams; and be sure to keep your Fly in continual motion.

Secondly, Keep as far from the Water-fide as you ran, whether you fish with a Fly or Worm; and fish down the Stream, having the Sun on your back, not suffering your Line to touch the Water but your Fly onely. Here note, that the light Fly makes most sport in a dark night, and the darkest or least Fly in a clear day.

Thirdly, in clear Rivers ever Angle with a small fly with slender Wings; but in such as are muddied by Rain, use a fly that is larger bodied than

ordinary.

Fourthly, When the water beginneth to clear after Rain, and becomes brownish, then use a Red or Orange Fly; if the day be clear, a light-coloured Fly, and a dark Fly for dark Waters; if the Water be of a wheyish complexion, then use a black or brown Fly. I will not say these Directions or Rules are without exceptions.

Fifthly, Let your Line for Fly-fishing be twice as long as your Rod, unless the River be cumbred with

Wood.

Sixtbly, For every fort of Fly, have several of the same differing in colour, to sute with the different

complexions of feveral waters and weathers.

Seventily, You must have a nimble eye, and an active hand to strike presently with the rising of the said, or else he will be apt to spew out the Hook, anding his mistake.

Eighthly, Let your Fly fall first into the Water; or if your Line fall first, it seares the fish, and there-

ere you want draw again and caft;

Nmtbly, When you Angle in flow Rivers or Itill places with your Artificial Fly, cast it over cross the River, and let it sink a little in the water, and draw it gently back again, so as you raise no Circles, nor break the Water; and let the Fly float gently with the Current, and hereby you will find excellent sport.

Lafty, Take notice that your Salmon-flies must be made with their Wings standing one behind the other, whether two or four. He delights in the finest gawdiest colours you can choose, in the Wings chiefly,

which must be long, and so must the Tail.

Of Ground Angling.

IF you fish under the Water for a Trout, it must be without a Float, onely with a Plumb of Lead, or a Bullet, which is better, because it will rowl on the ground. And this way of fishing is very good in cold weather, when the Fish swim very low: you must place this Bullet about nine Inches from the baited Hook; your Top must be very gentle, that the Fish may more easily run away with the Bait, and not be scared with the stifness of the Rod. You must not strike as soon as you feel the Fish bite, but slack your Line a little, that he may the better swallow the Bait and Hook. When you strike do it gently, for the least matter does it.

Let your Tackle be fine and stender, for that is better than your big and strong Lines, which serve

onely to fright the Fish.

You will find it a better way of Angling to do it without Float or Lead, onely making use of a Garden-worm, drawing it up and down the Stream; by which you will take more Trouts than any other way, especially if it be in a clear day. The Morning and Evening are the chiefest seasons for the Ground-

Line

Line for Treut: but if the day prove Cloudy, or the Water muddy, you may Angle at Ground all the day.

Of Night-Angling.

Reat Fish (especially Trouts) are like Bucks, wary and circumspect in their self-preservation, and know the seasons most fit for them to feed without danger; and that is the Night, as they suppose, thinking then they may nost securely range abroad.

In your Night-angling take two great Gardenworms of an equal length, and place them on your Hook; then cast them a good distance, and draw them to you again upon the superficies of the Water, not suffering them to sink; to which end you must not use a Plummet. You may easily hear the Fish rise, and therefore give him some time to swallow your Bait, then strike him gently. If he will not take it at the top, sink your Bait by adding some Lead, and order your self as at Day-angling on the Ground.

I have frequently experienced it, that the best Trouts bite in the Night, rising most commonly in the still Deeps, but unusually in the Streams.

Instead of these Garden-worms you may use a black Snail, or a piece of Velvet in its likeness: this is a most excellent Night-bait for a Trout, and nothing like the black Snail for a Chub in the Morning early.

You may bait your Hook with a Minnon for a Trout thus: put your Hook through the point of his lower Chap, and draw it through; then put your Hook in at his Mouth, and bring the point to his Tail; then draw your Line straight, and it will bring him into a round compass: But be sure you so order his Mouth that the Water get not in.

What times are seasonable, and what unstassonable to Angle in.

Alm and clear weather is very good to Angle in; but cool cloudy weather in Summer is best; but it must not be so boisterously windy as that you cannot guide your Tackle. The cooler the weather is in hottest Months, the better it is: and if a sudden violent shour hath disturbed and muddied the River, then is your time to Angle in the Stream at the ground with a red Worm,

Likewise a little before the Fish spawn is a very good time for Angling; for then their Bellies being full, they come into sandy Fords, and there rub their Bellies to loosen them, at which time they will bite

very freely.

If you intend to fifth for Carp and Tench, you must commence your sport early in the Morning, fishing from Sun-rising till eight of the Clock, and from four in the Afternoon till Night; and in hot Months

till it be very late.

In the heat of Summer Carps will shew themselves on the very Rim of the water; at which time, if you fish with a Lob-worm as you do with a Fly natural, you have excellent sport, especially if it be among Reeds.

In March, April, September, and all the Winter, (in which feafon Fish swim deep very near the Ground)

1 say, in those Months it is best fishing in a clear serene warm day, for then they bite fastest: But all the Summer-time Mornings, Evenings, and cool cloudy

weather are the best times for Angling.

Here note, that by experience you will find that Fish rise best at the Fly after a shour of Rain that hath onely beaten the Gnats and Flies into the River without muddying them. The proper Months and times of the day for the Fly, are March, April, May, Lines of the day for the Fly, are March, April, May, and

and the beginning of June in which Months let your times be in the Morning about nine, and between three and four in the Afternoon. A warm Evening is very seafonable, if the Gnats play much.

After a clear Moon fairly-night, if the day fucceeding prove cloudy, it is a very good time for Angling; for, having abstained from food all the night; (for they will not ftir for fear in bright mights) the next day they become hungry and eager, and the gloominels of the day makes them bite boldly.

At the opening of Sluces of Mill-dams go along with the course of the water, and you will find Trouts and other fish will then come out to feel for what

food the water brings down with it.

Having hewn you what feafons are most proper and profitable to Angle in, I will demonstrate to you fuch as are not.

And First, In the extremity of Heat, when the Earth is parched with Drought, there is little sport to be obtained especially in moddy or clear shallow Rivers.

Secondly, In the Winter or Spring-time, when there happeneth any hoary Frost, then will not the fish bite kindly all that day, unless it be in the Evening, and if that prove serene and pleasant : but it is not convenient to fish at any time when the wind bloweth fo high that you cannot manage your Tools

to advantage.

Thirdly, Sheep-shearing time is an Enemy to the Angler, for then the Fish glut themselves with what is washt off the Sheep, and will scarcely bite till that feafon be over. Likewise sharp East and North nip-Ding-winds do very much prejudice the Anglers Revereation; neither is it good to fish immediately after Spawning-time; for at that time their appetite is much abated.

It is a very strange thing to consider the natural infinct in Fish in foreknowing the approach of a howr of Rain; for I have tried, that upon the use of a Cloud that threatned a sudden showr, they would not bite; from which observation I have often

favid my felf from being wet to the Skin.

Laftly, If the preceeding night prove dark and cloudy, the inceeding day will prove ineffectual for fifting, unless for final fift; for at fach times the great ones prey abroad for the leffer, who, by inflind knowing the danger, hide themselves till the Morning; and having fasted all night become then very hungry, whilf, the great ones having gorg'd themselves it abscondedfall the day long.

The next thing we shall insist on, is the way of taking several forts of sish (as they are here alphabetically set down) with several proper Baits according

to the best of experiences.

Of the BARBEL.

THE Barbel is so called by reason of the Barb which is under his Nose or Chaps. He is a leather mouth'd-fish, that is such a one as will not break his hold when hook'd-; but will frequently break, if big, both Rod and Line.

They swim together in great Shoals, and are at worst in April, though not very good at any time.

The places where he loves most to refort, are where Weeds grow, or in a gravelly rising ground, wherein he will dig and root like a Hog with his Nose mot but that he frequents the strongest swifts of water sometimes, as deep Bridges or Wears, where he will so settle himself among the Piles and hollow places, or amongst Moss or Weeds, that let the water be never so swift, he will remain immoveable. This is his custome in the Summer-time; after which times he retires into deep waters, and there helps

the Female to dig a hole in the Sand for her to hide her Spawn from being devoured by other Fish.

This Fish is of a delicate Cast and handsome shape, with small Scales placed after a most curious manner; and as his shape is curious so is his palate, for he will not eat any thing but what is clean; and therefore if you intend to make any sport with him your Bait must be very well scowred. The best for him is a Lob-worm, at which he will bite boldly, if you bait your ground the night before with big worms cut in pieces. For him you can never bait the Ground too much, nor can you sish for him too early or too late.

Gentles also are a very good Bait for him, if green; and so is Cheese made tough by keeping it in a wet Linnen Bag a day or two: This Cheese steeped in clarified Honey, and the Ground where you intend to fish, baited therewith, will give you an opportunity to catch store enough of Barbels, if there be any thereabout. You may do well to bait your Hook with Cheese that is soft, and Sheeps tallow wrought into a Paste: but there is no bait like the well-scowred Lob-worm, or Cheese steeped in Honey an hour or two.

When you fish for this Barbel, let your Rod and Line be both long and strong; on your Line let there be a running Plummet, that is a Bullet with a hole through the middle, let a knot or little bit of Lead be placed a Foot or more above your Hook, to keep your Bullet from falling down on it: fo your Worm will lie at the bottom where they always bite, and when he takes your bait the Plummet will lie and not check the fift, and you may know by the bending of the top of your Rod when he bites, and likewise feel him with your hand make a strong fnatch, then strike and you rarely fail, if you play him well and tire him; for as he is very fubtile, fo is he extraordinary ftrong and dogged to be dealt withal, and will fo struggle, that if you manage him not dextrously, he will break your Line. His His best time of biting is about nine of the Clock, and the chiefest time of fishing for him is at the latter end of May, June, July, and the beginning of August.

Of the BREAM.

There are two forts of Breams, the one a fresh and the other a falt-water-Fish, yet neither differ

much in shape, nature, or tafte.

I shall onely speak of the fresh-water-Bream, which at full growth is a large and stately Fish, and breeds either in Ponds or Rivers; but chiefly delights in the former, which if he likes, he will not onely grow exceeding fat, but will fill the Pond with his issue, even to the starving of the other Fish.

As for his shape, it is very broad, and thick scaled very excellently, with a forked Tail; his Eyes are large, but he hath a little sucking Mouth, dispro-

portionate to his Body.

The flesh of this Fish is accounted more pleasant than wholesome by some: but as for my part, I am of the Judgment of the French, who have a great estimation for it; and if you will but taste his Belly or Head, you will say it is most excellent food.

The Bream spawneth in June, or the beginning of July, and is easily taken; for after one or two gentle turns he will fall upon his side, and so you may draw him to Land with ease. The best time of Angling for him, is from St. James-tide till Bartholomen-tide; for having had all the Summers food, they are exceeding fat.

The Bream is a great lover of red Worms, especially such as are to be found at the root of a great Dock, and lie wrapt up in a round clue; also he loves Paste, Flag-worms, Wasps, green Flies, Butter-slies,

and a Grafs-hopper with his Logs cut off.

The way of taking Breams is thus : First buitthe ground (where you know they refort) with a convenient quantity of fweet-ground Barley-malt, boyled but a little while, and strained when it is cold : go with it to the place about nine a Clock at night, then take your Malt, and fqueezing it between your Hands, throw it into the River, and it will fink: If the fream run hard, cast in your squeezed Balls a little above the place you intend to Angle in. Having thus baited your ground, in the Morning bait your Hook with the greatest red Worm you can get; you may find them in Gardens or Chalky Commons after a showr of Rain; of which you must store your self beforehand, keeping them a Month at least in dry Moss, changing the Moss every three days. Having baited your hook fo that the worm may crawl to and fro, for the better inticing of the Fish to bite without fuspition, observe where your fish play most and flay longest, which commonly is in the broadest. deepest and stillest part of the River generally in deep and full back Waters: then plumb your ground, and fish within half an Inch of it; for although you shall fee some Breams play on the top of the water, yet these are but the Sentinels for them be-

You may have three or four Rods out at a time fruck in the Bank-fide, and let them be long, the Floats Swan or Goofe-quills, which must be sunk with Lead, the tops bearing above water about half an Inch. Let your Rods be cast in one above the other about a yard and half distant, and then withdraw your self from the Bank so far that you can perceive nothing but the top of the Float; and when you perceive it sink then creep to the water-side, and give it as much Line as you can: if it be a Gap or Bream, they will run to the other side; then strike gently, and hold your Rod at a bent a little while, but do not pull, for then you spoil all; but you must first

first tire them before you can land them, being very shie. Of the two, the Carp is the worst, being more

brisk and ftrong.

Here take notice by the way, if Pike or Pearch be thereabout, it will be but a folly to think of killing Carp or Beam; and therefore you must remove those obstacles, by fishing them out at first. And to the intent you may know whether there be those Fish of Prey thereabout, take a small Bleak or Gudgeon, and bait it, setting it alive among your Rods, two foot deep from your Float, with a little red Worm at the point of your Hook: if a Pike be there, he will certainly snap at it.

Of the BLEAK.

THE Bleak is an eager fish, and is caught with all forts of Worms bred on Trees or Plants, also with Flies, Paste, Sheeps-blood, &c. You may Angle for them with half a score Hooks at once, if you can fasten them all on. Also in an Evening the

Bleak will take the natural or artificial Fly.

If it be a warm clear day, there is no Bait so good for the Bleak as a small Fly at the top of the water, which they will take at any time of the day, but especially in the evening: there is no fish that yields better sport for a young Angler than this, for they are so eager that they will leap out of the water at the Bait.

If the day be cold and cloudy, Gentles or Cadice

are best about two foot under water.

This fame Bleak by some is called a Fresh-watersprat, or River-swallow, by reason of his continual

motion.

Some would have him called Bleak from the whitish colour, and that is onely under his Beliy, for his Back is of a pleasant Sea-green.

There is another way of taking Bleaks, by whipping them in a Boat or on a Bank-fide in swift Water in a Summers evening, with a Hazel-top about five or six foot long, and a Line twice the length of the Rod; but the best way is with a Drabble, that is, tie eight or ten small Hooks along a Line two Inches above one another, the biggest Hook the lowermost, by which you may sometimes take a better Fish, and bait them with Gentles, Flies, or small red Worms, by which means you may take half a dozen or more at one time.

Of the BULL-HEAD, or MIL-LER'S-THUMB.

THE Bull-head is a Fish which hath a broad Head and wide Mouth, with two broad Fins near his Eyes, and two Fins under his Belly: instead of his Teeth his rough Lips affish him in nibbing at the bait. He hath Fins also on his Back, and one below the Vent; and his Tail is round, his body being all over covered with whitish, blackish, and brownish spots.

They begin to spawn about April, and are full of Spawn all the Summer-season. The Bull-bead's common habitation is in Holes, or among Stones in clear Water in Summer; but in the Winter he takes up his quarters with the Eel in the Mud: So doth the Loach and Minnow; or we cannot guess otherwise

where their Winter-abode should be.

He is easily taken in the Summer, for he is lazie and simple. You may see him in hot weather lie Sunning himself on a flat Stone or gravelly Ground, at which time you may put your Hook (which must be baited with a small Worm) very near the Mouth, at which he seldom resuseth to bite, so that the veriest bungling Angler may take him.

He is an excellent fish for tast, but of so ill a shape; that many women care not for dressing him, he so much resembles a Toad.

Of the CHEVIN.

THE Chevin spawneth in March, and is a very strong (yet unactive) fish, yielding in a very little time after he is struck. The larger he is, the

quieter he is taken.

As for his food, he loveth all forts of Worms and Flies, also Cheese, Grain, black Worms, slitting their Bellies that the white may appear: he loveth to have his Bait large, and variety of Baits at one Hook. He delights very much in the Pith that grows in the bone of an Ox-back, of which you must be careful in taking off the tough outward Skin, without breaking the tender inward Skin.

Barly in the Morning Angle for your Chevin with Snalls; but choose some other Bait for him in the heat of the day, for then he will not bite at them. In the Asternoon sish for him at Ground or Flie. There is no Fly he loveth better than a great Moth with a great head, whose Body is yellow, with whitish Wings, which is to be found commonly in Gardens about the Evening. He will not stick sometimes to snap a Lamprey.

Of the CHAR.

I Could never read nor hear that the Char was taken any where but in a Mere in Lancashire, called Winander-mere, the largest, according to report, that is in the Kingdom of England, being ten miles in length, and as smooth as a Bowling-green at the bottom.

This Char is spotted like a Trout, and its dimension seldome exceeds seventeen Inches or a foot and

half. This Fifth is delicate food, having fearce a Bone but what is on the Back. Now fince the place is for remote from London where these Chars are taken, I shall forbear to trouble our City-Angler with Rules and Directions how to Angle for him, and pass to such Fish as are frequently found in every River here near adjacent.

Of the CHUB.

This Fish hath several appellations; for he is called a Chub, a Chavender by the French, by some a Villian, by others a Cheven. As for my part, call him what you please, I like him not for these reasons: first, he is full of small sorked Bones dispersed every where throughout his Body; next, he eats very waterish; and lastly, this Fish is unsure, and (in my opinion) in a manner tasteless.

Of all fish he is the best to enter a young Angles, for he is very easily taken: however give me leave to prescribe you some more Rules than what I have already shown in the Angling for the Cheben, which

is the fame with the Chub or Chavender.

You must find out some hole, where you shall have twenty or more of them together in a hot day stoating almost on the very surface of the water: let your Rod be long and strong, and your Line not above a yard or two long, very strong, and an indifferent large Hook; then bait your Hook with a Grashopper, bob your Grashopper up and down one the top of the water, and if there be any Chub near he will rise; but so abscond your self that you may not be seen, for he is a very fearful fish, and therefore the least shadow will make him sink to the bottom of the water, yet he will rise again suddenly: this is called Bobing.

Having baited your Hook drop itgently some two foot before that Chub you have cledied by your eve

to be the best and fairest, and he will instantly bite greedily thereat, and be held so fast by reason of his Leather-mouth, that he can seldom break his hold: and therefore you may do well to give him play enough, and so tire him; otherwise you may endanger your Line.

If you cannot find a Grashopper, then bait your blook with any kind of Fly or Worm, as I said before, as Dors, Beetles, Bobs, God or Case-worms.

When you fish for the Chub with a Fly, Grashopper, or Beetle, it must be at the top of the water ?

if with other baits, underneath.

In March and April Angle for your Chub with Worms; in May, June, and July, with Flies, Snails, or Cherries. Where note, he will rarely refuse a Grashopper on the top of a swift Stream, nor at the bottom the young Humble-bee. In August September, &c. Make use of a Paste made of Parmisan, or Holland cheese pounded with Saffron in a Mortar, adding thereunto a little Butter. Others make a Paste of Cheese and Turpentine for the Winter-season, as which time the Chub is in his prime; for the his forked Bones are either lost, or converted into a Gristle; and he is excellent neat baked.

In not weather Angle for him in the middle of the water, or near the top thereof; but in cold weather

fish for him near the bottom.

To finish all other discourse of this Chub, Cheven; or Chavender, I shall only say that his Spawn is excellent; and if he be large, the Head, when the Throat is well washt, is the best part of the Fish.

Of the CARP.

IT is confess'd by all, that the Carp is the Queen of all Fresh-water-fish, being not only a good, but subtile fish and living longest of all fish (excepting the Eel) out of his proper Element. Those that die soonest are Herrings, for salt-water; and for

fresh-water, Trouts.

Carps are observed to breed several months in one year; and for this reason you shall hardly ever take either Male or Female without Melt or Spawn. They breed e er more naturally in Ponds than in running waters in the latter very seldom or never; and where they breed, they breed innumerably.

He that intends to Angle for a Carp, must arm himself with a world of patience, by reason of the extraordinary subtilty and policy of that Fish: They always choose to lie in the deepest places either of Ponds or Rivers where is but a small running Stream. Next, you are to observe that the Carp will seldom bite in cold weather; and in hot weather you cannot be too early or too late at your sport; and if he bite, you need not fear his hold, for he is one of those leather-mouth'd Fish, who have their Teeth in their Throat.

When you angle for the Carp your Rod and Line must be strong; and because he is sovery wary, it is good to intice him by baiting the ground with course Paste: In March he seldom refuseth the red Worm, the Cadice in June, nor the Grashopper

in July, August, and September.

The Corp takes delight in Worms or sweet Pastes, of which there are great variety; the best are made up of Honey and Sugar, and ought to be thrown into your Water some hours before you intend to angle; or if you throw in your Paste made into small Pellets two or three days before, it will not be the worse, especially if you throw in also Chickens-guts, Garbage, or Blood incorporated with Bran or Cow-dung.

You may make your Patte in this manner: Take a convenient quantity of Bean-flour, or any other Flour, and mingie it with the flesh of a Cat cut finall.

lay

the

WC

Ru

an

the

cle

are

ha

w

lat

W

an

yo of

ha

al

y

as

th

ìn

th

finall; make up this Composition with Honey, and then beat them all together in a Mortar so long, till they are so tough as to hang upon a Hook without washing off. For the better effecting thereof, mingle therewith some whitish Wool; and if you would keep it all the year, add thereunto some Virgins-wax and clarified Honey.

If you fish with Gentles, anoint them with Honey, and put them on your hook with a piece of Scarlet dipt in the like. This is the most approved way to deceive and captivate the subtile Carp. Honey, and crumbs of White-bread mixt together is

very good Paste for a Carp.

An approved way low to take Carp in a muddy Pond.

Vide Chap. Of the Tench.

Of the DACE and DARE.

THE Dace, Dare and Roach, are much of a kind, both in manner of feeding, cunning,

goodness and commonly in fize.

The Dace or Dare will bite at any Fly, but especially at the Stone-cadice-fly or May-fly, the latter end of April, and the beginning, or most part of May is a most excellent kait, floating on the top of the water; which you may gather great quantities of from the Reeds and Sedge by the water fide, or from Hawthorn bushes which grow near the bank of a shallow Gravel-stream, on which they very much delight to hang: also at Ant-flies, of which the blackith is the best, which are found in Mole hills about the Months of June, July, August and September. The way of preferving them for your the ist to put them alive into a Glass-bottle, having first laid therein some of the moist Earth from whence you gather'd them, with some of the Roots of the Grafs of the faid Hillock : having laid your Ant-flies in gently without prejudicing their Wings, lay

lay a clod of Earth over it: thus you may keep them a Month, if you bruile them not. If you would keep them longer, put them into a large Rundler, having first wash d the inside with Water and Honey: having thus kept them three Months, they are an incomparable Bait in any Stream and clear Water, either for Dace, Dare, or Roach, and are good also for a Chavender, fishing within a handful from the bottom.

ok

ng d;

e.

0=

of

ed

0-

f

ŝ

ľ

The best time for making use of the Ant-slie, is when they swarm, and that is generally about the latter end of fuly, and beginning of August: they will cover a Tree or Bush with their multitude, and then if you make use of them, you may load your self with Roach or Dace in a small time.

In a warm day he rarely refuseth a fly at the top of the water: but remember that when you fin under water for him, it is best to be within an handful or something more of the ground.

If you would fish for Dace or Dare in winter, then about Alballontide, where ever you see Heath or sandy grounds ploughing up, follow the Plough, and you will find a white worm with a red head, as big as the top of a mans little finger. You may know where most of them are, by the number of Crows and Rooks which sit on the ploughed land. The worm is very soft, and is by some termed a Grub, which is nothing but the Spawn of a Beetle. Gather what quantity you think sit, and put them into a Vessel with some of the Earth from whence they were taken, and you may keep them all the Winter.

Lastly, the young brood of Wasps and Bees having their heads dipt in Blood, are an excellent bait for Dace or Dare.

Of the EEL.

I Shall not trouble you with variety of discourse concerning the being of an Eel, whether they breed by some Generation, or Corruption as Worms or by certain glutinous dew drops, which falling in May and June on the Banks of some Ponds or River, are by the hear of the Sun turned into Eels: and these are by some called Yelvers, of which I have seen Cakes made, and have eaten thereof when fried, with much satisfaction. I say, waving away all Discourses of this nature, I shall only tell you that some have differenced Eels into sour sort chiefly: namely, the Silver-Eel, a Greenish Eel (which is called a Creg) a blackish Eel, with a broad stat head; and lastly an Eel with reddish Fins.

I shall only speak of the first, which is the Silve Eel. This Eel is generally believed to have its being from Generation, but not by spawning, but the young coming from the Female alive, and no big

ger than a small Needle.

This *Eel* may be caught with feveral force Baits, but principally with powder'd Beef. A Gaden-worm or Lob, or a *Minnew*, or Hen's-gut, a Garbage of Fish, is a very good bait: but some prefer a *Pride*, which others call a *Lamprey*, beyond

any yet named.

As Eels abfoond themselves in Winter, taking we their constant residence in the Mud, without stirring out for six Months; so in the Summer they take no delight to be abroad in the day, and therefore the most proper time to take them is in the night, with any of those Baits aforesaid, fastning your Line to the Bank-side with your Laying-hook in the water. Or you may throw in a Line with good store of Hooks baited, and plumb'd with a Float to discover where the Line lieth, that in the morning

rfe

hey

ms, gin

ers,

and

hen

Way

you orts

Ed.

oad

lver

ing

the

big-

sof

Gar.

t, or

pre-

ond

they

ere-

the

ning

ooks

with

th a

1 the

ning

morning you may take it up with your Drag hook. There is another way of taking Eels, and that is by Sniggling. This Sniggling is nothing elfe but taking in the day-time a strong Line and Hook baited with a Lob or Garden-worm, and making tuch holes and places where the Eels use to abscond themselves in the day-time near Wears, Mills, or Flood-gates, and gently by the help of a flick putting your bait into fuch holes where you imagin Eels are: and if there be any, you shall be sure to have a bite; but then have a care you pull not too hard, left you spoil all. Here note, that the top of your stick must be cleft, wherein you must put a firong Hook, but of a narrow compass; which stick must guide the Bait into the hole where the Eel is, by which means, if your Tackling hold, you may get as large Eels as any are in the River, Mill-pond, or Flood-gate, &c. And as this way of fifthing is called Sniggling, foit is called Broggling for Eels

Bobbing for Eels is done after another manner : that is, Take very large Lobs, scowr them well, and with a Needle run some strong-twisted Silk thro them from end to end; take io many as that you may wrap them about a board a dozen times at least, then tie them fast with the two ends of the Silk, that they may hang in fo many Hanks; then fasten all to a strong Cord, and about a handful and a half above the Worms fasten a Plumb of three quarters of a pound in weight, and fasten your Cord to a strong Pole: having so done, fish in muddy water, and you will feel the Eels tug lustily at them. When you think they have swallowed them as far asthey can, gently draw up your Line, till you have brought your Eels to the top of the water, and then bring them ashore as fast as you can. The Gentleman (and an experienced Angler) from whom I received this inftruction, told me, he hath taken fix or feven large Eels at a time this very way.

Z 3

Ther

There is another way also for taking of Eck, (though it be somewhat laborious, and for that reason is best to be made use of in cold weather) and that is by an Instrument called an Ecl-spear: it is made for the most part with three Forks or Teeth, jagged on the sides; but those are better that have four. This you are to strike into the Mud at the bottom of the River; and if you chance to light where they lie, you need not fear taking them if your Instrument be good.

If you would take very large Eels indeed, bait your Night-hooks with fmall Roaches, and let the

Hooks lie in the Mouth of the Fish.

Of the FLOUNDER.

I Shall not go about to tell you the nature of a Flounder, or give you his description, fince he is a

Fish fo well known to every one.

In April, May, June, and July, you may fish for the Flounder all day long, either in a swift Stream or in the still Deep, but best in the Stream. Your most proper Baits are all forts of red Worms, Wasps, and Gentles.

Of the GRAILING.

Hen you angle for the Grailing, you must head your Hook upon the Shank with a very slender narrow plate of lead, and let it be slenderest at the bent of the Hook, that the Bait, which must be a large Grashopper, may with more facility come over it: At the point let there be a Cad Bait, and keep the Bait in continual Motion; and forget not to pull off the Grashopper's Wings which are uppermost.

In the Months of March and April there is an excellent Bait for the Grailing, which is called a Tag-

tail: This worm is of a pale F'esh-colour, with a yellow Tag on his Tail, somewhat less than half an inch long; which is to be found in Marled Grounds and Meadows in fair weather, but not to be seen in cold weather, or after a showre of Rain.

Sels.

rea-

and

it is

eth,

the ght

a if

pait

the

fa

5 2

for

am

ps,

uff

be it,

th

al

p-

X-

Of the GUDGEON.

The Gudgeon, though small, is a fish of so pleasant at a steel, that in my opinion it is very little inferiour to the Smelt. I need not describe him, he is so well known.

He spawns three or sour times in the Summer season. His feeding is much like the Barbel's, in sharp Streams and on Gravel, slighting all manner of Flies. He is easily taken with a small red Worm, sishing near the ground.

This Fish is Leather-mouthed, and will not easily be lost off the Hook when struck. You may sish for him with Float, your Hook being on the ground; or by hand with a running line on the ground, without Cork or Float.

Wasps, Gentles and Cad-bits are good baits for the Gudgeon, but the small Red worm the best; you may fish for them with two or three hooks at once, and find very pleasant sport where they rise any thing large. When you Angle for them, stir up the Sand or Gravel with a long Pole, which will make them gather to that place, and bite safter and with more eagerness.

Of the GUINIAD.

I Cannot say much of this sish, only that it is excellent food; and therefore I shall conclude my discourse of the Guiniad with a very strange observation; and that is, This Fish is not found any where but in a large Water called Pemble-Mere: but that Z 4 which

which is most remarkable is this, That the River which runs by Chester hath its Head or Fountain in Merionith-shire, and in its courseruns through this Pemble-Mere, which abounds as much with Guiniad, as the River Dee doth with Salmon, of each both atfording great plenty; and yet it was never known that any Salmon was ever caught in the Mere, nor ever any Guiniads taken in the River.

When Dee that in his course fain in her lap would lu, Commixion with her store, his stream she doth deny, By his complexion prov d, as he through her doth gidd, Her Wealth again from his she likewise doth divide: Toose white fish that in her do wondrously abound, Are never seen in him; nor are his Salmons found At any time in her; but as she him distains, So he again from her as wilfully abstains.

Draytons Polyolb. Song 9.

Of the LOACH.

The Loach, though a small yet a dainty sish: his breding and feeding is in little and clear swiftBrooks or Rivulets; here and in sharp Streams Gravel is his usual food. He is small and slender, feldom exceeding three Inches in length: he is bearded like a Barbel, having two Fins at his sides, four at his Belly, and only one at his Tail, and is freckled with many black or brown spots.

This Loach is commonly full of Spawn, which is, with the flesh, a very grateful food to weak Stomachs, affording great Nourishment. He is to be taken with a very small Worm near the ground, for he delights to be near the Gravel, and therefore is seldom seen on the top of the water.

Of the MINNOW.

liver

this

iads.

af-

nwo

nor

ide,

The Mimow is a fish without Scales, and one of the least of the watry Inhabitants; but for excellency of meat he may (in my opinion) be compared to any fish of greatest value and largest fize; and little things should not be dispised. The Spawners are usually full of Spawn all the Summer long, for they breed often, as it is but necessary, being both Prey and Baits to other fish. They come into the Rivers generally about March and April, and there continue till the cold weather drive them into their winter quarters again.

Of colour this fish is greenish, or wavy sky-coloured; his Belly is very white, but his Back is blackish. This Fish will bite sharply at a small Worm; and if you will trouble your self to catch enough of them you may make an excellent Tansie of them, cutting off their Heads and Tails, and frying them in Eggs, saucing them with Butter, Sugar and Verjuice.

Anglers use to find him oftner than they would: deep places he seldom frequents. It is a fish no way curious of his feeding, for any Bait pleaseth him if he can but swallow it, he will strain hard for what he cannot gorge. The chiefest food he loveth is a small red Worm, Wasps, or Cad baits.

Of the POPE, or RUFF.

This Fish with a double name is small, and seldom grows bigger than Gudgeon; in shape he is not unlike a Peach, but esteemed better food, being of taste as pleasant and delightful as any sish whatever.

The Ruff frequents the deepest running places in a Gravel River, the exact Lottom of which being ing found by plumbing, and your Hooks being baited with small red or brandling Worms, (for I would have you fish with two or three) you will have incomparable sport as long as you desire.

The Ruff makes excellent sport with an unexperienced Angler, for he is a greedy biter; and they are in great Shoals together where the Water is deep, smooth, and calm. If you would catch a good round quantity, bait your ground with Earth, and angle for them with a small red Worm.

Of the PIKE.

The Pike is a very long-liv'd creature, and if we may credit Sir Francis Bacon, or Gefner that famous Brutologist, he out lives all other fish, which is pity, he being as absolute a Tyrant of the Freshwaters, as the Salmon is, the King thereof.

The larger the Pike, the courfer the food, the smaller being ever best; contrary to the nature of Eels, which improve their goodness by their bulk and age.

He is a melancholick Fish, because he never swims in Shoals, but rests himself alone; and he is as bold as any sish whatever, if we may believe report, which informs us a Pike hath been known to sight with an Otter for a Carp he had taken, and was carrying out of the water. Another bit a Mule by the Lip as he was drinking, and stuck thereunto so sast, that by that means the owner of the Mule took him. Another bit a Maid by the foot as she was washing. He will frequently devour his own kind unnaturally; from whence I suppose he may obtain the name of a Fresh-water-Wolf.

As the Pike is in nature like the Hawk, a Bird of Prey, so he is like her in generation, neither of them breeding but once a year: and when the Pike spawns it is between February and March. The best Pikes are found in Rivers, the worst in Meres or Ponds.

His common food is either Pickerel-weed, Frogs, or what Fish he can procure. This Pickerel-weed some say both feeds and breeds them.

There are two ways of fishing for the Pike; first by the Ledger, secondly by the Walking-bait.

The Ledger-bait is fix'd in one certain place, whilst the Angler may be absent; and this must be a living Bait, either Fish or Frog. Of Fish the best are a Dace, Roach, or Pearch: for Frogs, the yellowest are the best. How to keep them alive on your

Hook, your own ingenuity will inform you.

When you intend to use the Ledger-bair, if it be a Fish, stick your Hook through his upper Lip, and then fastning it to a strong Line at least twelve or fourteen yards in length, tie the other end of the Line either to some Stake in the ground, orto some bough of a Tree near the Pike's usual haunt, or where you think 'tis like he may come. Then wind your Line on a forked stick, (big enough to keep the bait from drawing it under water) all except about half a yard, or somewhat more; and your stick having a small cleft at the end, sasten your Line therein; but so, that when the Pike comes, he may easily draw it forth, and have Line enough to go to his hold and pouch.

If your Bait be a Frog, put the Arming-wire in at his Mouth, and out at his Gills; and then with a fine Needle and Silk fow the upper part of his Leg with one stitch only to your Arming-wire, or tie his Leg above the upper joint to the Wire; but as

gently as you can, left you hurt him.

I have feen excellent sport with living baits tied about the bodies of two or threee couple of Ducks, driven over a place where store of Pikes have frequented. I have observed the Pike to strike so violently at the living bait, that being hung he hath drawn the Duck clear under water. The like may be done with such baits tied to bladders, suffering them

them to float down the River, whilst you mind

your fport walking on its bank.

The next way of angling for a Pike is with a Trowl with a Winch to wind it up withal. As this Fish is very strong, so must your Tackle; and your Rod must not be very slender at top, where must be placed a Ring for your Line to run through. Your Line must be Silk two yards and a quarter next the Hook, which must be double, and strongly armed with a Wire about feven inches: the rest of your Line may be ftrong Shoemakers-thread. Upon the shank of the Hook fasten some smooth Lead; and having placed your Hook in the Mouth of a Minnow, Dace, or Roach, with your Lead fink your bait with his head downward. Having fo done, cast your bait up and down: if you feel him at the Hook, give him length enough to run away with the bait and pouch it; which when you think he hath done, strike him with a smart jerk, and so continue your sport with him as long as you shall think fit. Take likewise this next direction from a friend that speaks not much different.

When you intend to Trowl, you may make choice either of Roach, Dace, Bleak, or Gudgeon to bait withal, (but for my own part I always prefer the Gudgeon) which you must do thus: put your Arming-wire in at the Mouth, and thrusting it along by the Back bring it out again at the Tail, and there fasten it with a Thread, having your Reel in your hand, and your Line fastned to your Hook through a Ring at the top of your Rod, cast your bait into some likely place, and move it up and down in the water as you walk gently by the River-fide: when you have a bite (which you may easily feel, for he will give a good tug) be sure to give him Line enough. You may let him lie almost a quarter of an hour before you strike; and then have a care you do it not too fiercely, left you you endanger your Tackle and lose the Fish to boot.

If you fish at Snap, you must give him leave to run a little, then strike, striking the contrary way to which he runneth. For this way of angling, a Spring Hook is best; and your Tackle must be much stronger than that for the Trowl, because

you must strike with greater force.

Here note, that a large Bait more invites the Pike to bite, but the lesser takes him more infallibly.

either at Snap or Trowl.

If you fish with a dead bait for a Pike, this is a most excellent bait: Take a Mimow, Frog that is yellow, Dace, or Roach, and having dissolved Gum of Ivy in Oil of Spike, anoint your bait therewith, and cast it where Pikes frequent. Having lain a little while at bottom, draw it to the top, and so up the Stream, and you will quickly perceive a Pike follow it with much eagerness.

A Pike will bite all baits, excepting the Fly, and bites best about three in the afternoon in clear water with a gentle gale, from the middle of Summer to the latter end of Autumn; he then bites best in still places or a gentle Stream: but in Winter he bites all the day long. In the latter end, and beginning of the Spring, he bites most eagerly early

in the morning, and late in the evening.

Of the PEARCH.

THE Pearch is a Fish that is hook-backt, somewhat like a Hog, and armed with stiff Gristles, and his sides with dry thick Scales. He is a bold biter, which appears by his daring to adventure on one of his own kind with more courage than the Pike by much.

Some fay there are two forts of *Pearches*, the one falt-water, and the other fresh: the first hath but one Fin on his Back, the latter two, which is more than most Fishes have.

He spawns but once a year, and that is in Februar's or March, and seldom grows longer than two foor. His best time of biting is when the Spring is far spent, at which time you may take at one standing all that are in one hole, be they never so many.

His Baits are a Minnow, or little Frog; but a Worm called a Brandling is best, if well scoured. When he bites give him time enough, and that can

hardly be too much.

The Pearch biteth well all the day long in cool cloudy weather; but chiefly from eight in the Morning till ten, and from three till almost fix.

You may angle for him with Lob-worms, well fcoured, Bobs, Oak-worms, Gentles, Colewort-

worms, Minnows, Dors, Wasps, and Cad-baits. He will not bite at all the seasons of the year, especially in Winter, for then he is very abstemious; yet if it be warm he will bite then in the midst of the day; for in Winter all Fish bite best about the

heat of the day.

If you rove for a *Pearch* with a *Mimew*, (which of all baits yields the most delightful recreation to the Angler) it must be alive, sticking your Hook through his upper Lip or back Fin, and letting him swim about mid-water, or somewhat lower; for which purpose you must have an indifferent large.

Cork with a Quill on your Line.

I always make use of a good strong Silk Line, and a good Hook arm'd with Wire, so that if a Pike do come I may be provided for him, and have by this means taken several. I use also to carry a Tin-pot of about two quarts or three pints, in which to keep my Minnows or Gudgeons alive: the Lid of the Pot is full of little holes, so that I can give them fresh water without opening it; which ought to be about every quarter of an hour, less they die.

If you take a small Casting-net with you, you may at a cast or two takebaits enough to serve you all day without farther trouble.

When

When you fish with a Frog you must fasten the Hook through the skin of his Leg towards the up-

per part thereof.

The Pearch is none of the Leather-mouth'd fort of Fishes; and therefore when he bites give him time enough to pouch his bait, lest when you think all fure, his hold break out, and you lose your Fish and your patience too.

The best place to fish for Pearches is in the turning of the water, or Edwing in a good Gravel Scoure, where you will not fail of them, and Ruffs before

fpoke of.

He that will take a Pearch must first take notice that this Fish feeds well, and bites freely. Let the Angler over-night bait his ground with Lob-worms chopt in pieces; and in the morning let him come to the place, where he must first plumb his ground, then gage his Line, and bait his Hook with a red knotted worm, or a Minnow, which is better in my opinion: the Hook must be put in at the back of the Minnow betwixt the fish and the skin, that the Minnow may swim up and down alive, being buoyed up with a Cork or Quill, that the Minnow may have liberty to swim a foot off the ground. Let these directions be carefully observed and followed, and the Angler need not fear the frustration of his expectations.

Of the R U D.

THE Rud hath a forked Tail, and is small of fize: some say he is bred of the Roach and Bream, and is found in Ponds; in somethey are in

a manner innumerable.

There is little less difference between the Rud and Roach, than there is between the Herring and Pilebard, their shape being much alike, only differing in bulk or bigness. Since the Rud is but a Battard-

stard Roach, I shall speak no more of him, but difcourse of the genuine Roach only.

Of the ROACH.

THE Reach is not looked on as any delicate Fifth at all; if there be any thing prizeable, it is

his Spawn.

The Roach is a very filly fish, being every whit as simple as the Carp is crafty. They are more to be esteemed which are found in Rivers than in Ponds, altho those that breed in the latter are of a much larger size; yet the Thames below Bridge abounds with very large sat Roach, such as I may considertly affirm exceed in magnitude all other either in Ponds or Rivers.

The Roach is a Leather-mouth'd fish, having his Teeth (as I faid before) in his Throat, as all Lea-

ther-mouth d fish have.

In April the Cads or Worms are proper Baits to angle for Roaches; in Summer fish for them with small white Snails or Flies: but note, they must be under water, for he will not bite at the top. Or, take a May-fly, and with a Plumb sink it where you imagine Roaches lie, whether in deep water, or near the Posts and Piles either of Bridge or Wear: having so done, do not hastily, but gently pull your Fly up, and you will see the Roach (if any there) pursue and take it near the rim of the water, lest by slight it should escape.

In Autumn you may fish for them with Pafte only made of the crums of fine white bread, moulded with a little water and the labour of your hands into a tough Pafte, colour d not very deep with Red lead, with which you may mix a little fine Cotton or Lint, and a little Butter; these last will make it hold on, and not wash off your Hook. With which you must fish with much circumspection, or you lose your bait.

fh

is

s, h

ŀ

2 - 0

y

In like manner in Winter you may angle for Roach with Paste; but Gentles are then the better bait

Take these next observations experimentally tried by some of us, viz. There is another excellent bait, either for Winter or Summer, and that is this: Take an handful of well dried Malt, and put it into a Dish of Water, and then having grubbed and washed it betwixt your hands till it be clean and free from Husks, put that water from it, and having put it into a little fresh water, set it over a gentle fire, and let it boil till it be pretty foft; then pour the water from it, and with a sharp Knife, turning the sprout-end of the Corn upward, take off the back-part of the Husk with the point of your Knife, leaving a kind of inward Husk on the Corn, or elfe you spoil all: then cut off a little of the sprout-end, that the white may appear, and also a very little of the other end for the Hook to enter. When you make use of this bait, cast now and then a little of it into the water; and then, if your Hook be small and good, you will find it an excellent bait either for Roach or Dace.

Another good bait is the young brood of Wasps or Bees, if you dip their Heads in Blood. So is the thick blood of a Sheep being half dried on a Trencher, and then cut into such small pieces as will best fit your Hook: a little Salt will keep it from turning black, and make it the better.

Or you may take a handful or two of the largest and best Wheat you can get, boil it in a little Milk till it be soft, then fry it gently with Honey and a little beaten Saffron dissolved in Milk.

The Roach spawns about the middle of May; and the general baits by which he is caught are these: small white Snails, Bobs, Cad-baits, Sheeps blood, all forts of Worms, Gnats, Wasps, Paste, and Cherries.

Aa

The way of fishing for Roach at London-bridge is after this manner: In the Months of June, and Fuly, there is great refort of those Fish to that place, where those that make a trade of it take ftrong Cord, at the end whereof is fastened a three-pound weight; a foot above the Lead they fasten a Pack-thread of twelve foot long to the Cord, and unto the Packthread at convenient distances they add a dozen strong Links of Hair with Roach-hooks at them, baited with a white Snail or Perriwinkle; then holding the Cord in their Hands, the biting of the Fish draweth the Packthread, and the Packthread the Cord, which admonisheth them what to do: whereby some times they draw up half a dozen, fometimes less but commonly two or three at one draught.

Of the STICKLEBAG

His Fish is small, prickly, and without Scales and not worth the confideration, but that he is an excellent bait for Trouts, especially if his Tail on the Hook be turned round, at which a Treut will bite more eagerly than at Pink, Roach or Minnow. The Loach is every whit as good a bait as the Sticklebag, provided you place either aright on the To the intent you may do it, take this observation: the nimble turning of the Penk, Minnow, Loach, or Sticklebag, is the perfection of that fort of fishing. That you may attain thereunto note, that you must put your Hook into the mouth of any the aforefaid baits, and out at his Tail, tying him fast with white thread a little above it, in fuch manner that he may turn: after this fow up his Mouth, and your defign is accomplished. This way of baiting is very tempting for large Trouts, and feldom fails the Angler's expectation. fish in some places is called a Banstickle.

Of the SALMON.

at a

1

ir

n

e

h

il

1

5

ĺ

0

h

n

P

,

THE Salmon evermore breed in Rivers that are I not brackish, yet discharge themselves into the Sea, and spawn commonly in August, which become Samlets in the Spring following. The Melter and Spawner having both performed their natural duty, they then betake themselves to the Sea. I have known that when they have been obstruded in their pallage, they have grown to impatient, that, capping their Tails to their Mouths, with a fudden ipring they have leapt clear over Wear, or any other obstacle which stood in their way: Some having leapt thort, have been taken by that means. It they are fo obstructed that they cannot find their way to the Sea, they become fick, lean, and pine away, and die in two years. If they spawn in the mean time, from thence proceeds a small Salmon called a Skegger, which will never grow great. It is the Sea that makes them grow big; but it is the fielh Rivers that makes them grow fat; and so much the farther they are from the Sea up in the River, the fatter they grow, and the better their food.

From a Samlet (which is but little bigger than a Minnow) he grows to be a Salmon, in as short

time as a Goslin will grow to be a Goose.

A Salmon biteth beit at three of the clock in the Afternoon, in the Months of May, June, July, and August, if the water be clear, and some little breeze of Wind stirring, especially if the Wind bloweth against the Stream, and near the Sea.

Where note, that he hath not his conftant refidence, like a Trout, but removes often, coveting to be as near the Spring-head as he may, fwimming generally in the deepest and broadest parts of the River near the ground; and he is caught like a A a 2

Trout, with Worm, Fly, or Minnow. The Garden-worm is an excellent bait for the Salmon, if it be well focured, and kept in Moss about twenty days, after which time those Worms will be very clear, rough and lively.

There is a way of fishing for Salmon with a Ring of Wyre on the top of the Rod, through which the Line may ran to what length is thought convenient, having a Wheel also near the hand.

I have been told that there is no bait more attractive of and eagerly pursued by the Salmon and most other Fish, than Lob-worms scented with the Oil of Ivy-berries, or the Oil of Polypodie of the Oak mixt with Turpentine; nay, Assa Fatida they say is incomparably good.

The Artificial Fly is a good bait for a Salmon; but you must then use a Trowl as for the Pike, he being a strong Fish. As the Salmon is a large Fish, so must your Flies be larger than for any other,

with Wings and Tails very long.

You shall observe, when you strike him, thathe will plunge and bounce, but doth not usually endeavour to run to the length of the Line, as the Trout will do; and therefore there is less danger of breaking your Line.

If you will angle for Salmon at ground, then take three or four Garden-worms well scoured, and put them on your Hook at once, and fish with them in the same manner as you do for Trouts.

Be fure to give the Salmon (as well as all other fish) time to go gorge the Bait, and be not over-hafty, unless your bait be fo tender it will not endure nibbling at. Much more may be said of Salmon-fishing, which I shall pass by, leaving the rest to your own practice and observation.

Of the TENCH:

I Shall now discover an approved way how to take Tench and Carp in a muddy Pond: but know, I do not make publick this follwing fecret, to teach Knaves how to rob Gentlemens Ponds but that the proper Owners may be able upon cases of necessity to supply themselves with Fish, without being put to so much trouble and charge as to sue their Ponds. But to the purpose. In the first place you must provide your self with a very good large Casting-net, well leaded; let not the Meshes from the Crown to a full yard and a half be too small; for then if the Pond be any thing of a depth, the sish will strike away before the Net comes to the ground: the whole Net ought to have a large Mesh, well

leaded, and deep Tucked.

ng

n-

atnd

he

he

ley

#;

ilh,

er,

he

en-

of

nen

ith

ish)

fty,

ure

to

The fecond thing to be done is to make the place clean from Stakes and Bushes, and try with the Net before you intend for the sport: if your Net happen tohang, than all your pains will prove ineffectual; therefore you must be sure before you cast in your Net that you clear and cleanfe the place very well twice or thrice with a Rake. Then take a quarter of a peck of Wheat, baking it well in an Oven, putting in near 3 quarts of Water; when it is well baked, take 5 pints of Blood, and incorporate the Wheat and Blood together, adding thereto as much Bran as is fulficient to make a Paste thereof: and that it may the better hold together, put fome Clay to it; after this, knead it well together with a quart of Lobworms chopt in pieces, and worked into Pastéas aforesaid: then roll it into balls as big as a Gooseegg, and throw it into a Pond within the circumference of your Casting-net; and between whiles throw in some Grains; and when you think the fish have found out the Baiting-place, then come in A a 3

the close of the evening (having baited very early in the morning) and cast your Net over the baited place; then take a long pole with a large Fork made for the purpose, and stir all about the Net; for the Carps and Tench are struck up beyond their Eyes in mud, and stand exactly upon their Heads: let the Net lie near half an hour, still stirring with your pole, if the place be not too deep: when you have covered the Fish, you may go into the Pond, and take them out with your hands; but if the water be deep, when you find the Carps begin to stir, (for they cannot stand long on their heads in the Mud) then lift up the Crown of your Net bolt upright with a long staff, that so the sish may play into the tuck of the Net.

Here note, that should you draw up your Net fuddenly after you have cast it in, it is an hundred pound to a penny whether you should take one Carp or Tench; but letting the Net lie, the Mud will choak them if they remove not out of it.

Now here I cannot omit a very pleasant storying my opinion: A Gentleman having special Carps in his Pond, but not knowing how to take one of them, unless it were by chance with Hook and Line: I defired him that we might tafte of his Carps, and modefly told him, a brace of them would ferve our turus: He answered. I might freely have them, if I knew how to catch them. Hereupon I prepared some ingredients, and having baited a convenient place very early in the Morning; at the dusk of the Evening we came with a Casting-net, and at the first throw covered a great quantity of fish, as hereafter will appear; but not one feem d to stira jot under the Net, being all struck into the Mud. Hereupon the Gentleman fell a laughing heartily, faying, Sir, if I had no other provision to trust to bu: what fish you shall catch this night, I believe I shall go supperless to Bed. Hearing him fay fo, I defired that he would have have a little patience, for the fish were asleep, and I was as yet loath to disturb them; but half an hour hence, if he would stay so long, I should make bold to awake them with a witness: So the Gentleman having smoaked a Pipe of Tobacco a Carp began to play in the Net; and after this in a very little time a great many more began to dance and skip; whereupon I listed up the Crown, that they might play in the Tuck; and when I thought they were all got out of the Mud I began to draw, and at one draught drew up in the Net Seventy odd Carps, great and small, to the admiration and great satisfaction of the Owner and the rest of the company, having in all their life-time not seen the like before.

The Tench hath but fmall Scales, (and they smooth) yet very large Fins, with a red Circle about his Eyes, and a little Barb hanging at each

corner of his Mouth.

The Slime of a Tench is very medicinal to wounded Fishes; and therefore he is commonly called the

Fishes Physician.

arly

ited

ork

let;

heir

ads: vith

you

ind.

watir,

the

uplay

Vet

red

one ud

in

of

nd

nis

ld

ve

ıI

nsk

at as

2

d.

at

d

e

The Pike is so sensible of his vertue, that he will not injure the Tench, though he will seize on any other fish of his size that comes in his way: And when the Pike is sick or hurt, he applies himself to the Tench, and finds cure by rubbing himself against him.

The Tench hath a greater love for Ponds than clear Rivers, and delights himself amongst Weeds, and loves to feed in very foul Water; and yet his

food is nourifhing and pleafant.

The time of Angling for him is early and late, both morning and evening, in the months of fune, fully and August, or all night in the still parts of the River.

He is a great lover of large red Worms, and will bite most eager'y at them, if you first dip them in Tar. The Tench loves also all forts of Paste made up with strong-sented Oils, or with Tar, or a Paste A a 4

made of brown Bread and Honey. He will bite also at a Cad-worm, a Lob-worm, a Flag-worm, green Gentle, Cad-bait, Marsh-worm, or soft boiled Bread-grain.

Of the TORCOTH.

THE Torcoth is a fish having a red Belly, but of what estimation I know not; for that, let the Welshmen speak, who best know him: for as I have heard he is only to be found in the Pool Linpers in Carnarvanshire. I only name him that you may know there is such a fish.

Of the TROUT.

IT is observed that the Trout comes in and goes out of season with the Stag and Buck, and spawns about October and November: which is the more to be wondred at, because most other sish spawn in warm weather, when the Sun by his heat hath adapted the Earth and Water, making them

fit for generation.

All the Winter the Trout is fick, lean and unwholfome, and you shall frequently then find him These Trout-lice are a small Worm with a big Head flicking close to his fides, and fucking moilture from him that gave them being; and he is not freed from them till the Spring or the beginning of Summer, at which time his strength increaseth; and then he deserteth the still deep waters, and betakes himfelf to gravelly ground, against which he never leaves rubbing till he hath cleanfed himself of his Louzines; and then he delights to be in the sharp Streams, and fuch as are fwift, where he will lie in wait for Minnows and May-flies; at the latter end of which month he is in his prime, being better and fatter in that month, especially at the latter end thereof, than in any other throughout the whole year. There

bite

rm,

foft

of

let

as I

in-

Ou

ifh

m

g

e-

There are feveral forts of Trouts highly prizable; as the Fordidge-Trout, the Amerly-Trout, the Bull-Trout in Northumberland, with many more which I shall forbear to mention, but only tell you what is generally observed; and that is, that the red and yellow Trouts are the best, and as to the Sex, the Female is the best, having a less head and deeper body than the Male. By their Hog-back you shall know that they are in season, with the like note for all other sish.

The Trout is usually caught with a Worm, Minnow, or Fly natural or artificial. There are feveral forts of Worms which are baits for the Angler; the Earth-worm, the Dug-worm, the Maggot or Gentle; but for the Trout, the Lob-worm and Brandling are the best, or Squirril-tail, having a red head, streakt down the back, and a broadtail. The Brandling is found commonly in an old Dung-hill, Cowdung, Hogs-dung, or Tanners-bark. Here note, that whatever Worms you fish withal are the better for keeping; which must be in an Earthen pot with Moss, which you must change often in Summer, that is, once in three or four days, and in twice as long time in Winter.

When you fish for a Trout by hand on the ground, take a Lob-worm and clap your Hook into him a little above the middle, and out again a little below the same; then draw your Worm above the arming of your Hook, making your first entrance at the Tail end, that the point of the Hook may

come out at the Head-end.

When you fish with a Minnow, take the whitest and middle-sized, for those are the best, and place him so on your Hook, that he may turn round when he is drawn against the Stream.

The best Instructions (for putting the Minnow on the Hook) which I can lay down are these: Put your Hook in at his Mouth and out at his Gill,

drawing

drawing it through about 3 Inches; then put the Hook again into his Mouth, and let the point and beard come out at his Tail; then the Hook and his Tail you must tie about with a fine white Thread, and let the body of the Minnow be almost straight on the Hook: then try against the Stream whether it will turn; where note, it cannot turn too fast. If you want a Minnow, a small Loach or Sticklebag will serve the turn: if none of these can be gotten, you may in their season have an Artiscial one made of Cloath by one that is living, which I have sound to be every whit as good a Bait as what are natural.

If you fish with a Natural or Artificial Fly, then follow such directions as I have already prescribed in a foregoing Chapter, which particularly dif-

courses of Flies Natural and Artificial.

Of the UMBER.

T is the opinion of some, that the Umber and Grailing differ only in Names, and are of a Troutkind, but seldom grow to the bigness of a Trout, I having never seen nor heard any exceed the length of eighteen Inches.

He frequents such Rivers as the Trouts do, and is taken with the same Baits, especially the Fly; and, being a simple Fish, is more bold than the

Trout is.

In the Winter he ablconds himself, but after A-pril he appears abroad, and is very gamesome and pleasant. He is very tender-mouth d, and therefore quickly lost after he is struck. For what more may be said, I refer you to the Chapter of the Grailing.

Thus have I given you an Alphabetical and fummary account of the nature of fish, and the feveral ways to take them, according to ancient and modern modern experience: I shall only give you more a short discovery of their Haunts: and so I shall conclude this Treatife.

Next to the Art of taking fish, the knowledge of their haunts and proper places to find them in according to their kinds is rightly to be consider'd : for not knowing what Rivers or what parts of them are fittest for your Baits, or what Baits best fute with each River and the fish therein contained, you only angle at adventure, and instead of reaping fatisfaction, you only lofe your pains and your labour.

Wherefore in the first place you are to underfland, that fishes change places with the feafon. Some in the Summer keep always near the top or rim of the Water; others are continually at the bottom. For the first, you may angle with a Float or Fly; the latter are to be found at the Arches of Bridges Mill-ponds, Wears, Flood-gates, &c. In Winter all fish in general fly into deep Waters.

The Barbel, Roach, Dace, and Ruff delight in fandy gravelly ground. The deepest part of the River and the Shadows of Trees are equally grateful.

The Bream, Pike, and Chub choose a Clay and Ouzie ground. The Bream delights most in the midst of a River whose stream is not too rapid, but gently gliding: the Pike is for still Waters full of Fry; and that he may the better and fecurer feize his Prey, he frequently abfconds himfelf amongst Waterdocks, under Buthes or Bull-rufhes:

Carp, Tench, and Eel frequent still Waters, and what are foul and muddy. Eels lie lurking under Roots or Stones: The Carp is for the deepest place of the Water; and where there are green Weeds the Carp and Tench delight most of all.

Pearchdelight in gentleStreams not too deep, yet they must not be shallow; and a hollow Bank is

their chiefest refuge.

Gudgeons love fandy ground in gentleStreams, they affect imall Rivers above the large or small Brooks.

and bite best in the Spring till they Spawn.

The Salmon delights most in Rivers which ebb and flow, are large, and have a fwift current; in fuch Rivers are the greatest plenty. If the Rivers are rocky or weedy, fo much the better.

Shad, Thwait, Plaice, and Flounder have the greatest love for falt or brackish Waters which ebb

and flow.

The Umber affects Marly Clay grounds, clear and fwift Streams; but they must then be far from the Sea, for they feldom come near it.

There are many more rules to be observed, which generally hold good, but I will not conclude them infallible, fince I have found fome of them (well credited) very false; wherefore let every man's experience be his guide in the knowledge of the nature of Rivers, and the Fish their Inhabitants. And therefore it will be very requisite for him that would be compleat in the Art of Angling, diligently to obferve whatever River or Water he fisheth in, whether it be muddy, flimy, frony, gravelly, fwift, or of a flow motion. And as he must have a competent knowledge in the Rivers, Ponds, or all fishableWaters he is acquainted with; fo must he know the nature of each fish, and what baits are most proper for every kind, or he shall never attain to the reputation of a good experienced ANGLER.

I shall conclude this Treatife with the experimental observations of an ingenious Gentleman, who hath practiced the Art of fishing many years, and therefore the more fit to give Directions for

the right use of the Angle.

Experimental Observations and useful Directions for the right use of the Angle; and is a true and brief Epitome of the whole Art and Mystery of the Fishing Recreation.

One certainly is so ignorant to address himfelf to the River for Recreation, but he will be mindful to carry necessary Tackle with him: being compleatly furnished therewith, let him in the first place consult Sun, Wind, Moon, Stars, and change of Air; for without observing Times and Seasons, his Tackle tho never so good, will prove ineffectual.

Wherefore observe, if the Sun be obscured with Clouds, and his Face hidden from your Eyes, then set forth your Ground-baits, and use your brightest Flies. If the Sun shine out gloriously, then use the darkest of your Flies. Here note,

If that the Wind be in the South, It blows the Fly in the Trout's Mouth.

If the weather be warm, it is no matter in what point of the Compass the Wind lieth, so that it blow not too high; the same observation holds good at Night as well as Day. If the Sun shine bright, the Moon prove clear, or the Stars glitter, there is

but little sport to be expected.

Gentlemen, I write to you that have more than common experience in the Art of Angling, and therefore I hope you will not expect that I should here inform you how to profecute the little recreation of the Thames, how to catch Bleak, Dace, &c. since there is hardly any young beginner that is ignorant thereof: whereof omitting such tristing discourse, I shall fall upon that which is somewhat more material, and first, how to take Eels. When the Angler stays

ftays a night or two, let him take 7 or 6 Lines (or what number he thinks fit) each of them about 16 yards long, and at every 2 yard long make a Noofe to hang on a hook armed either to double Thread, or Silk-twift, for it is better than Wyre. His Hooks must be baited with Millers-thumbs, Loaches, Minnows or Gudgeons: to every Noose there must be a Line baited, and all the Lines must lye cross the River in the deepest place, either with Stones or pegged lying in the bottom, you must watch all night, or rife as soon as ever it is break of day (or else you will lose divers that were hung) and draw up the Lines, on each of which I have known 2 or 2 Eels or Grigs.

Every one that delights in Fly-fishing ought to learn the way of making two forts of Arrificial Flies, the Palmer ribbed with Silver or Gold, and the Mar-fly, both which are the grounds of all Flies.

In the making of the Palmer-fly he must arm his Line on the infide of the Hook; then with a pair of Sizers let him cut so much of the brown of a Mallards Feathers as he shall think sufficient to make the Wings; then let him lay the outermost part of the Feather next the Hook, and the point of the Feather towards the Shank of the Hook : let him whip it 3 or 4 times about the Hook with the fame Silk he armed the Hook; then make his Silk fast: then let him take the Hackle of the neck of a Cock or Capon (but aPlovers top is best) and let him take off the one fide of the Feather; and then he must take the Hackle-silk, or Gold or Silver thred; and let him make all these fast at the bent of the Hook, working them up to the Wings : every bout shifting his Fingers, and making a stop, then the Gold will fall right, and let him make fast: then work up the Hackle to the same place, and make it fait: after this let him take the Hook betwixt his Finger and Thumb in the left hand with Needle or Pin, and part the Wings in twain; then

with the Arming-filk (having fastned all hitherto) let him whip it about as it falleth cross between the Wings, and with his Thumb he must turn the point of the Feather towards the bent of the Hook then let him work it 3 or 4 times about the shank, so fasten it, and view the proportion for other Fies.

If he make the grounds of Hogs-wool, fandy, black, or white, or Bears-wool or of a red Bullock two years old, he must work these grounds on a waxed Silk, and must arm and set on the Wings

as aforefaid.

The body of the May-fly must be wrought with some of these grounds, which will be admirably well when ribbed with black Hair. The Oak-fly he must make with Orange-Tawny and black, for the body; and the brown of the Mallards Feather for the Wings.

The next thing to be observed, is the Floating for Scale fish in Pond, or River: First, take notice that the Feed brings the Fish together, as the Sheep to the Pen; and there is no better in all Angling for Feed, than Bood and Grains; though Paste

is good, yet inferiour to these.

Next, let him observe to plumb his ground, Angling with fine Tackle, as single hair for half the Line next the Hook, round and small plumbed according to his Float. There is a small red worm with a yellow tip on his Tail, which is an excellent bair for this fort of Fish or any other. Other special baits are these: Brandlings, Gentles, Paste or Cadice (otherwise call'd Cock bait.) They lie in gravelly husk under the stones in the River.

There is a way of Trowling for Pike with an Hazle rod of twelve foot long, with a Ring of Wyre on the top of the Rod for the Line to runthrough: within two foot of the bottom of the Rod, there is a hole made to put in a Wind to turn with a Barrel, to gather up the Line and loofe it at pleasure: This is the best manner of Trowling

There is another way to take more Pikes either in Meer, Pond, or River, than any Trowler with his Rod can do, which is done after this manner.

Take a forked stick with a Line of Twelve yards long wound upon it; at the upper end leave about a yard, either to tie a bunch of Flags, or a Bladder to buoy up the Fish, and to carry it from the ground. The Bait must be a live Fish, either Dace, Gudgeon, Roach, or small Trout: The forked stick must have a slit in the one side of the Fork to put in the Line, that he may set his live Fish to swim at a gage, that when a Pike taketh the Bait, he may have the sull liberty of the line for his seed. He may turn these loose either in Pond or River, in the Pond with the wind all day long; the more the better: at night let him set some small weight that he may stay the Buoy till the Fish taketh it.

For the River he must turn all loose with the Stream; the Hooks must be double, the Shanks must be somewhat shorter than ordinary; for the shorter the Hook is off the Shank, without doubt it will less hurt the fish: and it must be armed with small Wyre well softned; but certainly a Hook armed

with twisted Silk is better.

If you arm your Hook with Wyre, the Needle must be made with an Eye; then must he take one of those living Baits, and with one of his Needles enter within a Straws breadth of the Gill of the Fish, so pull the Needle betwixt the Skin and the Fish, then pull the Needle out at the hindmost Fin, and draw the Arming thorough the Fish, until the Hook come to lie close to the Fishes Body: having so done, let him put off in Meere or pond with the Wind; in the River with the Stream: the more that he pulls off in Meere or Pond, he is the likelier to have the greater Pastime.

There is a time when Pikes go a Frogging in Ditches, and in the River to Sun them, as in Mar,

Fune

h

at

[e

18

all

11

d

10

10

n,

ne a-

nd 1:

10

in

ıy,

ene

June, and July; at these times you shall hardly miss one in twenty; and thus must the Angler deal with them. Let him take a Line of Seven or Eight foot, and let him arm a large Hook of the largest fize that is made, and arm it to his Line; let him lead the shank of his Hook neatly, of such a weight that he may guide the Hook at his pleasure. He may strike the Pike that he sees with the bare Hook where he pleases. This Line and Hook doth far exceed Snaring.

In the taking of a Carp either in Pond or River, if the Angler intends to add Profit to his Pleasure, he must take a Peck of Ale-Grains and a good quantity of any Blood, and mix the Grains toged ther, with which let him bat the Ground where in he intends to Angle. This feed will wonderfully attract the Scale-fish, as Carp, Tench, Rouch, Dace, and Bream. In the morning early let him profecute his pastime, plumbing his ground, and Angling for a Carp with a strong Line: the bair must be either Paste, or a knotted red Worm; by this means he shall find sport enough.

In the Taking of a Trous with Ground-bairs thus must the Angler do: In the first place he must have a near taper Rod, light before, with a tender Hazle top. He may angle with a single hair of five lengths, one tied to the other for the bottom of the Line, and a Line of three hair d links for the upper part; and so if he have room enough he may take the largest Trous that swims in the River. He that angles with a Line made of three hair'd links at the bottom, and more at the top, may take Trouts; but he that Angles with one Hair, shall take five Trouts to the others one: For this Fish is very quick-sighted; therefore the Angler both day and night must keep out of fight. He must Angle with the point of his Roddown the Streams.

He must begin to Angle in March with the

Ground baits all day long : but if it provectear and Bright, he must take the Morning and Evening

or elfe his labour will be in vain.

He that Angles with Ground-baits, must be his Tackle to his Rod, and begin at the upper end of the Stream, carrying his Line with an upright hand, feeling the Plummet running on the ground fome ten Inches from the Hook, plumbing his Line according to the fwiftness of the Stream the he Angles in, for one Plummet will not ferve for all Streams.

For his Bait let him take the red knotted World which is very good where Brandlings are not to had. The Minnow (or as some call it a Penk) is a fill gular Bait for a Trout; for he will come as bold at it as a Maftiff-dog at a Bear. It will be advan tageous to him in his angling to use a Line made three Silks and three Hairs twifted for the upper most part of the Line, and two Silks and two Hair twifted for the bottom next the Hook, with a Swi vel nigh to the middle of his Line, with an indiffe rent large Hook. Lerhim bait his Hook with a Mile now, putting the Hook through the lowermost part of his mouth, fo draw the Hook through; then put the Hook in at the mouth again, and let the point of the Hook come out at the hindmost Fin; then let him draw his Line, and the Minnows mouth will close, that no Water will get into his Belly. Ash faid before, he must angle with the point of his Rod down the Stream, drawing the Minnow up the Stream by little and little nigh the top of the Water: the Trout feeing the bait will come most fiercely at it ; but the Angler must not then prefently firike: this is a true way without Lead; for many times they will come to the Lead, and forfake the Minnow.

The next direction is how to angle with a Fly for a Trout. In the first place let the Angler fit himself with a Hazle of one piece or two set conveniently together,

together, light and pliable. The lower part of his Line next the Ply mult be of three or four hair'd Links; but if he can attain (as aforefaid) to angle with a fingle Hair, he shall meet with more Profit and Pleafure.

Before he begin to angle, having the wind on his back, let him my how far he can caff his Line, or at what length his Fly, and let him be careful that the Fly fall first on the Water; for if any of the Line light upon the Water, he had better to have stood still than to have thrown at all. He must always cast down the Stream, with the Wind behind and the Sun before him; it is a great advantage to

have either Sun or Moon before him.

má

写明话是译文正

古世世 年 年 年 年 年 年 年 年 年 年 年 年 年

出出

P

13 15

it : S v. r.H

March is the month for him to begin to angle with the Fly; but if the weather prove windy or cloudy, there are feveral forts of Palmers that are good at that time: The first is a black Palmer abbed with Silver; The feeon d a black Palmer with an Orange-tawny body: Thirdly, a Palmer whose body is all black: Lastly, there is a red Palmer ribbed with Gold, and a red Hackle mixed with Orange Cruel. These Flies serve all the year long morning and evening, whether windy or cloudy weather. But if the Air prove serene, he may then imitate the Hawthorn-sly, which is all black and very small, and the smaller the better.

In May let him take the May fly and imitate that, which is made feveral ways: Some make them with a shammy body; 'tis best with black Hair: Others make them with sandy Hogs-wool, ribbed with black Silk, and winged with a Mallards Feather several ways, according to the humour of the Angler. Another called the Oak fly, is made of Orange coloured Cruel, and black, with abrown Wing. Lastly, there is another Fly, the body whereof is made of the strain of a Peacock's Feather, which is very good in a bright day. These

feveral forts of Flies will ferve the whole year, of

ferving the times and feafons.

Here note, that the lightest Flies are for cloud, and dark weather, the darkest for bright and light, and the rest for indifferent seasons, for which his own Judgment, Discretion, and Experience must guide him. Of late days the Hogs-wool of several colours, the Wool of a red Heiser and Bears-wool are made use of, which make good grounds, and excellent passime.

The Natural-fly is a fure way of Angling to augment the Angler's Recreation. Now how to find them, take notice that the May-fly is to be found playing at the River fide, especially against the Rain.

The Oak-fly is to be found on the But of an Oak or an Ash, from the beginning of May to the end of August: It is a brownish Fly, and stands always with his head towards the Root of the Tree, very easy to be found.

The Black-fly is to be found on every Hawthorn-bush, after the Buds are come forth.

Now with these Flies he must use such a Rods to angle with the ground-bait: the Line must are

be so long as the Rod.

Let the Angler withdraw his Flie as he shall find it most convenient and advantageous in his Angling. When he comes to deep Water (whosemotion is but slow) let him make his Line about two yards long, and drop his Fly behind a Bush, and

he shall find incomparable fport.

The way to make the best Paste, is to take a convenient quantity of fresh Butter, as much Sheep such that is fresh, a sufficient quantity of the strong of the can be gotten, with the pith of an old state white Loaf: Let all these be beaten in a Mortar till they come to a perfect paste; and when the Angler intends to spend some time in Angling, it him put hereof the quantity of a green Pea upon his

his Hook, and let him observe what pleasant effects it will produce.

An Angling SONG.

Ome lay by all cares, and hang up all forrow, Let's Angle to day, and ne're think of to morrow; And by the Brook-fide as we Angle along, We'll cheer up our selves with our sport and a Song.

Sometimes on the Grass our selves we will lay, And fee bow the watery Citizens play; Sometimes with a Fly fland under a Tree, And choose out what Fish our Captives shall be:

בני ביופות יספו מי ופפי

Margod at Both both of the see a

had the Plendres that Inches

ale a whatashiliands, a great out

can't list monive or any and ordered

vd ai i soniti o pado ona'y ara la la mo of the printers of selection at the

noiseignathia fracepoliticianis

tipo sol solicon grand on a final and he commented they can wavenume

must

reral

vool

and

angfind und ain.

Dak. dof

vays

very

aw-

das

100

find

ng mo-

WO

and

COD

old

lor-

the

, let

pon

Thus woid of all care we're more bappy than they That fit upon Thrones and Kingdoms do favay; For Scepters and Crowns disquiet still bring, But the Man that's content is more bleft than a King.

on the West of Missing of the March Missing of the control of the Wed, equal him to these bin an an College B b 3 of Gramping to v. I loop of the es doub English, has a

westlat on almost an it was said the an

The

The HUNTER.

Dr Kilbing,

CHAP. I.

Of Hunting-Horses in general, their Excellency and the necessity and benefit of the Art of Keeping.

I Shall omit to speak in praise of Hunting in general, since I would avoid as much as might be. Repetitions, and that it is already done at the beginning of the foregoing Book, with more Address than I am Master of. But since that Author hath spoken nothing of the Hunting-Horse, which is a principal Instrument of that excellent Recreation, I desire leave to speak a word in his behalf. In behalf, I say, of this noble Creature, to whom all that are followers of Hunting are oblig'd: since it is by his Strength and Vigour that we gratiste at ease our Eyes and Ears with all the Pleasures that Hunting affords; and without whose affistance, a great part of uscou denjoy it a little more than in Imagination.

But 'tis not to us only, that are Hantsmen, but to all Mankind, that the Hunter is, (or may be) serviceable. Has our Prince, or Country occasion for our Service in the Field: on what Horse can we venture our Lives more securely than on the Hunter? His Readiness to obey the Hand and Heel, equal him to the Mannag'd Horse. He being us'd to gallop on all sorts of Grounds, as well steep places as deep Earths, has so seel'd his Courage, that he declines no Military service you can put him on. Are there Ambuscado's

fo

to be laid, Diferveries to be made, speedy and long Marches to be performed : or any other Service, wherein Strength of Body, Purity of Wind, or Swiftmes, are required? The General may in any of these cases rely on the Hunter, with as much confidence, is on the Horfe that is drefs'd in the Mamage.

In times of Peace he is equally Uleful, not only for Pleasure, but also for Necessity and Profit. How diverting to the Eyes is a Beautiful Horse after a Pack of Dogs? and with how much eafe to our Bodies, and delight to our Minds are we carried up to them; with fo much Vigour and Pride to be difcern'd in his Countenance, as if he emulated the Hounds in their Speed, and was defirous to excel them, in

his Obedience to their common Lord.

How Necessary is the Hunter beyond all other Hofe, if his Masters urgent Affairs (where either life and Fortine are in hazard,) exact the performance of a long fourney in a foort time. If his Master. in hopes of advantage, has match'd him against any other Herse ; how ready and willing is he, to perform the utmost that Nature is capable of, or his Mafter can reasonably expect from him? and hating Art joined to his natural Abilities, will not only excel all other Horses, but accomplish things bewond his Masters hopes or expectations; for without is Affiltance in Dieting and Exercise, no Horse can follow the Hounds, or indeed undergo any other extream Labour, without hazarding the melting bis Greafe, the breaking of bis Wind, or foundering him either in Feet or Body: all which are confequences of immoderate Labour, and ignorance in this Art.

That I may therefore give you some light into its Musteries, I shall first direct you how to breed such Horsesthat may be for Training; or elseinstruct you how otherwise to procure them. Secondly how to know by Shapes, Marks, and other Tokens, what Hafe may be most convenient for your purpole. Thirdly, how to diet him fo, that he may perform ell things within his Power, without danger. Laftly what manner of Exercise is most conducive to this defign; and on thefe Heads I intend to inlarge

in my following Discourse.

But before I enter upon my Subject proposed, I think it necessary to answer 4 Objections, that may be made against this Art of Dieting and Training Horfes, that I may remove all prejudice from the minds of those, who think they may have reason to oppose it; and that I may vindicate (with truth) this Art, and clear it from all Afpersions.

The first Objection I shall mention is made by de Greyin his Epittle to the Reader, (Edit. 4th.) where under the Umbrage of his love to Horfes, and in pity of the Hardships they undergo in Hunting, he extreamly inveighs against it, as the Sourse of all their Miseries. But that I may not be tax'd of Prevaries. tion by my Reader, and for his fatisfaction I shall fet

down his words, which are thefe.

If the Nobility and Gentry of this our Isle of Great Britain, did truly know bow bonourable, and bow commendable Horsemanship were, and bow much they are esteem'd and admir'd, who are the true Professors thereof, they would labour more than they now do, to breed and to have good Horfes; but it much troubleth me to fee, bow little esteem Gentlemen bave thereof. Some Horses they bave, though not for Mannage, yet for Hunting : but what manner of Hunting ? Fox-bunting for footh, or Hartriers, which be as fleet as pretty Grey-hounds, wherewith they do so much over-strain the strength of these poor . Horses, (forcing them over deep Fallows, tough Clays, and wet and rough Sands,) that albeit those Horses be Brong and able, yet are they fo toil'd out therewith, as that when they come home at night they would pity the Heart of bim that loveth an Horse to see them so bemired, blooded, spinred, lamentably spent, and tired out; whereus if fuch Horses bad been ridden to the Great-Saddle and and Cannon, they would infinitely have delighted all men that (hould have beheld them.

To this answer, that for my own part I am not very fond of Fox-bunting; but I can fee no Reafer why Persons of Honour should not gratifie their Fancies with this Recreation, fince from the beginning Horses were made for the fervice of Man; and doubtless for their Recreation, as well as more necessary uses. And I am very confident, that if Horfes be train'd, dieted, and ridden according to Art, there will be left no ground for this Objection. For by good Feeding Faint ness would be prevented; and by diring, and due Exercise, the Horses Wind would be so improv'd, that no moderate Labour would hart him; nay, though a Horse by immoderate Riding, were reduc'd to fuch Tragical Exigencies, as de Grey mentions, yet by the affiltance of Art, Nature may be in twenty four bours space so reliev'd, that all those dangerous Symptoms shall be removed, and all the Natural Faculties act as formerly. dems pieus d with t

Now as to the last part of his Argument, I appeal to all the greatest Masters of Academies here, or in Foreign Parts; whether in the Mannage, the Spurs are not as much us'd (not to fay more) as in Hunt ing ; and the Duke of Newcastle in his Methode Noisvelle in oct. p. 85 fays, il n'y a point d' Exercise si violent pour les Chevanx que celuy de Manege ; that is, there is no Exercise so violent for Horses as the Manmage; fo that you fee Hunting is not the only violent Exercise: and Salamon de la Brove goes further in his Cavalarife Frangoife, telling us, that Mannag & Horfer should sometimes be us d to the Chase, since bunt. ing allists his wind, and brings him to a civil Acquaintance with other Horses : inferring from hence, that bunting procures to an Horsetwo Benefits, viz. Speed and Strength, and reforms in him two Vices;

Salvageness, and Restiveness.

Secondly, there are others, that though they may

recorded to busing; but being either Admirers of Courfus, or elle keeping Horles only for the benefit of their bealth, and the taking the air, will not be perfeaded, but that they can bring their Horles to the same Perfection without busing, as with it.

Foanswer the first of these, I mean Comfer 1 affirm, 'tisimpossible to attain the end of this Are by that means for being oblig'd in search of their Game to toll their Horses all day, over deep Fallows, in a foot-pace only, they are likelier to bring their

Horses to Weariness than Perfection.

And the fame after may ferve the others likewife: for Riding a Horse up and down the Field after nothing, brings a Wearines and Diflike to an Horfe in his Exercife, thro his ignorance of the time, when his labour shall cease; whether, or to what end he is fo labour'd. Whereas on the contrary, an Horse naturally takes delight in following the Dogs, and feems pleas'd with their Musick, as is evident by his pricking up bis Bars, gazing on them, and proffing to galler towards them, whenever he hears them in full cry, (though at a distance.) Nay further, Thave been Mafter of a Stoneborfe, that to entirely loved the Hounds, that when at any time (thro eagerness of Sport, and defire to fave the Hore from being eaten) I have ridin amongst the Dogs, he would to care fully avoid treading on them, that he has more than once hazarded my Limbs (by making a falle fep) to fave theirs. From hence I infer that doubtless Horfes excreamly delight in hunting, and confequently, that it is a fit Exercife for them.

Thirdly, Others Object, That whatforver Planfure there may be in Hunting, they had rather deny thomselves that satisfaction than hazard the laming their Horses, which, (as they are told) few, or no

Hunters escape.

That Hunters are sometimes lame, I do not deny:

The Bunting borte.

but connot allow that it proceeds always from this Exercise. For this the indiscretion of the Riders in overfraining their Harles at Loaps, and by that means lometimes chapping them on the back-finery's catching in their Shoes, and fuch like, and not the Sport, that is the canfe of Larranda, But on the contrary, I will undertake to how any man twenty other Horles lame (which never knew what belong it to Hunting) for one Hanter. There are feveral other Reasons besides theming to be given for Lamenes; as for instance. Much Travel (the but moderate, if care be wanting) will produce Wind palls, and Spines, which are the forerunners of Loninela Want of Exercise will fraiten the Moofs, and dry up the Snews : and too much negligence in Travel occasions Surbating, Foundring and Graveling. Horses on the Road oftentimes fumble, and now and then fall, and to become Lame. Nay, a Sup or an Over-reach are as incident to the Pad, as to the Hunter. And to conclude, the Horse that is Dress it is more liable to a Strain in the Back. and Fillers, than the Homer; by means of his floor time: fo that you may perceive that Lamenels is E. pilemical, and therefore no more to be objected against Hunting borfes, than the rest of that Species, Fourthly, Some again are Enemies to this Art of

Disting Horses in parsioniar; afterming, that such could be makes them tender, sickly, and takes them off their Stomache and that the Charges are not only

great, but likewife unnecessary.

To the Help pair of this Objection, I answer, that the Horse is for from being made tender, or losing his Appetite, by such extream and several Feedings, if he have proportionate Exetcise, that it rather inures him to hardship. For much Labour (if not too violent) either in Man or Beast, instead of weakning the Stomach, and causing Sickness, does rather advance the Appetite and preserve his Health; and it may be observed, that it doth oftner heighten than decay

decay the Stomach. In like manner moderate Airings purify his Wind, and both together render him healthy, and fit for Service.

As to the leveral forts of Food, we shall prove in the fequel, that every part of it is both nourishing, and natural to all Horles Configutions: To that confequently, his not only allowable, but heceffar y: And to prove this needs no more than to lide an ordinary Horfe drawn eleun, 'a days Himting, or three Heats, and a Course, against the best of those Horles, which are kept by fuch Perfons who think that half a Peck a Day, and fetching his water at the next Spring is Horfemanship fufficient; and they will find by keeping and Exercise the Ordinary Horle will become long winded, and fick at Mark; when the other that is Foul-fed, and fat, will-foon give out for want of Wind; or otherwise if he be hardy will dye under the Spur; whereas if the untrained Horse had been rightly ordered he would have worsted twenty such Horses. 1 01

Now to the Charges of Keeping; Fifty Shillings a Town, disburs'd for Bread, befides Hay, Straw, Com, and Physick, (which all Horses of Value must be allowed) is all that will be requisite to keep an Horse in as good state for Ordinary Hunting, as any Horse whatfoever. Laftly by being skilful in the Art of Keeping, this Advantage will infue; that no Diftemper relating either to the Head or Body can conceal themselves from his keepers knowledge, whose Skill will inform him, how to put a stop to them, before they have made any confiderable Advances to the Horles Prejudice. And he that grudges fo small an Expence on so noble and useful a Creature as an Horse is, deserves never to come on the

plug the named and confirm but which does ather ad-

back of one

VI 222

call; and the Profesenting of it is of ally one wire of a me, two Cometers, and one of their Horfes,

The and boath, thatthey wi

day, without draffing PiA Hv3 ich has been per-Of Breeding, the Choice of a Stallion, and Mares with some general Remarks on Marks and Colours dans on said sail of a

CInce Creation and Generation preceded the Art of Riding, and that the first thing which is of course to be treated of, is the Choice of an Horfe ht for this exercise of Hanting, I shall speak something curforily of the Art of Breeding before I treat of the Idunter ready for service. To them therefore that have grounds convenient for Breed, I shall direct this part of my discourse; and lay them down lome few Rules that may be ferviceable to them? though I shall be as brief as possible, and refer them to Markham, de Grey, Morgan, Almond, and Farring Compleased, (which is collected from the forementioned Authors Markbam and de Grey) all which have treated of the Art of Breeding more at large!

First therefore I would advise you to buy either an Arabian Horse (if you can procure him,) a Spamard, a Turk, or a Barb, for your Stallion, that is well Thap'd, of a good Colour to beautify your Race, and well mark'd, to agree with most mens Opinions : though otherwise they are not so fignificative as Mr. Blundevile, and his Italian Author Frederigo

Griffone, would have us believe.

To begin with the Arabian: Metchafts, and other Gentlemen that have travell'd those parts, report, that the right Arabians are valu'd at an incredible; as well as an intolerable Rate; being priz'd at five bundred, others fay at one, two, and three thousand pounds an Horse; that the Arabi are as careful of keeping the Genealogies of their Horles, as Princes in keeping their Pedigrees; that they keep them with

Medals ;

Medals; and that each Sons Portion is usually run Suits of Arms, two Cymeters, and one of these Horses. The Arabs boast, that they will ride four foot miles a day, without drawing Bin : I which has been perform d by several of our English Horses. But much more was archieved by a High-way-mans Horse; who having taken a Booty, on the same day rode him from London to York, being One bundred and Pffy Miles. Notwithstanding their great value, and the difficulty in bringing them from Seanderson to England by Sea; yet by the care, and at the charge of some Breeders in the North, the Arabian Horse is no stranger to those parts; where persons who have the curiosity, may (as I presume) at this day see some of the Race, if not a true Arabian Stallion.

The Spanish Horse (according to the Duke of Newcaftle) is the Noblest Horse in the world, and the most Beautiful that can be; no Horse is so curiously shap d all over from Head to Croup, and he is absolutely the best Stallion in the world, whether you delign your Breed for the Manage, the War, the Pad, Hunting; or for Running Horles. But as he is excellent, fo he wants not for price, Three or Four bundred Piffols being a common Rate for a Spanish Horse. Several have been fold for Seven bundred, Eight bundred, and a Thousand Pistols apiece; and One particular Horse. called el Brava, that was fent to the Arch-Duke Leopold, was held worth as much as a Mannour of a Thousand Crowns a year. The best Spanish Horses are bred in Andalouzia, and particularly at Cordova; where the King has many Studds of Mares, and fo have several of the Spanish Nobility and Gentry. Now besides the great price at first, the Charges of the Journey from Spain to England will be very confiderable : for first, he must travel from Andalouzia to Bilbo, or St. Sebafian, the nearest Ports to England, and is at least Four bundred Miles : and in that hor Country you cannot with fafety travel your Horfe

Horle above many miles a day, then there is the Expense of your Grom and Farrier, bendes the on failty of Lames, Siehnes, and Death. To that the he do prove an Extraordinary good Horle, by that time he arrives at your own home he will likewife be an Extraordinary day one.

The Tirk is lired inferior to the Spanish Horse in Boury, but somewhat odd-shap'd his Head being somewhat like that of a Camel: he hath excellent Bus, a thin Neck excellently risen, and somewhat large of body: his Group is like that of a Mile; his Less not so underlimble as these of the Burb, but very succept, good Passerm, and good Hossi! They never mile, but not very well; and are accounted at this present better Stallions for Gallopers than Burbs, as swhen I come to speak of them) I shall show.

Some Merchants affirm, that there earlier be a more noble and divergree light to a Lover of Horfes, than to walk into the Paffures near Confiantingle, a bout Soiling-time, where he may fee many bundled gallant Horfes techned, and every Horfe has his Attendant or Keeper, with his little Tent (plac'd near him) to lie in, that he may look to him, and take care to hift him to fresh Grafs, as occasion requires.

The Price of a Turk is commonly one binared or one binared and fifty Pounds a Horse, and when bought its difficult to get a Pass; the Grand Seignion being so very first, that he feldem (but upon extraordinary occasions) permits any of his Horsesto be exported his Dominions. But if (when obtain d) you travel by Land, without a Took or two for your comes, you will be sure to have them seed on by the way. Then, as in the former, so here, you will indiche fame difficulties of a long follow, for you must come through Germany, which is a long way) and the same charges attending it, I mean your Groom and Farrier, who must be careful that they entrust no Persons whatsoever with the care of

him, but themselves, especially in sooning of him? For its the common practice beyond Sea, (as well as here) where they discover a fine Horse, to him a form of the farrier to prick him, that they may buy him for a Stallion.

But some People chuse to buy Horses at Smyrna in Anatolia, and from thence, as likewise from Constantinople, transport them to England by Sea; which, if the Wind serve right, arrive in England in a month, though generally the Merchants make their Voyages

little less than a Quarter of a year.

The Barb is little inferior to any of the former in beauty, only he is accounted by our Modern Breaders too flender and Lady-like to breed on: and therefore in the North, at this instant, they prefer the Spanish Horse and Turk before him. He is so lazy and negligent in his walk, that he will stumble on Carpet-ground. His Trot is like that of a Cow, his Gallop low, and with much ease to himself. But he is for the most part sineury and nervous, excellently winded, and good for a Cowse, if he be not over-

weighted,

The Mountain-Barbs are accounted the best, because they are the strongest and largest. They belongto the Allarbes, who value them as much themfelves, as they are priz'd by any other Nations, and therefore they will not part with them to any perfons, except to the Prince of the Band to which they belong; who can at any time, at his pleafure; command them for his own use. But for the other more ordinary fort, they are to be mer with pretty common in the hands of feveral of our Nobility and Gertry: or if you fend into Languedoc and Provence in France, they may be there bought for forty or fifty Piftols a Horse. Or if you will fend into Barbary, you may have one for Thirty Pounds, or thereabours. But here too the charges and journey will be great; for though from Tunu to Marfeilles in France be no great

great Voyage, yer from Marfeilles to Calais by land measures the length of all France, and from thence

they are shipt for England.

The next thing of course to be treated of is the choice of your Mare; and the fittest Mare to breed out of, according to the Duke of Newcastle's opinion, is one that has been bred of an English Mare, and a Stallion of either of these Races; but if such a Mare be not to be got, then make choice of a right bred English Mare by Sire and Dam, that is well fore-banded, well underlaid, and strong put together in general and in particular, see that she have a lean Head, wide Nostrils, open Chaul, a big Weasand, and the Windpipe frait and loose, and chuse her about sive or six years old, and be sure that the Stallion be not too old.

Now for the Food of the Stallion, I would have you keep him as high as possible for four or five months before the time of Covering, with old clean Oats, and folit Beans, well bull'd; to which you may add, if you please, Bread, (fuch as in this Book shall be hereafter directed) and now and then, for variety, you may give him a bandful of clean Wheat, or Oats wash'd in strong Ale; but as for Bay-falt, and Annifeeds, which Mr. Morgan, it his Perfection, of Horsemanship, advises should be scatter'd amongst his Provender, I hold them superfluous whilst the Horse is in health, but be sure let him have plenty of good old sweet Hay, well cleanled from dust, and good Wheat-straw to lye on; and let him be watred twice every day at some fair running Spring, or elfe a clear flanding Pond-water, (where the other is not to be had) near some Meadow or level piece of Ground, where you may gallop him after he hath drunk. When you have brought him to the water, do not fuffer him to drink his Fill at the first, but after he has taken his first draught gallop and scope him up and down a little to warm it, and then bring him to the water again, and let him

ing

wh

cov

ani

an

We

M

w

the

to

be

N

th

ģi

200

ke go w

N

al

t

can

him drink what he pleafe, and after that gallop him as you did before, never leaving the Water till you find he will drink no more. By this means you will prevent raw Crudities, which the Coldness of the Water would produce to the detriment of the Stomach, if you had permitted hits to drink his fill at first; whereas you allowing him his fill (tho by degrees) at last, you keep his Body from drying too fast. And this I take to be much better for your Horses than (according to the forecited Morgan) to incourage his Water with Whitevine to qualifie the cold quality thereof: for Nature it felf is the best Directres for the expulsion of her Enemies. especially in Brutes, where usually she can command the Appetite: and therefore I efteem his own natural beat, for warming his water, to be better than that which proceeds from any other. Now as to Morgan's direction of Sweating him every day early in the morning, which he fays will not only perfect difgestion, and exhaust the moisture from his Seed, but also strengthen and cleanse his Blood and Body from all raw and imperfect humors : I am of opinion 'twill both dry up the radical Moisture too fast, and like wife inflead of heightning his Pride and Luft, (which he alledges,) weaken him too much. Other Rules might be given as to the ordering of them after Was ter, and the bours of Feeding, with the quantity, &c. but these will be fitter to be handled in another place, and therefore no more of them here.

Now when your Stallion is in Lust, and the time for Covering is come, which is best to be in May, that the Foles may fall in April following, otherwise they will have little or no Grass, if they should be put together (according to Markham's opinion) in the middle of March, tho he holds that one Fole falling ir March is worth two falling in May, "because (saith he) he possesses, as it were 2 Winters in a year, and is thereby so hardened, that nothing

can almost after impair him. The time Isay being come to put your Stallion and Mares together, pull off his binder Shoes, and lead him to the place where the Stud of Mares are, which you intend for twoering, which place ought to be close, well fene d, and in it a little Hut for a man to lye in, and a larger Shed with a Manger to feed your Stallion with Bread and Corn, during his abode with the Mares, and shelter kim in the heat of the day and in rainy Weather, and this Close ought to be of sufficient largenes to keep your Mares well for two months.

Before you pull off his Bridle, let him cover a Mare or two in band, then turn him loofe amongst them, and put all your Mares to him, as well those which are with Foal, as those which are not, for there is no danger in it; and by that means they will all be fery d in their beight of Luft, and according to the intention of Nature. When your Stallion has gree d them once, he tries them all over again, and those which will admit him he ferves; and when his business is finish'd he beatsthe Pale, and attempts to be at Liberty; which when your Man finds (whois Night and Day to observe them, and to take care that no other Mares are put to your Horse, and to give you an Account, which take the borfe, and which not, &c.) let him be taken up, and let him be well ker as before; only you may at the first give him a good Mash or two to help to restore Nature, for you will find him nothing but Skin and Bones, and his Mane and Tall will rot off. Be fure give him never above Ten or Twelve Mares in a Sealon, at most : 0therwife you will scarce recover him against the hext Years Covering-time.

When your Stallion is past this use, than buy another; but be sure never make use of a Horse of your ownBreed, for by so doing the best kind would in time degenerate: but you cannot do better (the Duke of Newcastle says) than to let your own Mates be cover'd by their Sire for (according to his own words and opinion) there is no Incest in Horses: and by this means they are nearer one degree to the Purity and Head of the Fountain, from which they are deriv'd, since a fine Horse got them, and the same

fine Horse covers them again.

Now though the Duke of Newcastle affirms this t) be the true way for covering Mares, alledging that Nature is wifer than Art in the Act of Generation, and that by this way, of a dozen Mares he dare affirm that two shall not fail: yet it may not correspond with the interest of some private Gentlemen who turn Breeders for Profit as well as Pleasure; for a good Stallion bearing fuch an extraordinary rate, and they having but one, have reason to be cautious, to avoid as much as can be all hazardous Expenments; which (with fubmiffion to the Duke's judgment) this in some cases may prove. For first, there have been Horses of great spirit, that have killed themselves through excess of Lust, being left to range at their liberty; and those that have been c nind to an inclosure, and a select number of Mares, have yet in one weeks space so weaken'd Nature, that not above half the Mares have beld. Secondly, some Mares are of so hot a constitution of Nature, and their Lust so violent, that if they are permitted to run long with the Horse, after they have conceived, will (if they be high in flesh and lufty) defire the Horse again, which generally hazards the loss of the Embrio they go with.

N ti o a iii a k a l

To prevent therefore these inconveniences, I shall lay you down another Method (as briefly as may be,) which is called covering in hand, as the former is generally term'd out of hand, and the way is this, viz. when you have brought both your Horse and Mare to as proper condition for breed by Art and good feeding, then set some ordinary Sion d-Nag by her for a day or two to woo her, and

by that means she will be so prone to Lust, that she will readily receive your Stallion; which you should refeat to her either early in a morning, or late in an evening, for a day or two together, and let him coper ber in band once, or twice if you please, at each time, observing always to give the Horse the advantage of ground, and that you have some one ready with a Bucket of cold water to throw on the Mare's Shape, immediately on the dismounting of the Horfe, which will make her retain the Seed received the better, especially if you get on her back and trot her about a quarter of an hours space, but in any case have a care of beating, or straining her: and it will not be amis, if after every such act you let them fall two bours, and then give each of them a warm Mash; and 'tis odds but this way your Mares may be as well fero'd as the other, and yet your Stallion will last you much longer.

I shall fay no more as to the keeping the Mares during the time of their being with Foal, nor of their foaling; only this, that if you take care to house them all the Winter, and to keep them well, their Coles will prove the better. When they are fooled, let them run with their Dams till Martin-mass, then weam them, and keep them in a convenient House with a low Rack and Manger on purpose; litter them well, and feed them with good Hay, and Oats and Wheat-bran mix'd, which will make them drink and belly well. The first year you may put them all together, but afterwards they must be separated, the Stone-Coles from the Fillies; and if you have choice of Houses, you may put Tearings together, two years old together, and so three years old together, for their better satisfaction and agreement; as little

Children best agree together.

In a warm fair day you may grant them liberty to run and sope in some inclosed Court or Back-side, but be sure to take care to put them up again carefully,

Farrier's Care.

that they be not burt. When Summer is come and and there is plenty of Grass, put them out in some dry Ground, that hath convenient watring, and so let them run till Martinmas again: then bowse them as before, and order them in all points as older Horses, till they are full syears old, then take them up for good and all, and let your Groom back them if he have skill, or else some skilful Rider. You may if you please just break your Fillies at two year and a balf old, and let them be cover'd at three; and by that means they will be so tame and gentle, as not to injure themselves or their Foals. But in case of sickness, or any accidental calamity, at Lameness, &cc. you must then commit them to the

The reason why I propose the Housing of them every Winter, with dry feeding and lodging, is, that they may be the liker their Sire in Beauty and Shape. For the primary Cause of the fineness of Shape and Beauty in Horses is Heat, and dry feeding. And this is provid from the feveral Races we have already mentioned, viz. the Spanish Horse, Barb, and Turkish Horse, all which Countries are under an hor Climate, and by confequence afford little Grafia Therefore in our more moderate and cold Countries we are to affift Nature by Art, and to Supply the want of beat by warm Housing, and ary feeding This is easily made evident by example. For take two Colts begot by the same Sire, on Mares of equal Beauty, and boule the one every Winter, and feed him as directed, and expose the other, till they are four years old, and fit to be back'd; and you shall find the former like his Sire in all respects, and the other fitter for the Cart than Hunting, as being a dull, heavy, flabby, scarce animated Clod; and all this proceeds from the Hum dity of the Air and Earth. From hence you may infer, that 'tis not only Geseration, but, as I may term it, Education, that makes

2:00

ord

for

fuc

haci

int

Gn

an

pu

wl

ch

記をお出

25

order them according to the former Directions; for you may with ease break the Cols that is by such good management made gentle, and balf

back'd to your hand.

But I have dwelt longer on this Subject than I intended, my business being chiefly to inform the Grown (not the Master) what belong d to his Office; and therefore I will wander no further from my purpose, but leave it to the Rider to follow his own method in rendring Colts six for his masters Service: whilst I give some few directions to those Gendemen who will not bestow either trouble or charges on Breeding, or have the will but not the convenience to do it, how to elect an Horse for

his Exercife.

The way for a Gentleman to furnish himself with an Horse, that may be worth training for huntm, is either to enquire out some noted Breeder (of which there are many in the North,) or elfe to go to some famous Fair, as Malton, and Rippon Fairs in Torkfire, the former held on the 23d day of September yearly, and the latter on May day: Or to Richmond in the same Shire, (which, as I am inform'd, does now of late years exceed both the fore-mention'd, being sciruated in the middle of the most celebrated part of the breeding Country;) is Fairs are held in Eafter-week, and at Rood tyde. Northampton has feveral Fairs in the year likewife son the 22d day of April, the 8th of September, 17th of November, with feveral others. There are fereral Fairs, as Lenton-fair in Nottinghamshire, Pankride-fair in Stafford hire, oc. which for brevities fake lomit. At any of these places he may make choice of a Horfe, which as near as can be ought to have these following Shapes: viz.

His Head ought to be lean, large, and long; his Charl thin, and open; his Ears small, and pricked,

or if they be fomewhat long, provided they frand upright like those of a Fox; it is usually a sign of Mettle and Toughness. His Forebend long and broad, not flat, and as we term it Mare-facid, but rifing in the midst like that of a Hare, the feather being plac'd above the top of his Eye, the contrary being thought by some to betoken blindness. His Eyes full, large, and bright; his Nofrils wide, and red within, for an open Noftril betokens a good Wind; his Mouth large, deep in the Wykes and hairy; his Thropple, Weafand, or Windpipe big, loofe, and streight when he is rein'd in by the Bridle; for if, when he bridles, it bends in like a Bow (which vis called cock-throppled) it very much hinders the free paffage of his Wind. His Head must be set on to his Neck, that there must be a space felt between his New and his Chaul; for to be Bull-neck'd is uncomely to fight, and prejudicial to the Horses wind, as afore faid. His Creft should be firm, thin, and well rifer; his Neck long and ftraight, yet not loofe, and pliant, which the Northernmen term Withy-crage d; his Breaft strong and broad, his Cheft deep, his Chine short, his Body large, and close shut up to the Huckle. bone; his Ribbs round like a Barrel, his Belly being hid within them; his Fillets large, his Buttocks rather oval than broad, being well let down to the Gascoin; his Cambrels upright, and not bending, which is called by some sickle-bough'd, tho some hold it a sign of Toughness and Speed: his Legs clean, flat, and straight: his Joynts short, well knit, and upright, especially betwixt the Pastorns and the Hoof, having but little hair on his Fetlocks: his Hoofs black, ftrong, and hollow, and rather long and narrow, than big and flat. And laftly, his Mane and Tail should be long and thin, rather than thick, which is counted by some a mark of Dulness.

As to his Colour and Marks, I rather incline to believe them grateful to the Eye, than any infallible makes of Goodness; for as the Goodness or Badness of a Man does not confist in his complexion, but in his inverted Varies, for mether do Colour or Marks certainly demonstrate the Goodness or Badness of a Horse, because his Qualifications proceed from his inward Disposition. But yet I wholly different from the opinion of Mr. Margon, p. 31. who holds, "That Colour and Marks are no more assurance of a good si Hose, than the having a Peaster in a Mans Har does prove him a good Man or a bad; inferring that inbother Colours are of no greater Eminency or Value, than those external ones are which may be taken or laid aside at a man's own will and pleasure.

Now I fay, that altho Marks and Colour do not absolutely give testimony unto us of a Horfes goodness, ver ther as well as his flape do intimate to us in some part his Disposition and Qualities. For Nature, not being defective, frames every part of the fame matter whereof the whole is formed, and therefore the Farm being formed of the copulative Seed of its Sire and Dam, does from them derive as well the secidental as the more effential Qualities of its remperament and composition. And for this Reafon Hair it felf may oftentimes receive the variation of its Colour from the different temperature of the Subject out of which it is produced. And to confirm this, I dare pass my word, that wherever you shall meet with an Horse that hath no White about him, especially in his Fore-head, though he be otherwise of the best reputed Colours, as Bay, Black, Sorrel, &c. That Horfe I dare affirm to be of a dogged and fullen disposition; especially if he have a small pink Eye, and a narrow Face, with a Nofe bending like a Hawks Bill.

But yet I am not positive, that Horses even of the most celebrated Colours, and Marks answerable, do always prove the best; because I have seen those Horses worsted by others, whose Marks and Colour

have been effected the worft; as bright Sorrel and Monfe-black with hald Races, and all the Legs white above the Knee. But I rather attribute the cause thereof to the Ignorance of the Rider, that had the training of those best marked Horses, than to any defect in Nature; for Nature is no Counterfeit, as Art often is, to make a thing haw to the Eye, contrary to what it is in reality, And therefore as I would not have men put too great confidence in Marks and Colours: To I would not have them effeem'd of fo lightly, as the former comparison of Mr. Morgans would make them; for it is a confrant and infeparable quality for Horles to produce Hair, which is given them by Nature as a Tegument and Defence against the Cold: and if it be shaved off, gall'd, or any ways elfe removed or taken away, yet it will grow again; but a Feather may be put to, or taken from a Man's Hat at his pleafure.

Therefore since Colour seemeth to set forth the Beauty of an Horse, you may for Ornament sake and to please your Eye, make choice of an Horse that is either a Brown-bay, Dapple-bay, Black, Sad-Chessnut with flaxen Mane and Tail, so that they have either a White Star, Blaze, or Snip, with a White Foot; Dapple-Grey, or White Lyard with Black Muzzle, Eye, and Ear. Any of these are reputed by most men to give a Grace to shape; the in themselves they are no perfect signs of Goodness.

But for his internal End wments, they are more material, and therefore take care that he by Nature be of a Gentle Disposition, to his Keeper trestable and docile, free from those ill qualities of biting, striking, Restiffnes, lying down in the Water, starting, running away with his Rider, plunging, leaping, &c. Not but that most, if not all these ill habits may be rectified by Art; For Experience has shewn us, that Horses which have not been of such a perfect Natural Composition, as might

might be defired, have yet been tempered by Arr, and have not only been reclaimed from their victous habits, but have been likewife brought to great performance in Heats, as well as Hunting, as I could instance in several if it were necessary.

And therefore fince Art was invented to perfect Nature; if (notwithstanding your care) you have met with a Horse subject to any of these ill Qualities aforesaid, you must search into the causes of it, which Art will help you to discover and remove; and then the cause being taken away the effect will sease. So that probably, contrary to most peoples opinions, a Vicious Horse, by good Management and Government may be brought to excel an Horse that has a better Reputation and Fame in the judgment of the generality of Horsemen.

CHAP. III.

Of the Age a Hunter should be of before he be put to Hunting; of the Stable and Groom, and of the Horse's sirst taking up from Grass, in order to his further Dicting.

Aving gotten a Horse answerable either to the former Descriptions, or your own Satisfaction at least, I am to suppose that by a skilful Rider he is already grounded in the Fundamentals of this Art, by being taught such Obedience, as that he will readily answer to the Horseman's belps and correllions both of the Bridle, the Hand, the Voice, the calf of the Leg, and the Spur; that he can tell how to take his way forward, and hath gained a true temper of Mouth, and a right placing of his Head, and that he hath learn'd to stop and turn readily; for without these things are perfectly taught

taught, and as it were laid for a Foundation he can

never proceed effectually.

I had thoughts of enlarging upon this particular Subject, but I find my Discourse is like to swell bewond its bounds fo that I am forced to omit it and therefore I shall refer you to the Directions and Prudence of your Rider, and only tell you that 'tis convenient your Horse should be forde years old, and well way'd before you begin to built him. For though it be a general Custom amongst noted Horsemen to train their Horses up to hunting at four years old, and some fooner, yet at that Age his Joints not being full knit, nor he come to his best strength and courage, he is disabled from performing any matter of speed and toughness: and indeed being put to fore Labour and Toil foyoung. he runs a very great hazard of frains, and the put ting out of Splents, Spavins, Curbs, and Windgalls; besides the daunting of his Spirit, and abating his natural Courage, infomuch that he will become melancholy, stiff, and rheumatick, and have all the distempers of old Age, when it might be expected he should be in his Prime.

Your Horse then being full five, you may if you please put him to grass from the middle of May till Bartholomew-tide, or at least from the middle of Summer till that time; for then the Season being so violent hot, it will not be convenient to work him; where whilst he is sporting himself at liberty in his Pasture, we will if you please take care to provide a good Stable for his Reception at his taking up, and a good Groom to look after him; both which are more effentially necessary to the Hunter than to other Horses, which require not that exact care in

keeping.

First then as to the Stable, I could wish every Gentleman would be careful to scituate it in a good Air, and upon hard, dry, and firm ground, that in the

the Winter the Horse may go and come clean in and out: and if possible let it be seated on an Ascent; that the Urine, foul Water, or any wer, may be convey d away by Trenches, or Senks cut out for that purpose. Be sure to suffer no Hen-houses, Hog-styes, or Houses of Easement, or any other filthy Smells to be near it; for Hen-dung or Feathers swallow'd, oftentimes prove mortal, and the ill Air of a Jakes as often is the cause of Blindness; likewise the very smell of Swine will frequently breed the Farer, and no Animal whatsoever more delights in teapliness, or is more offended at unablossome savours than the

Horfe.

Let your Stable be built of Brick rather than Stone, fince the latter it subject to sweating in wet weather; which Dampness and Moisture is the Original of Rheums and Catarhs. Let your Wall be of a good convenient thickness, as about eighteen or twenty Inches thick, both for fafety and warmth in Winter, and to keep the Sun from annoying him in Summer, which would hinder Concoction. You may (if you please) make Windows both on the East and North fides, that you may have the benefit of the Air during Summer from the North, and of the Morning Sun during Winter from the East. And I would advise you to glaze your Windows, and make them with Safter, to let in Air at pleasure, and to keep out Poultry, for the reasons afore recited; and likewife to make close Wooden Shutters, that during the middle time of the Day the Stable may be dark, which will cause him to take his Rest as well in the Day as the Night. Let your Floor (Imean that part on which he is always to stand, or lye downon) be made of Oaken Planks, and not pisch'd, for 'tis easier and warmer for the Horse to lye on Boards than Stones: be fure to lay them level, for if they are laid higher before than behind (as they generally are in Ims and Horfecour/ers

courlers Stables, that their Herses may appear to more advantage in stature) his binder legs will swell, and he can never lye at eafe, because his hinder parts will be still flipping down. Lay your Plank crofsway, and not at length; and underneath them fink agood Trench, which receiving the Urine thro holes bord on purpose in the Planks, may convey it into some commenteceptacle. Let the ground behind him be raifed even with the Planks, that he may continually stand on a Level. Let the Floor behind him be pitcht with small Pebble; and be fure let that part of your Stable where the Rack Stands be well wainscotted. I would have two Rings placed at each fide of his Stall for his Halter to run through, which must have a light wooden Logger at the bottom of it, to poise it perpendicularly, but not so heavy as to sire the Horse, or to hinder him from eating. Instead of a fixt Manger I would have you have a Locker, or Drawer made in the Wainscote partition, for him to eat his Corn out of, which you may take in and out to cleanfe at pleafure. And whereas some may object the narrowness of the Room, you may remedy that at your pleafure, by allowing it to be the larger: the confidering the small Quantity of Provender, you are to put in at a time (as you fee hereafter) you need not make it very large. I would not advise you to make any Rack, but instead thereof (according to the Italian fashion) to give your Horse his Hay on the ground, upon the Litter; or elfe you may (if you please) nail some Boards in the form of a Trough, in which you may put his Hay, and the Boards will prevent him from trampling and spoiling it.

Some possibly may object, that this way of feeding him may spoil bis Crest, and that the blowing upon his Hay will soon make it nauseous to his Palate. For the spoiling bis Crest, it rather strengthens it, and makes it firm, whereas, on the contrary,

C

nal.

to life up his Head bigb to the Rack will make him withy-cragged; but the way forementioned he will feed as he lies, which will be for his eafe and fatisfaction. As to the quantity of his Hay, you are to give it him in fuch small Proportions (tho the oftner) that it may be eaten before his Bremb can in the least have tainted it. But the chief Reason why I advise you to this way is this, because the receiving his Hay down upon the ground, will help to cleanse his Head from any Rheum or Dose, which he may have gotten by negligence and over-exercife, and induce him by fneezing to throw out all manner of watry bimours that may annoy his head. If your Stable will allow, you may build feveral partitions of Boards, and at the head towards the Manger let them be advanc'd to that height, that one Horse may not molest or smell to another, and to divide the whole into as many equal Stands or Stalls as it will admit of, allowing to each froom enough to turn about in, and lye down at pleature. You may make one of your Stalls close, which may serve for your Groom to lie in, in case of a Match, Sickness, &c. and where he may burn Candle without the Horse's discerning of it. Behind the Horses I would have a Range of Presses made with Peges in them to hang up Saddles, Bridles, Housing-cloaths, &c. as likewife Shelves to place your Curry-combs, Brushes, Dusting-cloaths, Oyntments, Waters, or any other Necessaries upon.

Now that you may not camber your Stable with Oat-Bins, I think it necessary to tell you, that the best way is to make use of the Invention of Mr. Farmer of Tusmore in Oxfordshire. Which is done (according as it is described by the ingenuous Dr. Plor, in his Natural History of Oxfordshire) by letting the Oats down from a Loss above, out of a Vessel like the Hopper of a Mill, whence they fall into a square Pipelet into the wall, of about four inches Diago-

into the wall, but with its end so near the better tom that there shall never be above a Gallon, or other desireable quantity in the Cupboard at a time, which being taken away and given to the Horses, another Gallon presently succeeds; so that in the lower part of the Stable, where the Horses stand, there is not one inch of room taken up for the whole provision of Oats; which contrivance hath also this further convenience, that by this motion the Oats are kept constantly sweet, (the taking away one Gallon moving the whole Mass above) which laid up any otherwise in great quantities, grow frequently musty.

Now I would have you have two made, the one for the Oats, the other for your split Beans, and both let into your range of Presses; the Partitions may easily be made over head, to separate your Oats from your Beans. Or if you like not this way, you may convert it into an Hay-loft, or Chambers for your Grooms, which you fancy; but whatever you make choice of, let the Floor over head be eeis d, that no dust from above fall upon your Horses. But if you have the convenience of a Rick-yard, so that you keep your Hay abroad, it is the opinion of some knowing Horsemen, that to tuck it out of the Rick by little and little, as you have occasion to use it, makes it spend much better than it would otherwise do out of the Hay-Tallet.

As to the rest of its Perquisites, a Dung-yard, a Pump, a Conduit, are necessary; and if you can have that convenience, some Pond or running River near hand. But be sure, never let the front of your Stable be without Litter, that by frequent practice your Horse may learn to empty his Bladder when he is come from Airing, which will be both bealthful for your Horse, and profitable for your Land.

Having thus laid down a model for a Stable, my next

next basiness is to tell the Groom his duty; I mean not those which generally appertain to all Servants, such as are Obedience, Fidelity, Patience, Diligence, &cc. but those more essentially belonging to this Ossice. First then he must love his Horse in the next degree to his Master, and to endeavour by fair usage to acquire a reciprocal love from him again, and an exact Obedience, which if he know how to pay it to his Master, he will the better be able to teach it his Horse; and both the one and the other are to be obtain d by fair means, rather than by passion and outrage. For those who are so irrational themselves, as not to be able to command their own passions, are not fit to undertake the reclaiming of an Horse, (who by nature is an irrational Creature) from his.

He must then put in practice that Patience, which I would have him mafter of at all times, and by that and fair means he shall attain his end : For nothing is more tractable than a Horse, if you make use or kindness to win him. Next, Neatness is requisite in a Groom, to keep his Stable clean smept and in order; his Saddles, Housing-cloatbs, Stirrops, Leathers, and Girths, clean, and above all his Horse clean dres'd and rubb d. Diligence in the last place is requisite in a daily practice of his duty, and in observing any the smallest alteration, whether casual or accidental, either in his Countenance, as Symptoms of Sickness, or in his Limbs and Gate, as Lamene's, or in his Appetite, as for saking his Meat, and immediately upon any fuch discovery to feek out for Remedy. This is the substance of Groom's duty in general, and which I shall treat of more at large as occasion shall offer it felf.

In the mean time since Bartholomew-tide is now come, and the pride and strength of the Grass nipp'd by the severe Frosts and cold Dews which accompany this season, so that the Nourishment thereof rurneth into raw Crydities, and the Cold-

ness of the Night (which is an Enemy to the Horse) abates as much Flesh and Lust as he getteth in the Day, we will now take him up from Grass whilst his

no

La

th

10

fo

(1

White-

Coat lies smooth and sleek.

Having brought him home, let your Groom for that Night fet bim up in some secure and spacious House where he may evacuate his Body, and sobe brought to warmer keeping by Degrees; the next day stable him. But tho it be held as a general Rule amongst the generality of Grooms, not to cloath or dress their Horses till two or three days after their stabling, I can find no Reason but Custom to perfwade one to it; but it being little conducive either to the advantage or prejudice of the Horse, I shall leave it to their own Fancies: But as to the giving of Wheat-straw, to take up his Belly (a Custom use by Grooms generally at the Horse's first housing) I am utterly averse from it. For the Nature of Horse being bot and dry, if he should feed on Straw. which is so likewise, it would straighten his Gurs, and cause an Inflammation of the Liver, and by that means diftemper the Blood; and besides it would make his body focoffive, that it would cause a Retention of Nature, and make him dung with great pain and difficulty; whereas full feeding would expel the Excrements, according to the true intention and inclination of Nature. Therefore let moderate Airing, warm Cloathing, good old Hay, and old Corn, Supply the place of Wheat-straw.

To begin then methodically, that your Groom may not be to feek in any part of his Duty, I shall acquaint him, that his first business is, after he hath brought his Horse into the Stable, in the morning to water him, and then to rub over his body with a hard Wife a little moisten d, and then with a woollen cloath; then to cleanse his Sheath with his wet hand from all the Dust it had contracted during his Running, and to wash his Tard either with

White wine, or Water. Then he may trim him according to the manner that other Horses are trimm'd, except the inside of his Ears, which (though some still continue that sashion) ought not to be meddled with, for fear of making him tatch cold.

When this is done, let him have him to the Farrie, and there get a Set of Shoes answerable to the shape of his Foot, and not to pare his Foot that it may fit his Shoe, as too many Farriers do, not only in Brabant and Flanders, but here likewife. Be fure let his Feet be well open'd betwixt the Quarters and the Thrush, to prevent Hoof-binding: and let them be open'd fraight, and not fide-ways, for by that means in two or three Shoeings, his Her & (which are the strength of his Feet) will be cut quite away. Pare his Foot as bollow as you can, and then the Shoe will not press upon it. The Shoe must come near to the Heel, yet not be fet so close as to bruife it; nor yet to open a cocatch in his Shoes. if at any time he happen to over-reach, and so hazard the pulling them off, the breaking of the Hoof, or the bruising of his Heel. The Webbs of his Shoes must be neither too broad, nor too narrow, but of a middle size, about the breadth of an inch. with flop'd Spunger, and even with his Foot; for though it would be for the advantage of the Travelling Horse's Heel, to have the Shoe sit a little wider than the Hoof, on both fides, that the Shoe might bear his weight, and not his Foot touch the ground; yet the Hunter being often forc'd to gallop on rotten fpungy Earth, to have them larger would hazard laming; and pulling off his Shoes, as hath been shown before.

There is an Old Proverb, Before behind, and bebind before; that is, in the Fore-feet the Veins lie behind, and in the hinder-feet they lie before. Therefore let the Farrier take care that he prick him not, but leave a space at the Heel of the Fore-seet, and a space be ween the Nails at the Toe. When your Shoe is set on according to this Direction, you will find a great deal of his Hoos left to be cut off at his Toe. When that is cut off, and his Feet smooth d with a File, you will find him to standso firm, and his Feet will be so strong, that he will tread as boldly on Stones as on Carpet-ground.

By that time he is shod, I presume 'twill be time to water him, therefore take him to the River, and let him, after he has drank, stand some time in the Water, which will close up the boles (according to the opinion of some Horsemen) which the driving of the Nails made. Then have him gently home, and staving ty'd him up to the Rack, rub him all over Body and Legs with dry Straw; then stop his Feet with Cow-dung, sift him a Quarter of a Peck of clean old Oats, and give them to him; then litter him, and leave him a sufficient quantity of old Hay to serve him all Night, and so leave him till the next Morning.

CHAP IV.

How to order the Hunter for the first Fortnight.

Presume by this your Horse will have evacuated all his Grass, and his Shoes will be so well settled to his Feet, that he may be sit to be rid abroad to Air without danger of surbating. Therefore its now necessary that I begin in a more particular manner to direct our unexperienced Groom how he ought to proceed to order his Horse according to Art.

First then you are to visit your Horse early in the Morning, to wit, by Five a Clock if in Summer, or Six,

Six, if in Winter, and having put up his Litter under his Stall, and made clean your Stable, you shall then feel his Ribs, his Chale and his Flank, for those; are the chief signs by which you must learn to judge of the good, or evil state of your Horses body, as I

shall now shew you.

Lay your Hands on the lower part of his shortribs, near the Flank, and if you feel his Fat to be exceeding foft and tender, and to yield as it were under your hand, then you may be confident it is unfound, and that the least violent Labour or Travel will diffolve it: which being diffolvd, e're it be hardned by good Diet, if it be not then remov d by scouring, the fat or greafe belonging to the outward parts of the Body will fall down into his beels, and so cause goutiness and swelling. I need not trouble you with the outward figns of this Diftemper, they are evident to the Eye: but tho every Groom can inform you when a Horse is said to have the grease fallen into his beels, yet may be he cannot instruct you in the cause why Travel disperseth it for a time, and when the Horse is cold it returns with more violence than before. The reason therefore is this: The Greafe which by indifcreet exercife, and negligence in keeping, is melted and fallen into his Legs, standing still in the Stable cools and congeals, and so unites it felf with other ill humours, which flow to the affected part so that they stop the natural Circulation of the Blood, and cause inflamations and swellings as aforesaid; but Travel producing warmth in his Limbs, thaws as it were the congeal d humours, and disperses them throughout the Body in general; till Rest gives them opportunity to unite and fettle again. Now tho most Grooms are of opinion that this Distemper is not to be prevented by care or caution, that when it has once feiz'd a Horfe it remains incureable; yet they are miltaken in both, for by Art it may be pre-Dd 2 vented.

vented, and by Art cured: altho the cure is fo difficult to be wrought, that a Groom cannot be

too careful to prevent it.

As for the inward Grease which is in his Stomach, Baz, and Guts, if when once melted it be not remov'd by Art, Medicine, and good Feeding; it putrifies, and breeds those mortal Diseases which inevitably destroy the Horse, tho it be half a year, or three quarters of a year after. And this is generally the source of most Fevers, Surfeits, Consumptions, &c. and such other Distempers which carry off infinite numbers of horses, for want of the Farriers knowledge in the first Causes of the Distemper: which to prevent you shall follow the ensuing Directions.

After by feeling on his Ribs you have found his Fat foft and unfound, you shall feel his Chaul, and if you find any fleshy substance, or great round Kanels or Knots, you may be affured, that, as his outward Fat is unfound, fo inwardly he is full of glat and purfive, by means of gross and tough Humours cleaving to the hollow places of the Lungs, stopping fo his Windpipe, that his wind cannot find free passage, nor his Body be capable of much Labour. Therefore the chief end and intention of Art is by good found Food to enseame and barden his Fat, and by moderate Exercise, warm Cloathing, and gentle Physick to cleanse away his inward Glut, that his Wind, and other parts being freed from all grossness, his courage and activity in any labour or fervice may appear to be more than redoubled.

The same Observations you must make from his Flank, which you will find always to correspond with the Ribs and Chaule, for till he is drawn clean it will feel thick to your gripe, but when he is enfeamed, you will perceive nothing but two thin skins; and by these three Observations of the Ribs, Flank, and Chaps, you may, at any time, pass an in-

different

6

P

a

fo

a

it

ft

ty

a

le

ch

ath

different judgment of your Horses being in a good

condition or a bad.

When you have made these Remarks, you shall sift your Horse a handful or two (and no more) of good old sound Oats, and give them to him to preserve his Stomach from cold humours that might oppress it by drinking fasting, and likewise to make him drink the better. When he hath eaten them pull off his Collar, and rub his bead, face, ears, and rupe of the Neck with a clean Rubbing Cloth made of Hemp, for tis soveraign for the head, and dissolveth all gross and filthy Humours. Then take a small Snaffile, and wash it in fair water, and put it on his head, drawing the Reins thro the Headstall, to prevent his slipping it over his head, and so tye him up to the Rack, and dress him thus.

First in your Right hand take a Curry-comb suitable to your Horses skin, (as if your Horse coas be bort and smooth, then must the Curry-comb be blunt, but if long and rough, then must the Teeth be long and sharp, standing with your Face opposite to the Horses, hold the left cheek of the Headstal in your left hand, and Curry him with a good hand from the Root of his Ears, all along his Neck to his Shoulders: then go over all his Body with a more moderate hand, then Curry his Buttocks down to the hinder Cambrel with a hard hand again: then change your hand, and laying your right Arm over hisBack, join your right fide to his left, and fo Curry him gently from the top of his Withers, to the lower part of his Shoulder, ever now and then terching your stroke over the left side of his Breast, and so Curry him down to the Knee, but no further: Then Curry him all under his Belly, near his Fore bowels, and in a word all over very well, his Legs under the Knees and Cambrels only esapred. And as you drefs the left fide, so must you the right likewise.

Now by the way take notice, whether your Horse keeps a riggling up and down, biting the Rackstass, and now and then offering to snap at you, or lifting up his Leg to strike at you, when you are Currying him: if he do, 'tis an apparent sign of his displeasure by reason of the sharpness of the Comb, and therefore you must silethe Teeth thereof more blunt: but if you perceive that he plays these or such like tricks thro Wantonness and the pleasure he takes in the Friction, then you shall ever now and then correct him with your Whip

gently for his Waggishness.

This Currying is only to raise the dust, and there. fore after you have thus carried him, you must take either a Horse-tail (nail'd to an handle) or a clean dusting Cloath of Cotton, and with it strike off the loofe duft rais'd by your Curry-comb. Then dres him all over with the French-Brush, both Head, Body, and Legs to the very Fetlocks, observing always to cleanse the Brush from the filth it gathers from the bottom of the Hair, by rubbing it on the Currycomb. Then dust him the second time. Then with your hand wet in water rub his body all over, and as near as you can leave no loofe bairs behind you: and with your wet bands pick and cleanse his Eyes, Ears, Nostrils, Sheath, Cods, and Tuel, and fo rub him till he be as dry as at first. Then take an Hair-patch, and rubhis Body all over, but especially his Fore-bowels under his Belly, his Flank, and be tween his hinder Thighs. Lastly, wipe him over with a fine white Linnen Rubber.

When you have thus dreft him, take a large Saldle cloath (made on purpose,) that may reach down to the Spuring place, and lap it about his Body; then clap on his Saddle, and thow a Cloath over him for fear of catching cold. Then take two Roperos Straw twisted extream hard together, and with them rub and chase his Legs from the Knees and

Cam-

Cambrels downwards to the ground, picking his Fetlock-joints with your hands from Dust, Filth and Scabs. Then take another Hair-patch, kept on purpose for his Legs, (for you must have two) and

with it rub and dress his Legs also.

b

m of

nd

Now by the way let me give you this necessary caution, be sure whilst you are dressing your Horse let him not stand naked, his Body being exposed to the penetration of the Air, whilst you are telling a Banbury story to some Comrades, that accidentally come into the Stable, as I have seen some Grooms, that would stand solling over their Horses, when they were uncloath'd, and trisse away their time by listning to some idle discourse; but when you have stripped him fall to your Business roundly, without any intermitsion till you have saddled him, and thrown his Cloth over him.

And the reason why I advise you to throw a Cloth over him, whilst you are dressing his Legs is this; that altho 'tis ageneral Ruleamongst Grooms, that an Horse cannot take cold whilst he is dressing, yet is that saying to be understood only of his Body, not of his Legs; for the rubbing of his Legs will

not prevent catching cold in his Body.

When this is done, you shall with an Iron Picker pick his Feet clean, (that the stopping of his Feet may not be a means of his taking up Stones in them) comb down his Mane and Tail with a wet Mane-comb, then spirt some Beer into his Mouth, and

to draw him out of the Stable.

Being mounted, rake or walk him to some running River, or fresh clear Spring, distant a Mile or two from your Stable, (which will refine his Mouth which he may have lost, during his Summers Running, and will likewise settle his Body upon his Rake) and there let him drink about half his draught at first, to prevent raw Crudities arising in his Stomach. After he hath drunk bring him calmly out of the Water, and so ride him gently for a while; for nothing

thing is more unbeseeming a Horseman, than to thrust his Horse into a swift Gallop, as soon as he comes out of the Water, for these three Caules, First, it not only bazards the breaking of his Wind. but also affuredly endangers the incording, or bursting of him. Secondly, it begets in him an ill habit of running away, as foon as he hath done drinking. Laftly, the foreight he hath of fuch violent exercife, makes him oftentimes refuse to quench his Thirft: and therefore (as I faid) first walk him a little way, and then put him into a gentleGallop for 5 or 6 fcore, then give him wind: and after he hath been rak d a pretty space, then shew him the Water again, and let him drink what he pleases, and then gollop him again; and thus do till he will drink no more, but be fure to observe always that you gallop him not fo much as either to chafe, or sweat him.

Now by the way observe, that in his galloping after Water, (after the first weeks enseaming,) if sometimes you give him a watering Course sharply, of twelve or twenty score, (as you find your Horse,) it will quicken his spirits, and cause him to gallop more pleasantly, and teach him to manage his Limbs more nimbly, and to

stretch forth his Body largely.

When your Horse hath done drinking, then rake him to the top of the next Hill, (if there be any near your Watring place) for there in the morning the Air is purest, or else to some such place, as he may gain best advantage both of Sum and Air, and there air him a foot-pace an bour, or so long as you (in your discretion) shall think sufficient for the state of his Body, and then ride him bome.

During the time of your Horses airing, you will easily perceive several marks of your Horses satisfaction, and the pleasure which he takes in this Exercise. For he will gape, yawn, and as it were sure his Body. If he offer to stand still, to dung, or stale, which his Airing will provoke, be sure give him leave, as

likewise to stare about, neigh, or listen after any noise.

Now Airing brings several Advantages to the

Horse, First, it purifies the Blood, (if the Air be clean and pure) it purges the Body from many gross and suffocating burnours, and so burdens and enseams the Horses Fat, that it is not near so liable to be dissolv'd by ordinary Exercise. Secondly, it teaches him how to let his Wind rake equally and keep time with the other Actions or Motions of his Body. Thirdly, it sharpens the Appetite, and provokes the Stomach (which is of great advantage both to Himters and Gallopers, who are apt to lose their Stomach through excels or want of Exercise): for the sharpness of the Air will drive the Horses natural Heat from the exterior to the interior parts, which beat by furthering Concostion creates an Appetite. Lastly, it increases Lust and Cou-

interior parts, which beat by furthering Concoction creates an Appetite. Lastly, it increases Lust and Congge in him, provided he be not too early air d.

But whereas Mr. Markbam, in his Way to yet wealth.

But whereas Mr. Markbam, in his Way to get wealth, quar. p. 44. directs, if your Horse be very fat to air him before Sun-rife, and after Sun-fetting; and that the Author of the Gentleman's Jockey, oct. p. 14. fays. that nothing is more wholfome than early and late Airings; I think the contrary may be made out from Experience. For in this Art all things that any ways hinder the strength and vigor of Nature, are to be avoided; now, that extremity of Cold, and being out early and late do fo, is evidently feen by Horses that run abroad all Winter, which however birdily bred, and kept with the best care and Fodder. yet cannot by any means be advanc'd to fo good case in Winter, as an indifferent Pasture will raise them to in Summer. And this holding true of the Nocturnal Colds, must needs be verified in some proportionate measure of the Morning and Evening Dews, and that piercing Cold which is observed to be more intense at the opening and close of the day, than any part of the Night. Besides that, the Dews and moist Rimes do as much Injury to a Horse, as the sharpest Colds

Colds or Frosts: fince (as I have found by experience) a Horse any ways inclinable to Catarrhs, Rheums, or any other cold Distempers, is apt to have the humors augmented, and the disease most sensibly in-

creas'd by these early and late Airings.

But if he be not had forth to air till the Sunbe risen, (as you must cast to have him drest, and
ready to lead forth against that time) his spirits will
be chear'd and comforted by that universal Comforter
of all living Creatures; and indeed all Horses naturally desire to enjoy the Sun's warmth, as you may
observe by those Horses which lie out all Night, who
assoon as the Sun is risen, will repair to those places
where they may have the most benefit of his Beams,
and by them be in part reliev'd from the coldness
of the foregoing Night. And besides the benefit of
the Sun, the Air will be so mild and temperate, as it
will rather invigorate than prey upon his spirits, and

more increase his Strength than impair it.

Neither, tho we disallow of Early and Late airneed we be at a loss to bring down our Horses fat, and from being pursive, and too high in Flesh. to reduce him to cleannels, and a more moderate state of Body: For if you do but observe this one Rule of keeping a fat Horse so much longer out at a time both Morning and Evening, you will undoubtedly obtain your end by fuch long Airing join'd with true found Heats, which you may expect indeed, but will never find from those that are shorter how early and late foever: for this Method joyn'd with good feeding is the best Prescription can be given in this case, and 'tis from the length of your Airings only, that you must hope to bring your Horse to a perfect Wind, and true Courage. And therefore a Horse that is high in Flesh, is a fitter subject to work on, than one that is low, because he is better able to endure Labour, whereas the other must of neceffity b: to favoured in training, to improve his Strength

Strength and Flesh, that he is in danger (without he be under the care of a very Skilful Keeper) of proving thick winded for want of true Exercise in

Training.

When you are returned from Airing, and are difmounted, lead your Horse on the Straw, which (as I told you before) should always lye before the Stable-door; and there by whistling and stirring up the Litter under his Belly will provoke him to stall, which a little practice will bring him to, and is advantageous for the Horse bealth, and the keeping of your Stable clean; then lead him into his Stall (which ought likewise to be well littered) and having ty d up his head to the empty Rack, take off his Saddle, rub his Body and Legs all over with the French-brush, then with the Hair-patch, and last of all with the Woollen-cloath.

Then you shall cloath him with a Linnen cloath next to his Body, and over that a Canvas cloath, and both made so fit as to cover his Breast, and to come pretty low down to his Legs, which is the Turkish way of Cloathing, who are the most curious People (says the Duke of Newcastle) in keeping their Horses, and esteem them the most of any Nation. Over the forementioned put a Body-cloath of six, or eight Straps, which is better than a Sircingle, and Pad stuft with wifps, because this keeps his Belly in

shape, and is not so subject to hurt him.

Now these Cloaths will be sufficient for him at his first stabling, because being imm'd to the cool Air he will not be so apt to take cold, the weather likewise at that season being indifferently warm; but when sharp weather approaches, and that you find his Hair rise about his ontward parts that are uncloathed, as Neck, Gascoins, &c. then add another Cloath, which ought to be of Woollen; and for any Horse bred under this Climate, and kept only for ordinary hunting, this is cloathing sufficient.

Now.

Now the design of cloathings is only by their help join'd to the warmth of the Stable, and the Litter (which must always lye under the Horse) to keep his Body in such a moderate Natural Heat, as shall be sufficient to affish Nature, that skilful Physician in expelling her Enemies, by dissolving those raw and gross humours which are subject to among the Horse, and which would very much prejudice him if they were not removed; which warm cloathing does in a great measure by dispersing them into the outwards parts, and expelling them by sweating as he sleeps and lyes down, which will be a means to purge his Body, and keep it clean from glut and

redundant humours.

But yet (as in all things the golden mean is best) there is a mean to be observed too here: for as too few Cloaths will not affift Nature Sufficiently in the expulsion of her Enemies, so too many will force her too much, and cause weakness in your Horse by too violent sweatings. Therefore you must have a care of following the Example of fomeignorant Grooms, who because they have acquired a fulse Reputation by living in some Noblemans or Gentlemans Service, that are noted Sportsmen, think they are able to give Laws to all their Fraternity, and therefore without any reason heap Multiplicity of Cloaths on the Horse, as if they meant to bury him in Woollen. You must know, that both the temperature of the weather, and the state of his body are to be observ'd; and that all Horles are not to be cloathed alike: Your fine skin'd Horses, as the Barb, Turk, Spanish-borse, &c. require more clothes than our English common Horses, that are bred in a colder climate, and have naturally thicker Skins, and a longer Coat. But that you may not er, I have told you already how you are to cleath your Horse, and therefore shall only add this one General Rule, That a Rough Coar thews want of Cloaths, and a Smooth Coat Cloathing

ing sufficient: ever observing, that by his Countenance, his Dung, and other outward Characters (which I shall by and by give you more at large) you perceive your Horse to be in health, and yet notwithstanding your Horses Coat still stares, you must add more cloaths till it lye; as on the other hand if it will lye with the affiftance of a fingle Linnen Cloath it is

fufficient.

But if when he has been in keeping some time, you perceive him apt to fweat in the Night, tis a fign that he is over fed, and wants exercise: but if he sweat at his first coming from Grass, you must know that there is cause rather to encrease, than diminish the Cloaths I have allotted at his first Houfing: for it proceeds from the foul burnours which oppress Nature, and when by exercise they are evacuated, Nature will cease working, and he will continue in a temperate state of Body, all the year after.

When be is cloath'd up, pick his Feet clean with an Iron Picker, and wash his Hoofs clean with a Spunge dipt in fair water, and then dry them with Straw or a Limen cloath, and if there be occasion, and that you find your Horses Legs dirty, you may bathe them likewise, only you must be sure to rub them dry before you go out of your Stable, then leave him on his Snaffle for an hour, or more, which will affift

his Appetite.

When an Hour is expired you shall come to him again, and having tuck'd an bandful of Hay, and dufted it, you shall let your Horse tease it out of your hand till he hath eaten it; then pull off his Bridle, and having rubb'd his Head and Neck clean, with the Hempen-cloth, as before, pull his Ears, and ftop his Nostrils to make him snore, which will help to bring away the moist Humours which oppress his Brain, and then put on his Collar, and give him a Quarter of Oats clean dreft, in a Seive, having first made his Locker, or Manger clean with a Wisp of Straw, and a Cloth. Whilft

Whilst he is eating his Corn, you shall sweep out your Stable, and see that all things are neat about him, and turning up his Cloaths you shall rub his Fillets, Buttocks, and Gascoins over with the bairpatch, and after that with a Woollen-cloth; then spread a clean Flamel Fillet-cloth over his Fillets and Buttocks (which will make his Coat lye smooth) and turn down his Housing-cloaths upon it. Then anoing his Hoofs round from the Crones to the Toe with this Ointment, viz.

Take four Ounces of Venice Turpentine, three Ounces of Bees wax, two Ounces of the best Ressim, one pound of Dogs-grease, half a pint of Train Oil. Melt all these Ingredients (except the Turpentine) together, being melted remove them from the Fire, and then put in the Turpentine, and keep it stirring till all be well incorporated, then put it in a Gally-por, and when it is cold cover it close from

duft, and referve it for ufe.

After this pick his Feet with an Iron Picker, and flog them with Cow-dung; and by this time your Horle (if he be not a very flow Feeder) will have eater his Oats, which if you find he does with a good Stomach, fift him another Quart, and throw them to him, and so feed him by little and little, whilft he eats with an Appetite; but if he fumbles with his

Corn, then give him no more at that time.

And this I think a better Direction than to prescribe a set quantity of Provender, as all Authors I have yet met with have done. For without doubt no cotain quantity of Meat can be allotted for all sorts of Horses, any more than for all sorts of Men; and therefore proportion the quantity to the Horses Appetite: but be sure at all times give him his full feeding, for that will keep his Body in better state and temps, and increase his strength and vigor. Whereas on the contrary, to keep your Horse always sharp-set, is the ready way to procure a Surfeit, if at any time he

ingly.

can come at his fill of Provender, according to the common Proverb, Two brugery Meals makes the third a Glutton. But the you perceive he gather Flesh too fast upon such bome-feeding; yet be sure not to stint him for it, but only increase his Labour, and that

will affift both his Strength and Wind.

When thefe things are done, you shall duft a pretty quantity of Hay, and throw it down to him on his Liner, after you have taken it up under him; and then shutting up the Windows and Stable-door, leave him till one a clock in the Afternoon; at which time you shall come to him, and having rubb'd over his Head, Neck, Fillets, Buttocks, and Legs, as before, with the Hair-patch and Woollen-cloath, you shall feed him as before, and then leave him till the time of his Evening watring, (which should be about three of the clock in Winter, and four in Summer) and then having put back his foul Litter, and fwept away that and his Dung, you shall dress and saddle him as before, and mounting him you shall rake him to the water, and after drinking and galloping you shall air himalong by the River side, till you think it time to go home; then order him in all points, as to rubbing, feeding, flopping his Feet, oc. as you did in the morning; and having fed him at 6 a clock, be fure feed him at gain about 9; and having litter d him well, and thrown him Hay enough to ferve him for all Night, you shall leave him till the next Morning. And as you have spent this day, so you must order him in all respects, for a fortnight together, and by that time his Flesh will be so bardned, and his Wind so improv'd; his Mouth will be fo quicken'd, and his Gallop brought to fo good a stroke, that he will be fit to be put to moderate Hunting,

Now during this Fortnights keeping you are to make feveral Objervations, as to the Nature and Diffection of your Horse, the temper of his Body, the temper of his Digestion, &c. and order him according

ingly. As first, if he be of a churlish Disposition you must reclaim him by Severity; if of a loon temper, you must win him by Kindnefs. Second you must observe whether he be a foul Feeder, or a nice Stomach; if he be quick at his Meat, and a tain a good Stomach, then 4 times of full feeding, in a day and a nights space, is sufficient; but if he be a Sunder Feeder, and slow at his Meat, then you must give but a little at once, and often, as about every two hours, for fresh Meat will draw on his Appetite; and you must always leave a little Meat in his Locker for him to eat at his own leifure betwixt times of his feeding; and when at any time you find any left, you shall sweep it away, and give him fresh, and expose that to the Sum and Air, which will prevent mustines and reduce it to its first sweetness, before was blown upon.

Now as to the manner of feeding, you may share his Stomach by change of Meat, as giving one Mea clean Outs, another Outs and filit-Beans, and (when you have brought him to eat Bread) you may give him another meal of Bread, always, observing to give him ofteneft that which he likes beft; or if you please you may give him both Corn and Bread at the fame time, provided you give him that last which he ears best, and which has the best Digestion.

'Tis observ'd of some Horses, that they are of so bot a Constitution, that without they may drink at every bit they cannot eat, and those Horses usually carry no Belly ; in this case therefore you must let a Pail of Water stand continually before them, or at least offer them Water at Noon, besides what they

fetch abroad at their ordinary times.

Next you are to observe the nature of his Digefion, that is, whether he retains his Food long, which is the fign of a bad Digestion; or whether nature does expel the Dung more frequently; which if he do, and that his Dung be loofe and bright, 'tis a ligh

of a good habit of Body; but if he dung hard, and feldam, then on the contrary is a fign of a dry Body; and therefore to remedy this, you shall once in a day give him a bandful or two of Oats, well wash do in good strong Ale, for this will loosen his Body, and keep it moil, and you will find it also good for his Wind, notwithstanding the opinion of some to the contrary.

C H A P. V.

Of the Second Fortnights Diet, and of his first. Hunting, and what Chases are most proper to Train him.

By that time you have from this Fortnight, according to the foregoing Rules, your Horse will be in a pretty good frate of Body; for the gross humors, will be dry d in his Body, and his Flesh will begin to be harden'd, which you will perceive (as I told you a fift) by his Chanl, his short Ribs, and his Flank; for the Kernels under his Chaps will not feel so gross as a first they did, his flesh on his short Ribs will not held of foft and loofe, nor the thin part of his Flank so thick as at his first housing; so that now you may without hazard adventure to hum him moderately.

But before I proceed, I shink it necessary to clear one point, which I have heard much discuss dainongst Horsemen, which is What fort of Chase is most proper for the training of a young Horse? some being of one Opinion, some of another. For some would have a Horse, which is design deither for a Buck-bunter or sometime, us defrom the beginning to the Chase which they are design defor. Others think those which they are design defor. Others think those chases too violent for a young Horse, and therefore that to train him after Harriers; and of this Opinion I must own my self to be, since Experience, has

has fully shewn me the Advantages of the one, and the Inconveniences of the other. Now to prove this Affertion, let us take a slight view of the several Chases which are commonly used by our Nobility and Gentry, where the Horse is made a Companion and Member of the Sport, and they are these; the Stay, Buck

Hind, Fox; Otter, and Hare.

As for the three first here mentioned, as there's not much difference in the hunting of them, fo the Inconveniences from each chase are in a manner the same also. For which foever you bunt, 'tis either in Covert, or at force. Now if Deer be hunted in a Pork they usually chuse the most woody parts of it, as a Refuge from the pursuits of their Enemies, which is both unpleasant to the Rider and troublesome to the Horse, to follow the Dogs thro the thick Bushes; and besides, usually the ground in Parks is full of Mos banks, Trenches, &c. which is dangerous for a your Horse to gallop on, till he has attained to some perfession in his Stroke. But if they be turned out of the Park, and be hunted at force, you will find, that as foon as you have unbarbour'd or rous'd them, the will immediately make out end ways before the Hounds five or fix, nay sometimes ten Miles; they following in full Cry to swiftly, that a Horse month be compell'd to run up and down bill without any intermission; leaping Hedge, Ditch, and Dale, nay often croffing Rivers, to the great danger of the Rida, as well as of the Horse. So that in my opinion tisaltogether improper to put a young Horse to such violent labour at the first, till by practice and degrees he hath been made acquainted with bard fervice.

Now besides the swiftness and violence of this Chase, and the danger of cracking his Wind, and bursing his Billy; besides the straining of his Limbs by such desperate Riding, and the creating in a young Horse a loath sommels to his Labour, by undergoing such violent and unusual service; the seasons for these

Chales

Chases beginning about Midsummer, and ending about Holy-Rood-tide, which is that part of the year in which the Sun's beat is excessive, and so scorches the Earth, that a violent Chase would hazard the melting his Grease, and the weight of the Rider, by reason of the bardness of the Ground, would occasion Foundring, Splents, and Windgalls, insomuch that in short time

the Horse would prove altogether weeless.

But here I cannot but defire to be rightly underfood, fince the I object against these Chases as improper for young Horles, yet I do not mean that Horles should be excluded this Recreation; but I would have those which are imploy'd herein, to be Horses of fay'd years, and by long practice and experience have been rightly train'd to Hunting, 'Young Horses (as the Duke of Newcastle fays) being as subject to Diseases young Children, and therefore he advises any man that would buy a Horse for use in his ordinary occasions, as for Journeys, Hawking, or Hunting never to buy a Horse until the mark be out of bis Mouth, and if he be found of Wind, Limb, and Sight, he will last you Eight or Nine years with good keeping, and never fail you; and therefore (purfues he) I am always ready to buy for fuch purpofes an old Nag of some Huntsman, or Falconer, that is found, and that is the ufeful Nag, for he gallops on all grounds, leaps over Hedges and Ditches; and this will not fail you in your Journey, nor any where, and is the only Nag of use for Pleasure or Journey. Thus far the Duke. And if it may be permitted to add to his advice, I would have them frait bodied, clean timbred Nagy, fuch as may be light, nimble and of middle stature, for those Hories are not near to subject to Lameness as those of bulk and frength, the causes whereof have been already declared.

The next Chase proposed was that of the Fox, which altho it be a Recreation much in se, and highly

highly applauded by the generality of the Nability and Gentry; yet with submillion to their judgment never could find that pleasure in it which has been represented to me by some of its Admirers: and I am fure it is inconvenient for the training of a your Horse, since it is swift without respite, and of the continuance, both which, as I have already flew'd are distaftful to him; but the greatest Inconvenience that happens to a Horse in this Chase is this; that when a Foxis unkennell'd, he feldom or never betakes himself to a champion Country, but remains in the Strongest Coverts, and in the thickest Woods; fo that a Horse can but seldom enjoy the pleasure of accompa nying the Hounas, without hazarding being flubb dor other as dangerous Accidents. The fitteft Horfes for this Chafe are Horses of great strength and ability, tince this Chase begins at Christmas, which is the worst time of Riding, and ends at our Lady-day, when the Ground is best for it.

The next Chase to be spoken of is the Otion, which alth ugh it may seem delightful to some, yet cannot by any means think it convenient for a Horse: for he that will truly pursue this Amphibian sport, must often swim his Horse to the equal bazard,

to

0 0

of

Both of the Rider and the Horse.

But to conclude with the last, and the best of Chases, and that is the Hare. It is in my opinion the most pleasant and delightful Chase of any whatsoever, and the most beneficial for training a young Horse. It is swift, and of some indurance, like that of the Fox, but far more pleasant to the Horse, because Hare commonly run the Champion Country; and the scene not being so bot as the Foxes, the Dogs are often at default, and by that means the Horse has many Sobbs, whereby he recovers Wind, and regains new trength. This Chase begins at Michaelmas, and lasts till the End of February.

Now the best Digs to bring your Horse to perfe

Gion of Wind and Speed, are your fleet Northern Hounds; for they, by means of their bard-running, will draw him up to that extraordinary speed, that he will not have time to loiter, and by continual pradice will be fo inner d and babituated to the violence of their Speed, that in a short time he will be able to ride on all sorts of Ground, and be at such command upon the hand, that he will strike at what rate you please, and three quarters speed will be less trouble-iome to him than a Canterbury gallop.

I have often thought this one of the Reasons why your Northern Beeeders for the generality excel thous of the South; since certainly the speed of their Hounds contributes much to the Excellence of their Horses, and makes them endure a four mile Course withour Sobbs, which some Horsemen call Whole-Running: but of this more in another place.

The time being now come that he may be bunted, you shall order him on his days of Rest in all points, as to his Dressing, hours of Feeding, Watring, &c. as in the first Fortnight afore directed; only since his Labour is now to be increased, you must endeavour to increase his Strength and Courage likewise; and this will be effected by adding to his Oats a third part of clean old Beans spelted on a Mill, and as an overplus to allow him Bread made after this manner.

Take four Pecks of clean old Beans, and two Pecks of Whest, and grind them together, and fift the Meal thro a Meal-lieve of an indifferent fineness, and knead it with warm water and good flore of Barm, and let it lie an hour or more to swell, for by that means the Bread will be the lighter, and have the easier and quicker Digettion; after which being with a Brake, or any other way exceedingly well-kneaded, make it up into great Houshold Peck-loaves, which will be a means to avoid Crust, and prevent its drying too loon; take them throughly, and let them stand a good while in the Oven to soke, then draw them, and E e 4

turning the bottoms upwards let them stand to cool. When your Bread is a day old you may venture to feed your Horse with it, having sirst chips away the Crust; and sometimes giving him Bread, sometimes Oats, and now and then Oats and spelted Beans, according as you find his stomach; you need not fear but such Feeding will bring him into as good condi-

tion as you need defire for Ordinary Hunting.

When your Bread is prepar'd, and your first Fortnight expir'd, you must then pitch upon a Day for his first going abroad after the Dogs, and the Day be. fore you burst you must always order him after this manner. In the morning proceed in your usual method as before, only observe that day to give him no Beans, because they are hard of digestion, but give most of Bread if you can draw him on to eat it, because it is more nourishing than Oats; and after your Evening Watering, which ought to be fomewhat earlier than at other times, give him only a little Hay out of your hand, and no more till the next day that he returns from Hunting: and to preyent his eating his Litter, or anything elfe but what you give him, you shall instead of a Muzzle put on a Cavezone join'd to a headstall of a Bridle, being lin'd with double Leather for fear of burting him, and tying it fo fraight as to hinder his Eating; and this will prevent Sickaels in your Horse, which is incident to some Horses when their Muzzle is set on, notwithstanding the invention of the Lattice-window, now adays fo much in use; but this way your Horses Nostrils are fully at liberty, and he will never prove fick. But as to his Corn, give him his meals, both after his Watering, and at nine a clock, at which time be fure to litter him very well, that he may the better take his Rest, and leave him for that Night.

The next morning come to him very early, as about four a clock, and having dress'd a Quarter of a Peck of Oats very clean, put them into his Locker, and

pour

pour into it a Quart of good firong Ale, and affer having mixt the Oats and Ale very well give him shem to eat, whilft you put back his Dung and foul Litter, and make clean his Stable, but if he will not eat wash'd Oats then give him dry; but be sure put no Beans to them. When he has done earing, Bridle him, and the him up to the Ring, and dress him. When he is dress'd faddle him; then throw his Cloth over him, and let him fland till the Hounds are ready to go forth. But be fure not to draw your Saddle Girths straight till you are ready to mount, lest by that means he become fick. But generally old Horfes are fo crofty, that when an ignorant Groom goes to girt them up bard, they will fretch out their Bodies to fuch a bigness by holding their Wind (on purpose to gain ease after they are girt) that 'twill appear difficult to girt them; but afterwards they let go their Wind, and their Bodies fall again.

When the Hounds are unkernell d (which should not be till Sun-rising) go into the Field along with them and rake your Horse up and down gently till a Have be started; always observing to let him smell to other Horses Dang, (if he be desirous of it) which will provoke him to empty himself, and let him stand still when he does so: and if you meet with any dead Fog, Rushes, or such like, ride him upon them, and by whistling provoke him to empty his Bladder.

When the Hare is started, you are not to follow the Hounds as the other Hunters do, but to consider, that this being the first time of your Horses bunting, he is not so well vers'd in the different sorts of Grounds as to know how to gallop smoothly, and with ease on them; and therefore you are not to put him as yet to above balf his speed, that he may learn to carry a staid Body, and to manage his Legs both upon Fallows, and Greenswarth. Neither are you to gallop him often, nor any long time together, for fear of discouraging him, and breeding in

thim a dillike to this Exercife; but observing to cross the Fields still to your best advantage, you shall make in to the Hounds at every default, and still keep your Horse (as much as these Rules will allow you) within the cry of the Dogs, that he may be used to their Cry; and you will find that in a very short time he will take such delight and pleasure in their Musick, that he will be desirous to follow them

more eagerly.

Now if at any time the Chase be led over any Carpet ground, or fandy High-way, on which your Horse may lay out his Body smoothly, you may there gallop him for a quarter or balf a mile, to teach him to lay out his Body, and to gather up his Legs, to enlarge and shorten his Stroke, according to the different Earths he gallops on, as if on Green-warth, Meadow, Moore, Heath, &c. then to floop, and run more on the Shoulders; if amongst Mole-bills, or over high ridges and furrows then to gallop more roundly, and in less compass, or according to the vulgar phrase towo up and two down, that thereby he may frike his Furrow clear, and avoid fetting his Fore-feet in the Bottom of it, and by that means fall over; but by this way of galloping, tho he should happen to fet his Feet in a furrow, yet carrying his body fo round and resting on the band in his gallop, would prevent his falling; and to this perfection nothing but use, and such moderate Exercise can bring him.

According to these Rules you may spend your Time in Hunting till about three a clock in the Asternoon, at which time you shall have him home in a foot pace as you came out in the Morning, and be fure that he be cool before you bring him out of the Field; and as you are going home consider with your self, whether or no he hath sweat a little, (for you must not sweat him much the first time) but if not, then gallop him gently on some Skelping Earth, till he sweat at the Roots of his Ears, a little on his

Neck,

Neck. and in his Flank, but it must be done of his own voluntary motion, without the compulsion of Whip and Spur: and then when he is cool as afore-said, have him home and Stable him, and be sure avoid walking him in hand to cool him, for fear he cool too fast, or washing him, for fear of causing an abstruction of the natural course of the Humours, (which are thought by some Horsemen to abound most in Winter), and by that means cause an inflamation in his Legs, which is the Parent of the Scratches.

When you set him up in his Stall (which must be well litter d against his coming home) tye up his Head to the Ring with the Bridle, and then rub him well with dry Straw all over both Head, Neck, Fore bowels, Belly, Flank, Buttocks and Legs; and afterwards rub his Body over with a dry cloth till there be not a wet bair left about him, then take off his Saddle and rub, the place where the Saddle stood dry likewise, and so cloath him with his ordinary Cloaths with all speed, for fear lest he take cold; and if you think him too bot throw a spare cloath over him, to prevent his cooling too fast, which you may about when you please, and so let him stand on his Snassle two bows or more, sirring him with your Whip now and then in his Stall, to keep his Legs and Foints from growing stiff.

When that time is expired, and you think it may be throughout cold, then come to him, and having transhis Exide, rubbed his Head, and pick d his Feet from Dirt and Gravel which he may have gathered abroad, put on his Collar, and fifthim a Quart, or three Pints of Oats, and mix with them, a handful of clean dofted Hempfeed, and give them to him; but give him not above the quantity prescribed, for scar of taking away his stomath, which will be very much weakned through the heat of his body, and wast of water. Then remove the spare cloth (if you have not done it before) for sear of keeping him bot too long;

and when he has eaten his Corn, throw a pretty quantity of Hay clean dufted, on his Litter, and let him reft two or three Hours, or thereabours.

Whilst you are absent from him, you shall prepare him a good Malh, made of half a Peck of Malt well ground, and water that is boiling bot, observing to out no more water than your Malt will sweeten, and your Horse will drink, and then fir them together with a Rudder, or flick, and then cover it over with cloths, till the water has extracted the frength of the Malt, which will be evident to your taffe and touch, for 'twill be almost as fweet as Honey, and feel ropy like Birdlime; then when it is cold, that you can scarce perceive it to smoak, offer it to your Horse, but not before, left the fear ascend into his Noftrils, and thereby offend him with its scent; and when he has drunk the water, let him if he please eat the Malt alfo. But if he refuse to drink, yet you must give him no other water that night, but by placing it in one Corner at the bead of his Stall, in fuch manner that he may not throw it down, (which you may effect by nailing a Spar across before the Bucker) let it stand by him all Night, that he may drink at his pleafure.

Now you will find this Mash, or (as some call it) Horse-Caudle, very beneficial to your Horse on several Accounts; for it will comfort his Stomach, and keep his Body in a due temperate beat after his days Hunting; it will cleanse and bring away all manner of Grease and gross humours, which have been dissolved by this Days labour, and the fume of the Makegrains, after he has drunk the water, will disperse watry bumours, which might otherwise annoy his beads, and is allowed by all Horsemen to be very advantageous on

that account.

When he has eaten his Mash, then striphim of his Clothes, and run him over with your Corry-comb, French Brash, Hair Patch, and Wollen Cloab, and Clothe

well as his Bady of all Dirt and Filth which may annoy them, as you have been directed in Dreffing; then remove him into another Stall (that you may not wet his Litter) and bathe his Legs all over from the Knees with warm Beef-broth, or, which is better, with a quart of warm Urine, in which four Ounces of Salt-Perer hath been diffolv'd; then rub his Legs dry as when you came in from Water, fer him into his Stall, and give him a good Heme-feeding of Oats, or Bread, (which he likes belt) or both, and having shook good store of Litter under him, that he may rest the better, and thrown him Haylenough for all hight on it shut up your Stable close, and leave him

to his Rest till morning.

The next morning come to him betwixtfix and feven a clock, for that is time enough, because the Morningsreft is as pleafant and refreshing to the Horse as it is to a Man, for then the meat being concocted the fleep is more fweet, and the brain is at that time more thin and pure. If he be laid diffurb him not, but flay till he rifes of his own accord, (and to know this you ought to have a private peep-bole) but if he be rifen, then go to him, and the first thing you must do is to put back his Dung from his Litter, and to observe what Colour it is of: observe whether it be greafie; and Shining outwardly, and break it with your Feet, that you may fee whether it be fo imwardly; for if it be greafie and foul either within or without, (which you may know by its outward shining, and by spots like Soap, which will appear within) or if it appear of a dark brown colour, and barder than it was, it is a fign that your former days hunting was beneficial to him, by diffolving part of the inward glut which was within him; and therefore the next time you hunt you must increase his labour bata little. But if you perceive no fuch Symptoms, but that his Dung appears bright, and rather foft than bark, without greafe, and in a word that it holds the same pale yellow colour it did before you hunted him, then its a sign that days Hunting made no diffestion, but that his Body remains in the same state still, and therefore the next days Hunting you may almost double his Labour.

When you have made these Remarks from his Dang, you shall then proceed to order him as in his days of Rest, that is to say, you shall give him a handful or two of Oats before Water; then dress, wa-

ter, air, feed, &c. as in the first Fortnight.

Now as to his Feeding you must remember the way I have already shew'd, of changing his Food; as giving him one while Bread, another Oats, a third time Oats and Beans, which you find he likes belt; observing always, that variety will sharpen his Appetive. But Bread being his chief Food, as being more nourishing and strong than the others, you must feed

him often'f with it.

And as in the first Fortnight I directed you to obferve his Digestion, whether it were quick or slow, so likewise must you do now that he begins to eat Bread If you find him quick, and that he retains his Bread but a little while, then (as I have already directed) you shall only slightly chip your Bread; but if he be slow, and retains it long, cut away all the Crust, and give it to some other Horse, and feed your Hunter only with the Crum; for that being light of Digestion soon converts to Chyle and Excrements, but the Crust being slow of Digestion requires by reason of its hardness longer time before it be concooled.

The next day after he has refted, you shall bunt him again as you did the first day, observing from the Remarks you have made, to hunt him more or less, according as you find the temper and confitution of your Horse; and when you are returned home, observe to put in Practice the same Rules which you have just now read; and thus hunt your Horse times a

week

week for a fortnight together, observing to give him his full feeding, and no other Scowrings but Mashes, and Hempseed, which is equal in its Vertue to the former, and only carries off superstands Hmours in the Dang.

And here before I conclude this Chapter, I cannot but take notice of the Abule of Scourings, and my ownignorance, being led away by the perswasions and my mistaken opinion of other mens Skill, who because they could talk of giving a Scouring, (tho Experience has fince taught me, that they never knew the Operation of them, nay nor the disposition of the Horses which they kept) I thought most eminent and skilful Horfe-doctors, but indeed I found to my cost, that my ignorance led me into the same mistake with shose men, that take Physick by way of Prevention, and by that means render their Bodies more liable to Difeases, their Pores being fo much opened by Physick. In like manner I found that tho I bought Horses of sound and strong Constitution, yet by following the falle Rules and Practices of Others I quickly brought them to weak babits of Body; and by continually using them to unnecessary Phylick to be tender, and apt to take Cold and Surfeits on every small occasion: which taught me to know, that as Kitchen Physick is best for a Man, (unless he languish, under some more than ordinary Distemper) so natural and true found Feeding is bost for a Horse, it strengthning his Constitution, and keeping his Body in good temper; for a Horse that is full-fed with good natural Diet is not subject to cofficeness; and from hence I infer, that a Horse which is found, and in bealth, and of a frong Constitution, needs little Physick more than good wholesom meat, and his fill of it, provided you order him as he ought to be when he is come from Hunting.

But as Harfes no more than Men are free from Distempers, and by reason of abuses and unkind Matters are rather more liable to them, (it being be-

come a Proverb, As many Diseases as a Horse); so when at any time they bappen, recourse must be had to Physick; and as it is good in its true use, so I shall in the subsequent part of my discourse set down when, and what manner of Scourings are useful, and how they are to be applied with skill and safety; of which in its proper place.

CHAP. VI.

Of the Horses Third Fortnights Keeping, and first thorough-Sweating.

By this time your Horse will be drawn so clean, his Flesh will be so inseamed, and his Wind so improved, that he will be able to ridea Chase of three or four Miles without much blowing or sweating; and you will find by his Chaul and Flank, as well as his Ribi, that he is in an indifferent good state of body, and therefore this next Fortnight you must increase his labour, by which means you will come to a true knowledge of what he is able to do, and whether or no he

will ever be fit for Plates, or a Match.

When your Horse is set over night, and sedearly in the morning, (as in the last Fortnights Preparation for Hunting was directed) then go into the Field with him, and when your Horse is empty, as he will be by that time you have started your Game, you shall follow the Dogs at a good round rate, as at half-speed, and so continue till you have killed or lost your first Hare. This will so rack your Horses mind, and by this time he will have so emptied himself, that he will be fit to be rid the next Chase briskly; which as soon as begun you shall follow the Dogs at three quarters speed, as near to them as is consistent with the discretion of a good Horseman, and a true Hunts-

m

P

but be fure as yet not to frain him.

During this days Riding you shall observe your Horse's sweat, under his Saddle, and Forebowels, if it appear White like Froth, or Soap-sudds, 'tis a sign of inward glut and foulness, and that your days sport was fully sufficient, and therefore you shall have him home, and order him as before you are directed. But if your Sport has been so indifferent, as not to sweat your Horse thoroughly, then you shall make a Train-scent of 4 miles long, or thereabout, and laying on your Fleetest Dogs, ride it briskly, and then having first cool d him in the Field, ride him home and use him as aforesaid.

Now that I may not leave you in ignorance what a Train-scent is, I shall acquaint you that it has its Name, as I suppose, from the manner of it, viz. the trailing or dragging of a dead Cat, or Fox (and in case of necessary a Reil-berring) three or four Miles, (according to the Will of the Rider, or the directions given him) and then laying the

Dogs on the fcem.

But this Caveat let me give all Huntimen, to keep about 2 or 3 couple of the fleetest Hounds you can possibly procure for this purpose only. For altho I have seen skilful Sportsmen use their Harriers in this Case for their diversion; yet I would perswade them not to use them to it often; for it will teach them to lye off the Line, and sling so wide;

that they will never be worth any thing.

When you unbridle your Horte give him instead of Hempseed and Oats, a handsome quantity of Ryebread, (to which end I would advise you to bake a Peck Loaf for this purpose) which being cold and moist will assist in cooling his body after his Labour, and prevent Costiveness, to which you will find him addicted, then give him Hay, and afterwards a Mash, and then order him intell points as formerly.

The next morning if you perceive by his Dung F f

that his Body is diffempered, and he is band and bound, then take some Crums of your Rye-bread and work it with as much sweet fresh Butter as will make it into Paste, and then making it into Balls about the bigness of a large Wallnut, give him for 6 of them in the morning fasting; and then fetting on your Saddle upon his Cloth, mount him, and gallop him gently in some adjoyning grass-Plat, or Close, till he begin to sweat under his Ears, then lead him into the Stable, and let him be well rubb'd, and throwing a spare Cloth over him, and good store of fresh Litter under him, let him stand two hours on the Bridle, then give him a quantity of Rye-bread, then throw him some Hay to chew upon, and after that get him another warm Mah, and then feed him with Bread and Corn as much as he will, and be fure to allow him what Hay he will The next day water him abroad, and order him as in his days of reft.

day

be

of

the

flir

and

is I

ffi

bo

OC I

of

but

to y

him

this

ger

let

you

Day

leal

ferv if y

You Hon

warm.

The day following hunt him again, but by no means so severely as you did the time before till the Afternoon, but then ride him after the Dogs brukly, and if that does not make him sweat throughly, make another Train-scent, and follow the Dogs three quarters speed, that he may sweat beartily. When you have a little cooled him, have him bonne, and upon his first entrance into the Stable give him two or three Balls as big as Wallnuts, of this most ex-

cellent Scouring, viz.

Take Butter four ounces, Lenitive Electuary two ounces, Gromel, Broom and Purfly-feeds, of each one ounce, Annifeeds, Liquorifth, and Cream of Tartar, of each half an ounce, Jallap an ounce, make the Seeds into Powder, and stir them into a Pafe, with the Electuary and the Butter; knead it well, and keep it close in a Pot foruse.

Affoon as you have given your Horse these Balls rub him dry, then dress him and cleath him up

warm, and let him frand two or three hours on the snafe, then give him two or three handfuls of Bye-bread, and order him as you did before, as to they, Provender, Mash, &c. and so leave him till the

Marning.

Then come to him and first observe his Dung whether it keep the true Colour, or whether it appear link, or black, or red and bigb coloured; next whether it be loofe and thin, or hard and dry. If it be of the right colour, I mean Pale yellow, tis a sign of bealth, strength and cleanness; if it be dark, or black, then it a sign there is Grease and other ill humoins stirred up which are not yet evacuated: if it be red and bigb coloured, then it a token that his Blocd is severish and distempered through inward heat: if it be loofe and thin, it a sign of Weakness, but if hard and dry, it shews the Horse to be hot inwardly, or else that he is a foul feeder: But if his dung carry a milium betwirt hard and soft, and smell strong, it is a

ign of Health and Vigour.

When these Observations have been taken notice of concerning his Dung, then you shall feed, drefs, water, &c. as in his former days of Rest; observing tways to give variety, and his belly full of Corn and Bred. The next have him abroad in the Field again, but by no means put him to any labour, further than to rake him from hill to hill after the Dogs, to keep him within found of their Cry; for the defign of this Day's Exercise is only to keep him in breath, and get him an Appetite. Observe as you ride, that you but him frand till to dung; and look back on it that you may draw Inferences from the Faces. When the Day is well nigh from bring him home without the last fivent, and order him as at other times, only obferreto give no Scorings, nor Rye-kread. You may fyou please water your Horse this day, both at your going into the Field and at your coming Home, observing to gallop after it, to warm the. avater.

In the same manner in every respect as you have spent this Week you must spend the next likewise, without alteration in any point; and by that time affure your self that your Horse will be drawn clean enough for any ordinary Hunting; so that afterward observing to hunt your Horse moderately twice or thrice a week, according to your own pleasure, and the constitution of your Horses body, you need not question but to have him in as good state and strength as you would desire, without danger of his Wind, Eye-sight, Feet, or Body.

Now when you have thus according to art drawn your Horse clean, you will perceive those signs which I told you of, verified; for his Flesh on his short Ribs and Buttocks will be as hard as a Board, his Flank will be thin, and nothing to be felt but a double skin and chaps fo clean from Fat, Glut, or Kernels, that you may hide your Fifts in them; and above all his Exercise will give plain Demonstration of the Truth of this Art, for he will run three or four Miles three quarters speed without sweating, or scarce blowing: I fay when this is perfected, you must avoid all somings after hunting, (because Nature has nothingto work on) but Rye-bread and a Mash, except your Horse be now and then troubled with some little Poze in the Head; and then you shall bruise a little Mustard-seed in a fine Linnen Rag, and steep it in a quart of strong Ale for three or four hours, and then untying the Rag mix the Mustard-seed and the Ale with a quarter of a Peck of Oats, and give it your Horle.

Lastly, when your Horse is drawn clean, you must beware that he grows not foul again thro want of either Airing, or Hunting, or any other Negligence, lest by that means you procure to your self and your Horse double pains and labour, and no thanks from your Master.

CHAP.

i

fv

fr

hí

D

m

to

ha

befi

vir

CHAP. VII.

Of making a Hunting-Match, its advantages and disadvantages.

Since many Persons of Honour delight in good Horses, both for Hunters as well as Gallopers, it may not be improper to speak a word in this place concerning the Advantages or Disadvantages which happen in making of Hunting-Matches; since he that proceeds cautiously and upon true grounds in matching his Horse is already in a great measure sure of gaining the Prize, at least if the Proverb be true, that a Match well made is half won.

The first thing to be consider d by him that designs to match his Horse, for his own advantage and his Horse credit, is this; That he do not flatter himse f in the opinion of his Horse, by fancying that he is swifter than the wind, when he is but a stew Galloger; and that he is whole-running, (that is, will run four miles without a sobb at the height of his speed) when

he is not able to run a mile.

And the ground of this Error I suppose arises from a Gentlemans being mistaken in the speed of his Hounds, who for want of Tryal against other Dogs that have been really sleet, has supposed his own to be swift, when in reality they were but of middle speed; and because his Horse (when trained) was able to follow them all day, and at any hour to command them upon deep as well as light Earths, has therefore falsely concluded him to be swift as the hest; but upon tryal against a Horse that has been rightly train d after Hounds that were truly sleet, has to his cost bought his Experience, and been convinced of his Error.

Therefore I would persuade all Lovers of Hunters to get two or three Couple of try'd Hounds, and once or twice a week to follow after them a Train-scent; and when he is able to top them on all sorts of Earth, and to endure Heats and Colds stoutly, then he may

the better rely on his Speed and Toughness.

That Horte which is able to ride a Hare-chase of five or fix miles briskly, and with good courage, till his body be as it were bath'd in sweat; and then upon the death of the Hare, in a nipping from morning can endure to stand still, till the sweat be frozen on his back, fo that the cold may pierce him as well as the beat; and then even in that extremity of Cold to ride another Chase, as briskly and with as much courage, as he did in the former: That Horfe which can thus endure beats and cold oftnest is of most value amongst Sports-men. And indeed 'tis not every Horse that is able to endure such extraordinary Toyl; and I my felf have feen very brave Horses to the Eye, that have rid the first Chase to admiration that when the Cold had ftruck to them, and they began to grow stiff have flagg'd the second, and given quite out the third Heat.

(2

m

CC

W

Therefore to make a judgment of the goodness of your own Horse, observe him after the death of the first Hare, if the Chase has been any thing brish; if when he is cold, he sminks up up his Body, and drawn his Legs up together, 'tis an infallible token of want of Courage; and the same you may collect from the slackning of his Girths after the first Chase, and from the setting of his Teeth, and the dulness of his Counternance; all which are true marks of Faintness, and Trying: and therefore there is no reliance on such a

Horse, in case of a Wager.

But if on the contrary, you are Master of a Horse (not only in your own judgment, but in the opinion of knowing Horsemen) that is approved for Speed, and Iongbness, and you are desirous to match him, or otherwise

wife to run for a Plate; I will to the best of my power tell you the advantages that are to be gain'd in

Matching.

But before I enter upon the subject propos'd. I think it convenient to tell you the way our Ancestors had of making their Matches, and our modern way of deciding Wagers. First then the old way of Tryal was by running so many Train-scents after Hounds (as was agreed on between the parties concern'd) and a Bell-Course, this being found not so uncertain and more durable than Hare hunting, and the advantage consisted in having the Trains led on Earth most suitable to the nature of the Horses. Now others choose to bunt the Hare till such an hour persix'd, and then to run these Wild-goose Chase, which, because it is not known to all Huntsmen, I shall explain the we and manner of it.

The Wildgoofe Chase received its Name from the manner of the flight which is made by Wildgeele, which is generally one after another: so the two Horses after the running of Twelvescore Tards, had liberty, which Horse soever could get the leading, to ride what ground he pleas'd; the hindmost Horse being bound to follow him, within a certain distance agreed on by Articles, or else to be whipt up by the Triers or Judges which rode by, and which ever Horse could distance the other won the Match.

But this Chase was found by Experience so inhumine, and so destructive to good Horses, especially when two good Horses were match'd; for neither being able to distance the other, till ready both to sink under their Riders through Weakness, oftentimes the Match was fain to be drawn, and lest undecided, tho both the Horses were quite spoiled.

This brought them to run Train-scents, which afterwards was chang'd to three Heats, and a straight Course; and that the Lovers of Hunting-horses might be encouraged to keep good Ones, Plates have been

erested in many places of this Land, purposely for Hunters, and of some their Articles, exclude all others

(namely Gallopers) from Running.

But whether you design to match your Horse against any One Horse in particular, or to put him in for a Plate, where he must run against all that come in general; yet 'tis necessary that you know the nature and disposition of your Horse, before you venture any wager on his head; that is to fay, whether he be bot and fiery, or cool and temperate in Riding; whether he be very fwift, but not bard at bottom, or flow, but yet fure, and one that will flick at mark; on what fort of Earths he most delights to gallop on. whether to climb or run down hills, or elfe to skelp on a Flat; whether to run on deep, or light Grounds; whether on rack-ways, or Carpet-ground; whether amongst Mole-hills, or on Meadow ground; whether he be well-winded, or thick-winded; so that the he will answer a Spur, and mend upon Lapping, yet he must have ease by Sobbs. All these things must be known, to the end that you may draw those advantages from them which may be offered in matching; as this for Example.

If your Horse be bot and fiery, 'tis odds but he is fleet withal (for generally those Horses are so) and delights to run upon light and hard flats; and must be held hard by the Rider, that he may have time to recover Wind by Sobbs; or else his Fury will But whereas it is the general opinion choak him. that nothing that is violent can be lasting; and therefore that it is impossible that such hot mettled Horses can be tough and hard at bottom, this I conceive may be but a popular Error; for I have sometimes feen by Art those two Qualities reconciled, at least fo far, as to make the most Fiery Horse manageable, and to endure both Whip and Spur; and then tho he should not prove at bottom so truly tough as the craving Drudge, yet by his Riders managenagement his Speed shall answer it in all points and serve in its stead; But to return to my Subject.

The best way to match such a Horse is to agree to run Train-scents, and the sewer the better for you, before you come to the Course: Also in these Train-scents the shorter you make your distance the better: and above all things be sure agree to have the leading of the first Train, and then making choice of such grounds as your Horse may best shew his speed, and the Fleetest Dags you can procure, give your Hounds as much Law before you, as your Tryers will allow, and then making a loose try to win the Match with a Wind; but if you fail in this attempt then bear your Horse, and save him for the Course.

But if your Horse beslow, yet well-winded, and a true Spurr'd Nag; then the more Train-scents you run before you come to run the straight Course the better. Observing here too, to gain the leading of the first Train, which in this case you must lead it upon such deep Earths that it may not end near any light Ground. For this it the Rule received among Horsemen that the next Train is to begin where the last ends, and the last train is to he ended at the starting Place of the Course. Therefore observe to end

your last on deep Earths as well as the first.

In the next place have a care of making a Mateb of a sudden, and in Drink, for fear lest you repent when you are Sober. Neither make a match against a Horse, which you do not know, without first consulting some skilful or trusty Friend, on whose fudgment and Honesty you can safely rely, and who is able to give a good Account of your Adversaries Horse's Speed and his manner of Riding; and if you find him any ways correspondent to your own in speed or goodness be not too Peremptory to venture, but upon some reasonable probabilities of Winning: for 'tis neither Braggs nor Fancy that will make your Horse run one jot the better, or your

Adverfaries the worse: and remember this, that there is no Horse so good, but there may be another as good; and then if you proceed on good Grounds, and true Judgmens, you may be the bolder to go on, and stand to your Masch, notwithstanding the opinion of other men may be against you.

One material Advise I had like to have forgot and that is this; be sure at no time give advantage of Weight, for you will find the inconvenience of it at the latter end of the Day: for tho all forse feel it not when he is fresh, yes it will fink him very much when he grows weak: a Horse-length lost by odds of Weight in the first Train, may prove a distance in the straight Course at last; for the Weight is the same e-

very Heat tho his strength be not.

But if on the other side you gain any advantage of Weight, article that the Horseman shall ride so much weight as you are agreed on besides the Saddle, for by this means the Rider (if he be not weight of himself) must carry the dead weight somewhere about him, which will be troublesome to the Rider as well as the Horse, and the more to the latter, since its more remote from his Back then if it were in the Saddle, and by consequence will more disorder his stroke if the Rider incline to either side, than if it were nearer the Center; as you may see by a pair of Scales, where if the Pin be not placed exactly in the midst of the Beam, the longest part (as being most distant from the Center) will be the beaviest.

Now as to the time that you take for dieting, that must be according to the nature of yourHorse, and the present state of Body he is in; for the he may be clean enough for ordinary Hunting, yet he may be far distant from that perfect state of Body, that is required in a Match, and to keep him in such strict Diet all the Season, (except on such extraordinary Occasions) would be an unnecessary Expense.

As to your Horses Disposition for Running, you must

must know it by use and Observation, for in this point Horses very much differ, for some run best when they are bigh in case, others when they are in middle condition of Flesh, and some again when they appear to the Eye poor, and low in Flesh; therefore according to your Horses Nature, and the time required to bring him into his best State, you must order your day for the tryal of your Match to be.

But if you defign to put him in for some Hunting Plate; there neither the choice of your Ground, the Weight, nor the Huses you are to run against are at your disposal, but you must take them as you find them; only the time for bringing your Horse into a good Condition is at your own discretion, since you may begin as soon or as late as you please to keep him in strict Dies; the time for all Plates being usually fixe, and annually the same.

THE CHAP IX.

Of the ordering the Hunter, for a Match or a Plate.

Hen you have either Matcht your Horse, or entertained thoughts of putting him in for a Plate, you must consider that you ought to reserve a Month at the least, to draw his Body perfectly clear, and to refine his Wind to that degree of perfection which Art is capable of avaining to.

Hirst then you must take an exact view of the state of his Body, both outwardly and inwardly; as whether he be low or high in Flesh, or whether he be dull and beauty when abroad, and this occasioned through too much bard riding, or through some Grease that by hunting has been dissolved, but fir want of a scowring has not been removed.

If he appear fluggish and Melancholy from either of these causes, then give him half an ounce of Diapente in a pint of good old Malaga Sack, which will both cleanle his Body, and revive his Spirits: and then for the first week you shall feed him continually with Bread, Oats and fplit Beans, giving him fometimes the one and fometimes the other, according as he likes, always leaving some in his Locker to eat at his own leifure when you are absent; and when you return at your hours of Feeding to take away what is left, and to give him fresh till you have made him wanton and playful. To which end you shall observe that though you ride him every day morning and evening on Airing, and every other day on Hunting, yet you are not to weat him or out him to any violent labour, the design this week being to keep him in Wind and Breath, and to prevent purfivenels.

But you are to observe that both you Oats, Beans and Bread are to be now ordered after another manner than you did before, for first you must dry your Oats well in the Sun, then put them into a clean Bag and beat them foundly with a Flail or Cudgel, till you think they are bulled; then take them out of the bag and winnow them clean both from hulls and dust, and so give them to your Horse as you have occasion. Your Beans in like manner must be separated from the bulls which are apt to breed Glut, and must either be thrown away or given amongst chaff to some more ordinary Horse. And for your Bread whereas before you only chips it, now you must cut the Crust clean away, and dispose of it as you please; for tis bard of digestion, and will be apt to beat and dry his Body. And now that you are to put him into stricter keeping, you are to make a finer

fort of Bread than before, as thus;

Take two Pecks of Beans, and two of Wheat, and grind them together, but not too fine, to prevent

too much Bran being in the Bread; and dress one Peck of the Meal through a fine Range, and knead it up with new Ale Barm, and the Whites of a dozen new laid Eggs, and so bake it in a Loaf by it self, and the rest dress through a Boulser, and knead it only with Ale and Barm; and use it in all other points as the former: Now the Peck-loaf is to be given your Horse when you set him, and the other at ordinary times.

This Bread affifts Nature much in increasing the Strength, Courage, and Wind of your Horse, provided you add thereto (as I have always told you) true Labour, as any Bread whatsoever; nay even as either of M. De Greys sorts of Bread, which he mentions in his Compleat Horseman, 4to. p. 232. ed. 4th, especially his last, which he says is better Bread, and a greater Cooler; and which he prescribes to make thus,

Take Wheat Meal one Peck, Rye-meal, Reans and Oat-meal, all ground very small, of each half a Peck, Annifeeds, and Licorish, of each one ounce, White Sugar-Candy four ounces, all in fine Powder, the yolks and whites of twenty Eggs well beaten, and so much White-wine as will knead it into a Paste; make this into great Looves, bake them well, and after they be two or three days old, let him eat of this Bread, but chip away the Outside.

Now the Reason why I have cited this is, because I have heard several (who would be thought knowing Horsemen) applaud this very Bread beyond any other to be met with in any Book, tho for my part I can find nothing excellent in the whole Composition.

For first Oatmeal tho it be strong, yet it is a dry grain, bard of digestion, and a great dryer up of the Blood. The Wheat is of a drying quality likewise, tho it be light; for the Anniseed and Licorish, they are not only Physical but hot also; so that the Body becomes over-beated, and thereby costive. And yet these People will not be persuaded, but these Drugs

will make him long-winded; possibly they might affift him in Neighing, as some men say it doth Some steri in Vocal Musick, wherein there is no Exercise of the Body used; but where bodily strength is required, I am apt to believe it more prejudicial than profitable.

But here fome will object that there is Rye and Beans, both which are moistning; especially the Rye which is both cold and moist, and is the very reason De Grey himself gives why he put Rye into his latter Bread, because (says he) Rye is a Loofner and a Cooler, and therefore it will make the Horse more soluble.

I have already faid, that if his Body have Feeding proportionate to his Labour, the Horfe will continue in a right state of Health. Yet since he is bot by Nature, and Labour might increase his natural Heat, and render him costive, therefore I have all along prescrib'd him Rye-bread alone as Physical. But here let the Horse be in what condition soever, whether bound in his body or laxative, yet Rye being a part of your Bread, our Horse must continually seed thereon, which has this undeniable disadvantage, that if he be loose in his body, this Bread (to use De Grey's own words) will make him more soluble.

And now whilft I am discoursing of Horsebread, I cannot but condemn another curiosity in some Feeders, who think, by drefsing their Meal to the utmost degree of Fineness, they do wonders, and that such pure Food must of necessity bring him to the greatest perfection imaginable both of Body and Wind.

But in this point I think they are deceiv'd, for the Meal being dress'd so very fine, nothing remains but the quintessence of it; which tho it be lightned by Barm and Whites of Eggs, yet when it is above a day old twill begin to harden (as may be observed by Manehet) and especially if Oatmeal be in it, by reason of its drying quality, whereby it will not be so rease of digestion, as it would be otherwise if it had no Bran in it; and by consequence will be more ape to

capress his Stomach, if he be bested, before it be throughly digested, and so breed raw crudities, and an inflammation of the blood, and by that means hazard a Surfeit, than which nothing can be of worse

consequence to a Horse that is match'd.

And therefore 'tis that I advife, that your Horse-bread should only be made of Wheat and Beans, and that it should not be dres'd too fine, nor too course, but so, as that there may be neither so much Bran left as to annoy the Blood, nor so little as to make your Bread too close and solid; but you may leave some on purpose to scowr the Mann, and further your Horses Digestion. And thus much by way of

Digression.

Having spoken to the first condition of Horses which we propos d, viz. melancholly, and low in flesh, we are now to fpeak of those which are brisk and lively; which if your Horse be so, that when you leadhim out of the Stable he will leap and play about you, then you must not only avoid giving him the Scowring last mentioned of Sack and Diapente, but any other whatfoever: for there being no foul Humours, or any superfluous matter left in his body for the Physick to work on, it will prey upon the frength of his body, and by that means weaken it. which it must be your utmost endeavour to preferve by full Feeding and found Labour, which will necessarily produce a perfect Wind, which is the Support of Strength, for when his Wind once fails, his Strength avails nothing.

As to the manner of it, if your Horfe be ingag'd in a Husting-match, you shall sweet him twice this week, but not by hunting him after the Hare, as formerly, but by Train-scents, since the former on this Occasion may prove deteriful; for the the Hounds be very swift, yet the Scent being rold, the Dogs will often be at fault, and by that means the Horse will have many Sobr, so that when he comes to run

Train-scents in earnest you Horse will look for ease, his Wind being not so perfect as in Art it ought to be.

Therefore lead your Train-scents with a dead Cat over such Grounds as you are likely to run on, and best agrees with your Horses Humour, and be sure make choice of the Fleetest Hounds you can get, and then your Horse will be kept up to the beight

of his speed.

As to the Number of Train-scents that you are to ride at a time, that you must order according to your Match or (which is better) according to your Horses strength, and ability for performing his Heats. For if you labour him beyond his Strength, 'twill take him off his speed, weaken his Limbs, and daunt his Spirit. If you give him too little Exercise, it will give opportunity for pursiveness and ill bumours, as Glut, &c. to increase in him, and gain in him a babit of Laxiness, that when he comes to be put to labour above his usual rate, he will grow restiff, and settle like a Jade, either of which will redound to your discredit, and therefore it must be from your own knowledge in the state of his Body, and not from any general Directions in writing, that you must steer your Course.

Only this Direction may be given you, that if you are to run Eight Train-scents and the straight Course, more or less, you are to put him to such severe labour not above twice in your whole Months keeping; and if it be in the first Fortnight, 'twill be the better, for then he will have a compleat Fortnight to recover his strength again; and for his labour in his last Fortnight, let it be proportionate to his strength and wind, as sometimes balf his Task, and then three parts of it. Only observe that the last Tryal you make in the first Fortnight be a Train-scent more than your Match, for by that means you will find what he is able to do. And for the proportion of his Exercise, twice a week (as I have already said) is sufficient

fi

P

to keephim in breath, and yet will not diminish or

injure his Vigour.

But if your Hinting-match be to run fewer Trainfeents, than you may put him to his whole Task the oftner, according as you find him in condition; only observe that you are not to strain him for Ten Lays at least before he ride his Match, that he may be led into the Field in perfect strength and vigour.

If you intend him for a Plate, let him take his Heats according to this Direction, only let it be on the Place, that he may be acquainted with the Ground; and as for the Hounds you may omit them, as not being ty'd to their speed, but that of your Adversaries Horse's. But as to your Number of Heats, let them be according to what the Articles exact; only obferve that as to the sharpness of them, they must be regulated according to the temper of his strength, and the purity of his Wind. And when you beat him provide some Horses upon the Course to run at him which will quicken his spirits, and encourage him, when he finds he can command them at his pleasure. And here too the fame Rule must be observed, notto give your Horse a Bloody heat for Tendays or a Fortnight before the Plate be to be run for: And let his last heat which you give him before the day of Tryal be in all his Cloathes, and just skelp it over; which will make him run the next time much more vigoroufly, when he shall be stript naked, and feel the cold Ai pierce him.

But now that I am speaking of sweating, it may be expected that I should lay down some Rules how to order a Horse that is in keeping for a Match in Frosty weather, or in case he be an old strain'd Horse, so that you dare not heat him in hard weather, for fear

of Laming him afresh.

In these cases some Horsemen have practic'd sweating their Horse in the House, by laying on him multiplicity of Cloathes, being first made hot at the

Fire; which is the most unnatural way of fiventing a Horse that can be, since its provoked by heat arising from the outward parts, and is too violent, the extremity of the beat joined to the weight of the Cloubs, not only weakning, but almost smothering him.

The next way in use, is to give him his Heat a broad, as I just now mentioned in his Cloaths, but this too is not so natural and kindly, as without his Cloaths, since here too the beat is augmented from without, and consequently abates his strength the more, and yet doth not altogether so well improve his Wind.

Therefore if either you have a Horse that has been strain'd, or otherwise the weather be installing ble, find out some dead fog, or sandy way, though of but half a Miles length, and there breath your Horse till he sweat as you would have him. I remember to have heard of a Gentleman having match'd his Horse for a very considerable summ; and the weather proving hard, took this course to keep his Hose in breath; he caused Straw and foul Litter to be spread all along round an adjoyning Close, and every morning his Servants shook it up and sum d it, to keep to bollow and soft, and then the Horse was had forth to gallop on it after his Water, and by this means kept his Horse in tolerable Wind.

Now during this Month, both on his Resting-day, and after his sweats on Heating-days, you are to obferve the same Rules which you were taught in the sirst week of your Third Fortnights keeping; only you are to omit all scowrings, but Rye-bread and Mashes, since your Horse being in so perfect a state of Body has no need of any. Only if you think there may be any occasion, and that your Horse prove Thirse, about Eight or Nine a Clock at Night you may give him this Julep to cool him and quench his Thirst.

Take Barly-water 2 Quarts, of Syrup of Violets 3 Ounces, of Syrup of Lemons 2 Ounces, mix them together, and give them to your Horse to drink;

ı

ifh

Ma

you

take

Whil

ther

Mo

Sun,

to y

mor

Dige H

then

then

part:

s bo

Indi

Eggs you

D

only

let h

be m

before

your

whi

may

that

feed }

will

fore

lead i

m S

him

not

B

Í

if he refuse, fasten it from falling as you did the

Mal, and so let it fand by him all Night.

During the last Fortnight, you must not only dry your Oats, and bull them by bearing, but likewise take half a Strike of Oats and wash them in the Whites of a dozen or twenty Eggs, and stirring them therein let them soak all Night; then the next Morning take them and spread them abroad in the Sm, till they be as dry as at first, and so give them to your Horse, and when they are spent prepare more in the same manner. This Food is light of Digestion, and very soveraign for his Wind.

His Beans must be ordered as before, only give them not so frequently, if he will eat his Oats without them; and for his Bread this Fortnight let it be three parts Wheat to one of Beans, and let it be ordered as before directed. And likewise if you find him helin'd to cost wines forget not to relieve Nature by gring him Oats wash'd in two or three Whites of Eggs and Ale beat together, for that, as I have told you already, will cool his body, and keep it moist.

During the last Week omit giving him a Mash, only give the Barly-water as before; but as to Hash thim have as much as he will eat (which will not be much, if he have his sill of better food) till a day before he is to ride his Match, but then you must hold your hand, that he may have time to digest that which he has eaten, and then and not before you may muzzle him with your Cavezne; and be fure that day, and so till the morning he is led out, to seat him as much as possible, for such a days Labour will require something to maintain strength. Therefore in the Morning, an hour before you are to lad out, give him a Tost or two of White-bread steept in Sack, which will revive his Spirits, and so lead him into the Field.

But if you are torun for a Plate, which usually is not till three a clock in the Afternoon, then by all G & 2

means have him out early in the morning to ait, that he may empty his Body, and when he is come in from Airing feed him with Tosts in Sack; for you must consider, that as too much fulness will endanger his wind, so too long fasting will cause faintness. When he has eaten what you think fit to give him, put on his Cavezone, and then having chafd his Ly, soundly with Piece-grease and Brandy warmed together, or Train-oil, (which ought likewise to be used daily at Noon for a Week before the Match, or long if you see cause,) shake up his Lister, and shutting up your Stable close, and preventing any Noise to be made near him, leave him to his Rest till the bus come that he is to go into the Field.

As to platting his Main and Tail, shooing him with Plates, pitching his Saddle and Girths, and the like preparations, they are things which every Grown can instruct you in, and therefore I shall not trouble you with Rules concerning them, but in lieu thereof shall add some farther Directions how to judge of the States of your Horses Body, and if you find any thing amiss therein how to redress it.

112 del 14

CHAP.

fha ho

YO

do

the

no

ry

an

tri

m

7

le fi

CHAP IX.

Of the Means to judge of your Horses State of Body, and of curing all Casualties that may bappen after Matching.

There are several Observations to be made by you during your Dieting your Horse, which if you miscarry in, may be the loss of your Match, or your share in the Plate. Therefore, that you may know how to proceed regulary in this Art, I shall endea-

your to fumm them up.

n- fin

First then you are to observe his Chaule, his Ribs, and his Flank, according to the Rules formerly laid down; for if he be clean within, he will also be clean there; but yet he may feel clean there, when he is not clean within; and therefore those Grooms are very conceited, who upon their first view of a Horse and handling of his Flank, pronunce him to be in a true state of Body; for gentle Airing, warm Cloathing, scanty Feeding, may disperse the gross Fat and Glut, and drive it from the outward parts, so that he may appear clean, when in realtity he is not so; and therefore you are only a competent Judge, who know how he was cleansed.

Therefore you are to observe, first, whether in all points you have proceeded according to Art in his Training; as whether he performs his Heats with vigor and true courage, whether he have been all along home-fed, whether you have not suffer'd purfiveness to increase by too little labour, or abated his Flesh and Strength by too much. These things are the very grounds of Keeping, and therefore ought to

be scand and consider d with judgment.

Next you are to observe his manner of Feeding, as whether he holds his Appetite or no; and observe G g 2 what

what fort of Food he likes best, and of that give him of tenest; and in case his stomach abate, keep him out longer Morning and Night, at his airings.

In like manner you must observe his Ding, which tho it be as fallacious oftentimes as a Sick mans Water, it being liable to alteration on the change of Dyet, or being influenc'd by the air, yet being clean and in bealth it will usually be a pale yellow colour, and be voided in round Pellets; but if it be loose, and soft, it is an infallible sign of weakness, and therefore must by good Feeding be remedied as soon as possible. But if it be hard and dry, so that he cannot dung but with difficulty and straining, then you must endeavour to relieve Nature, but not with scowrings, which would weaken too much, but rather chuse to give him this Clyster, which will both cool and refresh him.

Take a Quart of Whey, of Syrup of Violets, and Pulpe of Cassia, of each 4 Ounces, and of Mama half an Ounce; this will Purge him gently, and is

most excellent to cool his Bowels.

The next thing to be considered is Lameness, which if it proceed from old frains you must make use of this Ointment, which I have several times ex-

perimented with good success.

Take fresh Butter, Oyl of Bayes, Dialthea, and Jurpentine of each two Ounces, mix and boil them together on a soft sire, and when they are well incorporated, as not as the Horse can suffer it, anoint the Horse twice a day, and give him exercise, by Airing him abroad Morning and Evening a foot pace, and you will find it a certain Remedy for any Strain in the Shoulder, Clap on the back sinews, or any grief what soever, that proceeds from Strains.

But if you only fear Lameness from Old Strains, then you must be careful that you Exercise be moderate, and always when you come in from Water and his Legs are rubb'd dry, anoint them with such

fu pple

[up

as

and

of .

Sor

mi

wit

for

(ua

tki

M

0

th

th

25

P

it

a

ŀ

i

supple Oyntments, as are accounted good for the Limbs, as Linfeed, Train, Sheepsfoot, Neatsfoot, Nerve-Oyl and the like; all which may be used on his daies of Rest, but on his heating daies Urine and Salt-Peter. Some Horsemen make use of Brandy and Saltet-Oyl mix'd, and bathe his Legs, and afterwards beat it in with a hot Iron, and commend it as the best thing for the Limbs of an Old stiff Horse.

But if your Harle through Negligence, or any cafuelity happen to have the Grease fall into his Heels, you must endeavour to remove it by a good sound heat, and a scouring after it, and apply to his Legs

tkis Poultifs.

Take of Honey a Pound, of Turpentine, common Gum, Meal of Linfeed, and the Meal of Fenugreek, of each 4 Ounces, and the Powder of Bay-berries well fearch'd 3 Ounces, mix and boyl all these well together; then take it off, and put to it a Pint of White-wine, then boyl it again, till it be very thick: and with this, as hot as the Horse can suffer it, lap his legs about Plaister-wise, and renew it only once in three daies, and it will certainly bring his Legs within compass.

If your Horse's Feet be bad, either surbated, or foundred, then instead of Cow-Dung, you may stop them with blue-clay and Vineger temperd together, and on his Heating-daies at Night stop them with grey-scope, and keep it in with a peice of an old Shoe-

fole.

If your Horse be troubled with any Dose in his head give him Mustard-seed among his Provender, but it be a worse Cold, which you will perceive by his Ratling, then give him this Lambitive, or Electuary.

Take of Honey and Treacle, each half a Pound, having mixt these together, add to them Powder of Cumminseed, Liquorish, Bay-berries, Anniseeds, each an Ounce, mix all these together, and put them to the Honey and Treacle, which will make it of thick consistance. If your horse hath a Cold, instead of

his Oats before Water, give him the quantity of a Walmut of this Lambitive on the top of a flick or in a Spoon, and let him lick it off; and the same do after Airing, when first you come in, and you will

find the advancage of it.

These at present are all the Inconveniences that I can call to mind, which are lyable to Hunters, or Gallopers in their Keeping; and tho through inadvertency, or want of memory I should have omitted any, yet from these Grounds, you may form your Remedies for any common Accident or Distemper; and now that we draw near to the Match-day, and the End of our Discourse, we will only discuss some sew Rules relating to the Tryal of the Hunting Match. I mean Rules to be observed in Riding, and so conclude.

CHAP. X.

Of riding a Hunting-Match, or Heats for a Plate, and the Advantages belonging to each,

Have endeavoured to shew the Necessity and the Manner of Training and Dieting Horses, but this alone is not sufficient to the winning of either Match or Plate, without a knowing and an honest Rider, and a skilful Judge or Tryer be join'd thereto; but since no man is fitter to ride the Horse than he that has the training of him, I shall lay down some general Rules how to ride to the best Advantage either a Hunting-Match, or three Heats

and a Course for a Plate.

The first Requisite in a Rider, next to fairbfulness in his Trust, is to have a good close Seat, his Knees being held firm to his Saddle-skirts, his Toes turned inward, and his Spurs outward from the Horses sides, his lest band governing his Horse's Mouth, and his right commanding his Whip; observing during all the Tryal throughout to sit firm in his Saddle, without waving, or standing up in his Stirrups, which very much incommodes the Horse, notwithstanding the conceited Opinion of some fockeys that it is a becoming Seat.

When you spur your Horse, strike him not hard with the Calves of your Legs, as if you would beat the wind out of his body, but just turn your Toes curwards, and bring the Spurs quick to his sides; and such a sharp stroke will be more serviceable to the quickning of your Horse, and sooner draw blood. Be sure not to spur your Horse but when there is occasion, and avoid spurring

him

him under the fore-bowels, between his Shoulders, and his Girths near the Heart (which is the ten-

derest place) till the last Extremity.

When you whip your Horse let it be over the Choulder on the near fide, except upon bard running. and when you are at all; then be fure with frong jerk to strike your Horse in the Flank, for there the skin is tenderest, and most sensible of the

Lash.

Observe when you whip or spur your Horse, and that you are certain he is at the top of his speed, if then he clap his Ears in his Pole, or which his Tail, be fure that you bear him hard, and give him as much comfort as ever you can, by fawing his Snafle to and fro in his Mouth, and by that means forcing him to open his Mouth, which will comfort him, and give him

wind.

If there be any high wind ftirring when you ride, observe if it be in your Face to let your Adverfary lead, and to hold hard behind him till you fee your opportunity of giving a Loofe; yet you must observe to ride so close to him, that his Horse may break the Wind from yours, and that you by stooping low in your Seat may shelter your felf under him, which will affift the strength of your Horse. But if the Wind be in your Back, ride exactly behind him, that your Horse may alone enjoy the be nefit of the Wind, by being as it were blown forward, and by breaking it from him as much as you can possible.

Next observe what Ground your Horse delights to run best on, bearing your Horse (as much as your Adverfary will give you leave) on level Carpetground, because your Horse naturally will be desirous to spend himself more freely thereon. But on deep Earths, &c. give him more liberty, because he will naturally favour himself thereupon. Be

fure,

fure, if you are to run up bill, to favour your Horse and bear him, for fear of running him out of wind; but down bill (if your Horses Feet and Shonlders will endure it, and you dare venture your own Neck) always give him a Loose.

Only take this for a general Rule, that if you find your Horse to have the Heels of the other, that then you be careful to preserve his Speed till the last Trainscent, if you are not to run a straight Course, but if so, then till the Course, and so to husband it then too, that you may be able to make

a Push for it at the last Post.

Next you are to observe the nature of your Opposites Horse, and if he be fiery, then to run just behind, or just cheek by joul, and with your Whip make as much noise asyou can, that you may force him on faster than his Rider would have him, and by that means Spend him the sooner. Or else keep just before him upon such a slow Gallop, that he may either over-reach, or by treading on your Horses Heels (if he will not take the leading) endanger falling over.

Observe on what ground the contrary Horse runs worst, and on that Earth be sure to give a loose, that your Adversaries being forced to follow you, may hazzard stumbling, or clapping on the back

Sinerus.

Observe likewise in your Riding the several Helps and Corrections of the Hand, the Whip, and the Spur, and when, and how often he makes use of them; and when you perceive that his Horse begins to be blown by any of the former Symptoms, as Whisking his Tail, clapping down his Ears, holding out his Nose like a Pig, &c., you may then take it for granted that he is at the top of what he can do; therefore in this case observe how your own rides,

rides, and if he run cheerfully and strongly without Spurring, then be sure keep your Adversary to the same speed without giving him ease, and by that means you will quickly bring him to give out, or else

distance him.

Observe at the End of every Train-scent what Condition the other Horse is in; and how he holds out in his Labour; which you may be able to give a judgment of by his Looks, the Working of his Flank. and the flackness of his Ginths. For if he look dull tis a fign his Spirits fail him; if his Flanks beat much, 'tis a token that his Wind begins to fail him. and then of necessity his Strength must too. If his Wind fail him, then his Body will grow thin and appear tuckt up, which will make his Girths appear flack to the Eye. And therefore take this for a Rule that there is no greater Sign of Weaknels than this which I have last mentioned; fo that if your Adversaries Horse want girting after the first Scent, provided he were close girt at his first starting, you need not much despair of winning your Wager.

When each Train-scent is ended (and so likewise after every Heat for a Plate) you must have dry Straw, and dry Cloaths both Linnen and Woollen which have been steeped in Urine and Salt-petre a day, or two, and then dryed in the Sun; and likewise one, or two of each which have been so steeped, must be brought wet into the Field; and after the Train is ended you must have two or three Helpers, and after your Groom has with a Knife of Heat (as the D. of Newcastle calls it) which is an old piece of a Sword blade, scrapt off all the Sweat from your Horses Neck, Body, &c. you must see that they first with Straw, and then with their dry Cloaths rub him dry all over, whilst others are employed about his Legs; and as soon as they

are rubb'd dry then chafe them with your wet Cloaths, and never give over till you are called by the Judges to start again. This will keep his Joynts plyant and nimble, and prevent any inflammation which might arise from any old Strain.

The next thing to be consider'd is the Judges, or Tryers Office, which is to see that all things are ordered according to the Articles, which to that end ought to be publickly read before the Horses Start.

Next that each Tryer on whose side the Train is to be led, according to the Articles give directions for its leading according to the advise of the Rider, or his Knowledge of the Nature and Disposition of that Horse on whose side he is Chose.

Next that each Tryer be so advantageously Mounted, as to ride up behind the Horses, (but not upon them) all day; and to observe that the Contrary Horse ride his True ground, and observe the Articles in every particular, or else not to permit him to proceed.

Next that after each Train-scent be ended, each Tryer look to that Horse against whom he is chosen, and observe that he be no ways reliev'd but with rubbing, except Liberty on both sides be given to the contrary.

Next, as foon as the time which is allow'd for rubbing be expired, which is generally balf an hour, they shall command them to mount, and if either Rider refuse, it may be lawful for the other to start without him, and having beat him the distance agreed on, the Wager is to be adjudg'd on his side.

Next, the Tryers shall keep off all other Horses from croffing the Riders, or leading them; only they themselves may be allow'd to instruct the Riders by

word of mouth how to ride, whether flow, or fast, according to the Advantages he perceives may be

gain'd by his Directions.

Lastly, if there be any weight agreed on, they shall see that both Horses bring their true weight to the farting place, and carry it to the end of the Train, on penalty of lofing the Wager.

The fame Rules are to be observed (especially this last) by those Gentlemen which are chosen to be Judges at a Race for a Plate; only they usually stay in the Stand, that they may the better fee which

Horse wins the Heat.

Now for running for a Plate, there are not fo many Observations to be made, nor more Directions requir'd than what have been already mention'd: only this, that if you know your Horfe to be tough a: bottom, and that he will flick at mark, to ride him each Heat according to the best of his performance, and avoid as much as possible either riding at any particular Horse, or staying for any, but to ride each Heat throughout with the belt speed you can.

But if you have a very fiery Horse to manage, or one that is hard-mouthed, and difficult to be beld, then start behind the rest of the Horses with all the coolness and gentleness imaginable; and when you find your Horle to begin to ride at some Command, then put up to the other Horses, and if you find they ride at their Eofe, and are hard beld, then endeavour to draw them on faster; but if you find their Wind begin to rake bot, and that they want a Sob, if your own Horse be in Wind, and you have a Loofe in your band, keep them up to their speed, till you come within three quarters of a Mile of the end of the Heat; and then give a Loofe, and push for it, and leave to Fortime and you Horses Goodness the Event of your Success. Many

Many more Rules there are which may not occur at present to my memory, and others which I purposely omit; but these may serve the honest focker, and for the others which relate to Foul-play, as crossing, hanging on the Polls, leaning on the other Horseman, yoking, &c. I desire not to instruct any one in them, and could wish that they might never be made use of hut be wholly relinquished by all honest Horsemen.

Lastly, when either your Hunting-Match, or your Trial for the Plate is ended, assoon as you have rubb'd your Horse dry, you shall cleath him up, and ride him home, where the first thing you give

him shall be this Drink to comfort him.

Take a pint and a half of fweet Milk, and put three Yolks of Eggs beaten into it; then make it lukewarm, and put in three penny-worth of Saffron, and three spoonfuls of Sallet Oyl, and give it him

ina Horn.

- When this is done dress him flightly over with your Curry Comb, Brush, and Woollen Cloth; and then bath the place where the Saddle stood with warm Sack to prevent Warbles, and wash the Sparringplaces with Piss and Salt, and then afterwards annoint them with Turpentine and Powder of Jet mix'd together; and be fure let the Stable be very well littered; and then cloath him up with all speed, and fo let him fand two hours. Then feed him with Rye-bread, after that with a very good Mash: then give him his Belly full of Hay, and what Corn and Bread he will eat. Then bathe his Legs well with Urine and Salt-petre, leave him Corn in Locker, and fo let him rest till the next Morning; at which time order him as before directed in his days of Reft.

Thus I have imparted to the publick what my own Experience has taught me, relating to this part

of Horsemanship. I desire no Person to rely on further than they shall find it advantageous upon Practice and Tryal. If others more skilful would be as free to communicate their Observations on this Subject, this profitable part of Knowledge might then perhaps be improved to perfection. The giving a Specimen was all that is here designed. If the Reader finds any Errors, he is desired either to pardon or amend them. To those that either know no better, or want other Helps, this possibly may prove no unwelcome piece of Service.

THE

THE OF THE THE

The TABLE for Hunting.

ABLE (or HUNTING

Being the First Part:

I Ntroduction	1
1 Terms of Art	4
Some general Names of Hounds and Beagles	. 18
Terms relating to Forests, &c.	19
Of the Hound Rache and Sluth-hound	27
Of the Blood-hound	ibid.
Of the Gaze-hound	31
Of the Grey-hound	32
Of the Harrier and Terrier	34
Of the Hound Levyner or Lyemet	35
Of the Tumbler	ibid.
Of the Spaniel	36
Of the White Hound	37
Of Fallow Hounds	38
Of the Dun Hound	ibid.
The marks of a good Hound	40
The Election of a Dog and Bitch for good Whelps	ibid.
How to enter young Hounds at the Hart, &c.	41
Of Courfing with Grey-hounds	43
The Laws of the Leash or Coursing	46
The Stiles of Hunting different from the English	h, both
Antique and Foreign	48
Of Hart-Hunting	53
The Nature of a Hart	ib.
Of the Rut of Harts	58
Of the time of Harts Mewing	61
Of the Coats and Colours of Harts, and their diver	fities ib.
How to know an old Hart by the Slot, Entries, &	cc. 63
The names and diversities of Harts-heads access	ording to
Hunters Terms	65
How to feek a Hart in his baunts or feeding-place	es accord-
ing to the seasons of the year	66
In what manner the Huntiman shall go drawing	ng in the
Springs	67
Ggg	Directions

The TABLE fo	HUNTING.
Directions for Harbouring a S	stag 6
How to find a Hart loft the	night before
How to find a Hart in high !	
How to unbarbour a Hart an	d cast off the Hounds it
What subtilties are used in hun	ting a Light at force
How to kill a Hart at Bay	uck or Hart Roe-Hunting
Directions at the death of a B	uck or Hart 7
Buck-Hunting 76	Roe-Hunting 7
Rain-Deer-Hunting 81	Hare-Hunting 8
Of Parks and Warrens 91	Of Coney-catching 9
Of the Ferret 94	Of Fox-Hunting 96
Of Badger-Hunting 101	Of Otter-Hunting 109
Of the Squirrel	108
Of the Mattern or Wild-Ca	at Fig.
A Short Account of Beasts not I	Hunted in England, and fig
of the Wolf	111
Of Wild goat-Hunting	117
Of Wild-boar Hunting	119
Of Bear-Hunting	121
Of the Boover	740

Go Ho Ho Ho Ho Ho Ho Ho

Ho

H

Oj H

H

H

H

H

A

L

129

111

135

General

The TABLE for Hawking. Being the Second Part.

Of the Elk

Difeases and Cures of Hounds

Diseases and Cures of Spaniels

THE Introduction Page 1 Terms of Art 4
Of the Haggard-Faulcon 11
How to know the Nature and Disposition of several Hawks,
and what must be observed from thence 17
Of the Faulcon 19
Of the Manning, Luring, Flights, and Mewing of a Faulcon, with other things belonging to an Ostrager 21
Of bathing a Faulcon lately reclaimed; how to make be,
and to hate the Check 25
How to enseam a Faulcon with her Castings and Scowrings 27

The TABLE for HAVVKING.

General instructions for an Ostrager or Faulconer	31
How to bood a Hawk	34
How t make your Hawk know your Voice and	
feeding	35
How to make your Hawk bold and venturous	36
How to make a Hawk know the Lure	ib.
How to make a Hawk flying	37
A Flight for 4 Haggard	3,9
How to make a Soar-Faulcon, or Haggard k	ib.
Remedy for a Hawks taking fand in a Tree	40
How to help a Hawk froward and coy throng greafe	ib.
How to make a Hawk hold in her head, and	not mind
Check	41
How to continue and keep a Hawk in her high fi	
A flight for the Hern	43
Of the Haggard-faulcon; why so called, her and properties, &c.	good shape
Of the Barbary-faulcon 47 Of the Gerfau	ilcon 48
of the Saker	58
Of the Lanner, Lanneret, and Tunisian	
Of the Merlin	50
of the Mewing of Merlins, Faulcons, &c.	Andaubich
is the best way of Mewing	56
Of the Hobby 58 Of the Gosha	wk 59
How to make the Sour or Haggard-Goshawk	61
How to make a Goshawk fly to the Partridge	62
How to help a Goshawk that turneth Tail to Ta	il, and gi-
veth oves her Game	63
How to make a Goshawk fly quickly	64
How to fly a Goshawk to the River	ib.
An excellent way to preserve a Goshawk in the flying, especially in his weather	
How to fly the Wild goofe or Crane with the	Golhank
The state of the gooden Clane with the	66
House Mou a Colhamb and Land	
How to Mew a Goshawk, and draw her out of	
and make her flying G g g 2	ib.
G g g 2	Some

The TABLE for HAVVKING.
Some general Observations for an Ostrager or Faulconer
keeping and reclaiming a Goshawk 67
Of the Sparrow-hawk 79
How to make a Sparrow hawk, whether Eyes, Brancher,
Soar, Mew'd, or Haggard 71
How to Mew Sparrow-hawks 75
The duty of a Faulconer, with necessary Rules and Obser-
vations for him to follow 76
Of Diseases and dangerous accidents incident to Hawks,
and their several Cures 77
Of Castings and Mewtings, either good or bad according
to their several complexions and smells 78
Of the Cataract 81 Of the Pantas or Asthma ib. Of Worms 82 Of the Filanders 83
Of Worms 82 Of the Filanders 83
Another approved medicine for Filanders or Worms in
Hawks 84
Of Hawks Lice ib.
A safe and easie way to kill Lice in Hawks ib.
How to keep and maintain all manner of Hawks in health,
good plight, and liking 85 Of the Formica 86
Of the Frounce ib. Of the Pip 87
How to remedy that Hawk which endeweth not, nor put-
teth over as she should do
How to make a Hawk feed eagerly that bath loft appetite,
without bringing her low ib.
How toraife a Hawk that is low and poor 89
How to remedy a Hawk that is slothful and averse to slying
ib.
Of swoln feet in a Hawk 90
How to Scour Hawks before you cast them into the Mew ib.
The TABLE for Fowling.
Being the Third Part.
the state of the s
W Hat Fowling is, with the nature and diversity of all manner of Fowl Page 1
Of the haunts of Foul
The

The TABLE for FOVVLING.

The readiest way to take great Fowl with Nets	5
How to take small Water-fowl with Nets	6
How to take small Birds with Bird-lime	7
How to take great Fowl with Lime-twigs	9
Of the great and lesser Springs	11
Of the Fowling piece and Stalking-borse	. 12
How to take all manner of Land fowl by day and	night 18
Of Bat-fowling	20
Of the Day-net, and how to take Birds therewith	2 T
Of taking small Birds which use Hedges and Bu Lime-twigs	shes with
How to make the best fort of Bird-lime, and how	touse it
The best and most experienced way of making Wa	ter Bird
In what manner Snipes may be taken with Bird	lime ib.
Themanner of taking Felfares by Water-Bird-li	ime 28
How to take Pidgeons with Lime-twigs	29
How to take Magpies, Crows, and Gleads, w.	
How to take Rooks when they pull up the C	orn by the
How to take Birds with Baits, either Landor W	ater-fowl ib.
A most excellent and approved way bow to take	
21 mile excession and approved may hope to take	
How to take Pheafants feveral ways	32
The fashion of Pheasant-Nets	33
Of driving of Pheasant-powts	ib.
The seasons for the using of Nets or Lime	39
How to take Partridges leveral ways	ib.
Oftaking Partridges with Nets	40
How to take Partridges with Bird-lime	ib.
How to drive Partridges	41
How to take Partridges with a Setting-dog	42
How to take Rails, Quails, Morepots, Oc.	44
How to elect and train a Setting-dog from a Wh	elp till be
comes to perfection	45
10	H_{02}

The TABLE for FOWLING	
How to train a Water-dog, and the afe thereof	49
How to take, preserve, and keep all manner of Sing	ing-
Of the Nightingale 53 How to make a strap to take him.	Net-
	55 61
Of the Canary-bird 19 Of the Black-bird Of the Throstle 62 Of the Robin-red-breaft	64
Of the Wren 65 Of the Wood-lark	66
Of the Skie-lark; the several ways to take them, and a	
taken, bow to order them	69
Of the Linnet	71
Of the Gold-finch or Christmas-fool, so called in I	
folk	72
Of the Tit-lark 73 Of the Chaffinch	74
Of the Starling ibid. Of the Redstart	75
Of the Bull-finch 71 Of the Green-finch	ib.
Of the Hedge-Sparrow	ibid.
The TABLE for Fishing Being the Fourth and last Part. The Introduction An Encommun, or somewhat in praise of Fisher	geı
and Fishing	7
Fish-ponds to improve, and the fish therein contained	8
Carps to make them grow to an extraordinary bigness	in 4
Pond	10
General Observations no be underfood in the Art of	Ang-
ling	11
Astrological Elections for Angling in general	13
What provision so to be made for Angling tools	14
A Line after the best manner, how to make	15
Of the Hook, Flote, and other things worth the observ	ation 16
Flies Natural and Artificial, and bow to use them	17
Of Ground-angling 22 Of Night-angling	23
What times are seasonable, and what unseasonable to	angle
iu	24
	Of.

The TABLE	for FISHING.
Of the Barbel 26	Of the Bream 28
Of the Bleak	30
of the Bull-head or Mill	lers-Thumb 31
of the Chevin 32	Of the Char ibid
of the Chub, Cheven,	Chavender 33
Of the Carp 34	of Dace or Dare 36
Of the Eel 38	Of the Flounder 40
Of the Gudgeon 41	Of the Galpiard ibidi
Of the Loach 42	Of the Minnow 43
Of the Pope or Ruft ibis	
Of the Pearch 47	Of the Rud 49
of the Roach	The Manual of the second state of the
Of the Stickleback	52 may 52
Of the Salmon	All Forest phase states that
Of the Tench Of the Torcoth	56
Of the Trout	ibid.
of the Umber or Gray	
Fishes Haunt, &c.	ibid.
Experimental Observation	ns and Directions for Angling. 63
An Angling Song	71
-01	Of de size Employed
	the Hunting-Horse.
the necessity and be	s in goneral, their excellency, and enefit of the Art of Keeping Page 1
	of Stathon, and Maies, with
Some general Remarks	should be of, before he be put to
Hunting . Of the Sta	ble, and Groom, and of the Horses
Suft Ashing on from	Graft, in order to his further dieting
July surfest who I cam ?	21
How to order the Hunte	
	Diet, and of his first Hunting, and
what Chases are most	proper to Train him 45
	nights keeping, and first Thorough-
[weating	58
Of making a Hunting	Match, its advantages and disad-
vantages	63

ELECTROLIC CONTRACTOR OF THE STATE OF THE ST
The TABLE for the HUNTING-HORSE.
Of the ordering the Hunter for a Match or Plate 69
Of the means to judge of your Horses state of Body, and of
curing all Casualities that may happen after Matching 79
Of Riding a Hunting Match, or Heats for a Place, and the
advantrges belonging to each 83
An Abridgment of Manwood's Forest
Laws. And of all the Acts of Parliament
made fince; which relate to Hunting, &c.
OF the Forest Laws of Canutusi Page 1 An Abstract of all the Laws made for the Preservation
An Abstract of all the Laws made for the Preservation
of a Forest, what it is, and whereof it doth confift ibid.
Of a Frank-Chase, a Park, and a Free-Warren, what
they are, and how they differ from each other II
Of the Forest Laws in general
Of the Courts belonging to the Forest, the Judges thereof,
and the Officers attending the same
Of the Limits of the Forest, and the Offences committed
therein 29
Of the time of Famning for the Deer of the Forest, &c. 33 Of keeping Dogs within the Forest, &c. 35
Of Keeping Dogs within the Porelt, &cc. 35 Of Venison, its Name and Signification 37
of Hunting and Hawking within the Forest, &c. 38
Of the Purlieu, or Pouralle of the Forest, and who may
Hunt therein, when, how often, how far, and in
what cases
Of the Officers belonging to the Pourallees, called Rangers
The sale land of the Demails of the sale
How and where Offences in the Pourallees shall be tried, and punished
and punished 'An Abstract of all the Statute Laws, from Magna-
Charta to this time, made for the Preservation of the
Game of Hunting, Hawking, &c. 75
Charters and Ordinances of the Forest ibid
Of Bows, and Guns, and Shooting at Game 82
of Hunting, Hawking, Fowling and Fishing 85, 86
F 1 N 1 S.

An Abridgment of

MANWOOD'S forrest Laws.

And of all the

Acts of Parliament

Made Since;

WHICH RELATE TO

Hunting, Hawking, Fishing, or Fowling.

LONDON,

Printed for Math. Rolls, at his Auction-house in Petty-Canons in St. Paul's-Church-yard, 1696. An Abridgment of

MANWOODS.

of the No But

Acts of Parliament

Mude Sir

or. 12. 438 12 W

Honing, Haskin, Filbing, or Foreign

I O N O I

Printed for 14th Many as the Arthonical Arthur

Forrest Laws

OF

CANUTUS.

The Charter of the Forest of Canutus the Dane, sometime King of England, granted at Winchester, in a Parliament holden there, Anno Domini, 1062.

Here begin the Constitutions of King Canutus, concerning the FOREST.

These are the Constitutions, or Laws of the Forest, which I Canutus King, with the Advice of my Nobility, do Make and Establish, That both Peace and Justice be done to all the Churches of England, and that every Offender suffer according to his quality, and the manner of his Offence.

Dere thall be from benceforth four, out of the best of the freemen, who have their accustomed Rights secured, [whom the English call Pagened] consa a a 2 stituted

dituted in every Piovince of my Kingdom,t distribute Justice, together with due punish ment, as to the matters of the Forest, to all my Péople, as well English as Carish, throughout my whole Kingdom of England, which four the think fit to call the Chief Men of the forrest; [Row called Verderors,]

2. There thall be, under every one of these four, out of the middle sort of men [whom the English call Lespegend, and the Danes, Young Men] placed, who shall take upon them the care and charge as well of the Vert as the Venison.

E Jaom called Regardors]

3. But ale will not by any means have luch persons concern themselves in the Administration of Justice: yet such middle sort of Went, after their taking upon them the care of the Beasts of the Forrest, shall be always reputed free Men, such as the Danes call Ealdermen.

Again, under every one of thele, hall be two of the meaner fort of Den, whom the English call Tine Men, thele thall take care of the Venison and Veri by Right, and impergo other fervile Offices. I Now called Foresters, of Keepers.

as he taked his place in our forces, and tale will maintain all fuch at our own Charge.

6. Also every one of the Chief Men Log Verdetors I shall have every year out of our Mard [which the English call Michai] two posses, the one with a Saddle, the other without, one Sword, five Lances, one Bead-piece, one spield, and Two hundred shillings of illver.

Regarders and botter one Lance, one thield,

and firty thillings of fiber.

8. Thery one of the meaner fort of men [02 Forefters] one Lance, one Coofs bow, and fif-

teen thillings of fifber.

9. That all of them, as well Chief Men [02 Verderers] middle fort of men, [02 Regarders] and meaner fort of men [02 Forresters] shall be free and quit from all 1920bincial Summons, and popular pleas [which the English call Hundred Laghe] and from all Cares concerning the Wars, of Weapons [which the English call Warfcot] and from all forein plaints.

10. That the Caules of the Middle fort of Men [0] Regarders] and of the Meaner fort of Men [as Forrefters] and their Corrections, as well Cziminal as Civil, thail be Abiudged and Decided by the provident wisdom and difcretion of the Chief Men [of Verderors,] But the Enormities of the Chief Men [oz Verderors] if any fuch thall be, (leaft any Crime thould e. scape unpunished) tale our felt will cause to be punished according to our Royal Displeature.

1.1. E bele four [Chief Men, of Verderors] thall have a Royal Power, (fabing in our presence) and four times in the year the general Demonstrations of the Forrest and the forfeitures of Vert and Venison (which the English call Muchehunt) where they thall all of them bold Claim, or Challenge of any thing touching the Forrest and shall go to a Threefold Judge ment (which the English call Gang fordel) and thus the Chree-fold Judgment thall be obtain'd; The party that take with him five of thers, and he himfelf thalf make the firth, and to by swearing be shall obtain a Threefold Judgment, of Cripple Dath. But the Purgation of Fire (0) Fiery Ordale) thall be by no means admitted, unless in fuch cases where the naked Cruth cannot otherwise be found out. 12. But

gaa a

T2. But a Freeman, (f. Pegen) [so that his Crime he not inter mariota] may have an honest Man who may take an Dath for him (f. Forathe) but if he bath not, he must swear himself, and shall not be excused from swearing.

13. If a stranger, or sozeiner, who chall come from some place afar off, be challenged of the Forest and the meanness of his condition be such, that he cannot procure a Pledge to his sirst Challenge, [which no Englishman may adjudge] Then he shall undergo the king's Caption, and there he shall stay until he shall go to the Judgment of Iron and Water: i. of the Ordale: But yet is any one shall hurt such a stranger coming from a place afar off, that is an Offender, he that both hurt him shall have his Judgment executed upon him.

14. Mholoever thall, before my Chief Men (or Verderors) of my Forest, bear falle witness, and be thereof convicted, shall be incapable for ever afterwards to be a witness, or give his Testimony in any Cause, because be hath lost the benefit of the Law, and for that his Trime be hall pay to the King Ten shillings (which

the Danes tall Half-hang, of Halfe-hang.

chief Men (or Verderors) of my Forest, if he be tree he shall lose his liberty, and all that he bath, and if he be a Clillane, his right hand shall be cut off.

16.3 If either of them thall offend again, in

the like cale, he shall be guilty of beath.

tend in fall, with one of the Chief Men, (or Verderors) be shall forest to the king as much as be is worth (which the English call Pere and Pite) and pay to the Chief Man (or Verderor) topy shillings.

18. If any person thall break the Beace before the Middle fort of Men (02 Regardors) of the Forest, which they call Geth-brech, he thall pay to the King Cen Millings.

19. Wibofoever thall firike any of the Middle fort of Men. (02 Regardors of the Forest) in wath, be thall forfeit as much as is ulually forfeited unto the King for killing a Royal Beaft of the Forest.

20. If any perfon thail be taken offenbing fri the Forest, he shall suffer punishment according to the manner and quality of his offence.

21. The Punishment and Forfeiture hall not be one and the same of a freeman (whom the Danes call Ealderman) and of one that is not free, of a Mafter and of a Servant, of one that is known, and of one that is not known; 1202 shall the management of Causes, either Civil of Criminal, of the Beaffs of the Foreit, and of the Royal Beaffs, of the Clert, and of the Clenison, be one and the same : For the Crime of bunting bath been of old reputed (and not undeferbedly) amongst the greatest Offences that could be committed in the Forest; but that of Clert is esteemed so little and trivial (except as it is a Breach of our Royal Chafe) Chat our Constitution of Forest-Law both scarcely take notice of it; Devertheles he that offenos therein, is guilty of one of the Trespalles of the Forest.

22. If any freeman thall Course or bunt a Beaff of the Forest, either calually of wilfully, to that by the fwiftness of the Course, the Beat both pant, and is put out of Breath; fuch freeman thall forfeit Cen thillings to the King, and if he be not a Freeman, be thall forfeit boubles but if he be a Bonoman he chall lole his skin.

Forrest, be shall pap vouble, the second time as much, and the three shall forfeit, as much as

be is worth, to the Ring.

But if any, or either of them, by Courfing, or Hunting, force a Royal Benti, which the English call a staggon (or stag) to pant, and be out of heath. The Freeman hall lose his natural Liberty for a Pear, and the other for two years; But the Bondman hall be reckord as an Dut law, (which the English call a Friendless Man.)

any of them, The Freeman hall lofe his freebom. The other his Liberty, and the Boudman

bin Life.

26. My Hispops, Abbots, and Barons that not be challenged for Dunning in my Forrest except they kill Royal Beasts, and if they do, they wall make latisfaction according to my pleasure, without knowing the certainty of the

tozfeiture.

27. There are some Beaffs (befides those of the Forrest) which, while they keep within the Bounds and Limits of the Forrest, are subject to be accounted for, when bunted, by the Laws of the Forrest, bis. Wild Goats, Hares and Conies. And there are also a great number of Cattle. which, although they live within the Limits of the Forrest, and are subject to the charge and tare of the Middle fort of Men (102 Regardors) Revertheless cannot at all be reputed Bealts of the Forrest, as Wilde Horses, Buffaloes, Wilde Cows, &c. As for Foxes and Wolves, they are neither reckon'd as Beaffs of the Forrest. or of Venery, and therefore whoever kills any of them is out of all banger of forfeiture, or making any recompence, or amends for the same; Ine. vertheless pertheless the killing them within the Limits of the Forreit, is a breach of the Royal Chale, and therefore the Offender thall piels a Recompence for the lame, though it be but easie and gentle. But a Wilde Boar, notwithsanding he is a Beast of the Forrest, nevertheless he was never thought to be a Beast of Vepery.

28. The San shall touch, or metale with Out Edood, or Ember wood, without Licence of the Chief Men (or Verderors) of Out Forrest, which if he do, he is Guilty of the Breach of

Dur Royal Chafe.

19. But if any Person hall Cut bown a Possy Cree, or any other Cree that yieldeth food for the Willo Beasts, besteen making latissacion for the Breach of the Royal Chase, he shall pay Ewenty shillings to the King.

plealeth, have, and take Venison, of Vert, upon his own Grounds, or in his own fields, being out of my Chase, and let all men about, and soubest taking my Venison, or Vert, in every

place where it is mine.

graphics of the forest, of keep any such Dogs, which the English cast Greyhounds. But Free Men may, provided the Dogs knees be cut before one of the Chief Men, (or Verderors) of the Forrest, or without cutting their uness, provided the Dogs be removed, and kept Cen miles from the limits of the Forrest. But if the Dogs shall come any nearer to the Forrest, the Paster shall pay for every Hile one shilling. But if any of the said Dogs be found within the precincts of the Forrest, the Paster of such Dog shall not only sofielt the said Dog, but Cen shillings in money to the king.

32. But the little Dogs (which the Danes call Velceres, and the English Langeran) because

it manifestly appears that there is no danger in them, it had be very lawful for any person to keep them without curting their knees. The same Law shall be touthing such Dogs the En-

glift call Ramhundt.

33. But it it happen that such fort of Dogs become may and run every inhere by the headigence of their Patters, by luch means they will become unlawful, and the King hall be recompened for such their unlawfulness, &c. But it they hall be found within the Precincts of the Forest, the Dwners shall be found out, and make recompence according to the price of a Mean Man, which, according to an antient Law, catter Lex Merimorum, is Two huntien shiftings.

34. It a mad Dog thall bite a Will Beatt of the Forest, then the Divner of the Dog shall make Recompente according to the price of a freeman, which is Ewelve times a Dundred thillings. But if a Royal Beast shall be bitten. Then the Dwner of the Dog shall be

See of the land of the land of the see

gufftp of the greatest Clime.

files of a factor provider the along the control of the control of

An Abstract

Ci fiet Laws and Privileges of the Forces

Booken and Been of England.

Of all the LAWS, made for the Preservation of the Game of Venary, Chase and Warren, Hawking, Fishing and Fowling, as well in the King's Forests, and the Purlieus thereof, as in the Chases, Paddocks, Woods, Parks, Warrens, Fisheries, Vivaries, and Grounds Inclosed of any His Majesties Subjects, where Game is usually kept, in ENG-LAND and WALES.

Of a forest, what it is, and whereof it doth

Forest is a Branchise Royal, Created by the King, and by him set apart, and appointed so, the Generation, Forthling and Nourishment of wild Bealts and Venary and Chase, and also so, Bealts and Powls of Warren; Not incident to any of this subjects; so, no subject can have, or enjoy forest, without special Grant from the King, waker

under the Great Seal of England, it being lus Regale, peculier only to his Imperial Crown and Dianity, as a Soveraian Prince; babing particular Laws, Privileges, and Officers belonging thereunto, for the Prefernation and continuance thereof, and of the Vert and Venifon therein.

2. It is a Circuit of Swound, fored with great moods, and Thickets of Cobert, for the Shelter, Relidence, and Safety of wild Beatis, and foinis of Forreit, Chafe and Warren; and is also replenished with fruitful Daflures, and Lawnos for their continual feeding and Subliffence; Being privileged to tell, and abide therein under the king's Protection, for bis Royal Daftime, Divertion and Dieafure.

3. A Forreft is Circumicribo, or Bounded with Irremovable and Idelible Barks, Meers and Bounds, known, and preferved either by

matter of Records or by Preferention:

4. It confifts of 8 things; viz. 1. Of Soil. 3. Laws: 4. Courts. 5. Judges. 2. Covert.

7. Game. 8. Bounds. 6. Officers.

Note, A Forrest is not a Place priviledged generally, for all manner of Wild Beaffs, or Fowles, but only of those that are of Forrest. Chale and Warren; The Willo beaffs of the Forrest, or beaffs of Venary, being thele fibe, and no other, viz. The Hart, the Hind, the Hare, the Boar and the Wolf. And although the Hart and the Hind are heaths of the fame kind, to soveeles, pet nevertheless they are accounted two Ebetal beaffs, propter differenciam tempotis in quo venati funt, because they are of two several sealong to bunting; The fealou for bunt ing the Hart being in Summer, and the time for Bunting the Hind beginning when the featen of the Hart is ober.

Of the Laws and Priviledges of the Forrell. It By the Harris understood as well a Stag and Staggerd, as every other Male Deer of that fort.

Of a Frank Chale, a Patk, and a Free-Clarten, what they are, and how they differ from each other.

Frank, or Free Chafe, is a franchile next in bearee unto a Forrest, being a open place for the keeping of Same and in that respect Comething relembling it, yet with this difference, Chat a Chafe bath neither the same kinds of Same in it, norany particular Laws belonging to the lame, proper to a Chafe only; for whereas the Beaffs of Forrest are the Hart Hind. Hare, Boar and Wolf, The Beaffs of Chair are none of them, but other five, viz. The Buck, the Doe, the Fox, the Martron, and the Roe: In like manner, all offenders in a Chale are punifiable by the Common Law of this Realm, and not by the Forest-laws. Belides, a Chase hath no fuch Officers as a Forrest, viz. Verderors, Regardors (02 Raungers) Forrefters, and Agistors: 1202 hath it any Courts of Attachments, Swainmote, or Justice-leat appertaining theremate, all the Officers belonging to a Chale being offit Reepers, as they are called in a wark, but fuch are termed Forresters in a Forrest.

2.As a Chaic is nert in begree unto a Forreif, and in some lost resembling it. So is a Park to a Chase being in many respens the same in the there is no diversity between them, save only that a Park is inclosed, and a Chase lies always

open without Inciolure.

3. Laftly, The next Franchife, in begree unto a Park, is the Liberty of a Free Warren; (The Beaffs

Of the Laws and Privileges of the Forrest Beaffs and fowles whereof are four, wiz. Hare, the Coney, the Phealant, and the Parcridee, and no other (being fuch as may be taken by Long Ming'D Hawks, according to Budges For as a Forest is the Diabelt, and areatest in Dignity of all Franchifes, So it both Sur-Date them aff for its Ertent, and Commehen. fretiels, Including in it a Frank, Chafe, a Park. and a Free Warren; for which reason. The Beaffs of Chafe, and the Beaffs and fowls of Watten are as much privileged withit a Forest as the Beans of Forest are: There Forest being one a part of it; and to the tike may be fain ut a forest and a Warren: And therefore the buncoloks of Chale, Park of Warren within the limits of the Forest is a Ctelpals of the Forest of buninable by the Laws of the Forest, and

my directiffe.

Inductive the Laws made for the Preference and Continuance of Forests, and Purlieus therest, and the Vert. Venison, and Fowles therein, are particularly applicable unto, and only proper for Forests, and no other places; Therefore the chall begin with a brief Account of the Laws that relate to the king's Forests may, and asternourus proceed to biscourse of unit other Laws, as have been since made so prefer dation of the Game of Hunting, Hawking, Fishing and Fowling in the Chaics, Parks Warrens, Woods, or other Country, Fisheries, in Vivaries, which Lagrand and Wales, belonging to the

that a Park is incisied, and a Chase des always. open bedievet Incisions

odes I stocket at an antice at the of the forest Latus in general

fired the ee then fain to be the littante, as Collins

Tis Reported by Intient Willorians, That Forests have been allways in this kinghom from the first time that the same inad inhabiteb. And the Author of Concordantia Historiarum tells us. That Gurgantius the Son of Belyn a Iking of this Island, Bid make certain Foreits. for his pleasure, in Wilthire : And that niners other kings have bone the like, fince his time. Which Forests the Kings of this Realm hane allways maintained; and preferbed (with divers Privileges, and Laws appropriated thereunto) as places of pleature, and belight. for their Royal Paffime, and Divertion.

and when it happen'd that and Offenbers Entren into those Pabilea's Wiares, and Committed any Trespals therein, they had bern febere Duniffments inflicted upon them. according to the Laws then in force, which were berp grievous, and altogether uncertain, according to the Arbitrary and Uniforitted Will of the King: And thus those Laws were erecuted, and their Duniffments continued, until about the year 1016, when Canutus the Dane hecame King of this Realm; Caho, belighting much in Forests, Did (for the better maintenance, and preferbation thereof) @fablif certain Laws, or Conflitutions peculier only to Forcies: By which it appears, That before his time, all Wild. Beatle and Burds were only the Kings, and that no other perfon might kill. or hurt them: The Ring's of Bagland babint by their Prerogative Royal, a Ruthrand Pribilege in all fuch thinks as none of their Sabjeds could Challeng any property in; and luch

14 Of the Laws and Privileges of the Forreit

fuch were then late to be the latings, as collid Bealls. Birds, &c. in whole Lands or amonds sueber they were found. Either euron the late Canutus made a Law, That every free man might, at his pleasure, have and take his own Geett and Clention, or bunt upon his own ground, or in his own fields, being out of the Kings Chafe; But that all Men should forbear to Dave or Cake the Kings Clert or Came in every place where his Highness should have the same.

Also it appears by the Laws of St. Edward the Confessor, That he bit Confirm the fair Law of Canutus, by a Sanaton made in his time, to this Effect, That it should be lawful for every one of his Subjects to Enjoy the behefit of his own Hunting, that he could any way have of make in his own Lands. Woods, or Fields; So that he did forbear to Hunt the King's Game in his Highness Forrests, or other Priviledged Places, on pain of losing

his life for fuch Offence.

William the Conqueror, as appears in the 27 Chapter of the Book wherein his Laws were Collected and digested; and to were continued by him all his time.

After whose beath, William Rusos his Son, in like manner Continued the Same Laws.

During bis life.

And after his death, King Henry the first, his Brother, succeeding him to the Crown, by his Charter Confirmed all the Laws of the Forrest made by St. Edward the Conscillor, as appears by the Book kept in the Exchequer, called Libertubrus, cap. 1. Legum surrous Albich Laws of the Forrest so continued during all the life time of the said Henry the first.

t

n

t

After whole veceale, King Stephen by his Charter Confirmed all the late Laws, 1921bileges,

leges and Cuffoms granted by St. Edward the Confesion, and Henry the first; and continu-

ed the fame buring bis life.

After whole beath, King Henry the fecond fucceding him, did, by his General Charter, Confirm the aforelaid Laws of the Forest in many particulars, but not without great Alterations and Additions. for he both, in and by his faid Charter, Rectte and Declare the nature of the Laws of the Forest, and in what fense they were taken, and afed, or how interpreted or confirmed in times paft, and wherein they do differ from the Common Law of the Kingdom; and that the Kings of England before that time, and he himleff even then, might make a Forest in any place of the Realm, where They,or be, pleased as well in the Lands and Inheritances of any of Their, or bis Subjects, as in Their, or bis own Demein Lands, Which unimmtted, and unaccountable Power. claimed by the Atings of England in those times, by colour of the Forest Laws, over the Birthrights and Inheritances of their Subjects. was a might and insupportable Grievance to those whose Lands were so Afforested; Their Daffures and the Brofits of their Lands being then deboured by the Kings Wild Beaffs of his forests, without any Recompence for the fame.

And this Law of Afforesting the Subjects Lands (then daily to increating) was thought to be a very great and insuperable Oppression, not only to the Mobility and Gentry, but also to the Commonalty of this Kingdom, being all of them beharren from Incloung, or Improbine their own Lands, to Aflozened, airs

forced to let them lie open.

and if any of them die happen to Offend a. B bb gain

gainst the Forest Laws, Their Punishments were often exceeding great for a small Offence, and the Forseitures according to the Kings pleasure, not regarding the quantity of the Crespals, nor according to the Course of the Common Law.

Libich rigozous Execution of the Forest Laws continued during the life of Henry the second, and both the Reigns of Richard the first, and King John; Every one of which Kings did daily increase those Oppressions, by making more Mew Foresis in the Lands of their Sub-

jects, to their great Impoverifiment.

And this Wichief was not at all remedyed, until the making of Charta de Foresta by Henry the third, published in the ninth year of his Reign, which was afterwards Consumed, and Enlarged by Edward the first his son. Alberedy it is provided, That all forests that Hen.3. Rich. 1. and King John had Associated and made of the Lands, Meadows, Pastures, or Woods of any of their Subjects (being not the demeass Lands of the Croids) should be Disassociated again. For those three Kings last mentioned, had (in their times) Associated so much of their Subjects Lands, Chat the greatest part of the Uningdom was then Converted into Forests.

Of the Courts belonging to the forest, the Judges thereof, and the Officers attending the same.

There be three Principal Courts usually kept for Datters of the Forest, viz. The Court of Attachments, the Court of Swanimote, and the high Court of the Lord Justice in Eyre of the Forest, called the Justice feat; being each of them of a several and discount nature.

The Court of Attachments is the most inferiour of them all, for therein the Officers bu nothing but receive the Attachments of the Foresters and Intell them in the Verderors Rolls that they may be in a readiness against the time that the Court of Swanimote is Rept; and to that this Court cannot betermine any Offence or Trefpale, if the value thereof be at hope 4d. for all above that value must be Inrolled by the Verderors in their Bolt and fent from thence to the Court of Swanimote to be Croed there, according to the Laws of the Forest. For notwithflanding the greatest part of all the Diesentments de first begin in this Court, pet this Court cannot proced farther therein, neither is a Presentment in this Court any Condiction against the Defender in those Offences because he may Eraberse the sames tintil it hath valled the Court of Swanimore; Lo which all Trespasses presented at the Court of Attachments must necessarily come, before the offenders can be punified, or ffand convicted. as guilty in Law of their offences.

Mert in Dear & above the Court of Attachments, is the Court of Swanimote, though much inferiour to the luftice Seat of the Forest: for when the Presentments of the Court of Attachments, and the Court of Swanimore have had their Proceedings, according to the Affiles, and Laws of the Forest, pet cannot the Court of Swanimore netermine the fame, or affels Fines for any offences contained in luch Prefentments, or give Judgement thereupon (ather than to pronounce them convicted) But fuch Presentments, and Convictions must be belivered in to the Lord Juffice in Come of the Foralt, at the Court of Justice Seat, on the fitth day of Sitting of the fato Court, when the 2Bhha lame

same are called for, according to the Laws and Ordinances of the Forest. The Swanimore is a Court unto which all the Freeholders within

the Forest do owe Suit, and Service.

The next is the most Suppeme Court of the Forest, called the Justice Seat, or General Sessions, wherein the Lord Chief Justice, or Lord Justice doth sit; for unto him it only belongs to give Judgment in this Court of all offences, and to assess fines, and Punish offenders: This Court being as the Fountain head, unto which the other Courts of Attachments and Swanimote are but (as it were) two conduit Pipes to convey the Matters and Causes of the Forest, that from thence Judgement may be had, and given thereupon.

Mote, By the Charter of the Forest, Chap. 8. The Court of Arrachments shall be kept every forty dayes throughout the year, and the Court

of Swanimote thrice in the year.

The officers of the Forest whose personal Attendance is required at the said Courts, for putting the Forest Laws in execution, and the punishment of offenders, are principally the Verderors, Regardors, Foresters, and the Bedle of the Forest.

t. A Verderor is a Judicial Officer, thosen by Alrit in the full County Court of the Shire wherein the Forest is, and Iwom to maintain and keep the Alistes of the Forest, and to view, receive, and involt the Attachments, and Presentments of all manner of Trespasses of the Forest

relating to Vert and Venison.

Dis office is not much unlike to that of a Coroner, especially in this respect, As a Coroner by the Law, is to view the dead body of any one killed suddainly, of found dead, and it being unknown bow such person came by his, of her death)

beath) he aught (upon notice given him) to repair to fuch dead body, and view the fame, and thereupon inquire by the Dath of twelve Men, of the Meighbourhood where luch Dead body mall be found, upon view thereof, and luch Evidence and Circumstances as he can come by, bow fuch party came by his, or her death, and by what means, and how, or what was the occasion thereof; so it is the butp of a Verderor, by his office, to look after, and view the Will Bealis of the Forest, and if any of them be found flain wounded, or burt (upon notice given to him thereof) he is to go unto, and blew the fame, and caule an Inquilition to be made by a Jury of twelve Wen out of four of the next Cowns to the Forest, to know how fuch Beaft was killed, wounded, oz hurt, and by whom.

2. The next is a Regardor, whose office is, by his Oath, To make the Regard of the Forest, in such manner as the same hath been accusioned to be made in Ancient time; and also to view, and inquire of all offences of the Forest, as well touching Vert, as Venison; and of all Concealments of offences, or defaults of Foresters, and all other Officers of the Forest, con-

cerning the Execution of their offices.

Of Regardors there be three lotts, viz. One made by the king, by Letters Patents, where by the laid Office is sometimes granted so Life, and sometimes in Fee. 2. Another sort made by the Lord Thief Justice in Eye of the Forest, or by Whit directed to the Sherist: which Regardors are to Exercise the said Office during the king's pleasure only. 3. There is another sort of Regardors, made pro hac vice tantum, sort the present service of the Court of Swanimote, or to serve some other time in the 3 b h. 3

to Dithe Laws and Privileges of the Forest.

Attence of tome of the Regardos that are fick, of not able other wife to ferve at that time.

3. The next in older is a Forester, who is from to present the Vert and Vension of the kings forest, and to attend the Califo Beaus within his Chalk, of Jurisdiction, and to attach offeners therein, either in Vert of Vension, and to present the same at the Court of Attachments of the Forest, to the end they may be published according to the quality and quan-

tity of their offences.

A forester of the King's forest is inade eithet by Grant from the King, by Letters Putents, to have his Office in fee, paying a certain fee form Rent yearly for the same, or else to have the same sor like, or durante bene placito; and sometimes they Claim to hold the said Office by Prescription: and such foresters have oftentines set bants under them to everute the said Office, in looking after the forest, and taking care of the Deer therein, which have the Appenation of Foresiers, but are called Walkers, by Under keepers.

4. A Bedle; He is an officet, or feroant of the Forest, that both March, or Summon all persons to appear at the Courts of the Forest; He also makes all manner of Proclamations, ds well within the Courts of the Forest, as without, and executes all the Process of the Forest, as Bailing of Liberties, or Italierant of the Sheriff, both in his County execute all manner of Process, inhether Dean, Judicial, or otherwise, as well within Liberties as without.

Che Office of the Verderors at the Court of Artachments, is, Eo at there to bee the Artachments of the Forest, as well of Vert as Venison, and receive the same of the Foresters, and others, that peefent them thete, and then to make them in their own Rolls. The

The office of the Foresters, 10 Keepers at this Court, is . Co prefent offenders, and offences, or Crefbaffes, and to bring in Attachments there, that they have made of offenders, touching Vert and Venison, whom they have attached for committing fuch Trefpaffes in the Foreft.

This Court of Attachments is kept by the Verderors, and therefore fametimes called the Verderor's Court ; and pet at this Court all the Forefters , and other officers, and Ministers of the Forest ought to appear and give their attendance. Dere Woodwards must mesent all offences committed within their charge, and the heaths of Mill heaffs of the Forest, to the Chief Forreiter, of Verderor; but they cannot attach offenders, or make any Attachment, for that must be left to the Forefiers, whose office it is to perform.

As to the Court of Swanimote, the Verderors are the Chief Judges thereof, although the Thief Marben of the Foreft , 02 his Deputy, both usually lit there; but, it feems, not as a Judicial Officer, for no Judicial officer may, by the Common Law, make a Deputy. Meither could the Lord Thief Justice of the Forest legally make a Deputy, or appoint one to fit in his place in the Grand Sellions, or Court of Justice-leat of the Forest, until the Statute of 32 H. 8. cap. 35. Did authorife fuch Lords Chief Juffices to make Deputies to erecute their Offices, by Whitings of Aufruments under their hands, and fealed with the Seals of their Offices, and not otherwife.

But there is no fuch power given by any Statute to the Chief Warten of the Forest to make any Deputy to execute his Office : and pet there be commonly two Deputies in evetp Forest, which are called Lieutenants, that

25 b b 4

22 Df the Laws and Privileges of the Forest.

is to lay, The Lieutenant of the Lood Chief Austice, of Lood Justice in Eyrs of the Forest, and the Lieutenant of the chief Marden of the Forest.

By the Charter of the Forest, this Court of Swammore shall be kept thice in the year, viz. Dn the Fifteenth Dap before Michaelmas , when the Anistors of the King's Alloods do meet together to take the Agiffments in the Demeln dictions of the Crown. 2. About Martinmas when the Antifors receive the King's Pawnage; and to thefe two Courts muft come the King's Foresters, Verderors and Agistors, by Diffress and no other Officer, of Minifter of the forest. 3. The other Court of Swanimote thall be kept the fifteenth day before Midfummer-day when the Agiftors meet to fawn the King's Deer, and at this Court mall come the King's Forefters and Verderors by Diffres, and no other. But now the Law is, that all the Officers of the Forest ought to appear at Every Swanimote, not only the Verderors, Regardors, Agiftors, Woodwards, and all other perfong within the Circuit of the Forest. Which are Freeholders; but also out of every Cown and Willage, within the Forest, four Men and a Reve : for if any of thefe make Default, at a: my Court of Swanimote holden within the Foreft, every of them that be Amerced for his default, and fuch Amercement Effreated to the Whief Warben of the Forest, to levo the same ty Diffrels. It dies tale from Se

Note, by the words, Ministers of the Forest, above mentioned are intended the Stewards of the Court of Swanimote, who ought to be Wen of Learning, and well skill'd in the Laws, fiz some Pleas of the Forest are Tryed in the Court of Swanimote only, as appears by the Af-

files

men and Cultonis of the Foreit, Chap. 22. minere it is faith That if a Man be Attachen for cutting of Bounds withing the Foreit . That plea appertaine to the Court of Swanimote, he ine the Steward there, Anno 6 Edward

Dert, in order, we that Treat of the High-Court of luftice Seat, O Grand-Sellions of the Forefer and the Lord Chief Justice of the Forest.

The Dflice of Lord Chief Justice of the Foreft. is a Place of great bonour and Authorithe executed always by tome of the Chiefeff of the Robility, who is of the King's Diffip. Council Mahen be is made Lord Chief lufrice in Evre of the Forest by the Isina's Speciaf Commission, be bath, by that means, as nreat Authority as any Justice of Over and Terminer hath to hear and Determine Matters at Common-Law, if not greater : for then he map punish all Crespasses, and Offences of the Foreft according to the Laws of the fame; and may hear and betermine all Claims touching the Liberties and Franchiles within the Foreft; as to have Parks, Warrens, and Vivaries therein; allo of them that Claim to be quit of Affarts and Purprefuires, of fuch as Do Claim Leets, Hundreds, Goods of Felons, Fugitives and Outlaws, Felo's de fe, Waifs, Eftrays, Deodands . and fuch like Immunities and other Liberties mithin the Foreft: as likewife of fuch perfons that Claim to kill Hares, and other Beatts of Chafe and Warren, within the Forest.

be bath also an absolute Authority to betermine all offences within the Forest, either of Vert of Venison; for such offences shall not be netermined before any other Juffices, ercept Tuch as are appointed by Commission under the Breat Seal to ato and affift bim in the erscu-

tion and performance of his Office.

24 Of the Laws and Privileges of the Forest

And of this there are two Caies in the Very Book of Hen. 4. The first in the 21th year of that king, Fol. 22. Talbere in Technals debias lesacroribus in Pacis, the Plaintiff beclared. That the Defendant did enter into a certain Forest, at any the opinion of the Court was, That this sition of not lie, except to essences committed in Parks, for the Statum of Westen. 1. cap. 20. is only intended to tengels Injuries done in Parks, and half be taken strictly: Iso that the punishment that is given to committing Offences in Forests is punishable by the Statute of Charta de Foresia, and not otherwise, &c.

The other Case is in the same year, fo. 30.

18 here, upon an Muhistment, for killing an Hart proclaimed, found before the Justices of the Peace, the Indictment was Challenged, because it was not set fouth therein, in what place the Proclamation was made, nor in what place the Hart was killed for if he time killed out of the Bounds of the Foreit, it mas no offence in him that killed him; and fineux, Lord Chief Justice, said, that this matter might be pleaded to the Justician of the Court, because the Justices of the Forest sught to betermine the same.

Med to these the purpost of the Statute made in 34 E. 1. called Ordinatio Foreite, Chat all the Proceedings concerning Differess of the Foreit, in any other place except before the Justices of the Foreit, shall be noise, and that no other shall have power, or authority, to proceed against and enders in the Foreit, other than

the fultices of the Forest only.

their the justices of the Forest have obtain'n their Court of Justice-Suar of the Forest, they make out their Present to the Sheriff of the Courty subsecial the Forest lies, and the justice Seat is kept, commanding

monning him to fummon all the Prelats, Nobi-Knights, Gentlemen and Freeholders that have Lands within the Bounds of the Forest, and but of every Town and Village fout Wen aud a Reve, and out of enery Borough I melve late ful Men; and all persons that Claim to boil Pleas of the Forest before the justices ; Co aspear (fuch a bay, and place) before the fuffice in Eyre of the Forest, of his Deputy, to hear and the furth things as appetrain to the Pleas of the Forest. And like wife that the lath Sheriff his make Proclamation in all Boroughs, and other Towns, Fairs, Markets, and other publick places throughout his Bailiwick, That all persons who claim to have any Liberties, Franchifes, 01 Free-Gustoms' of the Forest, may be there, at the fame time, and place, to make good their Claims; And that all persons Attached, since theft Pledges and Maiapernors, who had a bow winen them until this Court for their Appearence be there allo to fland to, and abide the be there with his Balliffs, to steette fuch matters as appertain to his Office, and certifie the lustice of the Forest concerning the Premises.

Apon this Summons, the Officers of the Foreit, and all other persons that are to expear at this Court, must have a day of reasons ble Calarning by the space of Forty days, at the least, to hold their Sessions in, and they hall

bold Pleas of Quo Warranto.

There is allo another summons birected to the Chief Warden of the Forest, to marn all the Foresters, Verderors, Regardors, Woodwards, and other Ministers of the Forest, to come to the sale Court, and being with them all the Rolls, Writings,

tings and Attachments of the Forest (made since the last Court, of lest there undetermined) concerning the Vert and Venison of the Forest; and that the Regardors bo likewise come thicket, and being with them all the Regards made and incolled since the last Court; and that likewise the Agistors do appear there with their Attachments, and Rolls of Agistments, to perform such their duty concerning the same, as shall be required of them by the Court. Lasting, to cause all such persons to appear at the last Court, as Claim any Liberties, of Franchies within the Forest, to shew by what Warrant they Claim to have the same.

Note, That all persons, whether they swell within the Forest, or without, if they be summoned to appear at the Justice-Seat of the Forest, in respect of the Lands within the same, to serve there upon Inquests, ought to appear in proper person only, and not otherwise.

But all fuch persons which are to appear there, in respect of making their Claims, to have any Liberties of Privileges within the Forest, may appear there either in Person, of by At-

tomey at their own Elections.

Note, That all the Rolls of such offences, as have passed the Courts of Attachments and Swaniniote, are to be sealed up by the Verderors, and kept until the next Court of Justice-Seat, and then they are to present the same to the

Lord Justice in Eyre of the Forest.

But if any Officer of Minister of the Forest, that hath the Custody of such Rolls (at such time, as the Court of Justice Seat is holden) their Deirs, Executors, Assigns, of Tenants of their Lands (in what County soever they be) bo not being in such Rolls the First day of holding the lath Court, there shall issue out a Precept

A Precept to the Sheriff of the County, where fuch Lands do lie. . Commanding him. That " the Wife and Chilozen of luch offender, be "ing first by him turned out of Doors, be "cause to be seized all the Lands and Tene-" ments of fuch offender in his Bailywick , fo that he be responsible to the Lord Justice in Eyre of the Forest, as to the value of them, " for a Peat, unless the Cenants of fuch " Lands come before the end of the Bear, and " buting in the laid Rolls.

and fuch is the leverity of the Laws of the Forest touching this mattee, E hat if the Rolls of the Forrest should happen to be casually loft, pet the Officers by whom they were fo loft, their beits, Executors, or Tenants, muft make a Fine with the King for the fame.

Diff it happen fuch Bolls be burnt, or otherwife destroyed by the Common Enemy of the Mation, pet that hall not abaff for an Ercufe by the Laws of the Forest (though at Common Law it would be allowable) but even in this case the officer in whose custody they were. or had the Charge of them by the direction of the Court, must make his fine for the same or elle his lands thall be feifed: And foit is of Agistors, if they fail of their Rolls, or Accounts.

Likewife if the Verderors make default at the Court of luftice Seat, they thall be Amercen for the same, and difframed by their lands, to bying in their Rolls, Indiaments, and other

Taleitings concerning the Forest.

Mote, Chat before any Justice Seat of the Forest can be bolben, the Regardors must make their Regard, which is done by the Kings Witt, lent by the Lord Justice in Eyre to the Sheriff of that County, where the Forest is, in mbich

inhich the Court of Justice Seat shall be kept, to neither with an Abitract of all such matters as the Regardors shall inquire of, catho, when they have made their Bange, and Asirmed, at the Courts of Attachments, and Swanimote, such thatters, as they shall have found in their Suchey, are to present the same, under their hands and seals, unto the Lord Chief Justice in Eyre of the Forest, at the Court of Justice Seat within the

fame.

And then the Lord Chief Justice in Eyre, or hig Deputy, being let in Court, together with those that are in Committion with him, as his affici ants, after the Commillion read, and the Officers of the Forest called over, then the Freeholders of the Forest must be called, and such other persons as were summoned to appear at that time, out of which there is then choicen a Substantial Jury of the discrepted men, not under the number of 18.02 exceeding 24; After which Jury is (moin, the Lord Cheif Justice in Eyre, 0) his Deputy, or lame other person skill in the Laws of the Forek by his Appointment, shall othe in Charge to the Jury the Principal matters they are to inquire of, being a brief account of the leberal offences that have at any time been committed against the Laws of the Foreft; Against which there are some that refnect the Court of Inflice Seat of the Forest only as the account of Money received by the Verderors for does kept unerpeditated within the Forest, is to be made before the Justice in Egre at the nert Court of Justice Seat; The like for putter ing Nusances of the Forresc. Also unlamped Hunting in the Forest, shall be punished by The Dicial bentence at the Court of Justice Seat; and forhall offendens in the Purlieus of the Forest thich divers others and a stage deal After

After the lury have brought in their Verdick and the lame is recorded, and that the other Bufinels is over. The Oteward thall office the Dath to the Inhabitants of the Forreit, of the age of twelve years, to this Effect. To be true Liegeman unto the King; To do no hurt unto the Wild Beafts, or any thing else belonging to the Forest: Not to conceal any Offences committed by others, but to the uttermost of their power to reveal them unto the Officers of the Forest, or such

persons as ought to see the same redrest.

Then after the ending of the fath Court of luftice Seat, 02 Grand Sellions of the Forest, the Lord Cheif Justice in Lyre of the Forest, at his return to the Court, Tertifies the King what offences have been committed in the Forest fince the last Court before this was holvest there; and how the offenders have been profecuted for the fame; and what officers of the Forest have faithfully bischarged their Trus as they ought, according to the incumbent buty of their offices; and who have been remile therein. That they may be encouraged, or bif placed accordingly.

Of the Limits of the Forest, and the Offences committed therein, and how to diftinguish between an Offence committed within the Forest, and within the Regard of the Forest.

Therp Forest is bound with Limits to know the true Circuit, or Circumference thereof which in the oid Becambulations are called Marks, weres, and Boundaries; Bya Back in lignified any Thing that bath an Albent from the ground upward in beight, as a bill. Tires Charch, de 180 a Spete of the Focale 310130

is meant the diffance and place between the Forest, and the foil of any other person, where on any thing ooth fland that may be differnable afar off. and confpicuous to the bieto of the Person authorised to set out the Limits of the Forest, as a dwelling boule, a 99ili, &c. Laftie, by the word Boundary, is understood any Thing where with the Forest is bounded, that is upon the Level, and not bigher in view than the foil of the Forest it felf is, as a River. Dich way &c. and thefe are the Barks Deres and Boundaries, wohen of before, whereby a Forest is circumscrib'o, being irremovable and indelible; in regard they are fuch Chings as be immobable of themselves or irremobable by others, as bills. Churches, Diahways, and Rivers be, and vet fometimes for want of fuch permanent Boundaries, great Trees confoicuously known babe been made use of for that purpole, though perp rarely and upon cogent necessity: Chele Boundaries are also indelible as being preferbed by Watter of Record or Description.

It is very material and requilite for all perfons to be well acquainted with, or at least to have some competent knowledge of the Bounds O. Limits of the Forest, especially such Gentlemen as live near the same, and the officers concerned therein: for if one be prefented for killing a Will Beaft of the Forest, the place where the same was done ought punctually to be known, for it might be killed out of the For reft, and then no offence to the Forest-laws, ep cept in some special cases; and therefore the Limits of the Forest pught particularly to be known. So according to the words of Charta de Foresta of the oth of Hen! 3' Artic. 2. Chat Wen who dwell out of the Forest shall not come before

before the Justices of the Forest by Common Summons; in this cale the Limits of the Forest aught to be known, that it may be distinguithed who are dwellers within the Forest, and who without. Likewife by the Statute de Ma-lefactoribus, Anno zi E in 1971 any Forester Do "find any Crespatter wandring in his liberty "within the Forese, intending to do burt or "bamage therein and after Due and Ety made "to him, to stand anto the keace will not yield "himfelf, but bo flie oz relift; in this cafe, if " the Forester bo kill any fuch offender he shall "not be impeached for this Felony. In this cale, it will be ablolutely netellary to know the exact Bounds and Limits of the Forest; for in all probability Thie will be taken, Wihether. the Crespasser was killed within the same, oz not; and if within the Limits of the Forest, the Forester may plead the said statute in Justification, but otherwise it will be felony in him.

And farther it is to be observed. That all the Weres and Boundaries of the Forest, are according to the Affizes of the Forest, Anno 6. Ed. 1. intirely the Rings, and parcel of the Foreft ; ercept in some particular cales, as where they do confid of fuch things as the King bath no intrest in, or that are or may be any faccout of relief to the Wild heads of the Forest; for it a dwelling house, Will, or the like, be a Abere, or Wark of the Forest, yet, the King thall not have any interest in the same thereby, for the reason above mentioned.

But by the Affizes of Pickring Anno 8 Ed. 2 It was Adjudged, That no perfon might fith in any River that is a Boundary ca Were of a Foreit, without Marrant, because it is parcel of the forest, and the kings as a Were of the

Forest. And therefore the Abbot of Whirby than indicted, at those Affizes, for hilling an Hart the the Riber of Darwent, being the Mintches of the Forest, and carrying amap the Venilla mith him; But he made a fine for the same, and was bound to the good behaviour of the forest: and so much for the Limits of the Forest. and the Offences committed therein, next of the difference between an Diffence committed within the Forest , and within the Regard of the

Forest.

In the Affizes and Customs of the Forest, Anno 6 Ed. I. Artic. 3. It is laid. "If any person " that be found felling an Dak out of the demealn wood, atth within the Regard of the Forest, " without the Aliew, or velivery of the forester, of Verderor, be thall be Attached by four Die-" bires, and up the Cliew of the Verdener the " Dau chall be appraised, and the names of the " Diedres thall be written in the Roll of the Fo-"refters and Verderors. Derethe words [119ith in the Regard of the Forest I shall be underfrood within the Limits of the Foreft: But it is quite otherwise in the fifth Article of the same Affizes and cultoms, where it is fair. If any man thall he found Attachable contrary to his Sureties and pleanes (that is to fap, if he be bound to the good Behaviour towards the Forest, and after that Dienos in the like nature) be chall be distrained by his Chatels found within the Bounds, or Limits of the Forest: By which it appears, that luck a performany have Chatels diffrainable within the Bounds and Limits of the Forest, which are neverthe left out of the Regard of the Foreft, being per adventure in luck places as were exempted by Charter out of the Burthen and Charge of the Forest, as appears by the Perambulations made

made of the Forests in Edw. the first time, when bivers none within the Limits and Bounds of the Forests were Exempted out of the Regard of the Forest; So that there happens to be sometimes Towns, Parks, and Woods, which lie within the Bounds and Limits of a Forest, which not with Canbing are no part of fuch Forest, as Wallwood in Eslex formerly was being within the Forest of Waltham, and pet no part thereof, not within the Regard of the lame; and to Havering Park is within the Meres and Bounds of the laid Forest of Waltham, nevertheless, out of the Regard of the lame, and not any part thereof: But all fuch franchiles Lands, or nonobs that be any part of a Forest, are within the Renard of the lame ! and all fuch as are within the Meres and Bounds of a Forest, and are no part thereof, are out of the Regard of the Foreit: And this is the meaning of the diffination to be made of the words, Within the Regard of the Forest, Within the Limits [02 Bounds] of the Forest, and In the Forefr.

of the Time of Fawning for the Deer of the forest, called the fence, or farbitoen month, and how all persons ought to demean themselves in the forest during that time.

By the Charter of the Forest of Henry the third Artic. 8. The third Court of Swanimote is appointed to be kept sistem days before Midsoner, at which time all the Foresters, Verderors, and Agicors should meet together so the quiet and lasety of the 19110 Bealts durant

24 Df the Laws and Privileges of the Forest.

ing the time of their fawning, which is called the Fence, 02 Forbidden Month.

Chis Month confids of thirty days, viz. fifteen days before Middumer, and fifteen days

after.

During this Wonth diligent Watch and Ward must be kept in every Bailywick through out the Forest. That no person be suffer'd to go out of the Kings High way, least he should steal, or carry away the young Fawns; Morthall any Swine be then suffer'd to remain in the Forest, less they destroy the same: Morthall any person be suffered to go up and down, or bring into, or drive any Cattle or Beast through the Wass grounds of the Forest, out of the high way, less they dissure the Deer in the time of their Fawning.

And farther it is to be observed. That during this Month the Foresters are to give Motice to each house within every Bailywick in the Forest, to keep in all their dogs, and not suffer any of them to go absoad, whether they be Massiss expeditated, or any other kind of

Dong what foever.

For such persons so wandring about the Forest, at this time, without special business, shall be Attach'd by the Watchmen and War-

pers, and brought before the Verderors.

De if any person shall be found, at this time, to hurt of course any wild beast within the Forest; of to carry away any young Fawn; of to carry with him, out of the high way, any Bow, Gun, of Engine to hurt of destroy the Beasts of the Forest, he shall be Attached and brought before the Verderors.

Likewise, is any dogs thall be found running about the Forest, at this time, to disturb or affright the Deer, they shall Enquire whole

Of the Laws and Privileges of the Forest. 35 they are, and bring them unto the Verderors.

So, if any Deer hall be found hurt, or dead within the Forest, at this time, they shall Enquire of the manner of its death, and inform the Verderors thereof.

And such is the severity of the Laws of the Forest, That if such Watchmen, or Warders, shall endeabour to Apprehend any Crespassers, or Offenders in the Forest, to bring them before the Verderors, as aforesaid, but cannot, by reason of Besistance made against them; in such cases these Officers shall, by the Laws of the Forest, make Hue and Cry after such offenders till they be taken.

Of keeping Dogs within the **Forest**, and Expeditating the same, and the Foresiture for keeping them Unexpeditated therein.

Dewithstanding the strictness and severity of the Laws of the Forest, the Inhabitants within the same are allowed to keep such Dogs as are necessary for the preservation of their Dwelling Houses, and Goods therein, although some kinds of Dogs are forbidden to be kept within the Forest, except by some particular persons.

and therefore Farmers, and substantial Freeholders dwelling within the Forest, may keep Mastisfs for the defence of their boules within the same, provided such Mastisfs be Expeditated, according to the Laws of the Forest.

The way of Expeditating of Mastiss is done after this manner, viz. Chee Claws of the

indood Eight Inches thick, and a foot square, and with a Mallet, setting a Chillel of Two Inches wood upon the Chie Claws of his five foot, and at one blow cutting them clean off.

And this Expeditating (by some called hambling, or Lawing of Dogs) ought to be inquired of by the Regardors of the forest every third year, and to present such as are not Expeditated, and by whom kept, and thereupon such Dogs are to be Expeditated, and the Dwners of them America's for keeping such Dogs so dinlated.

But by the Laws of the Forest, if any Mastiff, that is Expeditated, be found upon a Deer, the Owner of such Mastiff shall be quit of the Fact. By which it appears, that the Inhabitants of the Forest may keep Mastiffs Expeditated though they should chance to fasten upon the Deer

therein.

Allo, it appears by the Laws of the Forest, That he who bath a Lawsul Claim, by good Eitle, may keep Mastiss within a Forest Angepeditated, and by such like Claim he may keep Greyhounds within a Forest; Azotuithstanding Greyhounds and Spanless are generally solution to be kept within a Forest, and Mastiss Anexpeditated are expressly solution, yet there is less danger in Mastiss than in Greyhounds, and there is no Law to Expeditate the latter, because they are solution to be kept in a Forest; so that no Derson can keep any of them there, except he that party a Grant solution the King.

And Note, Chat it is farther provided by the Laws of the Foreit, Chat if a Makiff that is kept within any Foreit Unerpeditated, do burt of kill any Willy Beast of the Foreit the Owner

Of the Laws and Privileges of the Forest.

Dinner of fluch Mastiff shall be punished for such offence according to the quality thereof, believes the softenture of 3 s. for keeping such Mastiff una lamen.

Of Menison, its Name, and Signification.

A sold Foresters, by the general Cerm, Beasts of Venary, innderstand every Beast of Forest, so by the general word Venison, they mean every Beast of Forest and Chase, as a word of Art, only proper to those Beasts, and

no other.

By the Laws of the Forest, The Foresters and Verderors mall met together, once ebety forty days, throughout the Pear, to fee the Attachments of the Forest, concerning the Vert, and Venison : So that if any Derlon Dunt in the Forest, and kill a Hare, the Forester may Attach bim for that Offence, it being a Trespass in the Venison of the King's Forest. As appears by the Alsiles of the Forest of Pickering, where two persons were Indicted for Striking a Hare in her form , and kiffing another within the Forest; one of whom was committed to Prison, and made his fine, and was also bound to his God Behaviour toward the Forest; and the other of them was Dutlawed. Whereby it appears, that Hares are Venison, and Beatis of the Forest.

This word Venison, in Latin, Venatio, is also often taken in a general Signification for any notio Beaff killed by Sunting, as a Squirrel, William Goat, &c. though they are neighber Beaffs of Forest, nor Chais. In the East Countries Beople do usually bunt the Bear, and essem it as excellent Venison; for by the word Venatio, is generally meant any man-

CCC 4

ner of Will Beaff that is killed, or taken by Bunting; Det, with us, in some lence, the word Venison is only taken for the flesh of the Hart, the Hind, the Buck and the Doc, and the other Beatts of that kind; for amongst the Common Deople, nothing is thought to be Venison but the flesh of Red and fallow Deer ; and the reason is, because such Beople bo not believe any thing of fleth-meats to be Venison, but such as are Bak'd, and eaten for Venison, as are the Red and fallow Deer, But there is a two-fold lignification of the word Venison, one in relation to such Will Beaffs as are accounted Venifon, for the Pleafantnels and Delicious Caft of their fleft; and the other in respect of the great Delight, Pleature, and Satisfaction which all Lovers of Same Do rather take in bunting, Chaling; and Killing the wild Beafts, whether of Forest and Chase, or otherwise, than they do in Cating them.

of bunting and bawking withing the forest.

2. Of the Abuses of Litences to bunt therein.

3. The manner of Taking from Det yearly within the same.

4. How Crespasses shall be punished for unlawfully Huntsing in forests.

The Iking, and all such Persons as have any sufficient Warrant or Authority by Charter & Grant from his Majesty, or his Ancessors, may only Hunt and Hawk within the Forest, and no other: Also all such Persons as have any lawful Claim allowed in Eyre, in respect of any Grant to Hunt, or Hawk within the Use

Forest may use the same accordingly probibe they purfue their Authority in the lame man

net it is granted unto them. 1 07

But if any Emight, Ciquire, or Bentleman, noth dwell within the Regard of the Forest and he Lord of a Mannor there, pet he may not Hunt, of Hawk therein, except he hath a lawful Claim for to boing allowed him in Eyr, as aforefaid ; because, by the Laws of the Forest, no Derson map Hunt of Hawk within any part of the Forest, that is within the Regard of the Forest, though it be within his own fre except he bath a difficient Warrant to to do: And therefore, they must forbear to Hunt or Hawk in their own Grounds if they be within the Regard of the Forest, because it is a Trespass of the Forest so to bo, unless they have good

Warrant for the fame.

But by the Charter of the Forest, Anno o'H. 3. cap. 11: Every Arch Bishop, Bishop, Earl, or Baron, coming to the king by his Commanbment, and palling through any of Dis Maieftien Foreits, It thall be lawfut for any fuch Prelate, or Per, to kill one or two of the King's Deer therein, by the view of the Forefter, if he be prefent, or otherwife to cause a boan to be blown for him, that he fem not to fteal the King's Deer. And the same they may bo in their return home from the King. By which it appears. That those Wielats and Ders babe, by the fato Charter, a lawful Lo cence to Hunt in the King's Forests, but pet with this Restriction, That such Prelate, of Mobleman must be sent for by the King. 2. be must be an Arch Bishop, or Histor, Carl. or Baron. 3. Such Hunting muft be made by the diew of the Forester. 4. If the Forester be ablent, a bom muft be blown.

49 Of the Laws frett Privileges of the Foreft.

Chen an to Livences to Huna to Hawk in the Ming's Foreign Chales, Parks, or Warrens, These things ought to be confidenced. 1. No to may grant fuch Licences. 2. The little fuch Licences ought to be used. 3. The difference between a Licence of Profit, and a Licence of Pleasure, and a Licence in Fait.

As to the First, The King being the Thief Thenauch of this Realm (units whom the Government, and Regulation of Forests, and substant to places of Royal Abasimie and Recuestion to principally appearate) may him self grant Licences to Hunt and Hawk in any of his Adejektes Forests, Chases, Parks, or Warrens units any of his soubjects, according to

Dis Ropal Mill and Pleature.

Secondly. Abhalaener hath any special Authority derived from his spaces in that behalf, under the Great Deal of England, may in the manner, grant Licences, in some respect, and it some places, to Hint, and Hawk in his Abajesties Forests, Chases, Parks of Warrens; As the Lond Chief Justice in Eyre of the king's Forest may Manner, of Eicence, or give a Warrant to any Mobileman, of Bentieman that hath a Manner, of Freshold therein; For the first to Hunt, and Hawk in his Manner, of Lordship, and the other in his Freshold, according to the purport, of intent of such Grant, or Warrant.

In like manner, a Bulbjeat that is Loid of a Forest may Grant a Licence to whom he pleasath to Hunt and Hawk in his Forest. But no person can Grant any Licence, of Gibe Warrant to any Bon to Hunt and Hawk in the King's Forests, other than the King Dintlest, or bis Chief Justice in Lyre of the Forest; or such other persons, as have the like Anthonity from the King, by some special Grant to be the same. For it any of the King's Foresters (or other

Officer)

Officer) should attempt, or mediume to be the same (ex officio) klot only such Forester (or of ther Officer) but off those who shall Hunt or Hawk with him there, by colour of such Licence, or Warrant, would be all Crespositors, and simble to the punsionnents of the Forest-Laws; forasmuch as it is the Office and Outy of every Forester, or other Officer of the Forest, to preserve, and keep the king's Deer, sor his Majesties use, and not to kill, or bedrop them, except he be commanded (by special Warrant) so to do: And therefore, it is not to be reasonably supposed, Chat they can Licence; or give Warrant to any person to Hunt, or kill Deer, or any other Game southin their Liberty, or Wallask.

Reither can any Forester (or other such Officer) Hawk, or take any fotals of Warren, as Fesants and Partridges, within his Walk, in the Forest, herause his Office is to preserve, and not desiroy them; and therefore he cannot give, or grant any Warrant, or Licence to another to Hawk, or take any fotals of Warren within his Malk, or Liberty, sor if he do, although he hold his Office by Patent from the Ring, or some other Person, as hath power to grant the same, yet is such at such a Pissel, or abuse of Dis Authority, that it is a cause of

Forfeiture of his Office.

In Licences to Hunt, or Hawk within a Forest, Chase, Park, or Warren, there is this difference to be considered, inherence such Licence be of Prosit, or for Pleasure and party a lawful Warrant to kill and carry away with him the Game, that is taken by him, either by Hunting or Hawking in any of those places above mentioned, but a Licence of Pleasure is only where a Plant batt

bath a Warrant to Hunt, of Hawk in a Forest, Chase, are but both not thereby acquire any property in the Game be takes, and so bath not any Authority to carry away the same with him; neither can be that bath only a Licence of Pleasure, Hunt of Hawk with any more persons in his Company than himself; But he that bath a Licence of Prosit thay Hunt of Hawk with his friends and Servants in his Company, and carry away with him the Game be

hath taken to his own use.

Then, as to the manner of taking a Fee Deer peacip within the Forest, pau ought to observe, That if any person bath a right, or interest to have Fee Deer, within a Forest, whether it be by Description, as belonging to an Office, of o ther wife, he ought to give Motice unto the Forefter, where his Marrant is to be ferved, in convenient time, and require him to execute the same according to the tenour and purport thereof. And if the Forester both refuse to serve fuch Warrant after Motice given unto him to execute the fame. Then may the person that is to have fuch fee Deer, Enter into the Walk of the Forester to refusing, with his servants, or Attendants, and there Hunt, kill, and take fuch Deer, as he is of right to have, and Juffife the fame, both as to himfelf, his fervants, and Attendants; because he hath a Licence of profit, whereby he is authorised to to vo. For it is a Parim in the Law , Chat where any person bath a right, or interest to any thing by the Gift, or Grant of an other, or otherwife, but cannot come by the principal thing, without noing some other act, which is the necessary means to acquire the fame, in fuch cale be may lawfully bo that other act which is the necessary means to come by the principal thing. As if one

one fells me all the sish in his Pond, thereby the property of the sish is in me, So that I may come upon his ground with servants, and Nets to take the fish out of the Pond, and carry them away; And this I may sawfully Justifie as well as to my Servants, or those that Adis me in performing the same, as to my self, be cause that somment has I, having an Interest and Property by Law in the Principal, may Justifie the necessary circumstance, and means

to acquire the fame.

Antifo it was Adjudg'd Mich. 13 H. 7 Mibere. in an Action of Trespals brought against one for hunting in the Plaintiffs Park, The defendant his pleas in Justification, That the Plaintiff, as Dwner of the lato Park gabe a Buck unto one B. Wafter of this defendant, who, came with the lato B. by his commandment, unto the faid Park, no Servant to the late B. to belp him to kill the late Buck; By victue of which Command of the lato B. the defendant Entred into the faid Park, and there killed a Buck for his Mafter, as it was lawful for him to bo: And this Plea was held by the Whole Court to be a not Justification; by which it appears. That where a person bath an Interest. of Right to have a fee Deer within a Forest, Chafe, or wark there be may Judifie the Kill ing and Caking away the fame as well as to his Servants, as himfelf, it being the necessary means conducting to the Acquilition thereof. For otherwise, if the Forester, or Keeper, Do refuse to kill and beliber such Fee Deer to the person who hath a right unto the same, if such person might not Justifie the killing and Take ing the Fee Deer himfelf, he would be without remedy to come by the same, and therefore the Law bath provided, that he who bath flich

an interest, of right to habe a Fee Deer in a Forest, Chase, of Park, if the Forester at keeper will not kill it for him, or beliver it unto him according to his Warrant, but refuseth to to do, their may fuch perfon, having fury right. judifice the Billing and Caking the faine, by himfelf and Servants, becaufe it is the onto means be bath teft him to come by his Right: and this is justifiable as well by the Lains of the Forest, as by the Comminion Law of the Realm, for the 10 Article of the Affice and of the Forest, saith, " That if any person mall "take a Beaft of the Porest in the same without Warrant, his boby that be Arteffed, wherefor ever he be found within the Bounds of the Forest. By which it appears. Chat be which Takes a Deer in the Forest, without Warrant, is punishable for the same by the Laws of the Forest, Reverthelels be that Dunts and kills a Deer, within the Forest, by lawful Warrant, that not be tiable to be punished by the Lame of the Forest, or any other Laws whatsaever. for the interest or right of such person as hath tiled to have Fee Deer, is a lufficient Warrant in Law to the Forester of Keeper to kill and neliber the fame unto fuch perfon, if he will, but if either of those Officers refuseth to to bo, then the party himfelf, with others to affift him may lawfully no the lame.

Mebertheless he that hath fuch Licence, m Warrant to bunt within the Forest must tal beed that he do not abute the time, for if he no: not only be, but all those that bent with him thall be accounted Tresponers from the Beginning in every thing they do, as if they had no warrant for boing the fame, and mall be

pumified an Tremaffers of the Forest.

and therefore every furb Licence of Warrant ought to be fittely confidered, by indays it was made, and injether he that made the laure had power to gratic fuch Licence to Warrant 2. Cluto when the lame was made, and wo what Ching, what Eint, and what Place. to disert hinder in the Forest Chase, as Park Dia Licence of Profit, indereby the party obtains a Property in the Ching pranted, and fact Moerty to Hunt of Hawk with his Servants, Actenbants, and kill and tarry away mich he the Same he taken by wirthe of fuch Liceace all which Chings much be punctually Others ed and purflied according to the nature of the Licence of Warrant, Char the party to inform the fame is granten, may abord the impulation on of being accounted a Excipance, indead of receiving benefit thereby.

There is also an other division of Licences be fives these of pleasure, and profit, viz. Licences in Law, and Licences in fair, of deed; The first is by bogo of mouth without writing, of by Prefeription, as belonging to some Daice within the Forest: and the other is a Licence reduced into writing under hand and feal ready to be probuced upon any occasion, where the same is ce-

and here it is to be observed, That a Licence in Law, that is by word out without Writing is dele te be of un great Clambity betten Bu teas, as any Licence in Writing what the ber, but inserber it be to between the King and the subject bath been question's, because the King Both nither Grant, of Take any Thing but he of Record. Repetibeles, by the Opinion of Shelley and Bryan in Easter Term 4 H. 7. The

King may Give many. Ebings without Writing, that shall be good as to Chatels. And it Michaelmas Term 39 H. 6. The defendant in Trespass of plean Indistinction by the King's Commandment, by word of Pouth only, without Writing, and held a good Juditication; and therefore inasmuch as Hunting without Licence is but a Trespass at most, if a man may plead the King's Commandment by word only in Bar of a Trespass, by the same parity of reason be may plead the King's Licence by work only in Bar of a Trespass, But in the other Case, it is without pilpute, That if a Subject, being Owner of a Forest Chase, or Park by Licence one to Hunt in any of them by word, without

Writing, the fame is good in Law.

Then as to the Punishment of Trespallers in Forests, that Hant therein without any lawful Colour, or Marrant for lo boing, If any for fon or perfore in the manner, be thall arrell their bodies, and carry them to prison, from whence they thall not be velivered without wettal Clare int from the King, or bis Space fifes Inflice in Eyre of the Forest, according to the Sinte and Cultoms of the Foreit Anno 6.E. 1. Art. 10. And though the words there be, If any one shall take a wild Bealt of the Forest, pet if any person be taken Hunting in the Forest, pet be is to be punished by the Law, as if he had killed and taken a Taliff Beaff of the Forest, for in that cale the calli shall be taken for the Deed; As it was Adjudged in the Affiles of the Forest of Pickering in the time of Ed. 3. That if one Enters into a Forest with a Bow and Arrows. or with Greyhounds with an intent to Offend there not with flanding be both commit no Act, pet he thall be puntified as if he had done forme

Act, for the reason atopelate: As in the same Affice an Abbor was, that lent a Bow and Arrows to one to kill the Kings Deer; for notwith flanding there was no act none, pet the Abbot was fined and Ranfomed. And therefore if a Forester, of Keeper shall sind any person mithin the Forest either with Bow and Arrows, at with Greyhounds intending to Offend there, he thall Arrest, and Impilon him as it be had com-mitted the fact be intended, but the body of luch Offenber that not be Arrefted unlets be thall be taken in the manner, which must be one of thefe four maps; viz. Stablestand Dordraw, Backbeare, 02 Bloodyhand. The first is when any person is found standing in the Forest, with a Bow ready bent to floor at any Deer, of with his Greyhound in a Leafe ready to flip; This the Ancient Foresters call Stablestand. The next is when one bath burt; or mounded a Deer, of other Beaft of the Forest, by shooting at him. either by Bow. 02 Gun. and the Forester finds fuch Offender brawing after the Beaft with a Hound to recover it; This Experienced Foresters call Dogdraw. The third is Where one hath flain a caffo Beaff in the Forest, and the Foresters discover him as he is carrying away the same; This they call Backbear. Lastly Bloodyhand is, Wibere one is found Courling in the Forest with the Blood of any Deer, of other Beaft of the Forest upon bim, of is any way befmeared with such Blood after Courting, or is otherwise found in the Forest imbrewed with Blood in any suspicious manner, albeit he be not feet to Hunt of Course there. All these ate fait to be taken with, of in the manner; And fuch Offenbers as are found or taken by the Forefers in any of these cases thail be accessed by their Bodies, if they can, and be impalled מוכ

48 Ditte Lang and Printerentith Forth 10

ed until they be delivered by the litural disciplined of companionent. While including the officer forces. But they find he published a like court of Justice Seat by fire at the unforced until they have delivered until they have daily the fame, and then he bollion theke to their group behaviour rowards the coact for ever afterwards. But this publishment cause not be executed in energy point, but only do a Justicial Sentence pronounced by the leives in Eyre of the force at his Justice southerners, in whicheville the party is a linear with countil even fire there was a linear with countil even fire there was a linear with countil or the tains of the force.

in the Kings Dinous, it is a A reflice against the Alices of the Firest and the Okenders shall make four for the Cong. It is a second to the firest and the Okenders shall make four for the Cong. It is. Lang to

If any perion that receive Vention of one that harb unlawfully tome by the laure as a Crefpatio; in the forest, the party that so the ceived the same half in number as well as he from whom he half it munished as well as he from whom he half it same by the Alizes of the Forest, he that stealeth Vention therein, and carries away the same upon his bode, the bode shall be foresten; but if such Malesard cakes the bode of a Stranger, and tatries his scalen Vention away upon the same, if such stranger he ignorant of the sam, his bode shall not be foresten, tio. Pick & 3.

And it appears by Hill, 13. H. 7. That if one command another, 02 dibers to commit a Creipals in the Litings Forest, Chase, Park, 02 Warres as to Hunting, 07 Chasing of Deer, 02 other Beast, 02 Faible, in this Case, he that Commands the other to do such unlabeled Act, is as much a Bringing in such Creipals as Chey that no the Fait, so, in Creipals as

GIO

Of the Laws and Privileges of the Foreign

the forth all are Principals, and there are no decellories in luch Crespalles, as at Common

And farther it is to be obleved. Chat if a Forester, Keeper, or other Minister of the Kings Forest, Chase, Park or Warren, that hath the care and charge of the Kings Game, and by his negligence will not Attach or apprehend them for the same, it is a foresture of his Office. And not only the Foresters, and Minister of the Forest, but every other person, unesting within the Forest, shall likewise by his utternor Choose, and Trespendings in Forests, and If he cannot take them himself, he shall cause boy and Cry to be made after them, to the end they may be taken thereby, as if they ware felones.

And if upon luch the and Gry made, the Differences, or bother, or defend themselves with sorte, and will not keep the Peace, nor yield themselves when required so to bother land such cases, whoever, coming to the Assistance of the foresters, thall chance to kill any such Difference; within the Bourds of the Forest, shall not be Arraigned so the same before the king's Justices of any other bis ministers of justice, but shall be acquirted of the same, as if no such are had been bone.

And (fithe foresters, and those with them, cannot apprehend ust Diffendots in the forest, hy teason of their dividendation in the forest, hy teason of their dividendation with Test with their follow such Antiques with them which will be with the construction them there apprehend them in the their with such them there with such them in the them they cannot use such them may and force with such the hoose, and they much to if they were within the Limits of the

DDD 2

Foreit;

50 Df the Laws and Privileges of the Forest.

Forest, And therefore the usual way is (in case such Diffendors cannot be taken without ban-

get) for the Foresters to inquire, and find out their Mames, with the places of their Abade, and Present them to the next Swanimote, or Court of Attachments, Chat they may be proceeded against according to the Laws of the Forest.

Of the Duclieu, or Dourallee of the Forest, and who may bunt therein, when, how often, how far, and in what cases.

A Purlien , 02 Pourallee, is a Circuit of Sound adjoyning unto the Foreft, Circumscribd with immobable Boundaries, known only by matter of Record; This Compals of Ground was once Forest, and afterwards Difafforested by the Berambulations made for the severing the New Forests from the Dio. This Pourallee berran at the first af ter this manner, viz. When King Henry the II. came first to be king of England, which was Anno Domini +154. De took fuch great belight in the Forests of this kingbom, Chat being not contented with those be found here, though many and large) be began, within a few pears after his coming to the Crown, to inlarge others Great Forests, and to Afforest the Lands of bis Subjects that any way were near adjoyning unto thole Forests , and to they continued during his Reign.

After whole venth, king Rich. 1. Succeeding him to the Cipone, within some float time after his coming to the Crown, began to follow the Crample of Hen. 2. His father, not only in the belight and pleasure be took

out to exist a sit milled strep of it is of a fine a first of a fine of the contract of the co

in Forefts but also in Daily Afforefting the Lands of his Subjects that any way lay near to bis Forests ; by means whereof, the Inlarging of Foreits Did Daily increase during Dis Beign

After whose vecense King John, Die Brother, coming to the Crown, bib, in like manner , foon afterwarbs begin by little and little to follow the Cramples of Dis Father and Brother, in Afforesting the Lands of his Subjects, that lay any way near unto his Forefts, to that the greatest part of the Lands of the Kinghom mas become Forest. And thus they continued until the 19th year of his Reinn, at which time, in regard this grievance was not particularly injurious unto a fmall number, or the meanest persons, but generally to all bes græs of Beople, bibers Doblemen and Gentlemen, finding a convenent opportunity, ris paired to the King, and belought him to drant unto them, That they might have all thole Dew Afforestations that were made by King Hen. 2. Rich. 1. and bimielf dilaffozelled acain: all which king John femed not unwilling to bo, but promifed to grant accordingly, and at laft confented to subscribe, and leaf to such Articles concerning the Liberties of the Forest which they then bemanded, being for the most part, in fuch fort, as are now contained in the Charter of the Forest of the faid Ixing John, Das ted at Kuningsemede, 02 Ryme-Mead, between Stanes and Windfor the 18th of June, in the 18th Year of bis Reign.

At which time the laid king John gave them liberty to choose certain Donourable Persons, who thould have Authority to fee thole things performed which he had then Granted. Wheres upon they made choice of dibers Moblemen and Gentlemen, to the number of 25, who 52 Of the Laws and Privileges of the Forest.

idere Swom (with orders their animins) to fee fleshforelaid Platetes, do Gonten and Confirmed by the dring, to be irrevery quine wherever had another being dentily as Mandres to the sheriffs at every Confirs, to fee their Ordenances of his to be utilizently laborated and kept, and moreover popular the forest of their platety of their animal potunity and military be traced and kept, and moreover popular animal animal between the forest property of their platety of their platety

Calibe in Normagnambine and and another expension of the expension of the

entorisem, Chai they mighe had minloude

and for the better accomplishing and performing of thinks Articles of Charta de Foresta, as concepned the Difaffire Station of Cuch 11960bs and hauts as were Afforested by Had R. Wand thing dollar The late Homy the Third Donered Inquilitation to be taken by Subfantial Ru the forderen un the New Forests from the Old. In chereupon two Commilioners pere lene to take those laquifitions; by birtue whereof mamy mirat 100005 and Lands were not only Thaforefred, and improved to Arrable Land by the Dwners thereof. So that now after this Blairer the mode and confirmer s Tome of topfe New Alforestations diere Abecantilla teament after fuch Inquincions takers with the certainty known by SDatter of Rewallioneh were the Old, and which were the inswisorers. will the do pretteun of not of office disperse

53

Thenertheless the greaten partiof their beal ac forestations in the fifth centraliting to the disafficient authority the Life of Aking Honor the Thirds of a fifth all and the many of a sample of

After tohole verente, Edward the Faile, Dis Elden Som Succeeded Dem into the Orown, who being often belought, and Petition's an well by the Mobility, as Commonatty of this laingroom, to Confirm the aforefait Liberties, which his father had Granten, was gracious ip plenieuro Wonfirm the Unite according to their Request. And now an thinks having been Gamied, Derformenand Confirmed concerning the two Charters, best Magna Charta, and Charta de Foreita, the lattie were Deliveren Sinned, Senled, and Confirmed to the she riffs of London, to be Diochained, which was accordingly bone in Paul's Charen-yard, en th Drefence of a stumeroug Contourfe of Pedple there met tonether. of telheteupon the Lords ond Commons Tooly after Began to put the laint in mind of Glanching Committee ons to Declars fitty offaction to the lame that Decambilations might forthwith be made of all Neve Afforestations, that they might be Disafforefred according to the Fife and Third Articles of Chartade Forelta (11010

Calpercupations Befored the Carles and the Bacons were applicated to the thing to take care of land ke there we armidistrous performent also trusted their to be made accordingly and analysis of the taken there upon, and continued this fie court of Chancery: Calperby the King was affectained what calcons and Lames were Ancient Foreis, and what were Nearly Afforefield and cauled all those that were Ancient Foreis to be Aperen, and Boundaries, and Boundaries,

to be known by Matter of Record for ever. And likewife thole woods and Lands that had been Newly Afforested, the Ising caused to be separated from the Old, and to he Return ed into Chancery by Marks, Aderes, and Bounds to be known, in like manner, by mat-

ter of Recoid for ever.

By which it appears, how the Purlieus, 01 Pourallees had their first beginning . for, all fuch 19000s and Lands as were Afforested by H. 2. R. 1. 02 King John, and by Berambulations febered from the Ancient Forefis, were, and vet are . called Pourallees , viz. Moods and Lands levered from the Old Forefrs, and Difafforested by Berambulation; Pourallee in French being the fame as Perambulatio in Latine.

But notwithfanding (uch New Afforestations were Difafforested by Berambulation, whereby the fame became Pourallee, or Purlien, pet they were not thereby fo Difafforested as to every Man, but that they do, in some sense, continue Forest Will as to some Derfons, though Disafforested, in some fort, as to others. for by the words of Charta de Foresta, if the Iking han Afforested any Choose of Lands of Dis Subteas, to the Damage of them whose they were. they thould be forthwith Difastorested again, that is, only as to those Bersons whose woods and Lands they were, who, as the proper Dinners thereof, might fell and Cut bown their moons at their own pleasure, without any Licence from the King, asialla convert their Deadows and Balluter into Cillage, or othermise improve their Grounds to the bell advantage. In like manner . They might Hunt and Chale the Callo Beafts of the Forest towards the fame, fo that they do not forefal them in their return thicher; but pet no other person

wing could claim fuch benefit in the Pourallee had sind the more country of the Soil thereof, So that the fine counting force fill, as to all chalk that have no property in the Lambs there m: for th Dwners of the 11000018 and Lands therein may fuffer the Pourallee to remain Forest still, if they be to minbed, notwithflanding fuch Difafforestation (as appears by the Statute of 37 Edw. 1. tap. 5.) as forme have thought it must expedient for them, because thereby they have the benefit of Common within the Forest, which otherwise, by having their Lands severed from the Forest, by way of Pouralles, they were excluded from: which noth move. That the woods and Lands in the Pouralled are Difafforested only for the Ding ers thereof, and not for every one to Hunt and spoil the welld Bealts there at his plea-fure; for if they chance to wanter out of the Forest into the Pourallee, pet the Iking bath a property in them fill against every Man, but the proper dianer of the Grounds wherein they are, too fuch person bath a special properto in them ratione foli, but pet to as be may only Take them by Hunting, of Chasing with his Greyhounds, of Dogs, without any Forestalling, of Foresetting them in their Course back a main towards the Forest; for the King bath al maps Rangers in the Pourallee to attend fuch Mill Beaffs of the Forest, as come there, to rechale them back into the Forest; which proves. that though the Will Beaffs of the Forest no by chance fray into the Pourallee, pet the Ring bath a Wroperty Will in them, or otherwise the Ranger could have no lawful authority to Rechafe them into the Forest,

So it appears by Hill. 13 Hen. 7. fo. 16. pl. 14. That though a Man map prescribe to Chase Chaie the Califd Beatle in my Ground, which are my unitd Beatle, pet he man not preferibe to Chaie the king's Califd Beatle which are in my Grounds, flich as are the fallin Beatle interp firm out of the horising into the Bourallee.

In like manuer, it is the Openion of Africanille Cockeine in Palch. 7. Figure doi: 36. plant Cott if a Hart go out of the kingus forces, the Foresters may follow him and make Process mation in the adjacent Campa, that no Adam metame to Ham, of hap him, after which it is not lawful for any one to makes such Harts in thereby it appears. Chat shough such motion Beatis be out of the forces, and in the Pouraltes per asvertheless the liting into fill a Pouralte is in four sence a forces still for the Single Common of the Pouralte is in some sence a forces still for the Single Common of any Porcion, accept the Diomen of the Common such the Pouralte, when when the single common such the Pouralte, when when the single common such the Pouralte, when when the single common such the Pouralte, when whom when the finds them there, that Repose them stomarks the Forest, pouralte is no specifier affected of Forest stress in the pouralte in the finds them there, that Repose them stomarks the Forest, pouralte is no specifier affected of Forest stress in the stress in t

Let notwithkanding what both been hithereo late of a forest, and a Purlien, or Bouralise there is still this further difference to be abserved between them, which is, Chatall the Moods and Lands within the Repard of the forest are addittely within the Bondage and Charge of the forest, as well in respect of the Dianess threast, as of any other Becton: for no Abert south that Cut down his sign through or Just probe his own Lands within the Repard of the forest, without Licence from the Repard of the forest, without Licence from the Repard of the forest, without Licence from the Repard of the forest in Executive that

Of the Laws and Privileges of the Forest.

and a erion in any mile Hunt, Chaie, 02 moleft to continue beauty of the Forest in his name of miles of the forest in his name of miles of the forest at the forest in the

those whose Grounds are estimated are founded are four impact to the Foreign and there will be foreign as their chands are discount the Repair of the Foreign, and there will be foreign and there will be foreign and there will be and their own Clashes, Candidated into Cilman and otherwise Impacts their Gladure, with any locate of partituding at their Bleadure, with any locate of partituding to pathon; but yet in request and Lands in the Pagnaleses, are not adistured tries from the Bandage of the Foreign in respect of the notion beauty having their bounds therein when they beapen to dray out of the Foreign and therefore as they were more adicolutely foreign to they are fill in their first, that is to lay, constrainally foreign as to first Lands which writher are, of

Too as to furth Lands which neither are, or never were either forest or Pouralles, but all wayes absolutely fire, if they absorp not too mear unto the Limits of the forest. It is lawful for any person that is owner of such Lands, (modified he be qualified by Law to keep Grey-hounds) to Hunt and Chase with his Dogs such will beatts as be shall find therein; but he must take here that he do not forestall, or foreset them in their return to the forest.

Bin who shall be said properly to be a Purlicu-Man, and that may lawfully Hunt in the Pouralles on next sail in course under consideration. And therefore you are to know, Chat, not with familing the Pouralles be Forget fill to inch persons as have not any Lands of Inberitance

Of the Laws and Privileges of the Forest. heritance therein, pet fuch as have, according cothe value required by Law, may keep Greyhounds, and when they find the world Beatts of the Forest within their grounds in the Pourallee they may Chale them towards the Forest; for as Dinners of those grounds they have pro-perty in flich with heafts ratione soli, so long as thep are in the fame; And if thep do firt make their Course in their own grounds, within the Pourallee, they may purfite their Chafe through every Maris Counts; but if the will Beatls Do make tomacos the Foreft, they must not Forestall of Foreset them, either with Dogs, Guns, Grossbows, Longbows, Hays, or other Ch gine whatfoeber, but fuffer them to have their free vallage thither : for all luch forestalling or foresetting is absolutely forbioben by the Assisses of Woodstock, made in the 30 Year of Henry the Second, on pain of the Diffendets Int fering a Pears Impilonment, and making Fine at the King's Dilctetion's So that the Pourallee is free (in fome refpect) for come fort of Berfong to Hunt therein, and who they aught to be shall be nert Declared.

First, Chen you must understand, Chat be who may lawfully hunt in any Pourallee ought to have woods or lands of freehold within the Pourallee, to the yearly value of 40s. according to the Statute of 13 Rich. 2 cap. 13. and according to the Statute of 1 Jac. 1. cap. 7. Decought to have lands of Inheritance of the yearly value of 10li. or lands of freehold of the yearly value of 30li. or have goods worth 200li. or be the Son of a knight, or Baron, or person of a higher degree, or Son and heir apparent of an Esquire. But by a late act made in the 22 and 23 years of the

Reign

Reign of Iting Charles the fecond, chap. 24. 120 Som map keep Greyhounds within the Pourallees or efficere within England or Wales, other their he that bath Free Warren, O is Lord of a Mannor, wis fuch a freeholder as is leifed in his own right, or the right of his wife of lands. tenements, or bereditaments of the clear yearly value of 40li. (over and above all charges.) and repiles) of fome Effate of Inheritance: or of lands, tenements, or herebitaments in bis own right, of in the right of his wife. (for term of life, 02 lives.) of the yearly belue of soli. (over and above all Charges, and Reprifes.) De that is worth in goods, or chattels 400li. for no perfon, as the Law is now at this bay, may bunt his own Pourallee, with Greyhound. or other Dog, that is likely to kill any Beaff of Venary, 02 Chale, Except be may bilbend after the rate last above mentioned, by the year of free-Lands within the Pourallee, oz otherwife, as is laft before beclared; and for that reafon the Pourallee is called Purluy, 02 laid to be for him that is fo qualified, but fo that be allmans first begin bis Course in his own grounds within the Pourallee, from whence it hath the name of Purlieu [for the place] by which is meant his own grounds in particular, but not generally every place, of every mans Grounds mithin the Pourallee, and that by reason of the bifference (which hath been before observed) between a Pourallee-Man, and one that bath Grounds within the Pourallee: for notwith fianding a Pan bath Grounds within the Pouralice, pet if be be not qualified by Lato according to the Statutes before citeb, be is no Pourallee-Man; Rebertheles if he finds any Moild Beaffs of the Forest in his own Orounds within the Pourallee, be may Chale them there-

Canolin his own give him or the

\$11111

of the Laws and Privileges of the Forest

out with lettle Dogs, but not with Grandounds of other great Dogs as appeared by the Gaird of Arundales Cafel in Hill. 43 Edward for 8. 1911 24. But if a Apan have no Chaten of Inheritance within the Fouralle either in Liams of Aloove there, he cannot pretend on Apinitege of the in, but is utterly Excluded from Huming of Chaing therefin fortal luch offic Pouralles is absolutely Fourth field; It being a Apinitegal only intended for a Pouralles-Man to Hum nitrobase there, in his joint Grounds and not ordered wife.

But then in the next place ought to be con fibered, in fubat manuer a Pourallee-Man man Hunt, and chain the with beatts of the Forest within his own Pouralles, for the understanding of which he ought to know, That when he finds any toild beatis of the Forest, within hi own Grounds, in the Pouralist he may leone his Dogs, at them, and huntrandichale them to wards the Forest, but he misstake hard he bo not binnepithele return to the Forest, left the incue the penalty of the state of Hendiso made at Woodfreek as hat been before meny tioned for though he finds fuch wild bearts in his oin Pourallee and th respect the reoft bern a property in them rational foli; against all penions but the king nevertheless fustities property is any upon this Condition, This if he can flay them with his Doks in thate with out foredailing; before they and tecover the Forest, then they are absolutely him incomen ones recover the Forest though they be but faiten arom them, then thed are the Kinging other of the Foresto Tall is

Chair in his own freehold, he may purfue the

lame through spreymants grounds tofthin the halleen provided the enter not into the Forest wis peaus of the Forest in his Pouralle grounds and lets discuss dogs at them, and in challing them towards his found, then dogs fafter upon one of them, before it can get into the forest on the limits thereof, and the with bear by face brews the doug as they hang upon tim. into the Forest and bring a considerable space within the lame other dogs finy the will bein In this cale, but calon of the arth property the Pograllee-Man, but in the heaff catione Soli, and linemie by the outflut, and pulledlow thereof by his dogs, before it got into the Forest, be may folioin his Chaft into the lamby and there thee. and carry amy the Beat & because he was actually possessed thereof by his dogs (beingen the mature of sectionts) as of his own proper goods, before the Beaff could recover the Forest:

But it appears by Mich. 12 H. 8. fo. 10. That if a Pourallec-Man begins his Courfe in another Bans grounds where the with beaffs of the Forest are, within the Pourallee, if his dogs faffert upon a wild beaff, before it can get within the Bounds of the Forest, and the beat prains the dogs into the Foresh, and is there flain by themis here, the Pourallee-Man shall not enter into the Foreig nor take the beaff fo killen, because his Course washing our fur from the beginning for he could claim no property in the beat rations Soli, because be began bis Chase in another Mangarounds and therefore though he voisi not within the dignit stoft the chorein periperty temed a facelpatten there, apariaecount of bisi 4982 enterna therein; and killing in maile Beatt there, and he baving nu right armous 10 to chake in the other Mans grounds where he began his first Course, cannot suffice such Act as bone by a lawful Pourallee-Man, that found the wild beaffs in his own grounds within the Pourallee, but the owner of the Brounds where the Chase was first begun, might well have made such Justificantion.

Mo if a Man lets lie his Faulcon at a Phealant, in his own Wood, he may purtue his flight after the Phealant into any other persons ground and notinith anding his falcon kills the Phealant in the other persons ground, pet the Masset of the Falcon shall have the same; and not the Owner of the Bround where it was killed,

for the reason above given.

In the next place it is to be unberfood. What a Pourallee-Man must bunt his own Pourallee bimfelf with no more Company than bis own fervants, neither may be appoint, licente, of warrant any other person, except his sevbants in his prefence, to hunt by his Commandment in his Pouraliee; for the Authority that he bath is but a Conditional Licence of profit, which is ficially annexed to his person, and cannot be transferred to another, as Mich. i8. Edw. 4. fo. 14. pl. 12. in Alhtons cafe, If one grant me Licence to hunt, and kill a Buck, in his Park, and afterwards to vilpole of the fame, my ferbants cannot juffifie killing the Buck by my Commandement, because the Licence gres ficially to me, unto whom it was granted, and to no other person whatsoever.

Moreover no Pourallee Man may hunt, of flay any rafcally Deer, bix. such as are out of featon, which he shall find at any time in his Pourallee, for such are good for nothing when head, and commonly not able to statio course,

or fuft for themlelves.

Allo,

Also, then a Pourallee-Man lets sip his dogs at the wild beaffs of the Forest in his dwn Grounds, and his dogs do still putsue their Course towards the Forest, he must take care, before they enter the same, to recall them back, for otherwise, if they happen to kill that Beast, or any other in the Forest, he will be deemed a Crespasser that kills Deer within the Forest; But if he calls back his dogs before they enter the Forest, he would be excused, though they should happen to kill a Deer therein, probless he center not into the Forest, nor meddle with the Deer so killed.

Chen, as to the time when and how often a Pourallee-Man may Hunt in his own Pourallee, you are to observe, these Rules following.

i. Do Man ought to Hunt in the might. viz. after Sun letting, and before Sun tiling ; for, by the Law, in fonie cales, from Sun rifing to Sun fetting is accounted, a bay. called dies Solaris; And the reason why no Ban is permitted to Hunt in the Poprallees in the Might time, is, That the Willo Bealts may not be disturbed of the peaceable feeding, and rest they enjoy in the night time in the Forest; for 'tis utterly impossible to Hunt in the Pourallees in the Might, without diffurbing the Wild Beaffs that ate within the Forest: For though peradventure the dogs in their Course Do not purfue the Deer out of the Pourallees into the Forest nevertheless the Moile that is commonly made at flich times by the dogs running at the deer, and the tetrout of those deer that are then affrighted out of the Pouralless into the Forest, will in a great measure disquiet, and abunoantly tertifie thole willo Beaffs that are within the Forest. Belloes, it is the nature of thole wild bealts to feek their food in the night E E E time

24 Drebe Laws and Privileges of the Porelt.

deme bellig a time of rent, when his topp is bay they confine themselves to their Coverts, being nitaid of the notic which to mave by all fores of people, that are then award about their burning to that then they can mot the dinette, of with that abetty and freesome they wellight in. And therefore hunting in the Pouralless, or other places, in the Right time 48 expression to bothough by the 13 Article of

the Allizes of Woodflock.

2. 310 Pourallee-Man may Hunt on the Lords day, (commonly called Sunday) for that day is the Cob, and by his Laws appointed to be kept boly, and not be prophened by uting or boing the Statutes of 1 Car. 1. cap. 1. and 3 Car. 1. cap. 4. Bemittes are provibed againff fuch persons as shall me and unlawful Exercise, or Re-creation, Sports of Pastimes subattoever upon the Lords day; collected Hunting, and such like Sports and Recreations are also forbibben to be tiled on that day by the Laws of the Realm.

3. Tonrallee Men nee Forbidden by the Laws of the Forest to Hunt in their Pouralles, buring all the time of continuante of the Fawning of Fence Month, whith begins fiften days before Midfummer, and emos fiften days after; for then either the fawns freing very pourng, of the Does big belieb are heither aine to run, or fland di Courle: And therefore Pinning at that time, their does peraboenture purlishing their Chafe tino the Forest, ping make great officuation of the kings Same therein, and for that reason this parce of time is called the Forbidden Mouth, whetein no than han either had in the Poret, 333

4. Cberp

63

4. Every Pourallee-Man is formore, by the Laws of the Forest, to Hunt in his own Grounds within the Pourallee, every day, or offener than the maps in any one wiek; (Sunday excepted) Least with the Pourallees, the will Iseas of the Fouralle to the Pourallees, the will Iseas of the Fouralle be disquiected, and put from their food,

and wonten Laver.

1. 121 Pourallee Man may hunt en his own grounds, within the Pourallee, with more Com-Dany than his own Setvants for the Laws of the Forest do prohibit Multitudes of people to meet together, only to Hunt, lest they hould terrifie and diffurb the Linus Mild Beaffs. that are within the Limits of the Forest. Azeverthelets the Dubilege every Pourallec-Man buth of hunting in his own Pourallee, berm an Interest both of Profit and Pleasure, he may, therefore in that respect, lawfully Justifie the Hunting therein both for himself, and for his ber beits: for, as bath been faid befote; De that bath only an Interest, of Licence of Dleafure, may Justifie for himself, but not for his Setvants: But notwithfranding a Pourallee-Man may Juliffe to Hunt with his Servants, pet be cannot Justiffe to Hunt with every other Derfon

6. An the Laws of the Forest, and Charters made concerning the Pomallees do solvid every Wan to visitind, or make Course after any Deer, sound in this Pourallee, within forty days, next after the King hath made a General Funding in the Forest adjoyming thereunto; Because then the folial Beauts of the Forest come not mid the Pourallees of their own Accord, but as they are forced into the same by the Hunters, with clamburs and blowing of mans, so that they my chityer for returns, where they are prising the chityer for returns the chityer for the chityer

1. 14.

bilened to reft in peace for forty days, without being hunted, chafed, or otherwife moleffed; In which time it is prefumed they will efther return of themselves unto the Forest, or be rechased thither by the Rangers, with their Dogs: And therefore the Will Beaffs have that time of Liberty allowed them to remain there undiffurbed, as appears by the Charter manted for the Pourallees of the Forest of Windsor

In the County of Surrey.

7. Do Man thall prefume to Hunt within feven Wiles of the Borders of the Forest, or in his own Pourallee, within forth days next before the King bath iffued out his Proclamation, Declaring his Royal Will and Wleafure to make a General Hunting in that Forest; Because that during all that time, the wild Beaffs of the Forest ought to have the liberty and free bome of their Coverts and Thickets to enjoy their full repose and quiet therein, until the King comes to biew them, and make choice of fuch as he mail think fit to Hunt and Chafe for his Same.

8. It is not lawful for any Man to Hunt in the Pourallee, at fuch time as a Forester is ferbe ing a Warrant within that part of the Forest, that borbers upon fuch Pourallee; Mor at fuch time as any Mobleman is Hunting in fuch part of the Forest; (If such Pourallee-Man babe notice riben bim thereof.) That the Game in the For-

est map not be diffurbed at such times.

9. And laftly, Jilo Pourallee-Man, 01 other Berfen map Hunt of Chafe any unfeasonable Deer, bis. Deer of Antler, in the Winter, or Does, and other winter Deer, in the Summer; For when they are out of featon they are unwholfome, and not fit for the use of Man. Belides (as bath ben laid befoze) they arc commonly not able to fand Courle, or fift for for themselves, by making their Escape into the Forest again: And therefore the Laws of the Forest do utterly sorbid the Coursing, Hunting, or killing them in the Pourallees, or elsewhere, while they are out of Season.

And these are the Laws and Didinances of the Pourallees made in the time of Heary the Second, at Woodstock, which though they seem chiefly to respect disorderly Hunting in the Pourallees, yet they might be more properly called the Laws of the Forest (in asmuch as they Tend chiefly to the preservation of the Wild Beasts of the Forest) if it were not for these coherence and dependance upon the Tommon, and Statute Laws of this Reasm, being indeed grounded upon the Reason of the Common Law.

Of the Officers belonging to the Bourallees, called Rangers.

FDiasmuch as the Pourallees were once, and in come fenle fill are Forest, therefore it was necessary to have Officers there, to Attend, and take upon them the Charge of the preferbation of the wife Bealls of the Forest, that should happen to make their Escape out of the Forest, and come therein; for otherwise the Laws of the Pourallees could not be executed, and to the Forest would be destroyed by the Pourallee-Men in a flort time. For which reason Rangers were first appointed; Wibo, notwithstanding they are not Officers in the Forest, pet are Officers confiderable of, and to the Forest; for all Officers in the Forest have charge of the Vert, and Venison of the Forest, but a Ranger bath (no charge of Vert, but) only charge of Ecc 3

Venison coming out of the Forest into the Pongallees, his place of Charge, from whence his Office is to Conduct the large back and in the the Forest.

This Officer is appointed by the king, or his Chief Justice in Eyre, and made by Letter's Patents under the Freat Seal, with a fee commonly of 20, 30, 12 will be more by the year, payable out of the Exchequer, as allo certain fee Deer both red and fallow to be taken annually at proper leafons, out of the forest.

The Substance of his Oath is this in allen

To Rechafe, and with his Hounds drive first the with Bealts of the Forest, as diterias for range out of the same into his Pouralles.

To present all unlawful Hunting, and Honters, of wild Beaffs of Venary and Chase, as well within the Pourallees as within the Forest.

the next Court of Attachments, of Swanmote, which thall first happen,

There Officers, taken Rangers belong only unto Methembraless as were once the Woods and Lands of the Subject and were afterwardes diafforested again, and to become Pouralles; but there do some forests in England, that never had any unlargement by new Afforestations, and therefore have no Pouralless at this day; So that there can be no Pouralless at this day; so that there can be no Rangers becoming that there became he have no Pouralless for what there is no so so pill a control of the forest, where there is pouralless for the war forest, where there is pouralless for the war forest to create them beck along into the forest, where there will be our the forest to create them beck along into the forest, the create them beck along into the forest, better them beck along into the forest.

there the Foresters may follow the folian Beasts out of the Forest and rectife them but the Forest and rectife them but the Forest. But where there by Podrallees with Rangors there the Foresters cannot be surjested that surp Foresters to collain them with stelly pursuit mathin their bisis.

How and where Offences to the Talliante half be tried, and pumped, are thereof, are thereof

the Pouralless contrary to the Laws and related, are accounted trespands of the Forest, as being injuries none to the clima Healts of the Forest, therefore the Rangers are housed both their Dath and Office to look after the laint. And to present as well such Offeness, as Offendors, at the pert Court of Attachments, power sor the Forest, next absorbant unto the Pourallee inherein the Officine was committed, or else at the next Court of Swammote, of Justice Seat, which shall first bappen to be kept so that Forest. To the intent that such Officiness at the Court of Swammote before the Verderors, Foresters, Regardors, Agistors and other Dinniers of the Forest, according to the Laws and Occurances of the Forest.

After which Cryal, and Consistion thereupon, to any the Offences aforefath. The Aftendors to Consider, are to be bound over, with fufficient Sureties, to be of the Good Behaviour tuwards the forest, till the next Court of Julice-Sear to be holden for that Forest, upon which the Pouralise borders, wherein the Offence, was committed, where they are to be punished at the Officertion of the Lord

Ecc +

somme GR

Chief

Chief Julice, or other Julice in Eyre of the Forest, by fine or Impulanment, or both: For no Judgment can be given, or Judicial Process awarded in the Court of Swanimote, for that is peculiarly reserved unto the Lord Chief Justice, or other Justices in Eyre of the Forest.

And Note, Chat at every Court of Swanimote, all Piclentments of the Foresters, for any Osenee committed within the Forest, or the Pouralless thereof, are there to be delivered to the Aury, who are Omogn to Anguire of the Cruth of those Batters; and if they sind such Piclentments to be true, then the Ossendors thall stand Cambiated thereof in Law, but shall not be domitted to Craberse any such Pichentment, because it is contrary to the Assiss

of the Forest.

Nevertheless, all Presentments mave by the Foresters and Jury, against any Derson for att Difence committer in the Foreft, or any Pourallee belonging thereunto, before the Lord Chief Justice, of other Justice in Eyre of the Foreft, at the Justice-Seat of Court of Grand Sellions of the Forest; are Traversable by the Assis of the Forest, as was Adjudred by the whole Court, at the Justice-Seat holden at Waltham-Cross in Essex, before the Earl of Bedford, then Lord Chief-Justice in Eyre of all the Forests on this live Trent, in July in the 24th Pear of the Reign of Dueen Elizabeth; Where certain Offences were presented at the said Court of Justice Sear by the Foresters and Jury against vivers Offendors, which were all Traverled, because they were not first presented at the Court of Swanimote, and found by the Jury there, and Convicted, by which means they become Watter of Record, and therefore not Craverlas

Moreover

Moreover, there is allo a Abethon of 1920ceeding against Diffendors in Forests, and Ponrallees by way of Dutlawy, which is after this manner; If any person be prefented, for any Offence committed within the Foreic, or the Pourallees thereof, at either of the Courts of Attachments, 02 Swanimote, and fuch Offendoz bo pwell in a forein County, out of the Foreit, fo that he cannot be Attached by the Forefiers to Answer the same, then be shall be Dutlamen for fuch his Offence, according to the Procedings of Dutlawries at Common Law; Chatis to lap, be must be Eracted, or called to appear and render his Body, at five leveral County-Courts, and then when he is quinto exactus, on the fifth time called to appear, the Coroner of the County where fuch Procebings are mabe, will. for fuch bis Contempt in not appearing, pronounce bim Dutlaw'd, that is, out of the Dio tection of the Law, and lo fuch an Offennoz thall be taken as an Dutlaw whereloever he can be found, and thall forfeit all his Books and Chattels to the King, and the Profits of his Lands, by Inquitation of the Sheriff, and the Coroners.

Laftly, tie thail fet bown fuch of the Articles of the Charge given to the Jury at the Court of Swanimote, as telate to the Ditences com-

mitted in the Pourallees.

1. Dou thalf Inquire if all those that ome fuit. to this Court, be bere, and thole that be not por

mail prefent their Mames.

2. If there be any that maketh any great or fmail Clotes next to the Borbers of the Fo reft, and Inlargeth bis own Ground, by fetting out his Debges and Ditches, whereby the Fol reft is ftreightneb.

22 Of the barrand Privileges of the Forest

of any perfou bath lately buent cany Death, from a Line, within any place adtowning to the Foreit, how ball thetent the

of there be dry Derson that bath Hunted the Builts about user after the laine is think bettern, at facts days before it was in Hunted, to there Readie der in the baunts; The Secondly, breake the Dear, affer the Bing a Hunting, be ting butten out of the forest, by the topice of the Horace, and Dank of Men, and Horas, may at termired a effet in their baunts in the Forest Is Whe beaut luck you hall let us know indo

therepear and Person bath any Great Park, of Ocean Close within Abres When of the Forest that have maken and the course when the chem, when deeps to the sing Deep tura them, when they be in Charms and much they die in them

cannot get out again.

islend any therson both chain any of the islend about War-tant, now that welgit his thing, and inhat rant, way that welent his Panis, and what Deer was to flain, and within whole work the

fame was done.

Deer has taken most that had an Warrant for mention, how many, most deep and of war featon (60 a Breinis Old of Leafon in mointer, the Doc of Shannish of the Marien in the Control of the Compiler of the Marien in the Marien in the Control of the Verderors of Foreigns of the Marien in the Control of the Verderors of Foreigns of the Marien in the Mari arriginer.

Of the Laws and Privileges of the Foreit. 73 % and and person keeps and Hounds, or Dogs and Michael of Gold Chair and the Michael of Gold Chair and the Michael of Gold Chair and the Dogs, but suffered them to Chair, and this meaning being the New Poets where the Total of thick the new Poets where the Total of the person being the Michael of the Poets and Allied of Michael of Michael of Chair and the Company of the Michael of the Poets and Michael of Michael of the Mi

12. If there be any Person that dwelleth about the Bodders of the Forest, which keeps any strange Greyhound, and waiteth when the king's Deer are out of the Forest, and Forest-teth such Deer, so that they Return Pome, and by that means are hurt, or sain you shall Present who he is, and who ows the Greyhound, that they may be punished for the same accordingly.

13. If there be any Person within the Jurisdiction of this Court, that keeps any Hounds, or Greyhounds, and is not qualified so to do by the Laws and Statutes of this Kingdom, who Hunteth in the Pourallee of his own authority, you shall Present his Kame, the Time

when

Of the Laws and Privileges of the Forest!

inden be fo Hunted, and what Damage be bio to the King in diminishing the Game at such Hunting.

14. If any Pourallee Hunter Hunts offner than thice in a titeek, or before the Sun-tiling, or after the Suns letting, or with other Company than his own Benial Serbants, or on Sundays, of in the Fawning, 02 Fence Month, which is fifteen days before and fifteen bays after Midfummer.

ic. If any Pourallee Hunter at any time foretiall the Ming's Deer, whether it be with dead Hay, or with Quick; for they ought to let-run at the Lail of the Deer, otherwise it is fina-

ble, as if be Hunted in the Forest.

16. If any Perlon path made any Coppice of Incloiure of the Pourallee, in binoring the Ring's Deer from getting into the Forest, or bath Impounded the Bealts of any Commoner out of the County, and not put them in open Pound, in the County, whether it be in the time of Pownage, or not, por that give us notice thereof. recorded and therefore the blockers

rations for wes of the local longist here.

me aligot musicali escendi de la cuerte

An Abstract

the Laws and Privileges of the

Of all the Statute-LAWS, from Magna-Charta to this Time, made for the Preservation of the Game of Hunting, Hawking, Fishing and Fowling, in Forests, Chases, Parks, Warrens and Fisheries, in ENG-LAND and WALES.

Charters and Ordinances of the Forest.

A Li Forests Afforested by H. 2. shall be viewed any other Woods but his own Demesse, whereby any is prejudiced, they shall be Disafforested; saving Common of Herbage, and other things within the Forest, to such as have been accustomed to enjoy them. Chart. de Foresta, 9 Hen. 3. Cap. 1.

2. Mone that come before the fusices of our Forest, by Common Summons, which dwell out of the Forest, unless they be Impleaded there, or be Sureties for others that are Attached for the Forest, Cap. 2.

3. All Forests, so converted from Woods by Rich. 1. 02 Ising John, shall be Disassorested, unless they be our Demesse Woods, Cap. 3.

Df the Laws and Privileges of the Forest.

4. All Prelates, Peers, Knights, and other Free-holders, having Woods in Forens, shall emply them, as they bid at the Coronation of H. 2. acquitted of all Purprelaires, Wasts and Assarts made baseling is correct of the Coronation of H. 3. and they that make them henceforwards shall be answerable to the sting for the same, Cap. 4

Rangers; of the Forests shall exercise their Differen, as was used at the Coronation of H. 2.

tom a pears of Dogs half de made in Farstis, from a pears of a pears of the cliew and Centing of Pears of a pears of the cliew and Centing of Pears of the cliew and is that path not bid dogs lawer of hin be amerced as. Also an Ox that be taken for Lawing of Dogs: and it that be done by the ulual allize, viz. That three Claws of the fore-foot be cut off by the skin. Pet fuch Lawing thall not be but where it hath been used from the Coronation of HO 20 Cap. 8.

7. Mo Forester of Bedle shall make Scotall, of mather Garbi Oats, Corn Lamb of Pig, but by the light, and spon the Oats of the Ewelbe Rangers when they shall make these Regald. And speed thall be to many Forester and the thought on the sping the Forest, as that he thought writtens for the lamb Cap #1

18. There hall be until chee Courts of Swansmote kept in the Pear, viz. one is days before michaelmas, and her additional mathrals, and the third is much before Maditional art the the trade of which fails will appear by Different and the foreness and verderers and Collakers and at the others, onely the Foreness and Verderers hall meet every 40 days, to be the Attachments of the Forests, as well for Green thier as thuring and

and the Laws and Privileges of the Forest, 27 and the Swanimores that that he heat but in held. Counties where they have been siled to in held. Cap. 8.

o. There one having a Wood in the Forest, map Agail it, and take his Palanaga there at his pleature; he may or the his Hogs through the king's Woods, or elsewhere for that purpose; and if they lik all Might in the Forest, he man not be question'd for it. Cap. 20

io. If Dear be talled no upon that look either fire of Dembet to: it, but that he anches to be base any thing, it not, he had be inwalled a Beat and a Day, and (it he can independ a Durctics) that then be believed, but it not, he had above a but it not,

te mail abilite the Realm. Cap. 10.

11. A Prelate, Peer of the Realm, being fent for by the king, in comme, and returning may kill a Deer, of two in the Forest through which be palled. Downers it must not be done privily, but in the view of the Forester, if present, but it ablent, by causing one to blow a Horn so him.

12. Coerp Freeman may within the Forest, (upon his own ground) make a Mill, spring, Marlpit, Dike, of Arable Ground, without inclosing such arable, so it be not to the number of his Lieighbours. Cap. 12.

of Hawks, Eagles, of Herons, and also Honey found in his Woods within the Forest. Cap.

Forests but by a forester in fee, that facines has Bailywick, and onely of such as buy their Bushes, Timber, Bark of Coal to fell it again, viz, ad for a Cart and a peny for an Horisto he taken pattern patt reach, and not elsewhere. Aleider food to be taken, and not elsewhere. Aleider food any

78 Of the Laws and Privileges of the Forest.

any Chiminage be taken of such as carry burstens of Bushes, Barke, of Coal, asheit they self it, unless they take them out of the Ikings Woods. Cap. 14.

Foreits lince the time of H. 2. unto the Coronation of H. 3. hall be released, finding sureties

to offend no more. Cap. 15.

16. 120 Constable, Castellan of Bailist, shall hold Pleas of Forests for Green Hue of Hunting, but the Forester shall attach such Pleas, and present them to the Verderors of the Provinces, who shall enroll them and present them inclosed under their Speaks unto the chief suffice of the Forest, when he comes into those parts to hold Pleas of the Forest, to be betermined before him.

Forest to all Men, saving to all other persons the Liberties and Free customes in Forests, Warrens and other places, which they have formerly en-

10000. Cap. 17.

18. The Logos demanded the imprisonment of Crespassers in their Parks, and Ponds, but it was denied by the King and so deferred. Mar-

ton. Chap. 11. 20. H. 3.

treble damages to the party grieved, fusier three years Impissonment, be fined at the Rings Pleasure, and give Surety never to offend in the like manner again. And if they cannot find Surety, they shall absure the Realm, og, being fugitive, shall be Dutlametd. Westm. 1 Cap. 20. 3 E. 1.

be questioned for killing a Trespasso, who cafter the Peace Tried unto him) will not peat himself, so it be not done out of some other former malice. Seat. 21 Etc. 21. Epole

21. Those to whom the King bath granted Purlien (whereby their Woods are Diafforested) thall be quit of the Charge of the Forest, but then they are to have no Common there. Dow heit fuch as are willing to return their Woods into the Forest, shall enjoy Common and other Calements as they did before. Ordinatio Fo-

reftæ. 33 E. 1. Stat. 5.

22. Prefentment of Trefpasses, Green Hue and Hunting in Forests, thall be made at the next Swainmote, by the Foresters within their feberal Bailiwicks, before the Foresters, Verderers, Regardors, Agistors, and other Ministers of the Forest. and they shall be also enquired of by the Oath's as well of Knights, as other Lawful Men (not suspected) of the nearest parts where the Trefpalles were committed: and the Prefentments to enquired of thall be tolemnly confirmed, and Sealed by the Seales of the fato Ministers. Ordinatio Forestæ, 34 E. 1. cap. 1.

23. If any Officer Die, or be otherwise him died, that he cannot Drefent at the Swanimote. the Justice of the Forest, or his Lieutenant, shall put another in big Place, that the Indictment may be made nevertheless by all, in form a forelaid; also all Officers which are to be placed, shall be put as bath been used, ercept the Verderers, who finall be Devained by Election.

6) Writ, Cap. 2.

24. Mo Minister of the Forest shall be put up on any Affize, Jury, of Inquest to be taken without the Forest, Cap. 3.

25. 100 Officer of the Forest shall Surcharne the forest, on pain to be Imprisoned by the lufrice of the Forest, or his Lieutenant; and he by whom they were Placed thall be also punithed at the King's pleasure. At every Swanimote. Enquiry shall be made of Surchargers, Forefters. 80 Of the Laws and Privileges of the Forest.

fters and other Ministers there, and of Opppel

fions done to the Deople, Cap. 4.

26. Trespalles committed in Grounds Disafforested shall be pardoned, yet so as the Hedges and Ditches shall be cast down, and removed: saving the King's Arrentations which shall remain according to the Assis of the Forest: also the Wood Felled in the Forest shall be carryed away, but that standing, though Sold, shall be preserved. Cap. 5.

27. The Justice, or his Lieutenant, shall take Fines and Amerciaments of Persons Indicted for Trespasses committed there, and shall not tarry for the Eyre. Commoners restrained from their Commons, by the Perambulation, shall be restored to them again, saving the King's Ar-

rentations, as is aforefaid. Cap. 6.

28. Mone thall be taken of Imprisoned for Vert of Venison, unless he be taken with the Manner, of elle Induced according to the form of the Statute of 34 E. 1. And then the Warden of the Forest thall let him to Mainprize, until the Eyre of the Forest, without taking any thing for his Deliverance. And if the Warden will not no so, he shall have a Writ out of the Chancery, of old ordained for persons Induced, to be Bailed till the Eyre. Anno 1 E. 2. Stat. 1. cap. 8.

29. If the Warden, after the Writ leeved, shall not deliver the person Indiced to Dain-pize, the Plaintiff shall have a Writ out of the Chancery, directed to the Sheriff, to Attach the Warden, to Answer his Default before the King at a certain Day, and then the Sheriff, (the Verderors being called in) shall deliver the Person Indiced by good Dainpize, in the presence of the sald Verderors, and shall deliver the Mames of the Main-pernors to the same Verderors.

tl

ar

w

ke

For

ga

Of the Laws and Privileges of the Forest. 8f Verderors, to Answer in the Eyre before the Ju-

ftices. Ibid.

30. If the Chief Warden be thereof Attaints ed, he shall be Awarded to pay treble Dammages to the Barty aggrieved, committed to Pulon, and Ransomed at the King's Will.ib.

31. The Great Charter, and also that of the Forest are confirmed, Anno 1 E. 3. Stat. 3. cap. 1.1

32. The Perambulations of Forests shall continue as they were bounded in the time of E. 1. and every County shall have a Charter thereof. And where they are not bounded, it shall be now done, and a Charter thereof shall be also made thereof. Ibid.

Forest, may take House-boot, and Hay-boot in his said Wood, without being attached for the same by the Ministers of the Forest, so that, it be bone by the Cliew of the Foresters, Stat. 1 E. 3.

Stat. 2. cap. 2.

34. No Forester, or any other Minister there, shall gather any Autuals, or other thing, by colour of his Office, but what is due of old

right, Stat. 25 E. 3. Stat. 5. cap. 22.

35. A lury for the Trial of a Trespass within a Forest shall give up their Aeroiat where they received their Charge, and shall not by Menace, or othewise, be constrained to give their Aeroiat of a Trespass done in the Forest, otherwise then their Tonscience will clear-

ly inform them, Stat. 7 R. 2. 3.

36. No Officer of the Forest shall Impisson any without due Indiament, or per main ouvre with his hand at the Mork (that is, being taken with the Danner, or Trespassing in the Forest) nor shall constain any to make Obligation of Ransome against his Will, and the Asse of the Forest, on pain to pay the Party

82 Of the Laws and Privileges of the Foreft.

griebed bouble Dammages, of to be Ranfom-

ed at the King's will , Stat. 7 R. 2. 3.

37. If any having Woods in his own Ground within any Forest, Chace, of Purlieu, shall Cut, or cause the same, of any part thereof) to be Cut, by the king's License (where such Forest, Chase, of Purlieu are his) of without License (where they belong to others) he may keep them several, and Inclosed during Seven years next after their felling, Anno 22 E.4. cap. 7.

138. Chery Justice of the King's Forests, Chafes, and Parks, by Artiting, under the Seal of his Office, may make as many Deputies as he please, which shall have like Power as the Justice himself hath, Anno 32 H. 8. cap. 35.

39. An Act for the certainty of the Forests and Meers, Limits and Bounds thereof, Anno 16 Car. 1. cap. 16.

Of Bows, and Guns, and Shooting at Came.

1. None shall shoot with, or keep in his poule any Cross-bow, Hand-gun, Hagbut (Hakebut, or Haquebut) or Demihake, unless his Lands be of the value of 100 l. per annum, on pain to forfeit 10 l. for every such Offence, Anno 33 H. S. cap. 6.

2. Mone hall shoot with, of have any * Handgun under the length of one Pard, nor Hagbut,

Note, The word Hend-gun includes a Deg, though Invented fince the Statute, and the word Cross-bow includes a Stantbow, and a Hag-hat is a Hand-Gun, Three quarters of a Yard long. Co. 5. Pars. 71, 72.

of Demihake under the Length of Three quarters of a Pard, on pain to forfeit to l. And it shall be lawful for any Wan, having Lands of 100 l. per annum, to selle any such Gum, or any Cross-bow used or kept contrary to the form of this Statute, but then he ought to break them within 20 Days after, on pain of 40 s. Idem Statut.

3. Mone that Travel with a Cross-bow beat, of Gun charg'd (except in time of Wat) of Shoot within a Quarter of a Wile of a City, Borough, of Market-Town (except for the Defence of himself and his bouse, or at a Dead-Mark) on pain of rol. Idem Statut.

4. Mone shall command his Serbant to Shoot in any Gun, or Cross-bow, (except at a Dead-Mark, or in time of War) on pain of

10 l. Idem Statute.

5. The Penalties above late thall be divided between the King and the Party who is the

Profecutor. Idem Statut.

o. Dowbeit the followers of Loves Spiritual or Temporal, Knights, Esquires, Gentlemen, and the Inhabitants of Cities, Boroughs, or Market-Towns, may keep in their Doules, Ale, and Shoot (but at a Dead Mark only) with Gans, not under the Length above said. So may the Diwner of a Ship, for the defence thereof; and also he that dwells two surlongs distant from a Town, or within five Adies from the Sea-Coast, and this last may Shoot at any wild Beast, or fowle, save onely Deer, Heron, Shovelard, Pheasant, Partridge, Wilde-Swan, or Wilde-Elke. Idem Stat.

8. It shall be lawful for any person to convey the party offending before the next Justice of the Peace, who, upon the Examination and Proof, shall have power to Commit him to Fff 3

Pailon, there to remain till he hath fatistied the Penalty, which, in this case, shall be divided bed between the King and the Party that so

takes the Offender. Idem Stat.

9. Every Placart granted by the King, which expecteth not at what Beatls of fowle the Grantee thall Shoot, and where the Grantee entreth not into Recognizance of 301. in the Chancery, to Shoot at no other, thall be Adjudged void. Idem Statut.

10. Justices of Peace in Sessions, and Stewards of Leets, have Power to hear and determine

the faid Offences. Idem Stat.

whole Fosfeiture is to be levied to the King's use. When in a Leet, the one half is the King's and the other half ought to be divided between the Lord, and the Prosecutor. Idem Stat.

12. Here, if a Jury hall willingly conceal any thing, the Justices, or Steward have power to Impannel another Jury, by whom, if they first be found guilty of Concealment, they shall for feft 20 l. a piece, viz. to the King, if it be in Sessions, but if in a Leet, then the one halfe to the Lozd, and the other halfe to the Lozd, and the other halfe to the Profecutor. Idem Statut.

13. Forfeitures arising by this AA, shall be sued for, viz. by the King, within one Pear, and by a common person within six Months, otherwise they shall be lost. Idem Statut.

14. A Servant, upon Command, may ule his Master's Cross-bow, or Gun, (not prehibited by this Act) so he shoot at no Fowle, Deer, or other Game, and may also, by a License in California, carry it to any place to he mended. Idem Statut.

Shoot with any Hand-Gun, within any City, 02

Town ;

Town; or Shoot at any Fowle whatsoever, with any Hail-shot, on pain of Ten pound, and Three Months Imprisonment, Idem Stat.

according to the value of their Land, are Authouzed to Shoot by the 33 H.8.6. so that they forbear to use any Hail-shot; and all others that presume to Shoot, shall present their own Names, viz. (in a Corporation to the Mayor, or Dead-Officer, and in the Country to the next sustice of the Peace) on pain of 20s. and the said sustice or the next Sessions on like pain of 20s. which forseitures are to be divided between the King and the Prosecutor. Idem Stat.

Of hunting, hawking, fowling and fifting.

17. If any shall Hunt within Forests, Parks of Warrens in Hunting. the Might-time, of Disguised, one of the King's Council, of a Justice of Peace, to whom Information thereof shall be made, shall by his Warrant cause the Offender to be brought before himself, of some other Councellof, of Justice of the Peace, to be examined, where, if he conceal the Fact, such Hunting shall be deemed felony; but being consisted, the offence is onely fineable at the next General Sessions. And here a Rescous of the Execution of any such Warrant shall be also deemed felony. Anno 1 H.7. cap. 7.

Of Bunting, bawking, fawling, and fifting.

Hawking.

Fowling.

Partridges with Engines in anothers ground without License on pain of 101, to be divided betwirt the owner of the ground and the Prosecutor.

Anno 11 H. 7. cap. 17.

2. Mone thall take out of the nest any Eggs of Falcon, Goshawk, Lanner. of Swan on pain of a Year and a Days Imprisonment, and to incure a fine at the Kings pleasure, to be divided betwirt the King and the owner of the ground, where the Eggs shall be so taken. Idem Statut.

3. None thall bare any Hawk of English breed called an Eyesse, Goshawk, Tassel, Lanner, Lanneret, of Falcon, on pain to sofiett the same to

the King. Idem Statut.

4. De that brings an Eyesse Hawk from beyond the Sea, shall have a certificate under the Customers Seal where he Lands, or if out of Scotland, then under the Seal, of the Lord Warden or his Lieutenant testifping that she is a foreign Hawk upon the like pain of foreigning the Hawk. Idem Statut.

5. None thall take, kill, or fear away any of the Hawks abovefaid from the Coverts where they wie to breed, on pain of rol. to be recovered before Justices of Peace, and divided betwirt the Using and the Profecutor. Idem Statut.

6. Pone thalf kill or take any Fesants or Partridges with any Net or Engine in the night time on pain to forest for every Fesant 20s. and so every Partridge 10s. which if the Offender pay not in ten days, he thall suffer a Months implicament without Bail, and enter into Bond (for

(for two years only) with good Sureties before some Justice of Peace, not to offend in the

like kind. Anno 33 Eliz. cap. 10.

7. The forfeiture aforelaid thall be recover'd in any Court of Record and divided betwirt the Lord of the Mannor and the Profecutor. But in rate the Lord thall dispense with the Offender, the poor of the Parish are to have his Moiety, to be recover'd by any of the Churchwardens. Idem Statut.

8. Idone thall Hawk of Hunt with his Spaniels in Standing Corn, of before it is Shocked, (except in his own ground, of with the owners content) on pain to forfeit 40 s to the owner of the ground as abovelaid. Idem

Statut.

.9 Justices of Assize, Justices of Peace in Sessions and Stewards in Leets, have power to hear and determine these Offences, and one Justice of Peace may examine such an Offender, and bind him over with good Sureties to answer it at the next General Sessions, if the Offence he not before determined at the Assizes, or in a Leet. Idem Statut.

10. This Act thall not restrain Fowlers which unwillingly take Phesants of Partridges, and forth

with let them go at large. Idem Statut.

two or more Justices of the Peace, to have killed or taken any Phesant, Partridge, Pigeon, Duck, Heron, Hare, or other Game, or to have taken or destroyed the Eggs of Phesants, Partridges or Swans, shall by the said Justices be committed to prison without Baile, unlesse be immediately pay to the use of the poor where the Offence was committed or he be apprehended 20 s. sor every Fowl, Hare, or Egg, so killed, taken, or destroyed.

And after one Ponths commitment thall befaze two oz moze Justices of the Peace be bound with two sufficient sureties in 20 1. a piece, with condition never to offend in the like kind.

Anno. 1 Jac, cap, 27.

12. Every person convicted, as abovesato, to keep a Greyhound, Dog, of Net, to kill of take Deer, Hare, Phesant, of Partridge, unless he have inheritance of 10 l. per annum, a Lease to Life of 30 l. perannum, of he worth 200 l.in goods, of otherwise be the Son of a Knight of Heir apparent of an Esquire, shall suffer Imprisonment as a foresaid, unless he pay 40 s. to the use abovesato. Idem Statut.

13. Mone shall sell, of buy to sell again any Deer, Hare, Pheasant of Partridge (except by them brought up, of from beyond Sea) on pain to fosset for every Deer 40 s. Hare 10 s. Phesant 20 s. and Partridge 10 s. to be divided between the Possecutor, and the Poor of the Parish where the Offence is committed. Idem Statut.

14. Justices of Asize, and of Peace in Sessions, and two or more out of Sessions have power to bear and betermine these Offences. Idem

Statut.

15. None thail by any former Law luffer punishment for the same Offences for which he shall be punished by this Law. Idem Statut.

16. This Act thall not restrain one Licensed in open Sessions to kill Hawks-meat, but then he shall there become bound by Recognisance in 201. not to kill any of the Game prohibited by this Law, nor to Shoot within 600. paces of an Hearnery, within 100 paces of a Pigeon house, or in a Park, Forest, or Chace, whereof his Master is not owner or keeper, and the Clerk of the peace his fee sor such a Licence is 12 d. Idem Statut.

17. Ebery

17. Every person convicted by his own confession of by two witnesses upon Dath, before two of more Justices of the Peace, to have Hawked at, or destroyed any Phesant of Partridge betwirt the lift of July, and the last of August, shall suffer one Months Imprisonned without bast, unless he forthwith pay, to the use of the poor where the Officine was committed, or be apprehended, 40 s. for every time so Hawking, and 20 s. for every Phesant of Partridge so destroyed or taken. Anno 7. Jacobi primi cap. 11.

18. De that thall be punithed by this Law, that not be punithed again by any other. Idem

Statut.

19. It shall be lawful for the Lord of a Mannor of one having Inheritance of 401. per annum Freehold of 80. 1. per Annum of goods worth 4001. of their Servants Licenced by them, to take Phesants of Partridges within their own grounds of Apecinas, so they do it in the day time and only betweet Michaelmas and Christmas. Idem Statut.

20. This Offence thall be profecuted within 6 Months after it thall be committed. Idem

Statut.

21. If any of mean condition thall be convicted by his own confession, or by one witness upon Oath, before two or more justices of the Peace, to have killed or taken any Phesant or Partridge, he shall be committed to prison without Baile, unless he sorthwith pay to the vie of the poor 20 s. for every Phesant or Partridge, so killed or taken, and also become bound before one or more justices of the Peace in a Recognisance of 201. never to Ossending the like kind again. Idem Statut.

22. Every Constable of Headborough with a Warrant from two of more Justices of Peace, hath power to search the Houses of persons suspected to

babe any setting Dogs of Nets soft the taking of Phesants of Partridges, and the Dogs of Nets there found, to kill of cut in pieces at pleasure as things softested unto the said Officers. Idem Statut.

r. Ho Lay-man who bath not Lands of 40 s. per An: not Clerk who bath not 10 l. Revenue per An: shall have of keep any Greyhound, Hound, Dog, Ferrer, Net, of Engine, to bestrop Deer, Hares, Conies, of any other Gentlemans Game, on pain of one whole years Imprisonment, which justices of Peace shall have power to instict. Anno: 13. R. 2. cap. 13.

2. Rone shall keep any Deer-hayes of Buckftalls lave in his own Forest of Park, on pain to forseit for every Month they are so kept 40 s. Reither shall any Stalk with any Bush of Beast to any Deer, except in his own Forest of Park,

on pain of 10 l. Anno 19. H. 7, cap. 11.

3. Rone thall take an old Heron without his own grounds on pain of 6s. 8d. not a young Heron on pain of 10s. for which forfeitures every Man that will may fue by Action of

Debt og otherwife. Idem Statut.

4. Any two Justices of Peace in Session may examine the Offenders asociate, and commit them to pison till they have satisfied the said sozieitures whereof the said Justices are to have the 10th. part. Idem Statut.

Hunting. any Hare in the Snow, and Justices of Peace in Sessions, and Stewards in Leets have power to enquire of such Offenders, and shall assess upon every such Offenders, and shall assess penalty assess in Sessions shall go to the King, but in a Leet to the Lord thereof Statut. 14. & 15. H. 8. cap. 10.

6. Pone shall kill of chase any Deer of Conies in any Park of inclosed ground, without the owners Licence, on pain of three months implicationment, to pay treble Dammages to the Party grieved, to be assessed by the Justice, before whom he shall be convict and after the said three months expired, to be bound to the good behaviour 7 Pears, though the party grieved may release them. Idem Statut.

7. The Justices in Sessions have power to bear and betermine these Offences, and have power also upon latisfaction to release the behaviour.

Idem Statut.

8. If any person not having 40 l. per annum: in Lands, of 200 l. in Goods, shall use any Gun of Crossedway, Ferret, Dog, Net of other Engine, for the purposes asocially, it shall be sawfull for any person worth 100 l. per annum: to take such Gun &c. from any such person, and condert the same to his own use. Idem Statut.

e. This act thall not extend to any Park of inclosed ground bereafter to be made of used for Deer of Conies without the Kings Licence. Idem

Statut.

grieved, whether he will take for Satisfacion 101. in money, or treble dammages. Statut.

7. Jac. 13.

Deer, without consent of the owner, if condicted by confession of Dath of one Mitnede, and protected within 6 Donths shall soffest 201 to be levied by distress; One moiety whereof to the owner, and the other to the Insomer. And so want of such distress shall be committed to the house of Correction, of the common Sout so one year, not discharged till Security be given for their good behaviour so one Pear after. And 13 Car. 2. cap. 20.

the Mone punished by virtue of this Law for the law for

the fame Dffence. Idem Statut.

13. Lords of Mannors of other Royaltyes, not under the Degree of an Equire, may depute one of more Game-keepers, who may felle all Guns, Dogs, Bows, &c. and by warrant from a Justice of Peace, may fearth the boules of such persons so probibited as shall be suspected to keep such Guns, Dogs, Bows, &c. and seife them for the Lord of the Mannor, of destroy them. Anno 22 and 23 Car. 2. cap. 25.

per annum, and that are not Sons of Heirs of Efquires of other persons of higher Degree, are declared to be persons not allowed to keep

Guns, Bows &c. Idem Statut.

not enclosed, and chase and kill any Conies without the owners consent, he shall forfeit treble Dammages, and be impuloned the Bonths, and till be find Sureties for his nood he

babiour. Idem Statut.

16. They that kill of take Conies in the night time upon the borders of Warrens, of on other grounds when had keeping Conies, hall make fach recompence as shall be appointed by the Justice before whom Convicted, not exceeding ros. which shall go to the Poor of the Parish and in default of Payment, to the Bouse of Toprection: They that use Snares, Harepipes, and other Engines, are liable to the same Penalties. Idem Statut.

Fishing. Without consent of the Owner of the Malet, and be thereof Convict, he shall give such Recompence, and in such time as the Justice shall appoint, not exceeding tree

ble Damages, and pay bown presently such Sum as the Justice shall think sit, not exceding tos. In default of payment the same to be levied by distress and sale of gwds, by warrant of such Justice, and so want of a Distress the Offender to be committed, not exceeding a Months time, unless be enter into Bond with one or more Sureties, to the party injured, not exceeding ten pounds never to Offend in the like manner. Idem Statut.

18. The Justice before whom such Offender thall be convict, may destroy all the Engines about such Offender, when he thall be apprehend

ed oz taken. Idem Statut.

HOILDS HE

wifiel

19. Persons aggrieved by any judgment by birtue of this Act, may appeal to the nert Quarter Sessions, whole order shall be final. Idem Statut.

20. This Act thall not abridge any Royalty of Prerogative-royal of the King, nor any part of the Forest Laws of this Realm. Idem Statut.

1. Mone shall take Salmons betwirt the 8th of September and the middle of November, nozyoung Salmon with Mets of other Engines at Mill pools, betwirt the midst of April and the 24th of June, on pain of having their Nets and Engines burnt for the first Offence, for the 2d to suffer a Quarter of a years imprisonment, and after to have their Punishment encreased according to the Crespais: and in fresh waters, Oversets of this Statute shall be assigned, and swom to inquire of the Offenders. West. 2. cap. 17. Anno 13 E. 1.

COLUMN TO STORY

- 2. 120 Fisher shall use any Engine, by which the Fry of Fish may be Destroyed, upon the Pains mentioned in the Stat. of VVestm. 2. cap. 47.
- 3. More shall use any Net, or Engine, to destroy the Spawn of Fry of Fish, or take Salmons, or Trouts out of Season, or Pikes shorter than ten Inches, Salmons then 16, Trouts then 8, and Barbles then 12, or shall use any Engine to take Fish other then Angle or Net, or a Tramel of two Inches and an half, Wesh on pain to sorteit 20 s. and the Fish so wrongsully taken with the Net or Engine wrongsully used. Anno 1 Eliz, cap.
- 4. All persons having surisdiction of Conservancy upon streams, of Waters, and Lords of Leets, have power, upon the Oaths of 12 Men, to hear and determine these Offences, and shall have all the Fosseitures which accrue thereupon. Idem Statut.
- 5. The Steward of the Leet thall give this Statute in Charge to the Jury on pain of 40 s. to be divided between the Queen and the Informer. Idem.
- 6. Here, if the Jury wisfully somear to Present Offences of this kind, the Steward, or Bailiss shall Impannel another Jury to enquire of their Default, which being sound, the sirst Jury shall sofieit 20s. a piece. Idem.
- 7. Apon default of Pielentment in Leets. within one Year, Justices of the Peace in Sellions, Justices

Justices of Oyre and Terminer and Justices of Alize in circuits have power to hear and Determine the laid Offences. Idem Statut.

- 8. This Act thall not restrain the taking of Smelts, Loches, Minews, Bullheads, Gudgeons of Eeles, with Nets of Engines formetly vsed, so that no other fish be taken therewith. More thall extend to absidge any sommer priveledge of conservancy lawfully Enjoyed, of fishing in Tweed, Vske, of Wye, of in waters let to farme by the Dueen, so that the Spawn, of Fry of Fish be not therein willfully destroyed. Idem Statut.
- p. Mone shall unlawfully break down Fish pondheads, of Fish there without Licence of the Dwner, of enter into any Chace, Park, Woods of other grounds, and there kill and chase the Deer, of take any Hawk of Hawks Eggs, in pain to suffer three Months impliconment, and to be bound with good Sureties to the good behaviour for seven pears after. Anno 5 Eliz. cap 21.
- 15. The Party grieved thall in Sessions, or elles where, recover treble damages against the Delinquent, and upon Satisfaction shall have Liberty to procure his release of the behaviour. Idem Statut.
- 11. Justices of Oyer and Terminer, Assize, Peace, and Gaol delivery in Sessions, have power to hear and betermine those Offences. Idem Statut.
- wears along the Sea shore, of in any Fishing.

 Wears along the Sea shore, of in any Fishing.

 Gg g destroy

destroy the Spawn 02 Fry of Fish on pain of 10 l. to be divided between the King and the prolecuter. Reither thall any Fish in any of the lato Places, with any Net of a lefs Meh than the inches and an half betwirt knot and knot, (except for the taking of Smoults in Norforth only) or with a Canvas, Net or other Engine, whereby the Spawn on Fry of Fish may be destroyed, on pain to forfeit the faid Net of Ensine and 10s. in money, to be divided betwirt the Poor of the Parish and the Protecutor, and to be levied in Corporations by the Dead Difficers. and in other Places by diffress and Sale of goods, upon a Warrant of a Justice of Peace. Directed unto the Constable, and Churchwardens of the Parish, for that purpose. Stat. 3 Jac. cap. 12.

13. If any perion after the first of August nert shall in the River Severn Fish with, or make the of any Engine or Device, suberedy any Salmon, Trout, or Barbel, under the length appointed by the Statut of 1 Eliz. Shall be taken of killed, or shall Fish with any Net sor Salmon, Salmon mart, Salmon-peal, Pike, Carp, Trout, Barbel, Chub, or Grayling, the Mesh thereof shall be under two inches and an ball Shquare from knot to knot, or above 20 yards in tenath, and two pards in breadth, or above 50 pards in lingth, and six yards in breadth in the wing of the Net, in the said River from Ripledock-shake to Glowster Bridge, or above 50 yards in length below Glowster Bridge and six pards in breadth in the wing of the Net, or shall fix with more then one of these Net, or thall fix with more then one of these Net, or thall fix

1 2 3

on of Creek, of the billing

he thall forfeit 51. for every Offence, with the fifth instruments &c. and 51. a time for watering Hemp of Flax in the laid River. Statut. 13 Car. 2 cap 9.

- of Worcester, Salop and Gloucester, spall be Confervators of the said River, in their respective Counties, and make one, or more Conservators under them, to whom, or to any Constable, strupon their awn knowledge or Information of such Offence, shall Mue Warrants to search all suspected houses, sor such unlawful Instruments, and seife them. Idem Stat.
- 15. Mone thall be punished for the late Defences but by Information of Indiament before the Justices of Assie, or General Quarter Sessions. The one Mosety of the Fostettures are to the Poor, and the other to the Profession, to be levied by Fieri facias, or Cap. ad satisfaciendum. Idem Stat.
- and all Rights, Titles, et. of the King and usthers, in the last River, always labed. Idem Stat.
- in Toyles, kill, of take away and Deer, in any Forest, Chace, Purlieu, Park, of Hunting. other Ground Inclosed, of shall be aiding of assisting therein, and he thereof Convicted by Confession, one Winess of more, shall sofest 201. though no Deer be killed of wounded; and sofessed by Distress upon his Goods, on a grant of grant 2 and

of Destruction of the Game.

and fo! want of Distress Imprisonment for a pear without Bail, and to be let in the Pillory for an Dour in the next Market-Town, Anno 3&4W. & M. cap. 10.

- have power to fearch the Houses of suspected persons, and where any Venison, or Skin of Deer shall be found, to apprehend the Party, and if he do not give a good account how he came by them, he shall be convicted by the Justice of such offence, and be subject to the forfeitures and penalties as if thereof Convicted. Idem Statut.
- 3. Co prevent flight, or removal of Offenders after Conviction, The Constable, or other Officer, are authorised to detain the Offender in Cuestion, during such time (not exceeding two days) as a Return may be made to the Warrant for the Distress. Idem Statut.
- 4. All owners of Deer, and perlons acting under them, may oppose and resist Offenders, and be equally indemnissed, as if such fact had been committed within any Ancient Chace, of Park. Idem Statut.
- 5. Mo Certiorari to be allowed for removal of the Proceeding, unless the Party convicted become bound to the Profecutor in 501 to pay his full Costs and Damages, to be ascertained upon his Dath. In default whereof, the Justice shall proceed to the Execution of the Conviction Idem Statut.

- 6. 120 Offender punished by this Ad, shall he profecuted upon any other Statute for the fame offence. Idem Statut.
- 7. Any person profecuted for putting this Ad in Crecution, may plead the General 36 fue, and gibe the fpecial Patter in Ebibence. Idem Statut.
- 8 If any person thall in the Night-time pull down any Pales, 02 Walls of any Forest, Park, Chace, etc. and be thereof Conbict, fall fuffer Imprisonment three Months without Bail. Idem Statut.
- 1. That whereas divers Laws have ben made for the Preservation of the Same, which wanting due Erecu-Hunting. tion, the Game of this Kingdom Hawking. hath heen destroyed. It is Enacted Fishing. that all Laws now in force, and e-Fowling. bery Article not bereby altered, or repeated, thall now be Executed under the ses nalties therein contained to be levied and bif poled of, as the laid Laws Direct. Anno 4 & s W. & M. cap. 7.
- 2. In cafe any Hare, Partridge, Pheafant, Fift. Fowl, of other Game Chall be found in any DE fenders Doufe, the Offender is to be carrien before a lustice of Peace of the County, and being convicted thail forfeit any Sum not und Det 5 s. 1102 above 20 s. for want of Diffress the Offender is to be carried to the Doule of Correction for a Bonth, or fome other frace of time, not lefs then 10 Days. And if any perfon not qualified by the Laws, thall Keep, or Onn 3

The amp Bowr, Greshounds, Setting-Dogs, Ferrets, Thanbler, Payes, Soares, &c. he shall be subject to the lattle Benalties, as the Person who shall be sound to have any Hare, Partridge, Pheasant, Falls, Forth, on other Game in his boulle, as a socially. Since it any Person charged that was stipe sufficient Colorne of his Innocence, he shall be Convicted thereof in the same manner as the Person sirs charged therewith, and so from Person to Person, till the sirst Offender be become of dem Statut.

- 3. All persons Authorized by Lords of Mannors &c. may within their Royaltyes, oppose and resist such Offenders in the night time, in the same manner as if such fact had been committed within any ancient Chase, Park, of Warren enclosed. Idem Statut.
- Pitch, &c. and that owners of Fisheryes of their Deputies, may Seise and keep all Nets &c. also any person by a Marrant from a Justice of the Peace, thay, in the day time, search the Bouses of persons suspenses, and seise, detain, of destroy them, as prohibited to be kept by persons unqualified by Law. Idem Statut.
- of his Ant shall not abridge any Fisher-man of his Apprentice, sawfully authorized to fish, in Mavigable Rivers, with lawfull Nets. Idem Statut.
- 6. If any inferiour Tradesman, Apprentice of dissolute person presume to Hunt, Hawk, Fish, or Fowl, be that be Subject to the Benaltyes of this act, and be sued for willfull trespass, in come-

ing on any Dans Land, and if found guiltys' the Plaintiff shall not only recover his dammages, but full costs of suit. Idem Statut.

7. for preferving the red and black Game of Growfe or Heathpolts, No person on any Mountains, Hills, Heaths, Moors, Forests, and Hares or other Wasts, shall burn between the 2d of February and 24 of June, any Grig, Ling, Heath, Furze, Goss or Fern, upon pain of being committed to the house of correction, for 10 Days or a Month, there to be whipt, and kept to bard labour. Idem Statut.

FINIS